
GINN AND COMPANY
Ex Libris

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

C. IVLI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI II

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

With Introduction, Notes, Grammatical Appendix
Vocabulary, and English-Latin Exercises

BY

HARRY F. TOWLE
LATE PRINCIPAL, CURTIS HIGH SCHOOL

AND

PAUL R. JENKS
FLUSHING HIGH SCHOOL
NEW YORK CITY

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

1 c 5

PREFACE

The second year of the Latin course, in which Caesar's Gallic War is usually read, is confessedly the crucial period in the pupil's career. The work of the first year is devoted principally to learning the forms and acquiring as large a vocabulary as possible. But little attention is paid to syntax, and the reading material is carefully selected to suit the stage of progress of the learner. In the second year, on the other hand, not only must he review his forms, and enlarge his knowledge of syntax, but he must make his first acquaintance with a world-renowned classic, written for mature minds and of all grades of difficulty. To meet the needs of pupils at this period in their course this edition has been prepared, and the editors have endeavored to embody in it the results of many years' experience in the class room.

A large proportion of any school commentary on the Gallic War must be devoted to the explanation of syntactical difficulties. The usual practice is to refer for detailed treatment of any construction to some grammar in common use. This is open to two objections. The first and most important is that the grammar is of secondary importance to most pupils. Their principal attention is given to the translation of the text, and every teacher knows how difficult it is to get them to follow up the references given in the notes. The second difficulty is that the most of the class are as yet unable to make discriminating use of the comprehensive treatment found in the grammar, so that a confusion frequently results. To meet

these difficulties a complete treatise on the Syntax of the Gallic War has been inserted in this edition in the shape of an appendix to the commentary. Here every construction found in the text is explained in the simplest manner, and illustrated by examples, all of which are taken from the text, with references to the passages where they occur. Many hints as to differences between Latin and English idiom are also given, so that this Appendix is an important adjunct to the commentary in every way. For further study, references to the standard grammars are added under every heading.

In the conviction that the student should be encouraged to work out things for himself, but little assistance in the way of translation is provided. Instead, suggestive analyses of the thought have been inserted, with sufficient references to the Appendix, when the construction seems to demand it, to make the meaning of the author clear. The editors also believe that too much attention is usually paid in the early chapters to Indirect Discourse, and that it can be readily handled in translation without changing it to the direct form; they have, however, provided the direct form of several chapters in the notes, and those who prefer to make an exhaustive study of it will find it fully discussed in the Appendix, with a careful comparison of the rules for Indirect Discourse in English.

In illustrating the subject matter of the narrative the constant aim of the editors has been to interest and stimulate the pupil, but not to overload the commentary with unimportant details.

Much of the material often found in the notes is given in the Vocabulary. Here, too, the student is assisted to choose the right meaning of a word by references to its occurrence in the text, and phrases and idiom are explained, and, when necessary, translated.

The Introduction contains a brief discussion of Caesar's career and a sketch of the conditions of Roman society before his rise to power. The customary information as to the military system of the Romans is also added.

The thanks of the editors are due to Professor Lodge, who has read all the proofs and made many helpful suggestions, and to Miss Mary A. Cogswell, of Wellesley College, for material assistance in the preparation of the Vocabulary.

HARRY F. TOWLE.
PAUL R. JENKS.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

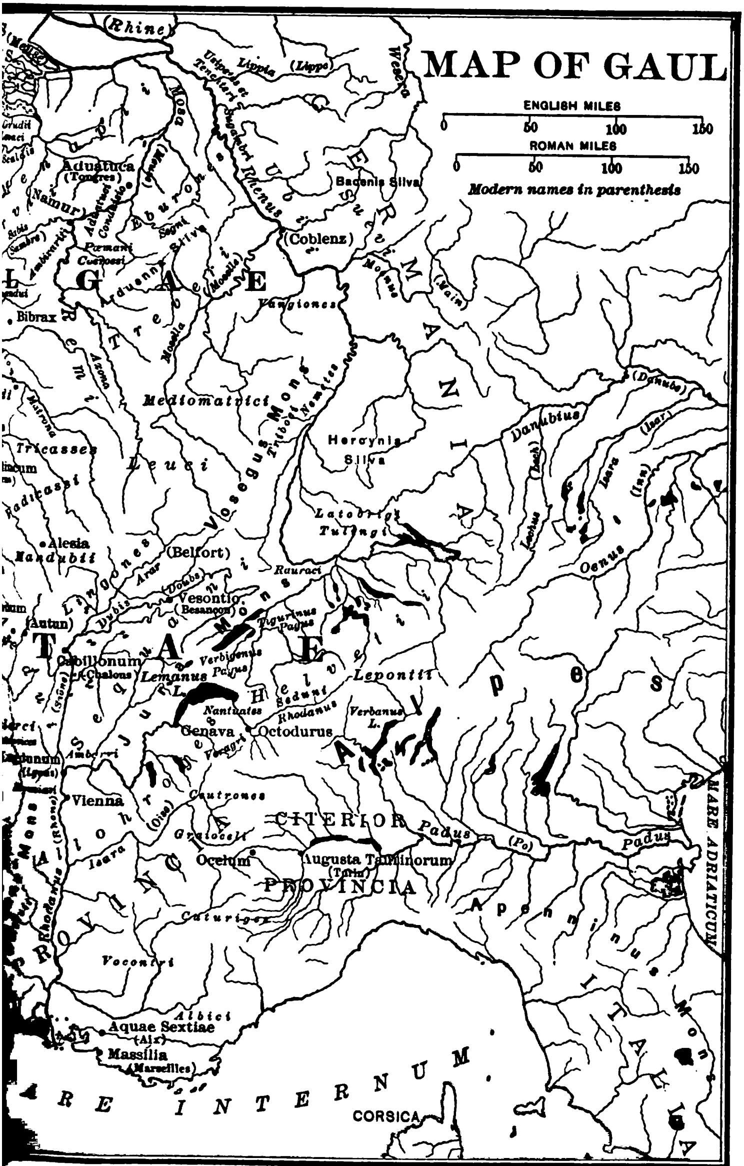
THE recent trend in the teaching of second year Latin has been toward an intensive study of the first two books of Caesar, and a rapid reading of the most interesting portions of the rest; toward a prescribed vocabulary, and a limited range of syntax study.

Accordingly the word lists have been conformed to Professor Lodge's standard vocabulary, and English-Latin exercises have been added, which contain, first, several sentences illustrating new constructions, second, review and miscellaneous sentences, which after a while are developed *pari passu* with Book I; so that the teacher may easily give as much or as little drill and review as different classes or pupils require. The authors' selections for sight reading from Caesar are added, to make the book complete for all second year work.

P. R. J.

MAPS AND CAMPAIGN PLANS


BRITANNIA
Londinium
(London)
Tamesis
(Thames)
Belgæ
Atrebatii
Cantii
Damnonii
Durotriges
Regni
(Dover)
(Wissant)
(Calais)
Itius Portus
(Boulogne)
Atrebates
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
Civitates Aremoricae
Ambiani
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Sequana
Caleti
(Rouen)
Veliocasses
(Seine)
Lexovii
Unelli
Ambibarii
Osismi
Curiosolites
Veneti
Aulerci Eburovices
Lutetia
(Paris)
Parisii
Esuvii
Aulerci Diablintes
Aulerci Cenomani
Redones
Vellaunodunum
Namnetes
Andes
Genabum
(Gien)
Liger
(Loire)
Liger
Turones
Noviodunum
Avaricum
(Bourges)
Pictones
Bituriges
Limonum
(Poitiers)
Lemovices
Santones
Garumna
(Garonne)
Gergovia
Bituriges
Petrocorii
Uxellodunum
Cadurci
Nitiobriges
Vocates
Garumna
Sotiates
Cocosates
Tarusates
Elusates
Sibusates
AQUITANI
Tolosa
(Toulouse)
Tectosages
Bigerriones
Garumni
Carcaso
HISPANIA ULTERIOR
Pyrenaei Montes
Melodunum
Elaver
L. L. P. TES. ENGR., N.Y.


MAP OF GAUL
ENGLISH MILES
0 50 100 150
ROMAN MILES
0 50 100 150
Modern names in parenthesis
(Rhine)
(Lippe)
Visurgis
Aduatuca
(Tongres)
(Namur)
Eburones
Segni
Paemani
Caerosi
(Coblenz)
Bacenis Silva
Moenus
(Main)
Vangiones
Bibrax
Treveri
Mosella
Mediomatrici
Vosegus Mons
Triboci
Nemetes
Hercynia Silva
Tricasses
Leuci
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Alesia
Mandubii
Lingones
(Belfort)
Arar
Rauraci
(Doubs)
Vesontio
(Besançon)
Dubis
(Autun)
Tigurinus Pagus
Verbigenus Pagus
Cabillonum
(Chalons)
Lemanus L.
Helvetii
Seduni
Lepontii
Nantuates
Rhodanus
Verbanus L.
Genava
Octodurus
Veragri
Ambarri
Vienna
(Oise)
Ceutrones
Graioceli
CITERIOR
Padus
(Po)
Padus
Ocelum
Augusta Taurinorum
(Turin)
PROVINCIA
Isara
Rhodanus
Caturiges
Vocontii
Apenninus Mons
Albici
Aquae Sextiae
(Aix)
Massilia
(Marseilles)
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA
ITALIA
MARE ADRIATICUM
(Danube)
Danubius
(Lech)
Licus
(Isar)
Isara
(Inn)
Oenus
Alpes
Galli
Germania
Sequani

INTRODUCTION

Before entering upon the study of the literary work of Caesar it is well for the student to acquire some knowledge of the man and the times in which he lived. Too often is the reader of the Gallic War left under the impression that the fame of Caesar rests mainly on his having written a history of his campaigns in foreign lands, a book which has made young people more or less miserable, however it may have commanded the admiration of scholars. The character and achievements of this man are worthy of study quite apart from his career in Gaul.

As a writer, it is true, he will be famous to the end of time; but as an orator he was also conspicuous in an age of orators; as a successful military leader he has no superior; as a statesman neither ancient nor modern times have furnished his equal; and as an example of success due to a fixed purpose in life, prosecuted with an unyielding will and with restless energy, he has left a name that dominates history.

The Roman Commonwealth.

During the four hundred years which elapsed from the expulsion of the kings to the birth of Caesar, the Roman Commonwealth underwent many changes in its government, in its moral and social life, and in the extent of its dominion.

The Roman Government.—At the beginning, the offices of the state were restricted to the aristocracy or patricians alone, while the plebeians, or common people, had almost no voice; hence arose political strife; the plebeians striving con-

tinually to improve their political status, the patricians striving as pertinaciously to retain their privileges unimpaired. To the determined assaults of the plebeians, however, the patricians gradually yielded, and one office after another was opened to plebeian candidacy until, finally, in 367 B.C. the consulship was brought within the grasp of the humblest citizen in the state. From that time, so far as appearances and law went, the Roman Commonwealth was a democracy, though not of the modern pattern.

The Roman Empire.—The city of Rome was situated in the midst of a fertile valley, in a location commanding the surrounding country, and it was thus brought into conflict with adjoining peoples at the very beginning of its life. In the course of years, however, by an uninterrupted series of wars, the dominion of the city gradually extended, and first one section of Italy and then another was brought under its influence, until in 275 B.C. the Roman government extended over the whole of Italy south of the river Aesis.

Shortly afterwards, the Romans came into contact with the rapidly expanding Carthaginian power by reason of the attempts of the Carthaginians to obtain control of Sicily. The result of this contact was the First Punic War (264–224 B.C.), which ended in Roman victory and the establishment of the Roman power in Sicily, the first of the long roll of Roman provinces.

Later, the Romans obtained a foothold in Spain, and they were reaching out in still other directions when the Second Punic War (219–202 B.C.) stopped their progress for a time, and brought them almost to the verge of destruction. The end of this war, however, was the complete overthrow of the Carthaginian power, and Rome became the dominating force in the Mediterranean.

Having obtained by the victory over the Carthaginians the control of the West, her attention was now directed toward the East. Here country after country was gradually subdued until, at the time when Caesar was born, the Roman Empire extended from Spain to Asia Minor, and embraced the whole coast of the Mediterranean without a break.

The Character of the Romans.—The effect of this perpetually expanding power upon the moral and political life of the people of Rome was demoralizing. In the earliest period they had been a brave, patriotic and thrifty people, fighting among themselves to decide the questions of political supremacy, but sinking all their internal differences to present a united front to foreign attack. With increasing power and dominion came a vast increase in wealth and luxury. This was particularly the case after the Second Punic War, when the control of so many subject states brought into Rome a steady stream of wealth from the East and the South and, at the same time, flooded the city with the dregs of Eastern and Southern populations: idle, indolent and vicious.

The great losses in the Roman Commonwealth during the Second Punic War had been repaired by the admission to citizenship of slaves and freedmen, men of entirely different quality from that of the sturdy old Roman stock. Almost all the farmers of Italy had been driven from their homes by Hannibal, and vast districts had been left desolate. These were bought up by the rich nobles of Rome and farmed with great companies of slaves. Accordingly there ensued a steady decrease in the number of free landed proprietors, the class which formed the real strength of the nation.

The increase in wealth had caused a decay in the morals of the leading citizens, and political rivalry for the best

interest of the state had given way to political rivalry for personal aggrandizement. Roman nobles now strove with each other for themselves, and not for Rome, and, as a consequence, made use of their wealth to corrupt still further the commonwealth, to destroy the independent spirit of the old democracy and to make the voting population a tool in the hands of the highest bidder.

The Gracchi.—In the year 133 B.C. a public-spirited Roman tribune, Tiberius Gracchus, attempted to remedy some of these evils by the passage of an Agrarian law to distribute the public lands now occupied by the nobles into small farms for the poor people. Great dissension was the result, which finally culminated in a bloody riot in which Gracchus and three hundred of his followers were killed. Ten years later Gaius Gracchus, brother of Tiberius, tried a similar scheme; but he, too, was killed in 121 B.C. with many of his partisans. After that time the spirit of bitter partisanship and of rivalry between the nobility on the one hand and the democratic rabble on the other grew rapidly more and more intense, and it became evident to every discerning eye that it would not be long before the Roman Government would fall a prey to the strongest in arms. The first man to come to the front in this way was Gaius Marius.

Marius.—Marius was a man of humble birth who very early, as an officer in the army of Metellus, during the war in Africa against Jugurtha showed exceptional military talent. With this he combined such influence with the people that he was made consul in 106 B.C., and was sent to replace Metellus in the African war. He returned to Rome in triumph in 104 B.C. with Jugurtha as a captive. This success made him not merely general of the army, but leader of the popular party. Such was his strength that he was elected consul year after

year until 102 B.C., when he defeated the Teutones and Cimbri in two great battles—and after quelling the invaders returned to Rome supreme over all rivals.

Sulla.—At this time a young noble, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, who had done honorable service with the army of Marius in Africa, began to be looked upon as a rising man. But his bearing was modest and he continued to live in an unpretentious way, all the while rising in reputation and extending his influence. During the supremacy of Marius we hear but little of him, although from his aristocratic connections we can understand that he looked with no favorable eye upon the excessive power and demagogic actions of Marius in the government. As Marius was the recognized head of the popular party, so Sulla was coming to be regarded as the one about whom the nobles must rally in order to oppose Marius should occasion arise.

Life of Caesar.

Birth.—Gaius Iulius Caesar was born July 12, 100 B.C. His family, on his father's side, was of the noblest blood of the aristocrats, tracing its origin back to Aeneas, the leader of the Trojan exiles, and through him to Venus, goddess of Love and Beauty, and thus to Jupiter himself. His mother, Aurelia, was of a prominent plebeian family, while his father's sister Julia was the wife of the great democratic leader Marius.

Childhood and Youth.—Of his childhood we know almost nothing. But it is evident that the feelings of the household were on the side of the democratic party. We may therefore infer that from his earliest years he was accustomed to hear much discussion about the wrongs of the people and the tyranny of the aristocrats.

There is nothing recorded to indicate that Caesar in

his boyhood was especially precocious. He probably received the customary training of the sons of wealthy families of his time. He was taught Greek by Antonius Gnipho, an educated Gaul, but as to his further education we are ignorant. He is said to have been "a tall, handsome youth, with dark, piercing eyes, a large nose, full lips and, in general with a refined and intellectual bearing." He was almost foppish in the extreme care he bestowed upon his dress and personal appearance. Caesar's most intimate companions were the younger Marius, the adopted son of his uncle, and the two Ciceros, Marcus and Quintus, both of whom were to be closely connected with his public life.

At the age of fourteen he was made a priest of Jupiter by his uncle, and thus became a member of the Sacred College with a fixed income. Almost immediately afterwards Marius died and was succeeded as leader of his party by Cinna, an unscrupulous and cruel demagogue. At the age of sixteen Caesar lost his father by death. When only seventeen, he married Cinna's daughter, and by this marriage his alliance with the popular party was made complete.

Caesar and Sulla.—Meanwhile for several years Rome had been distracted by civil war. Marius had been banished, and then had been forcibly brought back by Cinna. After the restoration Marius and Cinna set on foot a bloody proscription in which they murdered all the most important of their political opponents. The aristocrats in despair turned to their general, Sulla, who was on his return to Rome, after having conducted military operations in the East with distinguished success. When he arrived in Italy he defeated the opposing forces of the popular party and entered Rome in triumph.

Sulla was immediately made dictator and a reign of terror for the democrats was then ushered in. Every leader of that

party was proscribed, and four thousand seven hundred were murdered. Caesar, now a youth of eighteen, strangely escaped proscription; but he did not pass unnoticed. The Dictator had his eye on this "youth in petticoats," and was interested in him. He made him the proposition that he desert his party and divorce his wife. Caesar, with the cool assurance for which he was ever noted, positively refused and defied the tyrant; and though his life was spared, his property was confiscated and his priesthood taken from him. All this was without effect, and now at last, being condemned to death, he deemed it prudent to go into hiding for a time. Once, indeed, he was discovered, but escaped by bribing the men sent to kill him. Powerful friends interceded for him, and at last the Dictator reluctantly yielded, saying, "Take him, since you will have it so—but I would have you know that the youth for whom you plead will sometime overthrow the aristocracy for whom you and I have fought so hard; in this young Caesar are many Mariuses."

Caesar enters the Army.—Caesar had now reached an age when it became necessary for him to choose a course in life. To the ambitious young Roman only two avenues to success were open — politics or a military career; for trade and commerce were in the hands of an inferior class. Literature was merely incidental to success in other fields. For success in politics oratory was an extremely useful accomplishment; and Caesar was a forceful though inexperienced speaker even at the age of twenty. But upon making his peace with Sulla, having not much confidence in the Dictator's sincerity, he thought it wiser to enter the army, and went to Asia. Here he distinguished himself at the siege of Mytilene by saving the life of a soldier, for which he was honored by the praetor with the gift of a civic crown. His military ser-

vice lasted until the death of Sulla, when he returned to Rome at the age of twenty-two and entered upon his political career.

Caesar enters Politics.— The usual method of acquiring political prominence was to prosecute some provincial officer. Caesar brought a charge of extortion against Dolabella, who had been governor of Macedonia. In this trial Caesar, who had little experience in public speaking, was opposed by some of the most famous advocates of the day. The result was a failure of the prosecution, and Caesar discovered that he needed special training if he was to win against experienced pleaders. Furthermore, the trial had aroused against him much enmity, and he deemed it best to leave Rome for a time. So he went to Rhodes to study oratory under the famous rhetorician, Apollonius Molo. On his way he was captured by pirates, who took him to an island and held him for a large ransom. The pirates treated him well, and he seems to have enjoyed his captivity. He told them, however, he would shortly return and hang them all, a threat which they seem to have made light of; for when the ransom was paid he was immediately set free. He at once proceeded to carry out his threat, and, gathering some vessels, returned to the island and captured the whole crew while they were dividing the money. They were all taken to Pergamus and put to death. He then proceeded to Rhodes, where he devoted two years to hard study. Upon the conclusion of his studies he returned to Rome to watch the course of events, ready at any time to take a hand in public affairs. The aristocrats were still in power, but trouble was brewing for that party on every hand. Caesar had done enough to render him a conspicuous leader of the popular party. But the time for action was not yet come. As a reward for his services in Asia he was chosen military tribune. He had im-

proved so much in oratorical ability that he was recognized as a powerful advocate.

His "Cursus Honorum."—In 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two, he was chosen *quaestor*, and thus obtained a seat in the Senate. This was the first step in the so-called *cursus honorum*, which led through successive offices to the consulship. In B.C. 65 he was chosen *aedile*. Among other duties the aediles had charge of the public games and exhibitions. They were expected to beautify the city and entertain the people with elaborate shows. And all this at their own expense. Caesar was well to do, but he went far beyond his means in presenting magnificent spectacles and erecting costly columns. His gladiatorial contests exceeded anything before known. Wild beasts were brought into the arena in cages of burnished silver. Costly porticos were added to temples and public buildings, and splendid statues were made to adorn the public places of the city. All this plunged Caesar into debt to the amount of a million and a half of dollars. A man who, at the age of thirty-two, could contract debts to such an enormous amount is worthy of regard for his audacity if for no other reason. By this means Caesar had won the favor of the multitude, and he was now the undisputed leader of the popular party.

He next became a candidate for the office of *Pontifex Maximus*, or head of the state religious order. He had been made a priest as early as his fourteenth year, as we have seen above, and it was perhaps natural that he should aspire to be head of the Church. It is a significant commentary upon the religious state of the times that a man who had no respect whatever for the gods of his country or for any god but Fortune, should thus be considered eligible for the highest position in the priesthood. The place was the most conspicuous in the

state, and its occupant held office for life. Caesar conducted his campaign for the office with his usual vigor. He borrowed still larger sums of money and spent them with a lavish hand. But the danger of the canvass must have been serious, for it is said that, as he left his mother on the morning of the election, he kissed her and remarked that he would return as Pontifex Maximus or never return at all. He was chosen by an overwhelming vote.

Soon after his election to the pontificate Caesar was chosen *praetor*, in 63 B.C. This was the time of Catiline's conspiracy, and party spirit ran high. Many have thought that Caesar knew more of the inside workings of that conspiracy than he ever told. Possibly this was true; but he was too shrewd a politician and too sure of his position of leadership to cast in his lot with a lawless faction. It is likely that his plans for his own future movements in public life were fairly well developed in his own mind by this time, and he could see nothing to be gained by an alliance with a party which did not include the real leaders of the state. During his term in the praetorship he conducted himself in a manner to strengthen his position in his party, while he looked to yet greater power in the future.

After this praetorship Caesar was sent to Spain as *propraetor*. His term there was eminently successful and very profitable to himself. For he brought back money enough to pay all his debts and have something for the rainy days to come. He had also turned large sums into the public treasury. Furthermore, he had settled all troubles in Spain. His popularity was immense, and it was a foregone conclusion that he would win the consulship in 60 B.C. when by age he would be eligible.

Pompey and Crassus.—While Caesar had been advancing

with rapid strides toward the position of popular idol, Pompey, who had succeeded Sulla as the general of the aristocrats, had been winning great fame in war until he was recognized as the first soldier of the age. He was, however, no politician, and lacked ability as an orator. The head of the financial world, and the wealthiest citizen, was Publius Crassus. Except Cicero these two were, perhaps, the most conspicuous members of the aristocratic party. It was at this time that Cicero wrote: "We have not a statesman or the shadow of one. My friend Pompey, who might have done something, sits silent admiring his fine clothes. Crassus will say nothing to make himself unpopular, and the rest are such idiots as to hope that though the constitution fall they will save their own fish-ponds."

The First Triumvirate.—Caesar saw his opportunity and took advantage of it. He formed a coalition with Pompey and Crassus for the division among themselves of the honors of the state. This is known in history as the First Triumvirate. In accordance with this agreement Caesar was chosen consul, the first of his party for a generation. He proposed many reforms, and most of them were adopted against the protest of the senatorial party. It was a stormy year politically, but it served admirably to emphasize Caesar's superiority to all the men of his time. By the terms of his agreement with Pompey and Crassus, Gaul was to be entrusted to him as proconsul for five years.

This brings us to the year 58 B.C., and the story of the next seven years is told by Caesar himself in the Commentaries. In 56 B.C. a meeting of the triumvirs was held and it was agreed that Caesar's term should be extended for five years more, at the end of which time he should be eligible for a second election to the consulship, thus giving ample time to complete the

conquest of Gaul before his return to Rome. In the year 53, however, the death of Crassus broke up the coalition, and Pompey was coaxed or flattered until he, too, withdrew his support from Caesar, and espoused the cause of the Senate. The Civil War followed. In the latter part of 50 B.C. Caesar crossed the Rubicon with his army. His success was instantaneous, though the war continued in various quarters until 45 B.C., when he returned to Rome the undisputed master of the Roman world. His great rival, Pompey, defeated at Pharsalia in Thessaly in 48 B.C., had fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered.

Death.—Caesar used his supreme power in a way very different from his predecessors Marius and Sulla. He at once set about repairing so far as he could the ravages of the civil wars, by making several laws which were designed to benefit the people. He reformed the Calendar, instituting the system which, with a slight modification, we still use. He also formed other great projects for the public welfare which he was destined not to carry out. In particular, he had shown marked clemency to his political opponents; but for this he was ill repaid. A conspiracy to take his life was formed by a number of leading citizens, some of whom were his intimate friends. On the "Ides of March" (March 15), 44 B.C., he was attacked in the senate-house and fell pierced with twenty-three wounds at the foot of the statue of his great rival Pompey.

Caesar as a Man.

In person Caesar was tall and handsome—such a man as one would select out of a crowd as a born leader of men. His health was perfect, kept so by active physical exercise and a careful attention to hygienic laws as they were

then understood. He was a fearless horseman, and is said to have ridden in Gaul a remarkable horse, trained by himself, which would allow no one else to mount him.

As a friend he was steadfast to the end; as a foe, generous and ready to forgive. One thing, however, he could never overlook. That was treachery. This is proved by his treatment of certain persons and peoples in Gaul, who tried to overreach him by violating promises or treaties.

Much has been written of his vices. He has been painted as a monster of lust and rapacity. There is no evidence, however, that he was worse than others of his class and time. That he was conspicuously better in morals is not claimed. Nevertheless, in all his dissipations, he did not for a moment lose sight of the main purpose of his life, which was to reach the highest pinnacle of personal greatness, and raise his country to a position of unquestioned supremacy throughout the known world. One of the best evidences of the nobility of his character is found in his great love for his mother and his devotion to her as long as she lived.

Caesar as a Soldier.

Caesar's military skill and success place him among the first half-dozen captains of the world. Without special training and with comparatively little previous experience, he raised and drilled an army that was simply invincible, whether pitted against the immensely more numerous hordes of the Gauls and Germans or the veteran legions of Pompey. "The conquest of Gaul," says Froude, "was effected by a force numerically insignificant, which was worked with the precision of a machine. The variety of uses to which it was capable of being turned implied, in the first place, extraordinary forethought in the selection of materials. Men whose nominal

duty was merely to fight were engineers, architects, mechanics of the highest order. In a few hours they could extemporize an impregnable fortress on an open hillside. They bridged the Rhine in a week. They built a fleet in a month. The legions at Alesia held twice their number pinned within their works, while they kept at bay the whole force of insurgent Gaul, entirely by scientific superiority. The machine, which was thus perfect, was composed of human beings who required supplies of tools and arms and clothes and food and shelter, and for all these it depended on the forethought of its commander." These soldiers loved their great leader almost to idolatry, and believed in him with a confidence that nothing could shake. The long march, the hard labor of fortifying the camp, the hardships of the siege, all were borne cheerfully for the general's sake.

Caesar's courage and self-confidence were unbounded. He never sent a soldier where he would not go himself, and he never faltered in his belief that victory would perch on his banner. Quick to see what was needed in any emergency and swift to move, he never lost a point of advantage or failed to make the most of an enemy's mistake. With entire disregard of danger he was always in the thickest of the fight. Personally known to every soldier and knowing most of them by name, he thus brought home to each the responsibility resting upon him. Apparently he was rash at times; yet his rashness had method in it and success gave it another name. In several instances in Gaul he seems to have been unnecessarily cruel in his treatment of his surrendered foes. We must remember, however, that he was dealing with unscrupulous barbarians, ready to rise against him at any time. Furthermore, it was one of Caesar's leading characteristics to go by the shortest way to his objective point. Gaul was to be

subdued and that thoroughly. Hence it was necessary to remove ruthlessly all obstacles to that end.

Caesar as a Statesman.

After his final victory over the Senate, Caesar had very little time to show his strength as a constructive statesman. There is, however, no doubt of his ability in this direction. During his consulship, in the year 59 B.C., he had proposed and carried extensive reforms in many directions. The "Leges Juliae" were enacted, a code of laws which is celebrated even to this day.

The government of the aristocracy was tyrannical and corrupt in the extreme. Bribery of juries was universal, and the administration of justice was a mockery and a stench in the nostrils of all decent men. Elections were a farce, and the people were the legitimate prey of unscrupulous and greedy politicians. These laws of Caesar's were intended to restrain the power of the Senate and enlarge and increase the rights and powers of the people.

Upon his return to Rome as dictator Caesar had the opportunity to fashion anew the government according to his long-cherished ideas. His plans were comprehensive and far-reaching. But the consummation was not to be his. Death claimed him, and his successor took up the unfinished task.

In all his projects Caesar undoubtedly aimed at making Rome indeed imperial. With unerring judgment he discovered the need for reform in all departments of government, and he had implicit confidence in his own ability to bring that reform to pass. His ability as an orator was conspicuous, and when he spoke in the Senate or elsewhere men listened as to no one else excepting Cicero. One prime element in his success as a statesman, as well as in war, was his perfect knowledge of men. He selected his agents with care, and they were in-

variably the fittest for the purpose. Liberty and Justice were his watch-words; freedom and equal rights for all, his unswerving present aim.

Caesar as an Author.

Caesar's literary efforts covered a wide range, embracing almost every known topic. He wrote a treatise on grammar, poems, tragedies, satirical essays, a work on augury and an extended history of his own campaigns. With the exception of the last his writings have practically all disappeared.

Caesar's most pronounced personal characteristic was simplicity. This quality is prominent in his writings. He tells his story in the plainest fashion, without attempting adornment or indulging in imagery. The great events of his years in Gaul, involving the conquering of an empire so completely that it never gave Rome further trouble, are treated as plain facts. Descriptions of the country are complete; the character and customs of the people are fully set forth; it is true anecdotes of individuals are introduced, but they are all significant; nothing essential is suppressed; nothing superfluous is stated.

Without the slightest attempt to magnify his own deeds, he appears everywhere as the central figure, the man of action, doing things for the sake of results, rather than for the purpose of making a name for himself.

Such, then, was Caius Julius Caesar. "The greatest name in history," says Merivale; the peerless soldier, the man of letters, the forceful, convincing orator, the foremost statesman of his day, the liberator of his country from the tyrannical grasp of a soulless aristocracy, the unyielding foe of shams and cant. To quote again: "He was great in everything he undertook; as a captain, a statesman, a lawgiver, a jurist, an orator, a poet, an historian, a grammarian, a mathematician and an architect."

THE ARMY OF CAESAR.

Caesar's army consisted of legionary infantry, auxiliary infantry and cavalry. The cavalry was made up of foreigners —Germans, Gauls and Spaniards—who were disbanded at the end of each campaign. They were used to begin an attack and for pursuit of a beaten enemy, as well as for foraging. The auxiliary infantry were furnished by allied states, and served for a show of strength rather than for serious work in battle. There was a small corps of engineers (*fabri*), but the mechanical work was done as a rule by the soldiers themselves.

In the earlier period the legion was drawn up in three lines, of which the men in the first line were called *hastati*, those in the second line *principes*, those in the the third line *triarii* or *pilani*. In Caesar's time the arrangement was different, but the same names were retained, being applied to the men of the third, second and first maniples of each cohort.

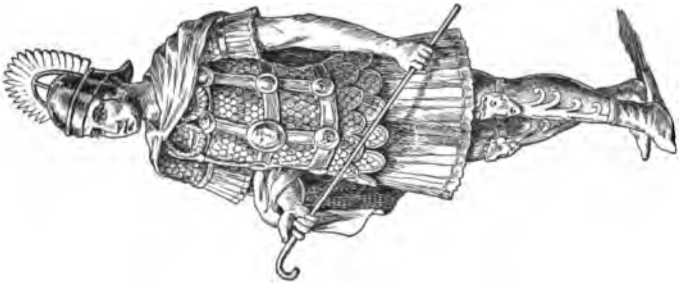
The main strength of the army lay in the regulars composing the legions.

Theoretically the legion may have consisted of 6,000 men. It is likely, however, that Caesar's legions averaged not more than 3,600 each at the time of their greatest fulness.

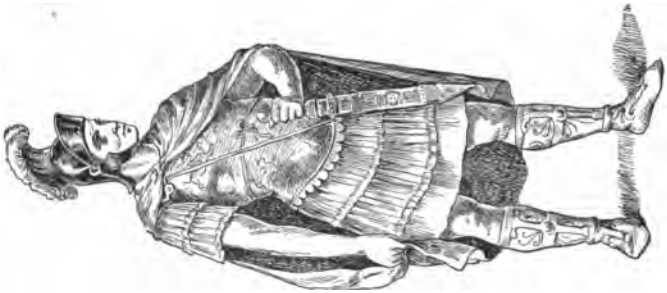
The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, each maniple again into two centuries. Assuming 3,600 as the strength of the legion we have:

10 cohorts	each	having	360	men
30 maniples	"	"	120	"
60 centuries	"	"	60	"

Thus the maniple corresponded very nearly to a *company* in



CENTURIO.



LEGATUS.



IMPERATOR.

our army; the century, to a *platoon*. Beyond this the divisions hardly find their counterpart in modern armies, although the legion differed but little from a *brigade*.

Officers.

The command of the legion was originally in the hands of the military tribunes, six in number, who acted in pairs and commanded in turn, each pair for a period of two months. As these officers were usually chosen for political reasons and were not necessarily trained soldiers, this method of commanding the legion fell into disuse under Caesar. Leaving the tribunes as nominal commanders, he placed a *legatus* in charge of each legion as the real commander in time of battle.

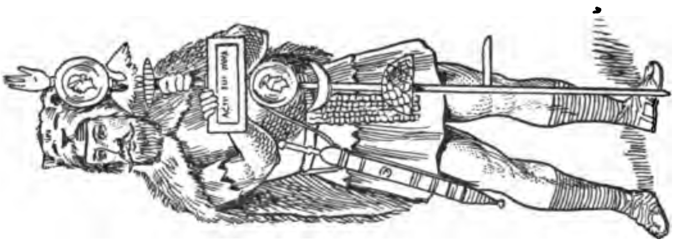
The legati were men of senatorial rank, and were the lieutenants of the commander-in-chief (*imperator*). They had no independent power, but derived all authority from their chief. Together with the quaestors they composed the staff of the general.

The *quaestors* had charge of the supplies for the army; paid the troops; furnished them with clothing, arms and equipments, food and shelter.

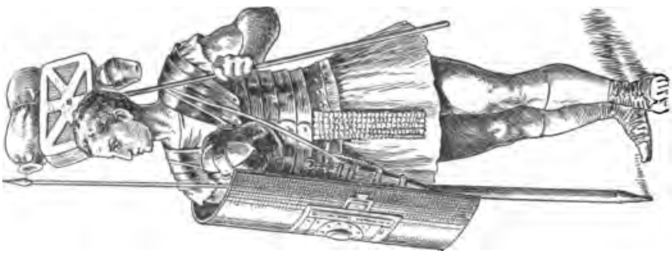
The *centurions* commanded the sub-divisions of the legion. Of these there were 60 in each legion, each maniple having two, a senior and a junior. The senior was in command of the whole maniple with the junior as his lieutenant. Of the six centurions in a cohort, the senior of the first maniple, called *pilus prior*, commanded the cohort, having the other five as lieutenants. Thus the senior centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, called *primus pilus prior* or *primipilus*, was the senior officer of the whole legion, and accordingly often, if not generally, led the legion.



BUCINATOR.



SIGNIFER.



MILES IMPEDITUS.

The centurions were taken from the ranks of the legionaries and corresponded closely to the officers of our army. The method of their classification is not known; but it is certain that they were classified and graded in ranks.

Those of the first rank (*primorum ordinum*) were summoned in councils with the *legati* and *tribunes*.

Another officer was known as *praefectus*, probably the Roman commander of the cavalry and of the auxiliary infantry.

The Legionary Soldier.

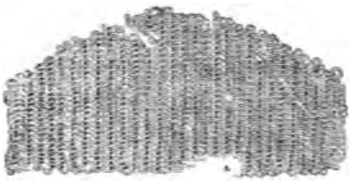
Originally only Roman citizens were enrolled in the legions, but, owing to the changes in the character of the Roman government, from the time of Marius the service had been open to almost any one.

Caesar's legionaries were professional soldiers. Their term of service was twenty years, at the end of which they were usually rewarded with bounties of money or land. They received 225 *denarii*, or about $45.00 a year as pay. The value of food, clothing and equipments furnished by the state was deducted from this sum. Each soldier was allowed 4 *modii*, or about one bushel of wheat a month, at a cost of about $5.75 a year. The cost of clothing is not known.

The age for enlistment of the legionary was probably as a minimum seventeen years, and as a maximum forty-six years. There was undoubtedly a rule as to size; but big men were not required. Indeed, the soldiers of Caesar's army have always been considered as undersized when compared with the German giants. Occasionally barbarians were enrolled in the legions; but in the main the legionaries were Roman citizens hailing from Northern Italy, which was entirely Romanized and loyal to the government of that country.

Clothing.

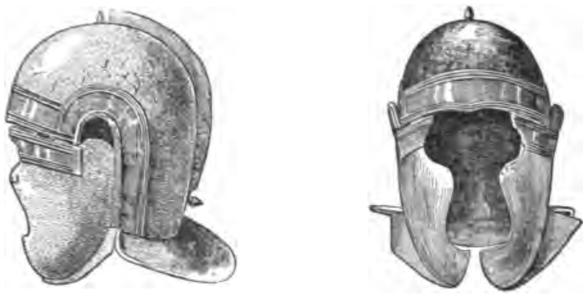
The clothing consisted of a sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*) worn next the skin, and over this a coat of leather with metallic bands across the breast, back and shoulders (*lorica*). The officers wore a kind of chain mail (*lorica hamata*). Over all in cold weather was worn the military blanket (*sagum*). On the feet were worn sandals (*calcei*) strapped to the feet and ankles.



CHAIN MAIL.

Armor.

The defensive armor consisted of the helmet and the shield. The helmet was made from iron (*cassis*) or leather strengthened with metal (*galea*). It had a crest and a plume, and was usually carried by the soldier, when on the march, hanging in front of the shoulder.



GALEAE.

The shield (*scutum*) was of wood covered with leather. Its length was four feet and width two feet. It was curved to fit the body, and was carried on the left arm. The badge of the

cohort was painted on the outside, and the name of the owner on the inside. It had a metallic knob in the center called *umbo.* A covering was drawn over it when not in use, and one of the first preparations for battle was the removal of this covering, as in Book II., Chapter 21.

The *clipeus,* or Greek shield, was circular originally and large enough to cover three-quarters of the person. In later times it was smaller, covering the warrior from the neck to



SCUTUM.



CLIPEUS.

the knees. It was also made oval in shape. This kind of shield was not used in the time of Caesar, although the auxiliaries carried a shield (*parma*) resembling the *clipeus.*

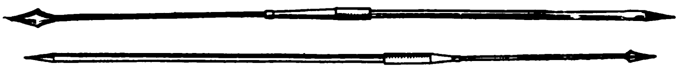
Shields were adorned in various ways, by iron rims or by such devices as thunderbolts, wreaths, etc.



GLADIUS.

The offensive weapons were the short or Spanish sword (*gladius*) and a heavy javelin (*pilum*). The sword was two feet long in the blade, probably about four inches in width, two-edged and pointed. It was carried by a belt (*balteus*)

passing over the left shoulder, suspending the sword on the right side. There is no definite knowledge as to the javelin used in Caesar's time. It is likely that it consisted of a long iron point inserted in a shaft of wood. The whole length was from six to seven feet and the weight at least ten pounds.



PILA.

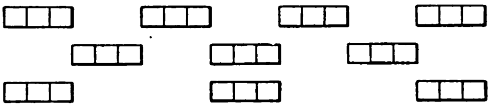
It could be thrown perhaps twenty or thirty yards, according to the weight of the soldier and the nature of the ground. The point was of soft iron, easily bent and thus rendered unfit to be thrown back when once hurled. In Book I., Chapter 25, the confusion of the Gauls was in great part due to the bending of the *pila* after they had pierced their shields.

Some have supposed that the legionary carried a light javelin in addition to the heavy *pilum*. Caesar says nothing of this weapon, and there is no good reason to suppose that it was used in his time. The weapons used by Roman soldiers were in a state of evolution at all times, as is the case with modern weapons. It is a long stride from the "old queen's arm," the flint-lock musket of the Revolution, to the Krag-Jörgensen repeating rifle of the United States army of to-day. This change came about only by gradual development through many intermediate steps. So the light and graceful steel javelin of later Roman times was the result of many improvements upon the weapon even of Caesar's age.

After the first volley of javelins, the sword came into play. Thus it was the most effective and the most in use of offensive arms. It was a terrible implement in the hands of skilled fighters. Being pointed, as well as sharpened on both sides, it was equally effective for thrusting and cutting. The former, however, was its customary use.

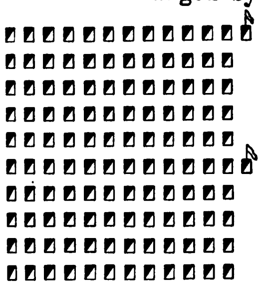
Tactics of the Legion.

In all arrangements for battle the tactical unit of the legion was the cohort. For offence the legion was arrayed either in two lines (*acies duplex*) or in three lines (*acies triplex*).



ACIES TRIPLEX.

When in two lines there were five cohorts in each line. When in three lines, four cohorts were in the first, and three in each of the others. Between the cohorts of the first line were spaces of about 120 feet, behind which at a distance of 120 feet stood the cohorts of the second line. The three cohorts of the third line were placed at the same distance to the rear of the second line. Each cohort was arranged by maniples, each maniple having twelve men in front, forming a *rank*, and ten men in depth forming a *file*. Allowing three feet of space for each man in rank and four feet on the right for the commanding officer, the front of each cohort would be 120 feet, and the front of the legion 840 feet. Supposing four feet to have been the distance allowed to each man in the file, we get a depth for the maniple of forty feet, and each cohort a depth of 120 feet. Thus the legion would have a depth of 600 feet.



MANIPLE.

The Attack.

Whenever possible the Roman battle line was formed on a hillside with the enemy in the plain at the foot.

In beginning the attack, the troops marched slowly forward for a time, then, at the proper time, broke into a run, the two front ranks carrying their javelins poised ready for hurling. When the right distance was reached, they hurled the javelins, often without stopping. The ranks whose javelins had been thrown then rushed on to the conflict with swords at close quarters, without giving the enemy time to recover from the confusion caused by the volley of javelins. The next three ranks hurled their javelins over the heads of the first two and in their turn advanced to fight with the sword. The five rear ranks waited in reserve until their services were needed to take the places of the fallen or to increase the numbers of the attacking troops. The second line advanced and waited two or three hundred feet behind the first. When the first had become weakened by losses, this line perhaps entered the fight in the same way. It is hardly to be supposed that the remnants of the first line were withdrawn however; but they probably melted into the oncoming second line. The third line was held in reserve, and often sent to the flanks when there was danger of the front lines being out-flanked.

In many cases the onset of the first line was sufficient to put the enemy to flight, especially if they were barbarians. For this reason the first line was usually the strongest and made up of the most experienced soldiers.

When the enemy had been beaten and turned to flee, as usually happened in Caesar's battles, the cavalry was sent in pursuit to complete the work of destruction.

The cavalry was also used to guard the flanks against attack, or to attack the enemy's flank. It was therefore usually located on the extreme edge of the wings. But an experienced general would also use it in other ways, and Caesar sometimes placed it in the rear, sometimes after the first line.

On the March.

The usual order of the march was in three divisions. In the van (*primum agmen*) came the cavalry and the light-armed troops; next the main body; and lastly the rear-guard (*novissimum agmen*).

The main body marched in single column, the number of ranks depending upon the width of the road, each legion accompanied by its own baggage-train.

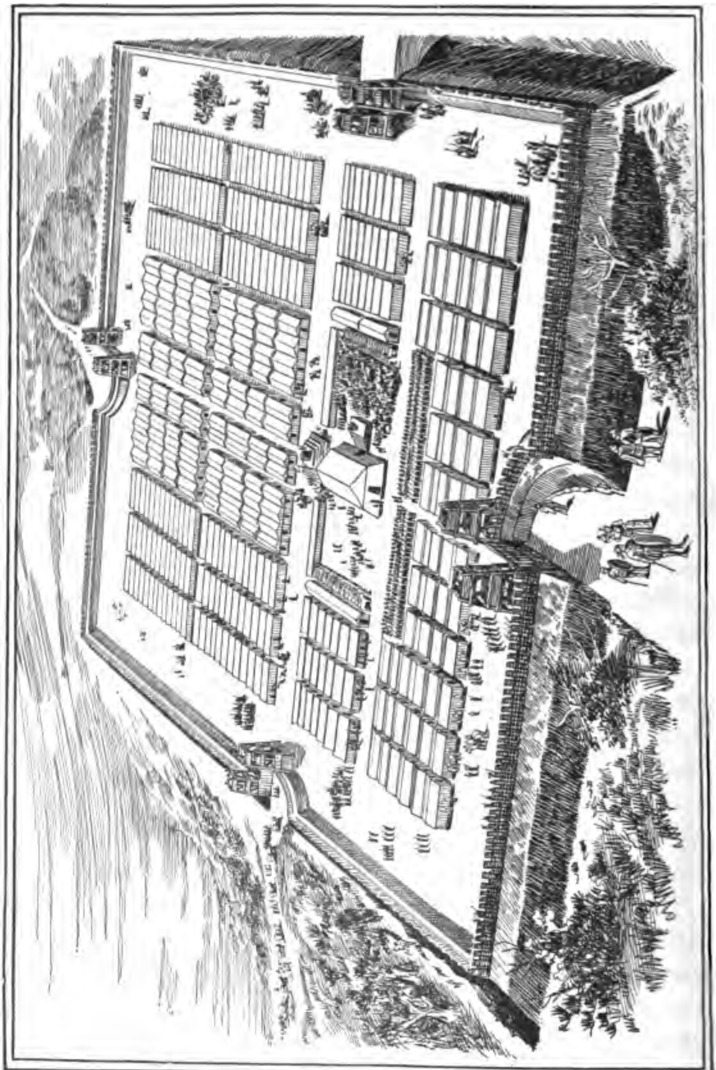
At times, when approaching the enemy, the baggage of the whole army was massed together, with most of the legions in advance of the baggage-train.

Occasionally, when an attack was expected, the army advanced for a short distance in line of battle. This could of course not last long, although on two occasions we are told that the legions marched thus for three hours, covering about eight miles.

The rear-guard was made up of recruits, camp-followers, and the rabble that usually followed an army.

The legionary was forced to carry a burden of fifty pounds or more on the march. This was made up of his supply of food, cooking utensils, extra clothing, arms, helmet and shield. All that could be so placed was made into a bundle and carried on a stick over the shoulder, the rest was disposed on the person in the most convenient way. See the illustration on page xxvi.

The average distance covered in a day's march was about fifteen miles. But when the march was over, the soldiers' day's work was by no means done. A camp must be built and fortified—no small undertaking, when we consider the labor involved. There were a few engineers (*fabri*) with the army, but the working man was the legionary soldier.

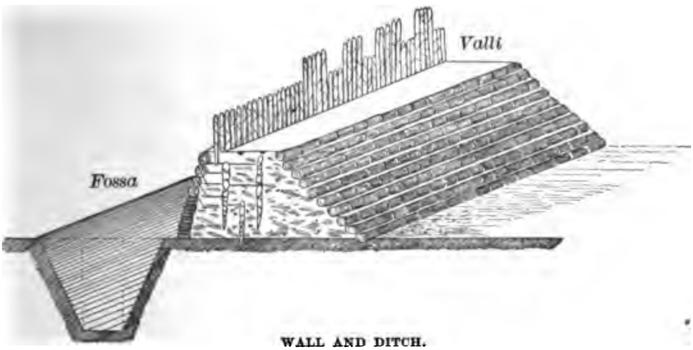


CASTRA ROMANA

The Camp.

The ideal site for a camp was on the slope of a hill with the rear of the camp at the top. The absolutely indispensable natural features were wood and water. Although we have no definite knowledge about Caesar's camps, we may assume that they differed in no great degree from the Roman camps of other times.

They were rectangular in shape, varying in size according



WALL AND DITCH.

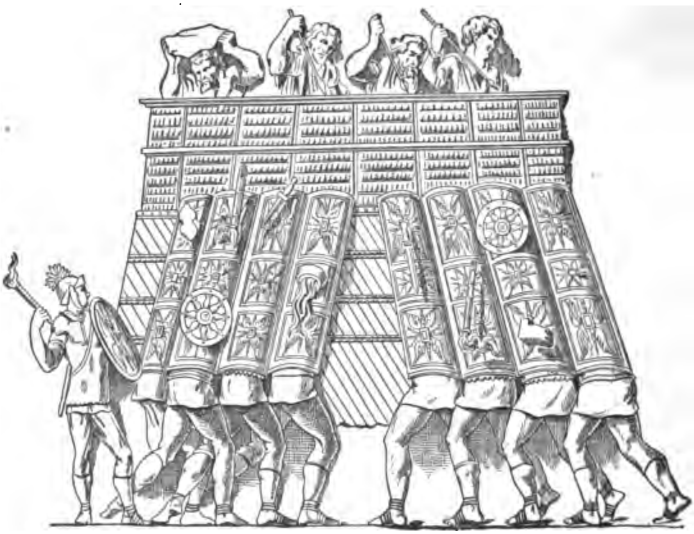
to the number of troops to be accommodated, having a width in front equal to two-thirds of their depth.

The fortification of the camp consisted of a surrounding wall (*vallum*) and a ditch (*fossa*). The ditch was nine feet wide and seven feet deep. The earth from this was thrown up to form the wall, which was made six feet high and six feet wide on the top. Sometimes stakes (*valli*) were set on the outer edge of the wall to make it stronger. As the wall was intended for fighting ground, it had some sort of steps on the inside so as to render it easy for the defenders to reach the top.

Camps built for a longer stay than a single night, or when an attack was expected, had breastworks made of trees on the top of the wall and wooden towers at intervals along the wall. Wider and deeper ditches and higher walls were often built in order to make a camp especially strong. It is estimated that from four to five hours was consumed each day in fortifying the camp.

Operations against Fortified Places.

In subduing a fortified camp or town, the Romans sometimes attacked by assault and sometimes by a siege. The method depended upon the strength of the town's defence. These operations brought into use various weapons not yet mentioned. For the assault there were the scaling ladders, the battering-ram and movable huts or sheds (*vineae*) used to

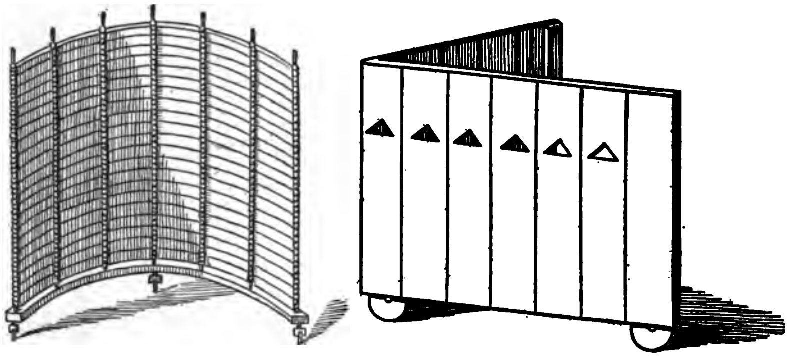


TESTUDO.

cover the assaulting force and thus protect them from weapons thrown from the walls by the besieged.

The *testudo* was usually a movable shed, from the front of which projected the battering-ram (*aries*), worked by the men beneath the roof from which it was suspended.

Sometimes, however, the word was applied to a kind of shed formed by the shields of the soldiers who were attacking a wall, as in the illustration. See Book II, Chapter 6.



PLUTEI.

Plutei were large movable, three-wheeled shields of wicker-work, covered with hides to turn the missiles of the besieged.

The battering-ram was a long, heavy piece of timber whose offensive end was capped with metal sometimes having the shape of a ram's head. Hence the name. With men enough behind it, it was effective against walls of stone and timber. Compared with shots from a modern cannon, however, it was a child's toy.

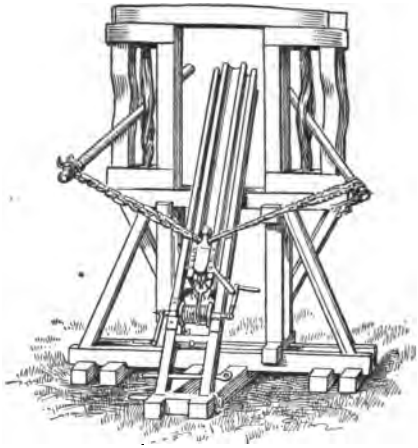
There was also a device called *falx muralis* or wall hook, consisting of a long beam suspended from upright supports with a single or double hook of metal at the end. This was used to pull stones from the top of a wall.

Another piece of apparatus was the *musculus*, a low, heavily built shed with a sloping roof. This was used to protect men at work filling up ditches or preparing to build the *agger;* sometimes also to cover the ram.

All the foregoing were used by light-armed troops or laborers preparing the way for the advance of the legionaries to the assault. When the preparations were completed and the walls cleared of defenders by the bowmen and slingers, the heavy-



CATAPULT.



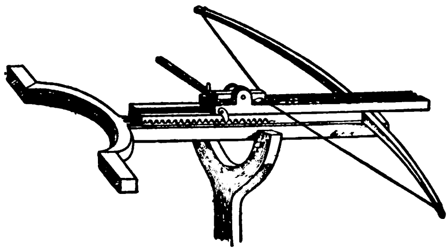
BALLISTA.

armed troops rushed forward, scaled the walls, or forced a gate, and the assault was brought to a finish.

The siege was a more complicated method of attack, and involved a vast amount of labor in preparation, and brought into use another branch of the army and a different class of weapons (*tormenta*) called by courtesy artillery.

These engines were the *catapult*, *ballista* and *scorpio*. The two former were the heavy artillery; the catapult shooting large arrows, the ballista hurling stones or heavy blocks

of wood. The propelling force was obtained by an ingenious arrangement of twisted ropes, combined with a bow-spring. The catapult required at least two men to manage it, while the ballista needed six or more. The range of each machine was not more than 1200 feet. The *scorpio* was a small catapult capable of being handled by one man. It consisted of a steel bow fastened to a framework, and shot arrows of steel or iron, which were perhaps eighteen inches long, to a distance not greater than 400 feet. In all cases a windlass was used to load the machine and set it for action. The men



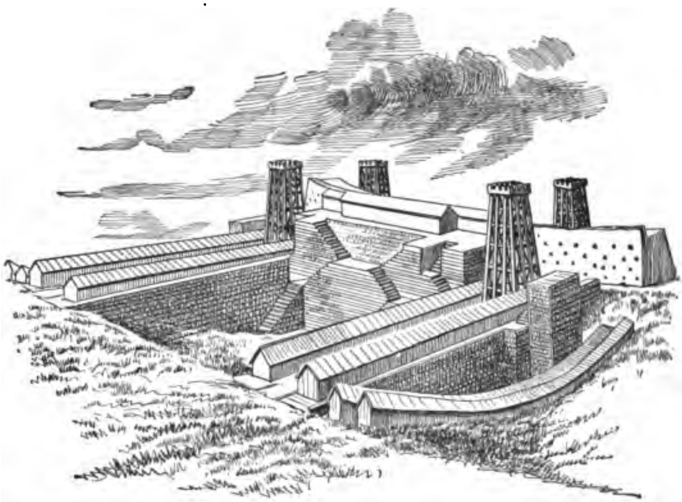
SCORPIO.

in charge of these engines constituted the artillery branch of the army. They may have been a section of the *fabri*, but we have no details of their organization.

The first work to be constructed for attack upon a stronghold was the *agger*, a mound of earth or timber or both, made as high as the walls of the town. The workmen were protected by the *plutei*, and those who brought the material passed through long galleries of *vineae*. The light-armed slingers and bowmen, placed in moving towers or behind other *plutei* for their protection, kept the walls of the town free from men. Bodies of heavy-armed troops also were held in reserve. When the *agger* was completed to a sufficient height, the troops of the besiegers took their place upon it and the fight-

ing began in earnest. Movable towers were often placed on the *agger* as a means of protecting the fighting men.

The illustration shows a restoration of the siege works before Avaricum, a town of the Bituriges, besieged by Caesar in the war against Vercingetorix, as narrated in Book VII, Chapters 14–



SIEGE WORKS BEFORE AVARICUM.

31. Close to the walls rises the Roman *agger*, with steps on the outside leading up to the top and flanked at each end with a high tower. In this siege the *agger* was eighty feet in height and was probably at least fifty feet broad at the top, so as to give room for a single maniple to form. The long lines of covered *vineae* leading across the low ground show the means by which the soldiers could reach their work without exposure. In this case preparations were being made for an assault, because the situation was such that the town could not be reduced by an enforced famine.

Ships of War.

In most of his campaigns in Gaul Caesar had no use for ships. When needed, however, they were built and equipped according to the Roman method. They carried a single sail, but were fitted with oars as their chief motive power. Some had as many as five tiers of rowers. They were fitted with

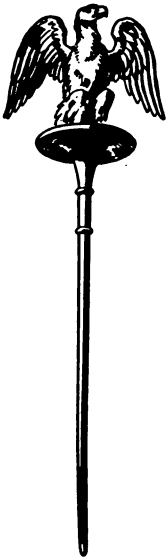


WAR GALLEY.

sharp beaks (*rostrum*) at the prow for the purpose of ramming an enemy's ship. They sometimes carried a tower on deck for the protection of the fighting men. This was the case particularly when a low ship was attacking a high one, or when the object was to kill the opposing sailors by a shower of missiles. In battle a favorite manœuvre was to grapple the enemy's ship, so that the Roman heavy-armed soldiers could board it and settle the conflict by a hand-to-hand fight.

The illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall-painting of a naumachia, and represents a war galley. If this vessel had had a sail, it would have been near the stern.

Standards and Musical Instruments.



AQUILA.

The standard of the legion was the eagle (*aquila*), made of metal. This was in the care of the first cohort, and carried by a special officer (*aquilifer*).

Each cohort had its own standard-bearer (*signifer*) and its own emblem (*signum*). This was sometimes a figure of an animal on a staff.

The banner of the cavalry and light-armed troops (*vexillum*) was of cloth attached to a horizontal bar. See Commentary, page 66.

The commander-in-chief had his flag, as in modern armies. This was of white cloth with his name in red letters.



SIGNUM.

The musical instruments were the *tuba* (see Commentary, page 67), the *bucina* (see the *bucinator*, Introduction, page xxvi), the *lituus* and the *cornu*.



LITUUS.

Gaul and Its People.

The Great West, which Caesar went out to conquer in 58 B.C., may be roughly located as lying between the Pyrenees and the Rhine, the Mediterranean and the Atlantic. Cisalpine Gaul was thoroughly Romanized and entirely peaceful. On the southeast along the shore of the Mediterranean was the Roman province (Provincia) which had been won sixty years before Caesar's time. It was now all Roman and the centre of Transalpine Roman activity. The influence of the civilized life of the province was felt powerfully by the neighboring tribes; but this did not serve to extend at all the political control of the Romans.

The Gaul that was still unsubdued was divided, as we learn from the first chapter of the *Bellum Gallicum,* into three parts — the Celtic, the Aquitanian and the Belgic. Aquitania was located in the southwest, between the Garumna and the Pyrenees. This was small in area and, in the main, gave Caesar very little trouble. The country of the Belgians was bounded by the Sequana, the Matrona and the Rhine. Celtic Gaul, the great central portion, had for its boundaries the Sequana, the Matrona and the Garumna. This great country, with its mighty and lesser mountains, its noble rivers, its vast forests and fertile valleys, was the home of a large and fairly prosperous population. It has been estimated that the average number of inhabitants to the square mile was at least fifty.

Although Caesar mentions some tribes that subsisted on fish and the eggs of birds, it is evident that the great mass of the Gauls had advanced in civilization to a point far beyond the savage state. They were largely engaged in

agriculture and the raising of cattle. They had plenty of roads and bridges over the streams. Navigable rivers and the neighboring seas were alive with their ships carrying on the commerce of the times among the various tribes and between Gaul and Britain. Manufacturing seems not to have been much developed except in the working of metals. Copper implements and gold and copper coins, showing considerable skill, have been found in their tombs.

It was the custom of all the Gauls to settle in communities, or cantons. These were villages, of a greater or less size, having no walls. There were, however, many towns protected by strong walls of wood and stone. Helvetia alone had twelve walled towns and four hundred cantons. These strongholds were intended for the protection of all the people in time of war. Tribes having none of these sought the forests and swamps in time of danger.

The political conditions were the result of the habit of settling in communities or clans. The clans extended and the members multiplied; but the prince and the council of elders still made up the government. As the communities became larger, jealousies among the chiefs arose. The supporters of each rallied round their favorite, and the government of the canton came to be the rule of a faction. Thus the cantons were weakened and came to be the prey of more powerful communities or were united with them into leagues, such as the Belgian confederacy, against which Caesar had to contend. Inter-tribal conflicts were frequent, and practically all national feeling was lacking. They did meet at times in national assemblies, but the results were seldom beneficial to the people at large.

As warriors the Gauls were brave but untrained. Being extremely volatile by nature, they were roused to the highest

pitch of enthusiasm by slight successes or completely disheartened by slight reverses. Hence a single defeat was often sufficient to subdue a whole tribe. They were strong in cavalry, but had little skill or science as an infantry force. They fought in solid phalanx, an arrangement so unwieldy that they fell an easy prey to Caesar's well-trained legions. Their arms consisted of slings, bows and arrows, and spears of various kinds, and long swords of soft iron. High-crested helmets and shields formed their defensive armor.

We know little of the customs of the Gauls as regards dress. They wore trousers, however—an extremely barbaric habit from the Roman point of view.

Religion.

The great religious system of Gaul was Druidism. This seems indeed to have been the only unifying force in the land. The Druids, or priests, were a class set apart and highly honored by the people. Young men from all parts of the country were sent to learn the principles of the order, and after a long term of apprenticeship they became members of the priesthood. All the learning of the time was monopolized by the Druids, and they were honored by exemption from war and taxation. They were the ministers of justice, and enforced their decrees by excommunication. This punishment carried with it exclusion from citizenship as well as from religious privileges. By the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, the Druids taught their disciples to hold death in contempt. Human sacrifices were offered up, the victims usually being criminals. In certain sections of Gaul there appear to have remained some vestiges of an older religion, which Druidism had, to a great degree, supplanted.

BRITAIN.

Caesar made two campaigns into Britain, but in neither did he penetrate the interior of the country. He has given us a description of the islands far from accurate, but valuable from the fact that it is the earliest statement made by a personal observer. The conquest begun by Caesar was completed by his successors, and Britain remained a Roman province for 400 years.

GERMANY.

Germany was never conquered by the Romans. Caesar twice crossed the Rhine, but made little impression on the vast hordes who inhabited the interior. The German invaders of Gaul were driven back across their great river, but only to return again to the attack, thus setting at defiance the almost invincible power of Rome.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

All of the histories of Rome that cover this period give an extended treatment of Caesar and his friends and foes. Of special importance, however, are those of MERIVALE and MOMMSEN. The former gives a sane and sympathetic account, in a beautiful and interesting style; the latter, a distorted and overdrawn picture, hardly relieved by the erudition shown in detail.

In addition we have:

FROUDE, J. A. Caesar: a Sketch. New York, 1879. Interesting but biased.

FOWLER, W. W. Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System. New York, 1892. Sound and sympathetic—the best account of the man.

DODGE, Col. F. A. Julius Caesar. Boston and New York, 1892. A military history, and not always reliable otherwise.

TROLLOPE, A. The Commentaries of Caesar. London and Philadelphia, 1880. Interesting.

HOLMES, T. R. Caesar's Conquest of Gaul. London, 1899. A fascinating account of Caesar's work, with invaluable appendices on the ethnology and geography of Gaul, and many matters relating more strictly to Caesar's life.

NAPOLEON III. Histoire de Jules César. Paris and New York, 1865, 1866. The foundation of modern scientific discussion of Caesar's campaigns, and particularly important for its atlas.

The following books on the style and contents of the Commentaries are also important:

SIHLER, E. G. A Complete Lexicon of the Latinity of Caesar's Gallic War. Boston, 1891.

MEUSEL, H. Lexicon Caesarianum. Berlin, 1887–93.

MENGE, H., and PREUSS, S. Lexicon Caesarianum. Leipzig, 1890.

MERGUET, H. Lexicon zu den Schriften Caesars. Jena, 1886.

The last three give complete citations from both the Gallic War and the Civil War.

JUDSON, H. P. Caesar's Army. Boston, 1888. A convenient and useful book.

FRÖHLICH, F. Das Kriegwesen Cäsars. Zürich, 1891.

RÜSTOW, F. W. Heerwesen und Kriegführung Cäsars. Nordhausen, 1862. Atlas, Stuttgart, 1868.

LINDENSCHMIDT, L. Tracht und Bewaffnung des römischen Heers. 1882.

OEHLER, R. Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de bello Gallico. Leipzig, 1890.

VON KAMPEN, A. Quindecim ad Caesaris de bello Gallico commentarios tabulae. Gotha.

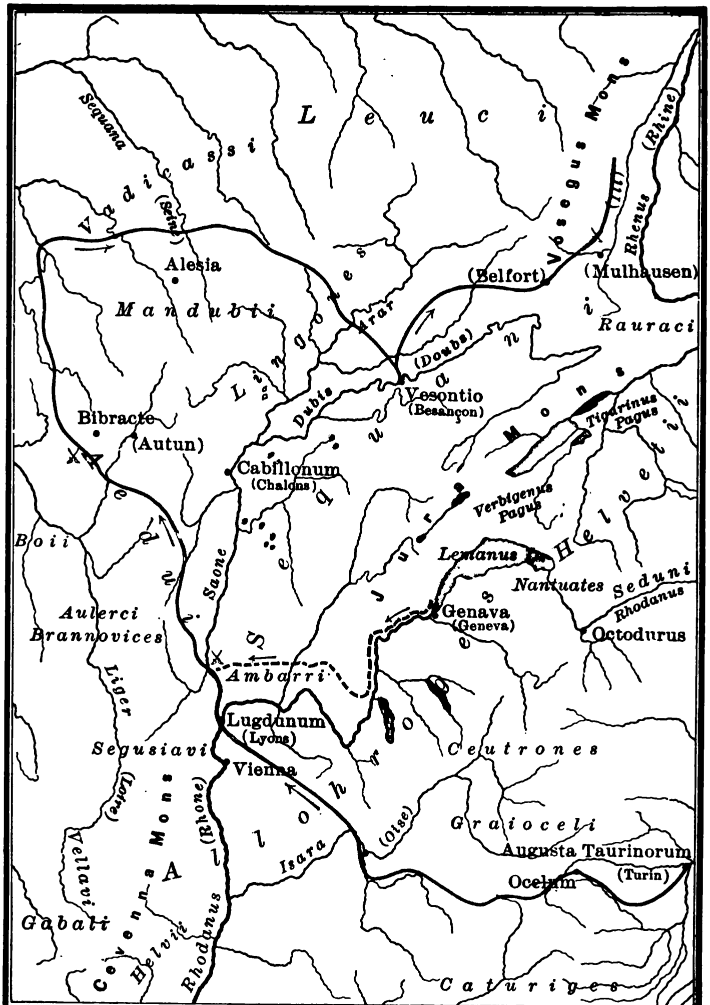
GURLITT, L. Anschauungstafeln zu Caesars Bellum Galcum. Gotha.

Important also are:

LODGE, HUBBELL and LITTLE. Helps for the Teaching of Caesar. In Teachers College Record, vol. iii (1902), nos. 3 and 4. A discussion of the various books introductory to Caesar, with detailed treatment of his vocabulary, syntax and style.

HEYNACHER, M. Was ergiebt sich aus dem Sprachgebrauch Caesars im Bellum Gallicum für die Behandlung der lateinschen Syntax in der Schule? 2. ed. Berlin, 1886.

LEBRETON, J. Caesariana Syntaxis quatenus a Ciceroniana differat. Paris, 1901.



CAMPAIGN OF 58 B.C.

ENGLISH MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50 100

ROMAN MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50 100

L.L. POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

I. DESCRIPTIO GALLIAE.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum lin-
2 guā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. 5
3 Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, qui- 10
4 buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum
5 gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum 15
est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad sep-
6 tentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur;

20 pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Ga- 7 rumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

II. BELLUM HELVETICUM.

CC. 2–29.

Mōtus Helvētiōrum excitātus ab Orgetorīge; ēius clandestīna cōnsilia, mors.

25 **2.** Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, 2
30 tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, 3 quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū
35 Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagā- 4 rentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā 5
40 bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, com-
45 parāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum

coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mor-

tuus est; neque abest sūspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, 4
quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Iter Helvētiī prīmō per prōvinciam temptant, sed Caesaris mūnītiōnibus interclūsī deinde per Sēquanōs.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōn-
80 stituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi 2
iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua
omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reli-
qua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter 3
quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum
85 reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula sub-
eunda essent, trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque
domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et 4
Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suīs
vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur, Bōiōsque, quī
90 trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsi-
erant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi
āscīscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō
exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,
95 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā sin-
gulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat,
ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvin-
ciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea 2
quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper
100 pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō
trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proxi- 3
mumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns
ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,
quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidē-

rentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs 105
eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam 110
nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genā- 115
vam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea 120
quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitūmque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte 125
per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur. 130

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque 135

perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella 3
commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur,
prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lē- 3
gātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre
140 et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam
dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit.
Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque com- 4
plūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō
flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī
145 perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum
concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs
invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā 2
sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem
150 Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrā-
rent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plū- 3
rimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte
Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et, cupiditāte
rēgnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās
155 cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque 4
rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs
Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent,
perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Hel-
vētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

160 10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per
agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs
facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae
cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō 2
cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs,
165 populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frū-
mentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, 3

quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ūlteriōrem Gal- 170 liam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre con- 4 tendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. 5 Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ūlteriōris 175 prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Gallōrum dē Helvētiōrum iniūriīs querēlae.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant 180 2 eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt 3 rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida 185 4 expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim 5 hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem 190 recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil 6 esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Clādēs Tigurīnōrum.

195 **12.** Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per ² explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cō-
200 piārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs ³ et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit:
205 reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis ⁴ cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ⁵ ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iu-
210 gum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immor- ⁶ tālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās ⁷ iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L.
215 Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Helvētiī per lēgātōs cum Caesare agunt.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū ²
220 commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō

prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat.
3 Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum
Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs 225
Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset:
4 sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris
incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiō-
5 rum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī,
quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē 230
ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueret aut
6 ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs
didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut
7 īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi
cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne 235
exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis
darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent,
memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō
2 populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi 240
cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēcep-
tum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē
3 timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī
veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium
iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim 245
temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allo-
4 brogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā
victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē
impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre.
5 Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex 250
commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum
ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem
6 impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs

ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs in-
255 tellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā 7 māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse tēstem.
260 Hōc respōnsō datō discēssit.

Equitātus Caesaris ab Helvētiīs pulsus. Utrīusque exercitūs iter.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in par-
265 tēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen 2 īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō 3 sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn
270 numquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat āc satis ha- 4 bēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter 5 fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum
275 prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

Caesaris cum Aeduōrum prīncipibus, Liscō et Dīviciācō, dē cīvitātis condiciōne et Dumnorīgis perfidiā colloquium.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, 2 quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita
280 est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed

nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat: eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius 285 dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem 'vergobretum' appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae 290 necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, 295 quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā 300 ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs lībertā- 305 tem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse. 310

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī

frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxe- 2
315 rat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, 3 summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō
320 redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse 4 et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; mā- 5 gnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīniti- 6
325 mās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō āc potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorō- 7 rem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīni- 8
330 tātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per 9 Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī
335 nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod 10 proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī
340 mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās sūspīciōnēs cer-

tissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam 345 īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere 3 iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīvieiācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, 350 summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Dīvi-3 ciācī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Trou- 355 cillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cuī summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō 4 colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, 5 quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit 360 atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: 2 Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē 365 dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter 3 adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō 370 4 et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā

voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae
875 animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns
ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsō-
lātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē
grātiam esse ostendit, utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum
dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorī-
880 gem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat,
ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prō-
pōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs sūspīciōnēs
vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit.
Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum lo-
885 quātur, scīre possit.

Caesaris cōnsilium P. Cōnsidiī errōre pervertitur.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs
sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs
octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū
āscēnsus, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem
890 esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prae-
tōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnō-
verant, summum iugum montis āscendere iubet; quid suī
cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere,
quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem
895 ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus
habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī
fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenē-
rētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīn-
400 gentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs com-
perit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset,
Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem,

quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī;
3 id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar
suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. 405
Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium
committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae
essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret,
monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.
4 Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et 410
montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et
Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō
5 sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllo, hostēs
sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra
pōnit. 415

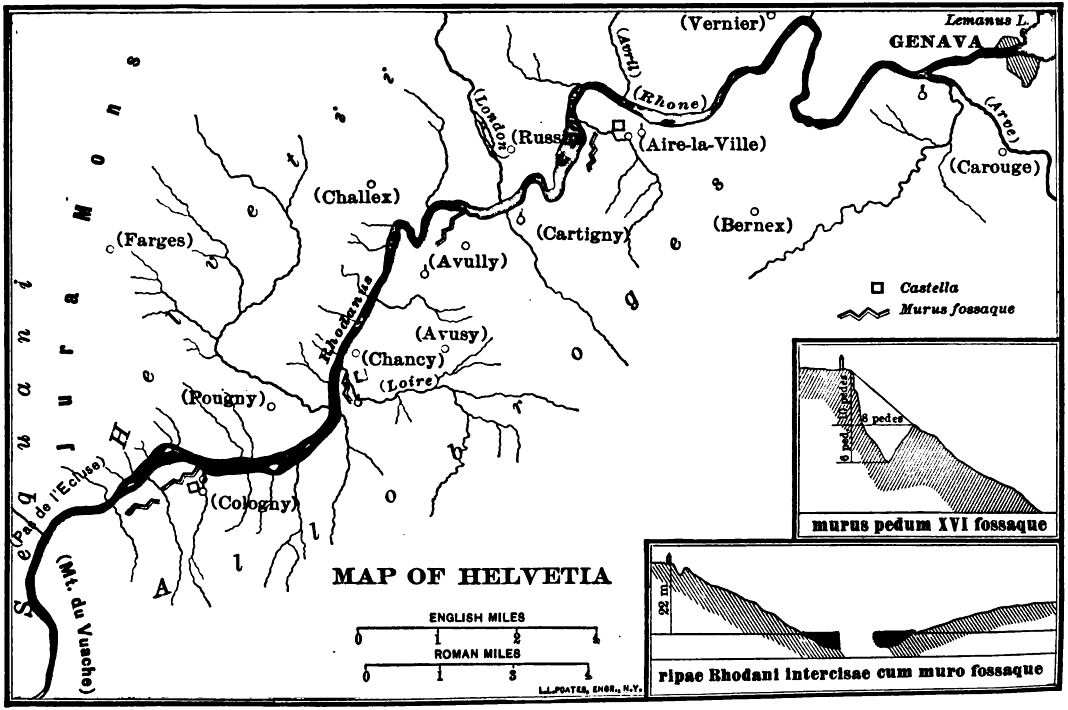
Helvētiōrum clādēs, fuga, reditus in fīnēs suōs.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat,
cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā
Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsis-
simō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, reī
frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs 420
2 āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs
L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūn-
3 tiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs
discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē, superi-
ōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve 425
eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent,
commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novis-
simō āgmine īnsequī āc lacessere coepērunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar
in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret 430
2 hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō

triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; [ita utī suprā sē] in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās 3 in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia
435 auxilia collocārī, āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab iīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iūssit. Helvētiī 4 cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō
440 equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem succēssērunt.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō 2
445 superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō, 3 quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō īctū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque
450 sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant; multī 4 ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī 5 et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et 6
455 succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv āgmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redin-
460 tegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertītō 7 intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs āc submōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.



Sequani
Jura Mons
Helvetii
Allobroges
(Mt. du Vuache)
(Pas de l'Ecluse)
Rhodanus
(Farges)
(Challex)
(Pougny)
(Cologny)
(Chancy)
(Loire)
(Avusy)
(Avully)
(Cartigny)
(London)
(Russin)
(Aire-la-Ville)
(Avril)
(Rhone)
(Vernier)
(Bernex)
(Arve)
(Carouge)
GENAVA
Lemanus L.
Castella
Murus fossaque
MAP OF HELVETIA
ENGLISH MILES
ROMAN MILES
L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.
8 pedes
10 pedes
6 ped.
murus pedum XVI fossaque
22 m.
ripae Rhodani intercisae cum muro fossaque

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad 465
2 impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit,
3 āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, propereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs veni- 470
entēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant.
4 Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus
5 est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx super- 475
fuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs
6 sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas lītterās nūnti- 480
ōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē 485
2 dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iūssisset, pāru-
3 ērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, 490
4 servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, popōscit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi ēius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve

timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur,
495 sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant,
500 hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; 2 reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in 3 fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iūssit; et quod
505 omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit 4 eum locum, unde Helvētiī discēsserant, vacāre, nē propter
510 bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs peten- 5 tibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concēssit; quibus illī agrōs
515 dedērunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt lītterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō
520 exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa 2 erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā

6 duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, 525
quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

III. BELLUM ARIOVISTI.

CC. 30–54.

Conciliō Galliae habitō, prīncipēs cīvitātum cum Caesare sēcrētō agunt. Querēlae dē Ariovistō, Germānōrum rēge.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum con-
2 vēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvē- 530
tiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam
3 populī Rōmānī accidisse; propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī
Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque 535
domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum āc frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reli-
4 quāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt, ut sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre quāsdam 540
5 rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, quī 545
ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret.
2 Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, 550

impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō 3 hīs Dīviciācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius
555 Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē 4 multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum 5 prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse: posteā quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī āc
560 barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs: nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Aeduos 6 eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse.
565 Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte 7 et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs, neque auxilium ā populō
570 Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum 8 sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob 9 eam rem sē ex cīvitāte prōfūgisse et Rōmam ad senā-
575 tum vēnisse auxilium pōstulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed pēius victōribus 10 Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus
580 Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus

ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum vēnissent,
11 quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs
annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque
omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent: neque enim cōnferen- 585
dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc
12 cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum
autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod
proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter
imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs pōscere et 590
in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad
13 nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse
barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius impe-
14 ria diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque
Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, 595
quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domici-
lium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnam-
15 que, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta
Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus,
16 quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Cae- 600
sarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī vic-
tōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē māior
multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque
omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī 605
aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepē-
2 runt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs
nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs,
capite dēmissō, terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset,
3 mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed 610
in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius
quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset,

Idem Dīviciācus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem 4
et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,
615 quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut
sī cōram adesset, horrērent; propterea quod reliquīs tamen 5
fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs
Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte
620 ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Colloquium ā Caesare pōstulātum, dēnegātur ā rēge. Lēgātī ā Caesare mittuntur. Ariovistī respōnsum.

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs
cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram:
māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte
adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrā- 2
625 tiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae
rēs eum hortābantur, qūa rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam
et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs
cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in
servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī,
630 eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim 3
autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre, et in
Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō
635 Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs 4
āc barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem
Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā
640 Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē oc-

5 currendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō pōstulārent, utī aliquem locum 645 medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē 2 pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, 3 illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine 650 exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque 4 mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtiī esset. 655

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum 2 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in 660 colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīscendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse, 3 quae ab eō pōstulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret: deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet Sēqua- 665 nīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve 4 hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam 670 M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, senātus cēnsuisset, utī,

quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn 675 neglēctūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, iīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent: item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre 680 cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet, 2 quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam 3 bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem 4 685 iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque 5 hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen 690 populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, 6 sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur: 7 intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte 695 possent.

Aeduōrum questibus mōtus Caesar ad Ariovistum contendit, Vesontiōnem occupat.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī 2 questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē, nē obsidibus

quidem datīs, pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trē- 700
3 verī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī
cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse
4 Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar
vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē,
sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī 705
5 sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque, rē
frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, māgnīs
itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum triduī viam prōcēssisset, nūntiātum est eī,
Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum 710
Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum,
2 contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcēssisse. Id
nē accideret, māgnō opere sibi praecavendum Caesar exī-
3 stimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī
4 erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā 715
locī sīc mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum
daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis ut circinō
5 circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum
spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mīlle sexcentōrum,
quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine 720
ita ut rādīcēs ēius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis
6 contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et
7 cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs
diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō, ibi
praesidium collocat. 725

Māgna in castrīs Rōmānīs trepidātiō, Caesaris ōrātiō, iter ad Ariovistum.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae
commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum

vōcibusque Gallōrum āc mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque
730 exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā 2
735 tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, 3 quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat, ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī
740 pudōre adductī, ut timōris sūspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās 4 tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs tēstāmenta 5
745 obsīgnābantur. Hōrum vōcibus āc timōre paulātim etiam iī, quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē 6 hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem
750 silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī āc sīgna ferrī iūssisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna
755 lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod, aut quam

in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum
2 aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidis- 760
simē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse: cūr hunc tam
3 temerē quisquam ab officiō discēssūrum iūdicāret? Sibi
quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suīs pōstulātīs atque aequitāte
condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī
4 Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque 765
āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verē-
rentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā
5 dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum
nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō
pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor 770
meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī
tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc dīsciplīna, quae ā
6 nōbis accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse,
quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propereā quod,
quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā 775
7 armātōs āc victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem
Germānōs, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn
sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus plērumque
superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn
8 potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum 780
commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte
bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs
castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem
fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō
adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. 785
9 Cuī ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs
locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs
10 exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmen-
tāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent,

790 facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: 11 frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs 12
795 neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō
800 esse perspectam. Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem 13 collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, 14
805 tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huīc legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter 15 virtūtem cōnfīdēbat māximē.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae
810 sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī illāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per 2 tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum 3
815 tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satis facerent: sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Eōrum 4 satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum,
820 quod ex Gallīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium

amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est.
5 Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et xx abesse. 825

Caesaris cum Ariovistō colloquium Germānōrum impetū dīripitur.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod anteā dē colloquiō pōstulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accēssisset, sēque id sine
2 perīculō facere posse exīstimāre. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbi- 830 trābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset, ūltrō
3 pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitīs suīs pōstulātīs, fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō
4 dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī 835 ūltrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus pōstulāvit, nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur: uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.
5 Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī 840 volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cuī quam māximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō 845
6 esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: plūs quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

850 **43.** Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēvexerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs 855 Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad colloquium addūcerent, pōstulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar 4 initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, 860 quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum cum neque aditum neque causam pōstulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō āc līberālitāte suā āc 5 senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam, quam 6 865 veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns 7 quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī 8 870 hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dīgnitāte, honōre auctiōrēs velit esse: quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset? Pōstu- 9 lāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē 875 aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad pōstulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, 2 dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum 880 sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs;



From Gurlitt.

CAESAR'S INTERVIEW WITH ARIOVISTUS.

nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concēssās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. 3 Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs 885 Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse āc contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō 4 pulsās āc superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte 890 5 ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī 895 6 Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppūgnandae causā facere: ēius reī tēstimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod 7 bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam 900 vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae 8 fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in 905 nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, 9 quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse 910 neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et

cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē sūspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem 10 exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre.
915 Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiō- 11 nibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīn- 12 cipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum: id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum
920 omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et līberam possessiōnem Gal- 13 liae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

925 **45.** Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset; neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse 2
930 Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus īgnōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum 3 quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium: sī iūdicium senātūs
935 observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōnicere.
940 Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque 2 imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū 3

proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in col-
4 loquiō circumventōs. Posteā quam in vulgus mīlitum 945
ēlātum est, quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium dīrēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī iniectum est. 950

Gallī lēgātī ad Ariovistum missī in vincula cōniciuntur.

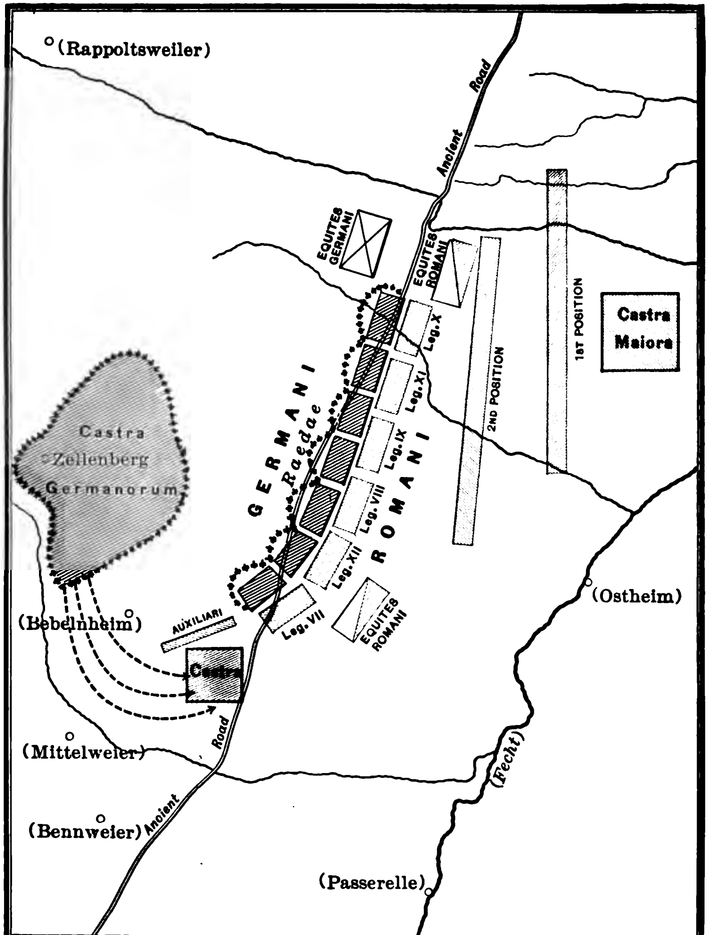
47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: Velle sē dē iīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō: utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs
2 aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa 955
nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent.
3 Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat.
4 Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. 960
Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa 965
nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitiō
5 Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ario-
6 vistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī 970
causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās cōniēcit.

Equestre proelium.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī [2] praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus
975 passuum duōbus ūltrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs con- [3] tinuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō
980 contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omni- [4] bus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem [5] numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī
985 cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant: cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant: [6] hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat [7] longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat
990 hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Castra minōra Caesaris Ariovistus oppūgnat, proeliō dēcertāre nōn audet.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohiberētur, ūltrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iīs,
995 castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs [2] esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Hīc locus ab hoste [3] circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō



PLAN OF BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

ENGLISH MILE 0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

ROMAN MILE 0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs 1000
4 terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam
5 opus perficere iūssit. Mūnītīs castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit. 1005

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit.
2 Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus 1010 partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret,
3 mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs
4 et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn 1015 dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, ūtrum proelium committī
5 ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent. 1020

Tandem in proelium dēscendere coācti Germānī vincuntur et ad Rhēnum profugiunt. Līberantur lēgātī Gallī.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse, 1025 triplicī īnstrūctā aciē, ūsque ad castra hostium accēssit.

Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdū- 1
xērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs,
Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs,
1030 Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs
circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō 3
mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs
mīlitēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in
servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

1035 **52.** Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae-
stōrem praefēcit, utī eōs tēstēs suae quisque virtūtis
habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē 2
fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit.
Et ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs, sīgnō datō, impetum 3
1040 fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repentē celeriterque prōcurrērunt,
ut spatium pīla in hostēs cōniciendī nōn darētur.
Rēiectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At 4
Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā,
impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs 5
1045 nostrī, quī in phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus
revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs 6
ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā
dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram
aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus 7
1050 adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat
quam iī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem
labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs
terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad
1055 flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque
pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre 2
contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperē-

3 runt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit: reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī 4 equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī 1060 uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae fīliae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. 5 C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs 1065 catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs 6 equitātū persequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi 1070 restitūtum vidēbat, neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. 7 Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus reser- 8 vārētur: sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. 1075 Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Suēbī domum revertuntur. In hīberna dēdūcitur exercitus. Caesar in citeriōrem Galliam proficīscitur.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt: 2 īnsecūtī māgnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar unā 1080 aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī pōstulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs ex- 3 ercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

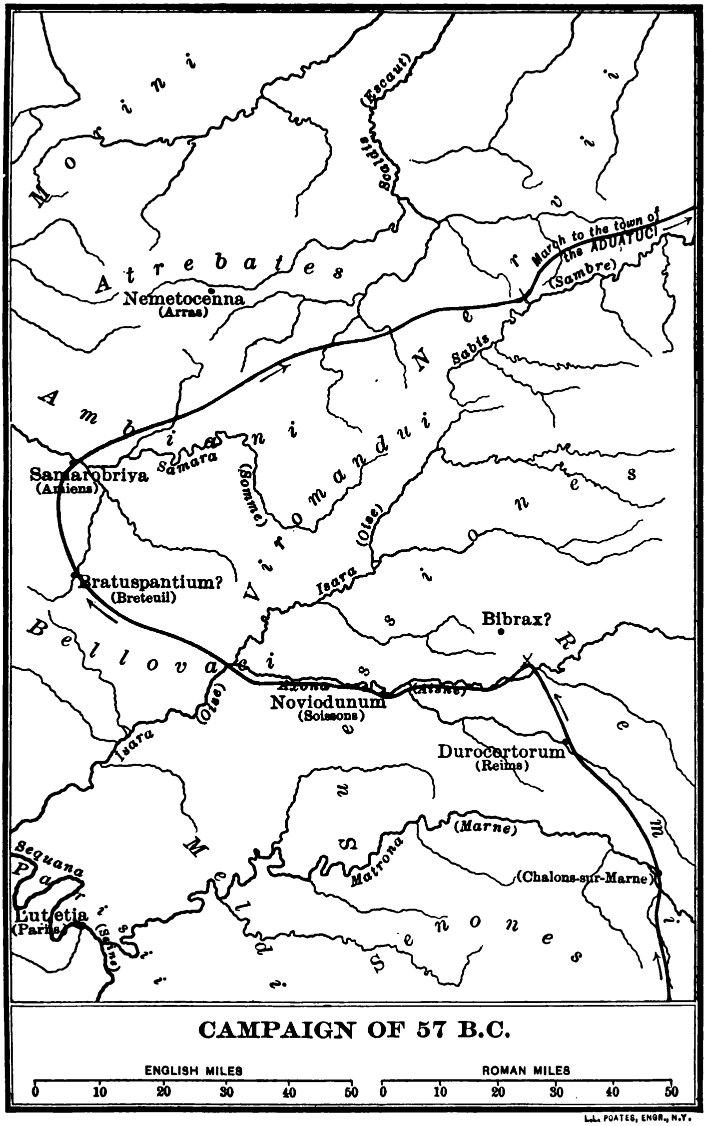
I. BELLUM BELGICUM.

CC. 1–33.

Coniūrātiō Belgārum praeter Rēmōs, quī sē in fidem Caesaris permittunt.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, lītterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā 5 populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur, nē 2 omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim 3 quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita 10 populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod 4 in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, 15 quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

2. Hīs nūntiīs lītterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte, in ūlteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum 20 mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad 2



CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

3 exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem 4 faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitan- 25 5 dum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad 30 eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, 2 mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmā- 3 num coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et 35 imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīs- 4 que rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs 5 coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, 40 quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

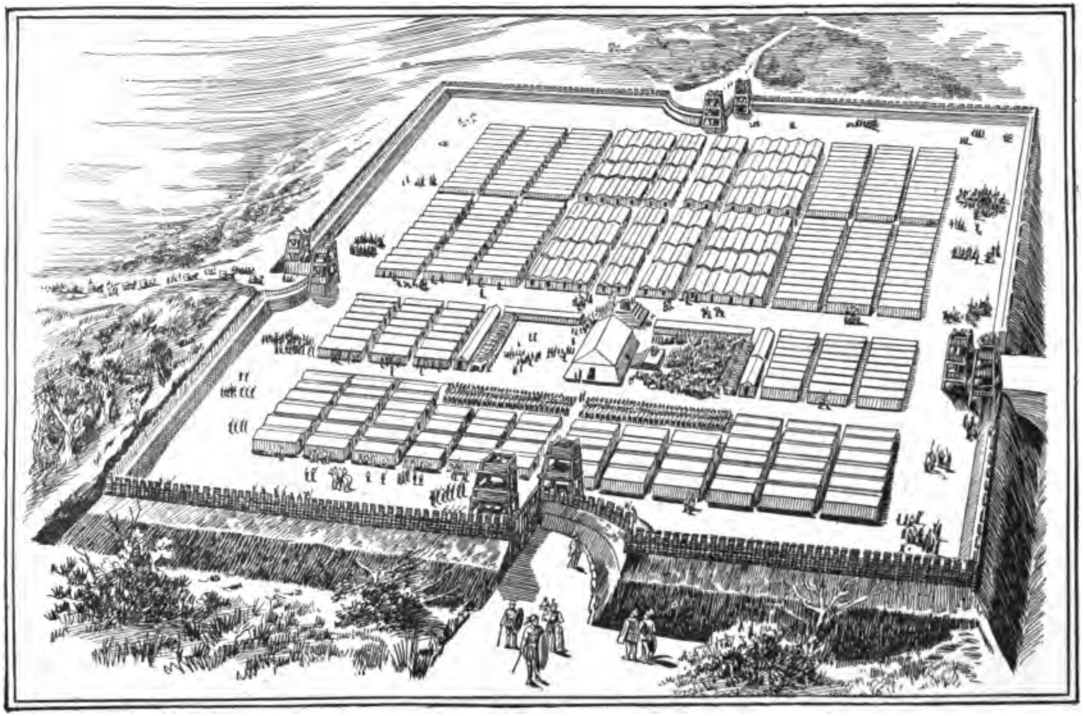
Orīgō et cōpiae Belgārum.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: 45 plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsē- 2 disse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā,

50 Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā fīnēs suōs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam 3 sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta 4 Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod, propinquitātibus affīni-
55 tātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et 5 auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta
60 sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi pōstulāre. Suessiōnēs 6 suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam 7 memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Bri-
65 tanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse rēgem Galbam: ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre 8 numerō duodecim, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur
70 longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Am- 9 biānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, 10 Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appel-
75 lantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

Castra Caesaris ad Axonam.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iūssit. Quae omnia ab hīs



A ROMAN CAMP.

3 dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Aeduum māgnoperē cohortātus docet, quantō opere reī pūblicae 80 commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit.
3 Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs
4 datīs mandātīs, eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs 85 Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere
5 mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus 90 ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum
6 portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium 95 Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

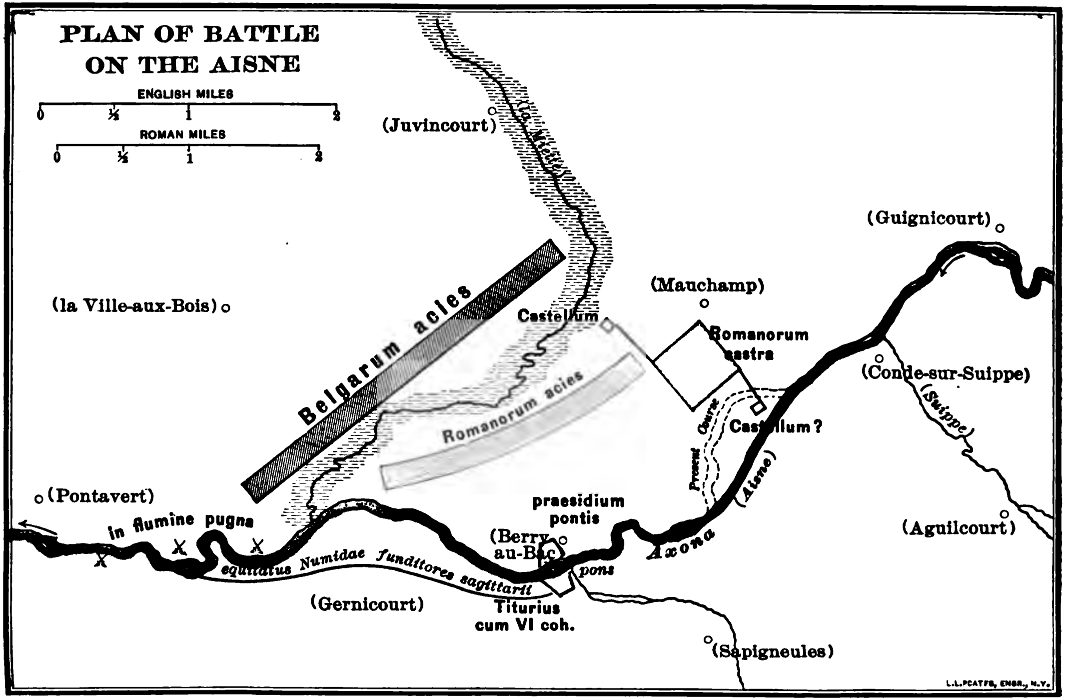
Bibrax, Rēmōrum oppidum ā Belgīs obsessum, ā Caesare obsidiōne līberātur. Discēdentēs Belgae clāde afficiuntur.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū 100 Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum
2 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succē- 105
3 dunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam

cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppūgnandī 4 nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā
110 inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī
115 nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum 2 adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accēssit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discēssit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī 3
120 agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque 4 īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in
125 lātitūdinem patēbant.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur.
130 Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs 2 ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque
135 ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fāstīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab 3 utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit


PLAN OF BATTLE
ON THE AISNE
ENGLISH MILES
0 ½ 1 2
ROMAN MILES
0 ½ 1 2
(Juvincourt)
(la Miette)
(Guignicourt)
(Mauchamp)
(la Ville-aux-Bois)
Belgarum acies
Castellum
Romanorum castra
(Conde-sur-Suippe)
(Suippe)
Romanorum acies
Present Course
Castellum ?
(Aisne)
(Pontavert)
in flumine pugna
praesidium pontis
(Berry au-Bac)
Axona
(Aguilcourt)
pons
equitatus Numidae funditores sagittarii
(Gernicourt)
Titurius cum VI coh.
(Sapigneules)
L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnsti-
4 tuit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrū-
xisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab 140
5 lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc
factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in
castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī pos-
sent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit.
Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt. 145

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium
exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant;
nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impe-
2 dītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim
proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi 150
neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum
3 proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs
prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt,
4 quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs
repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, 155
eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cuī praeerat Q.
Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent;
5 sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī
māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, comme-
ātūque nostrōs prohibērent. 160

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum
et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque
2 ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō
locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine
3 aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt: per eōrum 165
corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multi-
tūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōsque, quī trānsierant,
4 equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē

expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē
170 fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem
prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frū-
mentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōnstituērunt
optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum
in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad
175 eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs
quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs
reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum 5
reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod
Dīviciācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appro-
180 pinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morā-
rentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum stre-
pitū āc tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque
imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret
185 et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis
fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per 2
speculātōrēs cōgnitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā
discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque
castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explō- 3
190 rātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen
morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium
Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum
legiōnibus tribus subsequī iūssit. Hī novissimōs adortī 4
et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem
195 eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine,
ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum
nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā 5
perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō
continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus,

6 omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō 200
perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium, sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Suessiōnēs in fidem accipiuntur.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, prius quam sē hostēs 205
ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere
2 [cōnfectō] ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque 210
altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit.
3 Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum
4 ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte con-
5 vēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō 215
turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

Caesar Bellovacōs, petente Dīviciācō, in fidem recipit, dē Nerviōrum nātūrā mōribusque quaerit.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs, prīmīs cīvitātis atque 220
ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exer-
2 citumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum 225
quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī

manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in ēius fidem āc potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. 3 Item, cum ad 230 oppidum accēssisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discēssum Belgārum dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: 235 2 Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. 3 Quī ēius cōnsiliī 240 prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. 4 Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. 5 Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās 245 amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque homi-250 num multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popōscit. 2 Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. 3 Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc 255 reperiēbat: 4 Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus: nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod iīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs

5 [eōrum] et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriam- 260
6 que virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

Nerviōs, multīs utrimque clādibus acceptīs, Caesar vincit cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs accipitque in dēditiōnem.

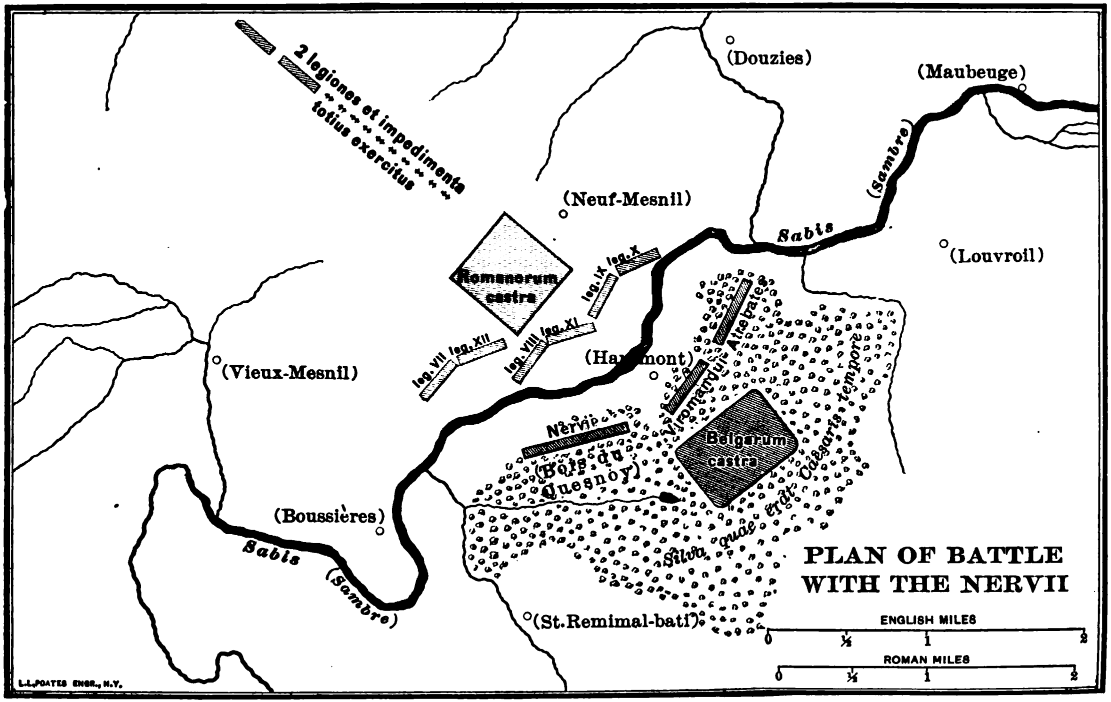
16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn
2 amplius mīlia passuum x abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs 265 Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortū-
3 nam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Aduatucōrum
4 cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs, quīque per aetātem 270 ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum cōniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque
2 praemittit, quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem 275 secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse 280 quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent, hanc sub
3 sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.
4 Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, 285

quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs) quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent,
290 tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēcerant, ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter āgminis nostrī impedīrētur, 5
295 nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab 2 eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus
300 huīc et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ā superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē 3 continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō
305 pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque āgminis aliter sē habēbat āc Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appro- 2 pinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expe-
310 dītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae 3 erant, tōtum āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittā- 4 riīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium
315 commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs 5 reciperent āc rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent,



2 legiones et impedimenta
totius exercitus
(Douzies)
(Maubeuge)
(Neuf-Mesnil)
Romanorum castra
leg. IX
leg. X
leg. VII
leg. XII
leg. VIII
leg. XI
(Vieux-Mesnil)
(Ha mont)
Sabis
(Sambre)
(Louvroil)
Atrebates
Viromandui
Nervii
(Bois du Quesnoy)
Belgarum castra
Silva, quae erat Caesaris tempore
(Boussières)
(St.Remimal-bati)
PLAN OF BATTLE
WITH THE NERVII
ENGLISH MILES
0 ½ 1 2
ROMAN MILES
0 ½ 1 2
L.L.POATES ENGR., N.Y.

neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra 6 mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt 7 impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs āc prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. 8 Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt. 320 325 330

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsīgne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcēsserant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, 2 sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem tem-3 poris brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi 4 mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur, administrābant. 335 340 345

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam [in] partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et

ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre 2
ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis
350 memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hosti-
umque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius 3
hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliī
committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem 4
item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit.
355 Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus 5
ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accom-
modanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque
tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque 6
ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna
360 cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs
pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque
collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō
atque ōrdō pōstulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā
365 in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut
ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs, prōspectus impedīrētur,
neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque
parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia
administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte 2
370 fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā
parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs, cursū āc lassitūdine
exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs
ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen
375 compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam
partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre 2
flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī
rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam

3 coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum 380 erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs
4 proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō āgmine duce Boduognātō, quī 385 summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt;
5 quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium 390 impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant āc rūrsus aliam in partem
2 fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā āc summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent 395 et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs
3 fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque
4 aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs 400 virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra [nostra] complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, 405
5 dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum

410 cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē cen-
415 turiōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs, dēsertō locō, proeliō excēdere āc tēla vītāre, hostēs neque
420 ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab 2 novissimīs [ūnī] mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcēssit centuriōnibusque
425 nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iūssit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus āc redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet,
430 paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs 2
435 aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in 3 novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus
440 cōnspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus 4

et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. 5 Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātōr versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem 445 sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs, perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī, etiam inermēs armātīs occur- 450 2 rerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus 3 praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum 455 4 corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs 5 cōnicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, āscendere altissimās rīpās, 460 subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

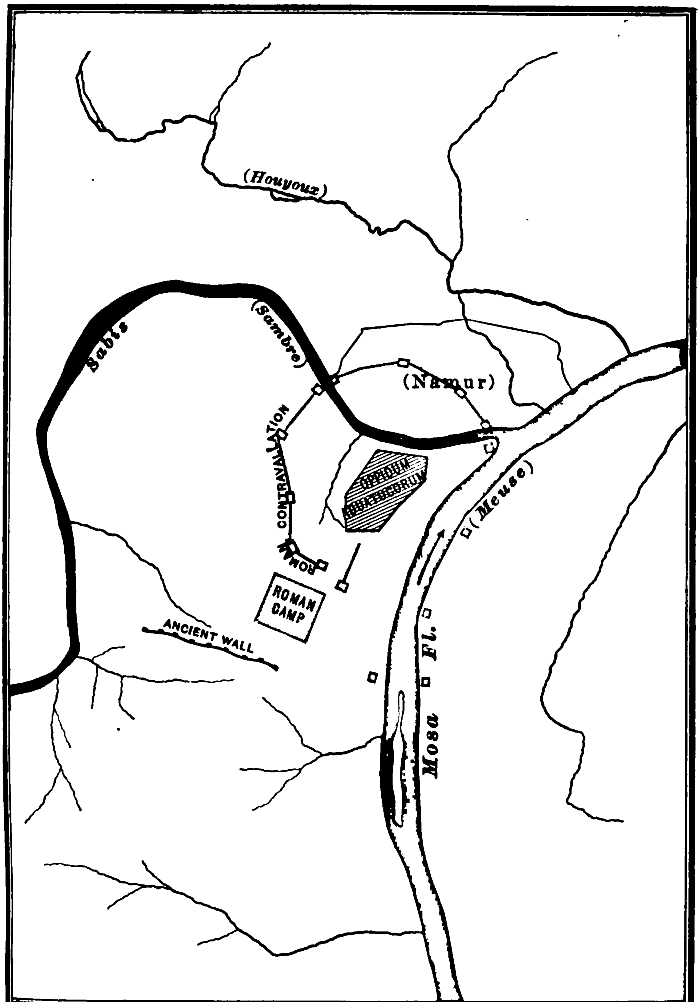
28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs con- 465 iectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus 2 nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex 470 hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre

possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in 3
miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iūs-
475 sit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

Item Aduatucī subiguntur.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque 2
480 dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū 3 partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in latitūdinem nōn amplius pedum ducentōrum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī
485 altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex 4 Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, iīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen
490 Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiam ex suīs āc praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum 5 multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

495 **30.** Āc prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII in circuitū 2 XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim 3
500 procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque



SIEGE OF ADUATUCA

ENGLISH MILES: 0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

ROMAN MILES: 0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō
4 spatiō īnstruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus
vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plē-
rumque omnibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum
suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris 505
turrim in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōnfīderent.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vīdē-
runt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad
Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī, ad hunc modum locūtī:
2 nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum 510
gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeri-
tāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī
3 permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere āc dēprecārī: sī forte
prō suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs
audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē 515
4 armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs
āc suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs
5 armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum
dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī,
quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī 520
cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine
suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius
quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēdi-
2 tiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē 525
id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque impe-
rātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam
3 īnferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur,
4 facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō
in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sīc ut 530
prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī

armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

535 **33.** Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iūssit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, 2 cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, 540 partim cum iīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās pōstulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs āscēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente 545 ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Cae- 3 sar imperārat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita 4 ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla 550 iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs [salūtis] cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quat- 5 tuor, reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius 6 diēī, refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ēius oppidī 555 ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs, quī ēmerant, capi- 7 tum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

II. CRASSI IN AREMORICAS CIVITATES EXPEDITIO.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, 560 Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvi-

tātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

III. RES EXEUNTE ANNO GESTAE.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, 565 quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pol-
2 licērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē
3 revertī iūssit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs quaeque 570 cīvitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliam profectus est;
4 ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

NOTES

The references are to the section numbers in the Appendix.

BOOK I.

58 B.C.

TITLE.

Various headings for this work are found in the manuscripts; the whole is sometimes called *Commentarii de Bello Gallico,* "Commentaries on the Gallic War," with the additional heading *Liber Primus,* etc., for each book. *Commentarius Primus* amounts to the same thing. The subject of a Roman book was usually expressed by *de* with the ablative; in English the nominative case is usually employed. Thus, *Ciceronis de Senectute* becomes in English "Cicero's Old Age."

I. DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

CHAPTER I.

This outline of the geography of the country was necessary to enable Caesar's readers at Rome to understand the situation, because Gaul had been entirely unknown to them until Caesar went there.

1. **Gallia:** for the sense in which the word is used here as compared with l. 19, see vocabulary. **omnis:** predicate use, *as a whole.* **est divisa:** the force of each part of the compound tense form is retained, the perfect participle showing that the division was made in the past, and the **est** that it still exists. Translate by the present. **quarum:** §§ 47 and 136. The structure of the sentence is:

	Object.	*Verb.*	*Subject.*	
quarum	**unam (partem)**	**incolunt**	**Belgae**	
	aliam (")	**(")**	**Aquitani**	
	tertiam (")	**(")**	**(ei)**	**qui—appellantur**

2. **Belgae:** the Belgians were closely related to the Germans. **aliam:** *another, a second,* used instead of **alteram,** *the second,* because the

three parts are not enumerated in order; contrast l. 33. **Aquitani:** their descendants are the modern Basques in southwestern France, who are still very different from the people surrounding them, being short and thickset, dark-complexioned, and speaking an entirely different language. **(ei) qui:** § 129. **ipsorum:** § 132. **lingua:** § 82.

3. **Celtae:** sc. **appellantur;** for the case, see § 17. The Celts were to the Romans the typical Gauls; they were probably of mixed descent, but mainly of the division of the Aryan race known to us as Celtic, probably akin to the Irish. **nostra:** i.e. **(sed) nostrā (linguā).**

4. **inter se:** see vocabulary under **inter.** **Aquitanis:** § 65.

5. **flumen:** §§ 1 and 2. **dividit:** § 142. A portion of the boundary is omitted.

6. **horum:** §§ 47 and 52. **propterea quod:** see vocabulary and §§ 170 and 215, 1, *b*.

7. **cultu, humanitate:** *civilization, refinement;* the former refers to customs of life, the latter to the mental and moral condition of the people. **provinciae:** the sense shows this to be genitive singular; for the district thus named, see vocabulary and map.

8. **minime,** etc.: construe **saepe** with **commeant, minime** with both **commeant** and **important;** *least of all do traders* (often resort) *make frequent journeys back and forth to them and bring in,* etc. **mercatores:** nom. *Traders* and peddlers from Massilia (Marseilles) and northern Italy brought wine (their most attractive commodity) and other luxuries on pack mules or even on their own backs.

9. **ad effeminandos animos;** §§ 271 and 272. **animos:** *character.*

10. **proximique sunt:** i.e. **et Belgae fortissimi sunt propterea quod proximi sunt.** **Germanis:** § 33.

11. **qua de causa:** § 136. This refers to the reason just given for the bravery of the Belgians.

12. **quoque:** i.e. as well as the Belgians. **virtute:** § 82. **quod contendunt:** §§ 170 and 215, 1, *b*. This explains **qua de causa** more particularly.

13. **proeliis:** such border warfare as half-civilized people carry on. For the case, see § 72. **cum prohibent:** § 182. **suis:** § 125. This sentence shows that it is often necessary to translate pronouns by the nouns to which they refer; Latin has so many more pronouns than English that it can make clear distinctions with pronouns where we can not.

14. **finibus:** § 65. **eos:** §§ 121 and 129. **ipsi:** § 130. **finibus:** § 91. **eorum:** §§ 121 and 125.

15. Eorum: *of all these,* i.e. of the Gauls in general. **quam—est:** § 257. **Gallos:** i.e. the Gauls in the narrower sense (= **Celtas**).

16. initium capit: see vocabulary under **capio.** **ab:** *at;* § 98.

17. ab: see vocabulary.

18. vergit: i.e. looking at the country from the Roman province. All the directions are from the same standpoint, e.g. **extremis,** l. 19, **spectant,** l. 20, **spectat,** l. 23.

21. in—solem: i.e. northeast.

23. ad: *off* or *near.* **inter—septentriones:** i.e. in what direction?

II. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS.

Chapters 2–29.

The Helvetians after three years of preparation were now on the move with all their possessions, bound for the western part of Gaul. Caesar hastened from Rome to Geneva and prepared to stop the Helvetian horde from entering the province. He had one legion and some hastily gathered recruits. He constructed fortifications between the Lake of Geneva and the Jura Mountain. By this means the march of the Helvetians was stopped, and they took the only other route available through the Jura by way of the Pas de l'Écluse, about 18 miles below Geneva.*

Caesar now returned to Cisalpine Gaul for more troops.

With five legions he hastened to Ocelum, the frontier town of Cisalpine Gaul, and thence by way of Mount Genèvre across the Alps. In seven days he made his way into the country of the Vocontii, thence into that of the Allobroges, and thence into the land of the Sequanians, which lay between the rivers Rhone and Saône (Arar). The precise route is uncertain, and is not essential. The Helvetians had already passed through the country of the Sequanians, and were in the land of the Aeduans. They now attempted to cross the Arar not far from the site of the modern city of Lyons. A part of the Helvetian forces, the Tigurini, had not yet crossed, and they were cut to pieces by Caesar. He now built a bridge and crossed the Arar in order to follow up the Helvetians. The route of the latter is uncertain, but Caesar says they moved about five miles ahead of his vanguard for a fort-

* The above and subsequent summaries are based mainly upon the conclusions of Mr. T. Rice Holmes, as stated in his lately published work. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul.* London, 1899.

night, and remarks that they had moved away from the Arar. From his various statements, it seems that the general direction of the march was northwest. When Caesar had reached a point 18 miles from Bibracte (Mont Beuvray), he turned towards that place. In this neighborhood was fought the battle which settled the case of the Helvetians for all time. Just where this battle occurred is not certainly known, but it was less than 18 miles from Bibracte, and probably to the south of that town.

After the battle the survivors of the Helvetians fled into the territory of the Lingones, northeast of Bibracte. Caesar remained three days on the battlefield, and then started in pursuit. He had previously notified the Lingones that they should give no assistance to the fugitives, who, reduced to the utmost extremity, finally surrendered at discretion.

Movement of the Helvetians, stirred up by Orgetorix; his secret plans and death.

Chapter 2.

Caesar's first operations in Gaul were directed towards preventing the Helvetians from leaving their territory and attempting a conquest of the other Gallic states. He gives the history of this movement, though its beginning was three years before he came to Gaul to prevent its execution.

Helvetia embraced in a general way the country now included within the limits of Switzerland, although it was somewhat smaller. The population, as stated by Caesar in Chapter 29, was 368,000.

26. **Orgetorix:** note the position, as the emphatic word of the sentence. **is:** § 122. **consulibus:** §§ 87 and 88; that is, the year 61 B.C. As the term of office of the consuls was one year, the Romans designated the year of any event by naming the consuls of that year. Educated Romans might be supposed to know the list of consuls as a matter of necessary general information, but undoubtedly this knowledge was often no more accurate than our knowledge of the presidents of the United States. **regni:** § 40.

27. **nobilitatis:** the political system of Helvetia was a confederacy of leaders, each of whom had a large body of retainers; thus it somewhat resembled the feudal system of later times; but the kings had nearly all been deposed, and these rough, strong, turbulent "nobles," or chiefs, held the power among themselves. **nobilitas, civitas, etc.:** such

words, originally abstract or collective in meaning, like English *nobility, state,* may often be better translated by concrete nouns like *nobles, citizens.* That the thought is plural in Latin is shown by **exirent**, following. **civitati**: § 23.

28. **ut exirent**: §§ 25 and 208. **de**: notice the use of **de** with **ex** in composition. **copiis**: *possessions.*

29. **esse**: §§ 227 and 236. **cum**: §§ 172, 228 and 239. **omnibus**: § 27.

30. **Galliae**: § 40. **imperio**: § 73. **potiri**: this is the subject accusative of **esse**, and **perfacile** agrees with it. **id**: §§ 12 and 25. **hoc**: § 84. **eis**: §§ 23 and 25.

31. **loci natura**: *by natural boundaries.* **continentur**: *are shut in.*

32. **parte**: see vocabulary. **flumine**: § 71. **Rheno**: §§ 1 and 2. **latissimo atque altissimo**: § 117. Caesar adds these adjectives after their noun, like a short parenthesis, for the benefit of his Roman readers, who knew little or nothing about the Rhine.

33. **parte**: see **parte**, l. 32.

34. **altissimo**: see note on l. 32. **tertia**: sc. **ex parte.**

36. **rebus**: § 84. **fiebat**: § 148. **ut vagarentur**: § 213. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.*

37. **finitimis**: § 27.

38. **qua ex parte**: (from this side, i.e. of the matter), *for this reason.* **homines**: (*being*) *men.* **bellandi**: §§ 58 and 267. **cupidi**: agrees with **homines. afficiebantur**: § 148.

39. **pro**: *in proportion to.* **multitudo hominum**: (number of human beings), *population.* **gloria—fortitudinis**: (glory of war and bravery), *reputation for bravery in war;* §§ 280 and 40. **se habere**: (*that*) *they had;* §§ 228, 235 and 238. **angustos**: (*too*) *narrow.*

41. **milia**: § 14. **passuum**: § 47. The distance indicated by **mille passus** was about 4854 English feet; but it may be considered roughly as a mile and so translated. Helvetia then, according to these figures, was not far from the size of New York State, whose population in 1900 was over 7,000,000.

Chapter 3.

43. **rebus**: the word **res** does not mean *thing* in the sense of *any thing,* but always refers to some definite thing or circumstance previously mentioned. Here it refers to all the *considerations* mentioned in Chapter 2 which tended to cause the Helvetians to leave their country.

44. **proficiscendum**: § 267. **pertinerent**: § 229.

45. quam: see vocabulary, and § 117. **carrorum:** § 48. These were two-wheeled, drawn mostly by oxen. See the rear wagons in the following illustration.



BAGGAGE WAGONS.

48. ad eas res conficiendas: §§ 271 and 272.

49. sibi: § 28. **duxerunt:** see vocabulary. **in:** see vocabulary. **in annum tertium** means directly after the end of the two years' preparation; we might say, *at the beginning of the third year.*

50 lege: i.e. by a popular vote, by which the Gauls and Helvetians made their laws. **confirmant:** *establish, determine;* § 147.

51. sibi: § 27.

52 Castico: § 23. **filio, Sequano:** § 1.

53. cuius—appellatus erat: in order to get at the meaning of a complicated Latin sentence, the most important words to be considered are the connectives. Observe these words carefully and thus determine the dependence of clauses upon one another. Here the clause, **cuius—appellatus erat,** is parenthetical; in working out the sentence, omit it until the rest has been thoroughly grasped. Then go back and translate this clause; then read the entire sentence. **regnum:** *chief power,* not that of a king (see note on l. 27), but the authority of the most powerful chief in the state; compare **principatum,** below. **annos:** § 14.

54. amicus: § 17; the Romans sometimes gave this distinction to barbarian chiefs whose aid they wished to gain.

55. ut occuparet: with **persuadet;** §§ 25, 152 and 208. **quod:** relative.

56. itemque, etc.: the structure of this sentence is exactly like that of the preceding.

57. tempore: § 89.

58. plebi: § 33.

59. perfacile esse: cf. l. 30. **factu:** § 276. **filiam dat:** this was a common method of securing friendly relations, like intermarriage among the royal families of Europe to-day.

60. perficere: for construction, see **potiri,** l. 30. **civitatis:** § 40.

61. obtenturus esset: §§ 153, 228 and 277. **esse quin:** § 214.

62. Galliae: §§ 47 and 52. **plurimum:** see vocabulary and § 12. **se conciliaturum:** § 237. Note the very common omission of **esse.** **copiis:** § 71.

63. illis: § 19. **regna:** plural, because the Latin thinks of a **regnum** for each man; English uses the singular.

65. regno occupato: (the royal power having been seized), *after seizing the power in their respective states;* this modifies **posse.**

66. Galliae: § 73, note. **sese:** subject acc. of **posse;** there is no fut. infin. of **possum,** and **posse** here refers to the future; *they hope* (*hoped*) *that they will* (*would*) *be able*, etc.

Chapter 4.

67. res: here, *conspiracy.* **moribus:** § 86.

69. damnatum, etc.: **poenam** is subject acc. of **sequi,** and **poenam sequi** taken together is the subject of the impers. verb **oportebat;** for translation, see § 257. **damnatum** agrees with **eum (Orgetorigem)** understood, which is the object of **sequi.** **damnatum** literally means *having been condemned,* but is best translated freely, *if condemned;* § 264, 3. **ut igni cremaretur** explains **poenam;** § 213.

70. die—causae: (the day of the pleading of the case having been appointed), *on the day appointed for trying the case.* **die,** § 36. **causae,** § 40. **ad iudicium:** *at the place of trial.*

71. familiam: his clansmen and retinue of followers. **ad:** *to the number of.*

72. clientes: 'supporters,' a general term for those who followed his lead. **obaeratos:** men who had got into debt to him, who, according to the Gallic customs, had bound themselves over to his service (Book VI., Chapter 13).

73. eodem: adverb; so most demonstrative pronouns have a corresponding adverb, e.g. **eo, illo.** **per eos :** *through* (*the help of*) *these.* **ne diceret:** § 209.

74. Cum conaretur: *while the state was trying;* § 182.

75. armis: with **exsequi;** § 71. **multitudinem—cogerent:** the same as when we have the militia called out to enforce the law and preserve order.

77. ut: see vocabulary.

78. quin: § 214. **ipse:** § 133.

The Helvetians first attempt to march through the province, but afterward, being prevented from doing this by Caesar's fortifications, they start through the country of the Sequanians.

Chapter 5.

79. nihilo: see vocabulary and § 81. Although the scheme of Orgetorix had been shown to be one of personal ambition, its brilliancy had fascinated the Helvetians.

80. ut—exeant: explains **id quod (facere) constituerat;** (*namely*), *to go out;* § 208. **e:** compare with **de,** l. 28. **ubi arbitrati sunt:** § 176.

81. se—esse: § 228, etc.

82. numero: § 82. **ad:** *about.*

84. quod: sc. **id,** (that which), *what;* so often, when antecedent is omitted. **secum:** § 90, note. **portaturi erant:** § 277. **domum:** § 95; it modifies **reditionis,** a verbal noun. This construction is contrary to the usage of the best Latin style ; we should expect **redeundi.** **reditionis:** § 40. **spe:** § 87. **paratiores:** see vocabulary. **ad—subeunda:** §§ 271 and 272.

86. mensium: §§ 44 and 45. **molita cibaria:** as this must have been the chief article of food, an immense amount had to be carried in order to feed 368,000 persons; no wonder they had decided to obtain **iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum** (l. 45). The length of the caravan has been variously estimated at from thirty to seventy miles. **sibi:** § 32.

87. domo: § 97. **Rauracis:** § 23.

88. uti, . . usi . . oppidis suis . . exustis, . . . proficiscantur: (that they, having used . . , their towns . . having been burned, should set out), *to adopt . . , burn their towns . . , and set out . . .* **una:** adverb.

89. Boios receptos—asciscunt: (they associate to themselves the Boii, having been received to themselves *as* allies), *they allow the Boii to join their movement and make them their allies;* but the Latin order may be retained thus: *and the Boii, who,* etc. . . ., *they allow to join their movement and make their allies.*

Chapter 6.

93. erant: *there were.* **duo itinera:** one on each side the Rhone. **quibus:** § 135. **itineribus:** when an antecedent is repeated after a relative adjective, omit it in translation. Here the repetition seems to be for the sake of emphasis only.

94. possent: § 168. **unum:** sc. iter.

95. vix—ducerentur: *where carts could barely be drawn one at a time.*

97. ut possent: §§ 165 and 167. **alterum:** sc. iter.

98. multo: § 81.

100. non nullis: *some.* **locis:** § 92. **vado transitur:** (is crossed by a ford), *is fordable.* The choice of routes here described was either to move down the right bank of the Rhone through the country of the Sequanians, who were friendly, or to pass through the province of the Allobroges and thence into the Roman territory. About nineteen miles below Geneva by the former route they must pass through the narrow defile described in the text; the passage of this by so large a force was well-nigh impossible. **pacati erant:** they had been annexed to the Roman province some time before, had rebelled and again been subdued ("pacified," the Romans called it) in 61 B.C.

101. proximum: (*the one*) *nearest.* Note the order; Geneva is the key to the situation, hence its place at the end of the sentence. See l. 26.

102. finibus: § 33.

103. Helvetios: compare this with **finibus Helvetiorum** above. So the name of any tribe may be used for its territory; the repetition of **fines** is thus avoided. **sese,** etc.: § 228, etc.

104. animo: § 80. **in:** *toward.* **viderentur:** § 229.

105. ut—paterentur: this is the object of both **persuasuros** and **coacturos:** § 208. Elsewhere Caesar uses the infinitive after **cogo.**

107. qua die: see **quibus itineribus,** l. 93 and § 163.

108. conveniant: § 162. **is dies:** compare gender with l. 107, and see vocabulary. **a.d.** etc.: § 108.

109. consulibus: see l. 26. Year 58 B.C.

Chapter 7.

110. cum esset: § 182. **eos—conari:** in apposition with **id; conari** is progressive, (in direct discourse **conantur,** *they are trying*), *that they were trying.*

111. urbe: *the city,* i.e. Rome. Though appointed governor of Gaul at the close of his consulship two or three months before, Caesar had not yet gone to his province; on the other hand, he was not in Rome but in its vicinity, under the law that forbade any one holding military authority to be inside the gates.

112. quam—itineribus: (by the greatest marches that he is able to make), *with all possible speed;* § 71. We learn from Plutarch that he travelled 90 miles a day.

113. ad Genavam: § 95. **provinciae:** § 27. **quam—numerum:** see l. 112.

115. una legio: this was the famous *tenth legion* of the Roman "standing army"; **una** here has the force of *only one.*

116. de: *of.* **certiores facti sunt:** § 17.

117. legatos: § 2, note. **nobilissimos:** § 111.

119. qui dicerent: § 162. **sibi esse in animo:** see § 30.

120. facere: subject of **esse.**

121. haberent: §§ 229, 239 and 170. **rogare:** coördinate with **esse;** *that they asked.* **ut liceat:** see vocabulary under **licet. voluntate:** § 86.

122. memoria: see vocabulary and § 92.

123. occisum: 107 B.C. Supply **esse** and so with **pulsum, missum** and **concedendum.**

124. concedendum: § 277; sc. **sibi** (§ 31); for translation, see § 215, 1, *a.*

125. neque existimabat: *neither did he think* (*that men,* etc.). **animo:** § 80. **data facultate:** § 264, 3.

126. faciundi: old form for **faciendi;** § 267.

128. dum convenirent: § 180.

129. diem: see vocabulary. **quid:** § 139. **vellent:** § 242, 1.

130. reverterentur: § 245.

Chapter 8.

131. legione: § 71.

134. milia: § 14. **milia—novem** is best translated after **murum fossamque,**—(*both*) *nineteen miles long.* This wall and ditch formed a rampart on the south side of the Rhone. A great part of the distance was occupied by steep cliffs, and it was necessary to construct the artificial defences only where the natural failed. The undertaking was not so formidable as might appear from a mere statement of height and distance.

135. **pedum:** § 45.

136. **disponit, communit:** the omission of the conjunction (asyndeton) indicates the haste of the action.

137. **quo—posset:** § 160. **si conarentur:** § 242, 5.

139. **negat:** see vocabulary. **more:** § 86.

141. **facere:** see vocabulary.

142. **spe:** figurative use of the abl. of separation; § 65. **deiecti:** see vocabulary. **navibus—factis:** (boats having been joined and many rafts having been made), (*some*) *by bridges of boats and numerous rafts that they had made;* ablative absolute.

143. **alii:** § 4. The first **alii** is carelessly omitted.

145. **conati si—possent, repulsi, destiterunt:** (having tried . . ., if they were able, having been repulsed, desisted), *tried* (*to see*) *if they could*, etc.; (*but*) *being repulsed, they gave up.* **si possent:** § 243, note. **munitione:** see vocabulary.

146. **concursu:** (running together), *charges.* **telis:** *weapons* (*showered upon them*). **conatu:** § 65.

Chapter 9.

147. **Relinquebatur:** (was left), *there remained.* **una:** *only.*

148. **angustias:** see ll. 94–97. **cum:** § 172.

150. **eo:** i.e. Dumnorix; § 88. **a Sequanis:** § 67.

151. **gratia:** § 84.

153. **Orgetorigis—duxerat:** see l. 59. **cupiditate regni adductus:** almost the same phrase used to describe Orgetorix, l. 26. They were evidently "kindred spirits."

154. **novis:** see vocabulary. **rebus:** § 23. **quam:** see vocabulary and § 117.

155. **habere obstrictas:** a case of the so-called "maintenance of the result,"—(*to bind and*) *keep bound.*

156. **ut—patiantur:** obj. of **impetravit.**

157. **obsides:** object of **dent.** When an agreement was made by a tribe, certain members were often put into the hands of the other party to the agreement, as a pledge of good faith. This was the only form of security known among barbarous tribes; the idea was, that the friends of these hostages would use their influence to have the tribe keep the agreement. Now national honor takes the place of such security. **inter:** see vocabulary.

158. **Sequani:** sc. as predicate **obsides dent,** (give hostages), *promise;* so after **Helvetii.** **ne—prohibeant, ut transeant:** § 208.

CHAPTER 10.

160. Helvetiis—animo: see l. 119. **per agrum, etc.:** trace this intended route on the map; it was not the most direct way, but probably the easiest on account of the topography of the country.

162. non longe, etc.: note on map the position of the Santones and Tolosates; the distance between them was about a hundred miles. This then does not appear to be sufficient excuse for Caesar's interference. But the Helvetian migration would undoubtedly have been the starting point for another general movement of the German tribes such as had occurred when Rome was sacked, 390 B.C., and such as had been narrowly averted by Marius fifty years before, when he crushed the Cimbri and Teutones. On this ground Caesar was justified in interfering. **quae civitas:** § 135.



LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

163. si fieret, futurum (esse): § 242, 5.

164. magno—provinciae: (with great danger of the province), *very dangerous to the province;* §§ 76 and 40. **ut haberet:** this clause is the subject of **futurum (esse)**; the subject of **haberet** is **provincia.** Translate, *that it should have,* or, *to have.*

165. locis—frumentariis: § 92; translate exactly in the Latin order (except **-que,** of course).

166. finitimos: (*as*) *neighbors;* § 2, note. **munitioni, Labienum:** § 27; see also vocabulary, **Labienus.**

168. Italiam: Caesar speaks of Italy here as including Cisalpine Gaul (i.e. Gaul south of the Alps). As a matter of fact, however, all Italy north of the Rubicon was embraced in Caesar's province of Gaul. **magnis itineribus:** *forced marches,* usually 25 or 30 miles, but perhaps longer here, because he probably took only a small force with him as a body guard, and went through a friendly country. **duas legiones:** the eleventh and twelfth.

169. **tres**: the seventh, eighth and ninth. **hiemabant**: § 148.

171. **quinque legionibus**: as one legion was already near Geneva, Caesar's army now consisted of six legions, or about 22,000 men, together with the troops, probably cavalry, ordered from the province, as told in Chapter 6. The number of the latter is uncertain.

172. **locis,** etc.: these Alpine tribes, hearing of Caesar's approach, seized elevated positions along the road and tried to prevent him from passing; either because they thought he intended to annex their territory to the province, or because they sympathized with the Helvetians and thought they could help them by delaying Caesar or perhaps forcing him to turn back.

173. **itinere**: see vocabulary under **prohibeo.**

174. **his pulsis**: § 87. **compluribus proeliis**: § 72. This "interlocked" order seems very peculiar to us here, where the terminations which usually make Latin agreements clear are of no assistance and the sense alone shows the agreement.

175. **extremum**: sc. **oppidum; extremum** means *last,* in the sense of *most western,* the farthest from Rome. After leaving this town, Caesar passed over the Alps by the pass of Mount Genèvre, through the territory of two tribes of the western province, and moved on in pursuit of the Helvetians, who had gone something less than a hundred miles on their way. **ulterioris provinciae**: § 46; (*a tribe*) *of the further province.*

176. **die septimo**: i.e. *in six days;* § 104. When the Romans measured intervals of time, they included the day on which they started. The French do the same; they would call Wednesday the third day after Monday. In English the usage varies.

177. **Allobrogibus**: contrast with **fines Allobrogum** above, and see note on l. 103.

Complaints of the Gauls about the depredations of the Helvetians.

Chapter 11.

179. **angustias**: see l. 95 and l. 148.

181. **Aedui**: the Aeduans, it appears, had previously been recognized as allies of Rome, having been styled by the senate "brothers and kinsmen"; see ll. 670–675, 864–869. **populabantur**: contrast with the previous tense used and see § 148.

183. **rogatum**: §§ 274 and 275. **ita se,** etc.: (*saying that*) *they had so well,* etc., §§ 227 and 228, etc. **omni tempore**: (every time), *on every occasion.* **de**: *of.*

185. vastari, abduci: complementary infinitives with **non debuerint.** In cases where words are expressed with one phrase and understood with others, English usually expresses them with the first, Latin with the last.

188. depopulatis: § 262. **non facile:** (not easily), i.e. *with difficulty.* This is *litotes,* the use of a negative for a strong affirmative, or an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. **ab—prohibere:** (they were keeping the force of the enemy from their towns), *they were defending their towns from the attacks of the enemy.* Note that in l. 158 **prohibere** has no **ab**; §§ 65 and 66.

191. sibi: § 30. **agri:** § 47.

192. reliqui: § 49. **exspectandum sibi (esse):** §§ 31 and 278.

194. pervenirent: *should arrive,* or, less carefully in ordinary English, *arrived;* § 180. Caesar now finds a more immediate reason for attacking the Helvetians than the one mentioned in Chapter 10.

The slaughter of the Tigurini.

Chapter 12.

195. flumen est Arar: *there is a river (called) the Arar* (now the Saône).

196. incredibili lenitate ita ut: (of incredible smoothness, so that), *so very slowly that;* §§ 80 and 165.

197. fiuat: § 243. **id:** emphatic, *this;* keep the same order in translating.

198. ratibus, lintribus: abl. of means, not abl. absolute; **iunctis** is used merely as an adjective modifying **lintribus,** (boats joined), *bridges of boats.* These were all rude affairs, which they either found there, intended for light weights, or built hastily on the spot.

199. tres partes: *three fourths,* the regular way of expressing such a fraction.

200. flumen: § 11.

201. reliquam, de: see vocabulary. **vigilia:** the night was divided into four equal *watches.* Hence the length of a watch would vary with the season, but the third would always begin at midnight. Since the time was now midsummer, the first watch would end at about 2 A.M.

205. in: see vocabulary under **abdo**; also § 94.

208. domo: § 96. **memoria:** § 89.

211. quae pars, ea: (which part, this), *that part which, this;* **pars,** the antecedent, is attracted into the subordinate clause, and the relative is used adjectively; § 135.

212. **princeps**: *was the first to*, etc.; § 115.

213. **re**: *affair*. **privatas**: notice how very *personal* it turns out to be!

214. **quod**, etc.: order, **quod Tigurini eodem proelio quo (interfecerant) Cassium, interfecerant L. Pisonem legatum, avum eius** (i.e. **Caesaris**) **soceri**. Piso's daughter Calpurnia was Caesar's fourth wife.

The Helvetians treat with Caesar through ambassadors.

Chapter 13.

218. **faciendum**: see §§ 269 and 270.

220. **cum**, etc.: the construction is: **cum intellegerent, illum . . . fecisse id**, *that he had done . . . that*, which is explained by **quod—confecerant**, and **ut flumen transirent**, (*namely*), *cross the river*.

223. **bello Cassiano**: see l. 122. This was 107 B.C., so Divico must have been a man of great age. From the standpoint of the Helvetians he was just the man to head the embassy.

224. **egit**: see vocabulary.

Here begins the first long speech in the indirect discourse. The direct discourse is given below. See first that you understand about direct and indirect discourse in English, as explained in §§ 217–226. Study the words that are changed and get the reasons for each change from §§ 227–246; these sections should all be read over, and then the special references looked up.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis **faciet** (§§ 228 and 242, 5), in eam partem **ibunt** (§§ 228 and 237) atque ibi **erunt** (like **ibunt**) **Helvetii** (§§ 222 and 237), ubi eos **tu** (§§ 222, 232 and 233) **constitueris** (fut. perf. indic., see §§ 239, 200, 203 and 153) atque esse **volueris** (like **constitueris**): sin bello persequi **perseverabis** (like **faciet**), **reminiscere** (§§ 228 and 245) et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus **es** (§§ 228, 239 and 215, 3), cum ei qui flumen **transierant** (§§ 239 and 153), possent (§ 182), **noli** (§ 347, note) ob eam rem aut **tuae** (§ 222) magnopere virtuti **tribuere** (§ 347, note) aut **nos** (§ 222) **despicere** (like **tribuere**): **nos** (§ 322) ita a patribus maioribusque **nostris** (like **nos**) **didicimus** (§237), ut magis virtute **contendamus** (§§ 239 and 208) quam dolo aut insidiis **nitamur** (like **contendamus**). Qua re **noli committere** (like **noli tribuere**) ut hic locus ubi **constitimus** (like **constitueris**, except for tense) ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen **capiat** (like **contendamus**) aut memoriam **prodat** (like **capiat**).

224. si faceret, ituros, futuros (esse): § 242, 5.

225. partem: sc. **Galliae.** **futuros:** (be), *remain.*

226. ubi—voluisset: explains **eam partem** (**Galliae**) and **ibi.** **ubi,** being relative, is correlative to a form of **is** as well as to **ibi.** **constituisset:** (should have decided), *should decide;* so **voluisset.** English rarely uses the future perfect or its representatives.

227. perseveraret: § 242, 5. **reminisceretur:** §§ 226 and 245.

228. incommodi, virtutis: § 59. This refers to the defeat of Cassius; see l. 123.

229. quod: § 215, 3.

231. ne tribueret: § 245.

232. patribus: § 67.

233. magis: see vocabulary and translate after **contenderent.** **virtute:** § 71. **contenderent, niterentur:** § 156. **dolo:** § 72.

234. ne committeret: like **ne tribueret,** l. 231.

236. memoriam proderet: i.e. to future generations.

Chapter 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given without references. The student may now find for himself the reasons for the changes.

Hoc mihi minus dubitationis **datur** quod eas res quas **vos,** legati Helvetii, **commemorastis,** memoria **teneo** atque **hoc** gravius **fero** quo minus merito populi Romani **acciderunt;** qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non **fuit** difficile cavere; sed eo **deceptus est** quod neque commissum a **se intellegebat** quare timeret neque sine causa timendum **putabat.** Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci **volo,** num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod **me** invito iter per provinciam per vim **temptastis,** quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas **vexastis,** memoriam deponere **possum?** Quod **vestra** victoria tam insolenter **gloriamini,** quodque tam diu **vos** impune tulisse iniurias **admiramini** eodem **pertinet. Consueverunt** enim **di** immortales quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci **volunt,** his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum **haec** ita sint, tamen si obsides **a vobis mihi dabuntur,** uti ea, quae **pollicemini,** facturos **intellegam** et si Aeduis de iniuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum **intulistis,** item si Allobrogibus **satisfacietis, ego vobiscum** pacem **faciam.**

237. eo: *on this account, for this reason;* § 84. **minus:** § 111. **dubitationis:** § 49.

239. eo—minus: sc. **se** as subject: (he bore them the more heavily by this, by which the less), *he was the more displeased, the less,* etc. **merito populi Romani:** (by the merit of the Roman people), *deservedly to the Roman people.* The mention by the Helvetian ambassadors of the defeat of Cassius made him grow more and more angry, the more he thought how little the Romans had deserved such a defeat. He could not allow himself to hesitate in the present matter, because this old disaster demanded revenge, and he considered that he was the man and here was the opportunity to inflict it.

240. qui si, etc.: he goes on to explain how this defeat had happened, how treacherously they had attacked Cassius. **qui, sibi, conscius, fuisset, deceptum, se, intellegeret, timeret, putaret,** all refer to **populus Romanus,** and so, though singular in Latin, they are all translated plural: e.g. **qui si,** *if they.* **sibi:** (to themselves); omit.

241. fuisse: *it would have been.* This would be **fuit** in direct discourse; § 192, note. **eo quod:** ll. 237, 238.

242. commissum (esse): impersonal; (*that*) (*anything*) *had been done.* **qua re timeret:** (on account of which thing they should fear), *to make them afraid* (*of being attacked*); § 163.

243. timendum (sibi esse): (that it ought to be feared by them), *that they ought to fear.* Caesar says that the army of Cassius was taken off its guard because they thought the Helvetians had no reason for attacking them, and they didn't think it necessary to keep guard and be ready for battle unless they expected an attack. "A poor excuse is better than none." **quod:** see vocabulary. **vellet:** the subject here changes to **Caesar. num:** see vocabulary. **posse:** § 246.

244. contumeliae: § 59.

245. iniuriarum: objective genitive with **memoriam. quod:** § 215, 2, *a.* **eo: se** would have been more natural, as referring to Caesar, but **eo** leaves no ambiguity.

246. Allobrogas: for ending, see vocabulary.

247. quod—gloriarentur, quod—admirarentur: the use of **quod** is the same as in l. 245; the two clauses are subjects accusative of **pertinere.** These were just two more facts pointing to the vengeance that was coming.

250. Consuesse, etc.: Caesar implies that he is the instrument of the gods sent to punish the Helvetians for their sins. He says that punishment comes harder on men if it is delayed, because they have concluded

that it is not coming at all. From what we know of Caesar's character, it is hard to believe that this reference to a divine government of the fortunes of men was sincere. **quo—doleant:** § 160; do not translate this clause until after the rest. **ex:** *as a result of.*

251. quos, etc.: translate his immediately after **concedere,** then **quos—velint,** then the accusatives, finally **quo—doleant.**

253. cum sint: §§ 197 and 199. **si dentur:** § 242, 5. Divico had at first (l. 223–225) spoken of coming to terms, but had gone on from that to making threats as to what would happen if Caesar did not meet him halfway. Caesar first replies to his threats, and then offers terms which the Helvetians could not help thinking insulting, though he really could not afford to offer anything less. It was an encounter between a free, unconquered people and a man who would not yield an inch, both looking for the sovereignty of Gaul. The Gauls would despise whichever gave way: one or the other must be destroyed.

254. facturos (esse): sc. **eos (Helvetios)** as subject accusative.

255. Aeduis: sc. **satis faciant;** § 23.

257. a maioribus: compare the similar phrase in ll. 232, 233.

259. consuerint: = **consueverint.**

Caesar's cavalry routed by the Helvetians. March of each army.

Chapter 15.

261. loco: this was just across the Saône. See Chapter 12.

264. coactum habebat: § 266. **qui videant:** § 162; plural, because the antecedent, **equitatum,** is collective. **partes:** see vocabulary.

265. faciant: § 243. **qui:** § 136. **cupidius:** *too eagerly;* § 116.

266. loco: § 92.

267. de nostris: § 53.

268. equitibus: note the use of persons as means; see § 71 and compare **militibus,** l. 131.

269. non numquam et: (*and*) *sometimes even,* modifying **lacessere.**

270. agmine: § 92. **proelio:** § 72.

271. satis: see vocabulary.

272. rapinis: § 65.

273. dies: § 14. **prohibere:** subject accusative of **(esse), satis** being a predicate adjective.

274. ita uti interesset: §§ 165 and 166.

275. amplius: § 111. **milibus:** § 69.

Caesar's conference with the Aeduan leaders Liscus and Diviciacus as to the condition of their state and the treachery of Dumnorix.

CHAPTER 16.

277. **Caesar flagitare:** § 258. **Aeduos frumentum:** § 15. **quod:** relative.

278. **essent:** § 229.

280. **frumenta:** see vocabulary, and contrast with **frumentum** and **pabulum.** **matura:** it was now probably well along in June.

283. **frumento:** § 73. **flumine:** § 72. **navibus:** § 71.

284. **a quibus = et ab eis:** § 201. **diem ex die:** see vocabulary. **ducere:** § 258, and see vocabulary.

285. **dicere:** historical infin., like **ducere** above; the other infinitives are ind. dis., with subj. acc. **frumentum** and conjunction omitted, as we might say hastily, "Said 't was being collected, brought to one spot, was right near." This historical infinitive generally occurs in groups, and **flagitare,** l. 277, is only an apparent exception, because what intervenes is parenthetical. **diutius:** *too long;* § 116.

287. **metiri:** a legionary soldier had four bushels of corn a month, a cavalryman twelve bushels of corn and forty-two bushels of barley. **oporteret:** § 228. **convocatis principibus, accusat:** (the chiefs having been called together, he blames them), *he calls together the chiefs and blames them.* After this long, loose sentence has been mastered as a whole, it should be broken into three parts. Translate **convocatis** by a main verb, as suggested above. Then make another sentence of **in his—potestatem:** *among these* (*were*), etc. Then the remainder—*these chiefs he blames,* etc.

288. **copiam:** *number.* **in:** *among.* **Diviciaco, Lisco:** § 4.

289. **magistratui praeerat:** *held the office;* § 27.

290. **annuus:** § 114.

291. **in suos:** *over his* (*countrymen*).

292. **possit:** sc. **frumentum** as subject.

293. **tempore, hostibus:** § 88; (the time so critical, the enemy so near), *at so critical a time, with the enemy so near.*

294. **ex:** *in.* **cum susceperit:** § 172. **quod sit destitutus:** *that, as he said, he was deserted* (by them); §§ 170 and 215, 2, *a.*

CHAPTER 17.

297. **quod:** see l. 84.

298. **esse:** the indirect discourse is in apposition with **(id) quod tacuerat;** *that there were some,* etc.

299. plurimum valeat: see vocabulary under **valeo,** and § 13. **plus possint:** *were more powerful;* § 13. This state of affairs exists as much to-day as it did then. Almost any community can show a politician or a man of great wealth who by his influence can nullify a law.

301. ne conferant: § 209.

302. praestare: for impersonal **praestat** (see vocabulary) in direct discourse; (*saying that*) *it was better.* **si possint;** § 242, 1.

304. debere: sc. **multitudinem** as subject; *and that they ought not.* **quin sint:** §§ 214 and 277. **si superaverint:** § 242, 5.

305. una: adverb. **Aeduis:** § 29.

306. sint erepturi: § 277. **quaeque:** = **et quae;** see l. 84.

308. quin etiam: see vocabulary. **quod:** § 215, 3. **coactus:** see vocabulary.

309. id fecerit: i.e. had made the statement; the antecedent of **id** is the thought of clause **quod—enuntiarit;** for the mood of **fecerit,** see § 243.

310. potuerit: § 228.

Chapter 18.

314. ex solo quaerit: sc. **eo,** *he asks from him alone about;* § 8.

316. vera: agrees with **ea** understood, from **eadem,** whose antecedent is **ea,** l. 314. **ipsum:** *the very one.*

317. summa audacia: (*a man*) *of the greatest boldness;* § 80; so **magna gratia.**

318. rerum novarum: see vocabulary under **novus,** and § 58.

319. pretio: § 75.

320. redempta habere: § 266. It was a common practice in those days for a government to get its revenue by selling the right to collect taxes to the highest bidder. Then, armed with the authority of the state, this man collected all the money he could and pocketed the difference between what he got and what he had bid. This process is known as *farming the revenues.* Tax collectors are never very popular, and since under this system they usually resorted to every means of extorting money, they were always the most hated and dreaded class of people. Such were the publicans mentioned in the Bible. **illo licente:** (he bidding), *when he bid.* **contra:** *against* (*him*). It was not safe to oppose Dumnorix.

321. his rebus: *by these means.* **auxisse: augeo** is transitive; so **familiam** is object, and **se,** understood, the subject.

323. suo sumptu: § 72.

324. **domi:** § 93. **apud civitates:** § 101.

325. **huius potentiae:** *of (increasing) this power.* **causa:** see vocabulary and § 84.

326. **in:** *among;* order, **homini in Biturigibus nobilissimo ac potentissimo illic.**

328. **nuptum:** § 275; together with **collocasse,** here it has the same force as **collocasse** alone, l. 327.

329. **Helvetiis:** § 23.

332. **gratiae:** § 36.

333. **si quid accidat:** §§ 139 and 242, 5; we use exactly the same indefinite expression; it means here, *if any disaster should occur.* **spem:** see vocabulary.

334. **imperio:** *under the government;* § 89.

336. **quod proelium:** (in regard to what battle), *in regard to the* (**adversum equestre**) *battle which.* **ante:** adverb. **diebus:** §§ 81. 107.

339. **equitatui:** § 27. **auxilio Caesari:** § 32.

Chapter 19.

343. **accederent:** see vocabulary and § 172. **quod traduxisset:** § 215, 2, *b*.

344. **dandos:** § 270.

345. **et:** connecting a possessive pronoun and a genitive (i.e. possessive) case. So this is only an apparent, not a real, exception to the rule that coördinate conjunctions connect like constructions.

346. **ipsis:** refers to **suo et civitatis,** Caesar and the Aeduans.

347. **qua re—iuberet:** § 243.

349. **rebus:** § 23. **quod—cognoverat:** § 215, 2, *b*.

350. **Diviciaci—studium:** §§ 39, 41. **fratris:** § 1. **ne offenderet:** § 211.

352. **eius supplicio:** (by the punishment of him), *by punishing Dumnorix;* § 40.

353. **animum:** *feelings.* **itaque,** etc.: this incident shows Caesar's statecraft. As a deliberate policy, he never offended any one unnecessarily, though never hesitating to do so when there was no other way. Here the situation was critical. If the Aeduans were alienated, he would be forced out of the country for lack of a base of supplies. So he made his interests coincide with those of the better class of Aeduans, and held them loyal to him for six years.

354. **conaretur:** § 181.

357. cui: *in whom;* §§ 23, 24. **omnium rerum:** *in all matters.*

358. ipso: i.e. Diviciacus. **quae dicta sint:** § 243.

360. apud se: *before him* (Caesar).

361. ut ipse statuat: (that he himself may take measures), *that he (Caesar) be allowed to take measures;* § 208. **sine—animi:** (without hurting his feelings), *but in such manner as not to hurt his feelings;* § 40.

362. causa cognita: (the case having been ascertained), *after investigating the case.*

Chapter 20.

363. multis cum lacrimis: modifies **obsecrare.** **complexus:** § 261.

364. in: *against.* **ne—statueret:** see vocabulary and § 139.

365. illa: *those (charges)*, referring to the matters mentioned in ll. 358–360. **scire se:** § 227; *(saying that) he knew (that)*, etc. **eo:** *that fact.* **plus doloris capere:** (took more of grief), *was more grieved;* §§ 47, 49 and 111. Note carefully the use of pronouns in this passage, and in translation use names of persons referred to whenever the meaning of the translation would be obscure without them.

366. cum ipse plurimum (posset et) ille minimum posset, per se crevisset: *when he* (Diviciacus) *was very powerful and Dumnorix had very little power, the latter had increased (his power) at his expense.*

368. opibus: *power.*

370. fraterno: = **fratris,** objective genitive. **suam:** this refers to Diviciacus, and is understood with **gratiam.** **uteretur:** coördinate with **crevisset;** this might have been considered a main clause, and the infinitive used.

371. si accidisset: see § 242, 5 or 6. **a:** *at the hands of.* **existimatione vulgi:** (the thought of the common people), *public opinion.*

373. apud: *with.* **neminem existimaturum (esse) non factum (esse):** *no one would think that it had not happened,* i.e. *every one would think that it had happened.*

374. futurum (esse): *it would* (be) *happen.*

377. faciat: § 212. **tanti:** § 62.

378. rei publicae: § 40.

379. condonet: §§ 165 and 166. The dative accompanying this verb is the indirect object, due to the original meaning *present;* when not a person, use *at* in translating; otherwise, as below, *for the sake of.*

380. quae: interrogative, and so below.

381. quae queratur; § 8.

Caesar's plan is foiled by the mistake of Publius Considius.

CHAPTER 21.

386. **hostes consedisse**: indirect discourse after **certior factus.**

387. **milia**: § 99.

388. **qui**: antecedent omitted because indefinite,—(*men*) *who;* the indefiniteness is kept by translating by the infinitive, *he sent to ascertain;* §§ 162 and 164. **facilem**: agrees with (**ascensum**), subject of **esse.**

390. **legatum pro praetore**: a lieutenant acting temporarily as commander. This was a special designation for Labienus, as second in command.

391. **iis ducibus qui**: (*as*) *guides, those who.*

393. **consili**: § 46.

394. **quo** : *by which ;* §§ 71 and 72.

395. **rei**: § 58.

CHAPTER 22.

398. **luce**: § 104. **summus**: § 113.

399. **ipse**: (*and when*) *he himself.*

400. **passibus**: § 103. **neque . . . aut . . . aut**: *and neither . . . nor.*

404. **Gallicis**: i.e. Helvetian. Caesar concluded from this information that Labienus had been repulsed in his attempt to seize the hill, that perhaps his force had been overwhelmed, and that he himself with diminished forces might be attacked at once.

406. **erat ei praeceptum**: (it had been commanded him), *he had been commanded;* § 27. The subject is **ne—committeret,** a *substantive* clause of purpose (§ 208), while it is modified by **ut—fieret,** an *adverbial* clause of purpose (§157).

407. **nisi visae essent** : § 242, 5.

409. **exspectabat, abstinebat**: translate accurately; § 148.

410. **multo die**: see vocabulary and § 113. **et . . . et . . . et** : omit the first in translation; the English *both* implies only two statements. Notice the effect of leisurely progress here as compared with the hurried report of Considius above.

412. **quod**: see l. 84. **vidisset**: § 168. **pro viso**: (for seen), *as a fact.*

413. **quo—intervallo**: (at the interval at which he had become accustomed), *at the usual interval.* Caesar now resumes the pursuit, looking for another opportunity to attack the Helvetians.

The slaughter of the Helvetians, their flight and return to their own country.

Chapter 23.

416. diei: § 56. **omnino :** (in all), *only*.
417. cum: *before*. **oporteret:** § 182
419. milibus: § 103. **rei:** § 23.

420. prospiciendum (sibi esse): (that it ought to be looked out for by him), *that he ought to look out for ;* §§ 31 and 278. His conference with Liscus and Diviciacus had not yet had the effect of securing grain.

421. Bibracte: § 94.

422. Aemilii: i.e. who belonged to the troop of Aemilius ; hence the genitive (§ 37).

423. seu quod existimarent—sive eo: *either because they thought* (§170) —*or on this account*, explained by **quod—confiderent.** **timore perterritos:** (having been terrified by fear), *because they* (the Romans) *were afraid of them.*

424. eo magis—commisissent: this is a parenthesis, explaining that the Helvetii thought that the Romans were afraid of them (**timore perterritos**), not only on general principles, but especially on account of their curious movements the day before; translate, *and still more for this reason, because*, etc.; § 170. **superioribus locis occupatis:** ablative absolute, *although they had seized*, etc.; § 264, 4.

427. commutato, converso: translate as finite verbs,—*changed their plan, reversed their direction, and*, etc. The Helvetians would have done better to go about their business; they could then have got a long distance ahead; but they could not resist the opportunity of turning on the man who had caused them so much trouble and the loss of one-fourth of their number.

Chapter 24.

429. id animum advertit: § 11.
430. qui sustineret: §§ 162 and 163.
431. medio: see vocabulary and § 113.
432. triplicem aciem: see introduction. **legionum:** § 36.

433. [ita uti supra]: these words do not make sense and probably got into the manuscript by mistake ; omit in translating.

435. ac: *and* (*in this way*).
436. eum: sc. **locum.**
439. acie: § 78. **reiecto . . . facta:** *having driven back . . . (and)*

having formed; the cavalry were generally used in such cases to check the advance of the enemy until the legions were ready for battle.

440. sub: see vocabulary.

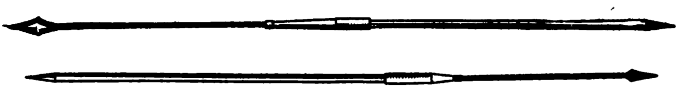
CHAPTER 25.

442. suo: sc. **equo remoto**. **omnium**: i.e. of all his staff officers.

443. aequato periculo: (the danger having been made equal), *by making the danger equal.*

444. cohortatus: a Roman army always expected a few words of encouragement before going into battle. **e loco**: limits **missis**.

445. pilis missis: § 264, 6. The position of advantage in the ancient style of fighting was of course the higher ground.



PILA.

447. ad pugnam: *in fighting*. **impedimento**: § 32.

448. quod: § 215, 2, *a*. **scutis transfixis et colligatis**: ablative absolute; translate as coördinate with **poterant**,—*their shields would be pierced and pinned together, and*, **cum ferrum**, etc.

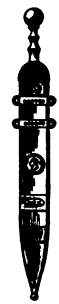
449. se inflexisset: (had bent itself), *bent*. The tip of the Roman spear was of hardened iron, but the shank was of soft iron, and the weight of the long wooden shaft caused the shank to bend.

451. ut: translate before **multi**. **iactato**: as the shields overlapped one another and the Roman javelins had pierced several, there was no freedom of motion for the soldiers holding the shields, but they were pulled about by every movement of the phalanx.

454. eo: adverb. **capto, succedentibus**: notice the change of tense and voice;—*when they had gained the mountain and our men were coming up*.

456. milibus: § 71.

457. praesidio: § 32; see **impedimento**, l. 447, and vocabulary. **latere aperto**: this means the right flank, because the shield was carried on the left arm. Hence the right was the post of honor in battle.



GLADIUS.

458. circumvenire: sc. **coeperunt** from l. 460; in military language, they tried to turn the right flank of the Romans.

460. conversa, etc.: see vocabulary. The first and second lines kept

the same front, while the third wheeled and faced the oncoming Boii and Tulingi.

461. victis ac submotis: see §§ 23 and 111; (*those who had once been*) *conquered and driven back*, i.e. the Helvetians.

462. venientes: (*those who were*) *coming*, i.e. the Boii and Tulingi.

Chapter 26.

463. pugnatum est: § 144, 2.

465. alteri . . . alteri: i.e. the Helvetians—the Boii and Tulingi; see vocabulary.

467. proelio: § 92. **cum pugnatum sit:** §§ 199 and 144, 2.

469. pro vallo: *as a barricade.*

470. in: *upon.* **venientes:** (coming), *as they came up.*

471. coniciebant: notice the change of tense, and see § 148. Perhaps the most common error in translating arises from a lack of care in observing these things. The Latin is very exact in its use of tenses,—much more so than English.

473. impedimentis castrisque: § 73.

474. e filiis: § 53. **captus est:** not the usual form of agreement; § 110.

476. nocte: it is impossible to draw a distinct line between the three expressions of time, see §§ 104, 105 and 106; this seems like duration of time, but the Latin might regard it as answering the question, When? This is regularly the case when **totus** is employed.

477. partem: § 106 ; contrast with **nocte** above.

479. occisorum: (of the having-been-slain), *of the dead.* **triduum morati:** this statement, together with the reasons assigned for the delay, shows that the Romans were pretty severely handled in the battle.

481. alia: see vocabulary. **ne iuvarent:** § 208; *not to help.* **qui si iuvissent:** §§ 227 and 242, 5; (*saying that*) *if they did help them.*

482. loco quo Helvetios (haberet) habiturum: (he would hold them in the place in which he held the Helvetians), *he would treat them like the Helvetians.*

Chapter 27.

485. rerum: § 40.

486. qui cum: *when they.*

488. iussisset: supply **Caesar** as subject.

489. essent: § 203.

491. perfugissent: § 168.
492. conquiruntur: § 178.
494. perterriti: agrees with **milia** in number and case, but takes its gender from **hominum,** which is here the real but not the grammatical gender of **milia.** **ne—afficerentur:** in apposition with **timore,** which takes the construction of a verb of fearing; § 211.
496. occultari: i.e. from Caesar.
497. prima: § 113. **existimarent:** § 171.

Chapter 28.

499. quod: *this.* **quorum:** antecedent **his.**
500. his: § 23. **uti—reducerent:** §§ 25 and 208. **sibi:** (with reference to him), *in his sight;* § 28.
501. reductos habuit: (he held them, having been brought back), *when they were brought back, he considered them.* **in numero hostium:** see vocabulary under **numerus;** this is a grim way of implying that they were all put to death; they had broken the terms of surrender, and Caesar wished to make an example immediately of men who did not keep their word with him.
504. suos: by emphasis here referring to **Helvetios,** etc., instead of to Caesar; § 123.
505. quo tolerarent: § 168.
506. Allobrogibus: § 23. **ut facerent:** §§ 25 and 208; *to furnish.*
509. ne: § 159.
512. provinciae: § 33. **Boios:** object of **collocarent. petentibus Aeduis:** (the Aeduans seeking), *at the request of the Aeduans.*
513. virtute: § 84.
516. atque—erant: = **atque erat condicio in quā ipsi erant,** *as was the condition in which,* etc. Adjectives of similarity are followed often by **atque** for **quam.**

Chapter 29.

517. litteris Graecis: not in the Greek *language,* but merely using the Greek characters and numeral signs; perhaps they had become acquainted with them through traders from Marseilles, originally a Greek colony. The Greek system of numerals was easier to handle than the Roman.
518. relatae: sc. **sunt.**
519. qui: interrogative adjective, *what.*
520. exisset: § 243. **possent:** § 168.

522. capitum: omit; we use the expression, "so many head," of cattle, but we do not apply it to human beings.

The figures in this last chapter tell the story of the campaign so plainly that no comment is required.

III. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.

CHAPTERS 30–54.

The assembled Gallic chieftains congratulated Caesar on his victory, and besought him to assist them against the inroads of Ariovistus, a German prince who had settled with his followers on this side of the Rhine. Caesar assented, and after fruitless negotiations took the field. Hearing that Ariovistus was advancing towards Vesontio (Besançon), a Sequanian town about 110 miles from his camp, in the country of the Lingone , Caesar hastened forward by forced marches and occupied this town.

He remained a few days in the neighborhood and then started out to find Ariovistus. He tells us that he reached his final camping-ground on the seventh day.

Where was Ariovistus? Apparently he had annexed to his German dominions the northern part (third) of the Sequanian territory, the modern Alsace. The distance from Vesontio to Caesar's camping-ground is in doubt. He says, *B. G.* I. 41, that the circuitous route he took, in order to have open country, was more than fifty miles. It is thought by many that this means that the distance by the route he took was greater by fifty miles than the distance by the most direct route. It is likely that the distance was 100 miles at least.

Here was fought Caesar's great battle with Ariovistus, and the German invasion of Gaul was checked and the career of Ariovistus practically ended. This battle was fought in September, and immediately afterwards the Roman army went into winter quarters.

Having called a general council of Gaul, the chiefs of the various states confer with Caesar secretly. Complaints about Ariovistus, a German king.

CHAPTER 30.

528. confecto: about the first of July. **Galliae:** i.e. Celtic Gaul. The other two divisions (see Chapter 1) had not yet fully realized Caesar's arrival.

529. gratulatum: § 275.

530. intellegere sese . . . tamen eam rem accidisse: (*saying that*) *they understood that,* (**tametsi—repetisset**), *this* (thing) *campaign nevertheless* (had happened) *had been.* **tametsi—repetisset:** § 198; direct discourse, **tametsi—repetisti, tamen ea res accidit,** *although you have sought satisfaction, nevertheless this thing has happened;* since the tenses are *present* perfect, this is a concessive sentence of the *present* time. **Helvetiorum, populi Romani:** § 42.

531. his: if this is translated before its antecedent, **Helvetiorum,** the noun should be used here and the pronoun afterward.

533. eo consilio: (this being their design), *with this design.* **florentissimis rebus:** (things being most flourishing), *though enjoying a season of great prosperity;* § 87.

534. uti: introduces a clause with four predicates, which explains **eo consilio; quem—iudicassent** is parenthetical and explains **locum;** § 203.

536. domicilio: § 32. **magna copia:** (the great supply), *the many localities that lay open to their choice.*

539. concilium: they wished to forestall objection to a convention on the part of Caesar by obtaining his consent beforehand, although technically he had nothing to do with the matter.

540. sese habere: see l. 530, **intellegere sese.** **liceret:** see vocabulary.

541. ex: *in accordance with.*

543. ne quis enuntiaret: (that not any one, etc.), *that no one should disclose* (*its proceedings*); this is the object of **sanxerunt;** §§ 139, 209. **nisi (ei) quibus mandatum esset (enuntiarent):** (unless those to whom it was ordered should disclose), *except those who were directed to do so;* §§ 23 and 242, 5.

Chapter 31.

545. eo concilio dimisso: the briefest possible way of saying that the assembly met and decided upon a plan of action, to be disclosed in the present chapter. **idem:** = **iidem.**

548. Caesari: § 28.

549. non minus quam: (not less . . . than), *as much . . . as.* **se laborare:** (*saying that*) *they strove and labored for.* **id:** § 8; it is explained by **ne—enuntiarentur,** and contrasted with **uti—impetrarent.**

550. dixissent: this would be the future perfect in direct discourse; (should have said), *were going to say.*

553. Galliae totius: i.e. eastern Gaul.

554. alterius: see vocabulary and § 40.

556. contenderent: translate by pluperfect. Latin emphasizes the

continuance, English the beginning, of the act. **factum esse:** *it came about;* the subject is the following clause.

558. postea quam: see vocabulary.

561. milium: § 35.

562. clientes: *dependent states.*

563. accepisse: sc. **eos** (i.e. **Aeduos eorumque socios**), as subject of **accepisse** and **amisisse,** modified by **pulsos;** (*that*) *they, having been routed, had suffered,* etc. **omnem:** the triple repetition of the word adds to the pathos of the complaint.

565. fractos: agreeing with (**eos**), which would be the antecedent of **qui,** and the subject of **coactos esse;** (*that*), *crushed* . . ., (*they*) *who,* etc. . . ., *had been forced,* etc.

567. obsides: (*as*) *hostages.*

569. sese, etc.: this indirect discourse is in apposition with **iure iurando,**—*that they would neither,* etc.

570. quo minus essent: § 210.

571. unum: *the only one.*

573. potuerit: §§ 168 and 152, note.

574. Romam: § 94.

575. postulatum: § 275.

576. peius: subject of **accidisse;** see vocabulary.

581. iuberet: notice the change of tense; direct discourse, **iubet,** *he is ordering;* indirect discourse, *he was ordering.* **mensibus:** § 107.

582. eum: i.e. Ariovistus.

583. futurum esse: *it would happen.* **quibus:** = **et iis,** *and for them;* § 201. **locus ac sedes:** see vocabulary under **sedes;** and § 280. **pararentur:** *was being provided.* **paucis annis:** §§ 89 and 105.

584. omnes: i.e. the natives.

585. neque enim: *for neither,* introducing a strong point of confirmation. **conferendum:** § 270.

586. Gallicum: sc. **agrum.** **hanc—suam:** i.e. **Gallorum.**

587. illa: *that* (*of the Germans*). **comparandum:** means nearly the same as **conferendum** and may be omitted in translation.

588. ut: in direct discourse **vicerit** would be indicative; hence **ut** means *as* or *when;* § 176. For tense of **vicerit,** see § 152, note.

590. nobilissimi cuiusque: § 140.

591. exempla cruciatusque: § 280. **edere:** *inflict publicly.*

592. hominem esse, etc.: observe this characterization of Ariovistus and see if it is borne out by subsequent proceedings.

593. imperia: (commands), *rule* or *authority.*

594. nisi—sit: § 242, 1. **quid:** § 139. **auxilii:** with **quid;** §§ 47 and 49. **Gallis:** § 31.

596. ut emigrent: in apposition with **idem;** *namely, emigrate;* § 213.

599. dubitare: sc. **se;** *that he did not doubt.* **Quin:** § 214. **de:** see vocabulary under **sumo.**

602. ne—traducatur: § 209.

603. Rhenum: §§ 10 and 11.

Chapter 32.

607. unos: see vocabulary.

609. quae—esset: with **miratus;** § 243.

610. respondere: § 258.

611. taciti: with an historical infinitive a predicate adjective is in the nominative like the subject; § 258.

613. hoc: *for this reason,* explained by **quod—horrerent.**

614. reliquorum: sc. **fortunam;** *that of the rest.*

616. crudelitatem: § 8. **velut si adesset:** § 196.

617. reliquis: indirect object; *to the rest.*

618. Sequanis: dat. of agent; *by the Sequanians.*

A conference, asked by Caesar, is refused by the king. Ambassadors are sent by Caesar. The reply of Ariovistus.

Chapter 33.

622. curae: see vocabulary and § 32. **futuram:** § 227.

623. se habere: (*saying that*) *he had.* **et:** *both.* **beneficio, auctoritate:** Caesar thought that Ariovistus might be influenced by the service Caesar had rendered him in getting for him the title "friend of the Roman people,"—a formal *recognition* of him, as Cuba was *recognized* by this country when fighting for independence; or if this did not weigh with Ariovistus, then perhaps the prestige which the Helvetian campaign had given Caesar would be just as effective in a different way.

624. Ariovistum facturum (esse): in apposition with **spem.**

625. secundum: see vocabulary. **multae res:** *many* (*other*) *considerations.*

626. qua re putaret: (why he should think), *to think;* § 208. **sibi:** § 31.

627. Aeduos teneri: object of **videbat.**

631. quod: relative, the antecedent being the indirect discourse, **Aeduos teneri** and **obsides esse**; translate, (*a condition of affairs*) *which.* **in**: *in the case of, under.* **populi**: (*as that*) *of*, etc.

632. sibi: § 33.

633. Germanos consuescere: these words and **multitudinem venire** taken together are the subject accusative of (**esse**) **periculosum,** which is indirect discourse governed by **videbat;** *he saw that it was dangerous that the Germans*, etc.

634. populo: § 33.

635. sibi: § 23.

636. quin exirent: § 214. **cum—occupavissent** should be translated before **quin.**

637. ut fecissent: indirect discourse, **ut fecerunt**; what then is the meaning of **ut** here? see l. 77, or vocabulary. See note on l. 768.

639. cum divideret: § 172.

640. Rhodanus: i.e. nothing but the Rhone; which we have been told (l. 100) was fordable. **rebus**: § 27, note. **occurrendum**: sc. **sibi esse**; see vocabulary.

642. ferendus: § 270.

Chapter 34.

644. ei: § 23. **ut mitteret, qui postularent, uti deligeret:** distinguish the use of these three clauses; §§ 208, 162; condense each to infinitive in translating.

646. utriusque: § 58; see vocabulary under **medius.** **colloquio:** § 32. **velle sese:** see l. 623, note to **se habere.**

647. summis utriusque rebus: (the most important matters of each), *matters of the greatest importance to each.*

648. si—esset: (that if there were any need to himself from Caesar), *that if he needed anything of Caesar;* § 30; for form of condition in protasis, see § 242, 2; for **venturum fuisse** in apodosis, see § 242, 4. **ipsi,** and **se** in ll. 649, 650, refer to Ariovistus. Why Ariovistus sent such a message is a matter of conjecture. In all probability it was merely for effect, intended to increase his prestige among his own people. He must have known, as his subsequent message shows, that the occasion was a serious one.

649. si—velit: (if he wished him at all), *if Caesar wanted anything of him;* § 242, 1. **quid:** § 13.

654. mirum: predicate adjective agreeing with clause **quid—esset,** subject accusative of **videri.**

655. quid Caesari negotii esset: (what of business there was to Caesar), *what business Caesar had;* §§ 30, 49, 243. **For the variations in sequence in this speech, see § 152.**

CHAPTER 35.

657. quoniam . . . affectus, (**cum—appellatus esset**), **hanc . . . gratiam referret,** (**ut—putaret**), **haec esse:** (*that*) *since . . . having been treated* (explained by the **cum** clause), *he returned this* (*sort of*) *thanks* (explained by the **ut** clause), THESE WERE THE THINGS. **tanto suo beneficio:** (with his so great kindness), *with such kindness on his part* (*and that of*, etc.).

658. consulatu suo: 59 B.C., one year before.

659. cum appellatus esset: § 172.

661. invitatus: (having been invited), *when asked to do so.* **de—cognoscendum:** *that he ought to talk or learn about their common interests.*

663. quam: § 139.

666. permitteret ut illis liceret: (allow that it might be permitted to them), *allow the Sequanians.* **illi:** i.e. the Sequanians. **eius:** i.e. Ariovistus.

667. iniuria: see vocabulary.

669. sibi populoque Romano cum eo: (to himself and the Roman people with him), *between him* (*on the one side*) *and himself and the Roman people* (*on the other*).

670. impetraret: subject, **Caesar.** **sese:** translate here.

672. provinciam: (*as a*) *province.* **quod:** § 215, 4. **commodo:** § 79.

674. se: a repetition of **sese,** l. 670, for emphasis; to be repeated in English for the same reason; *he, since,* etc., HE *would not,* etc.

CHAPTER 36.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given for comparison :

Ius **est** belli ut qui **vicerunt** eis quos **vicerunt** quem **ad** modum **velint imperent** ; item **populus Romanus** victis non ad alterius praescriptum . . . imperare **consuevit.** Si **ego** populo Romano non **praescribo** quem ad modum suo iure **utatur,** non **oportet me . . . in meo** iure impediri. **Aedui mihi,** quoniam belli fortunam **temptaverunt** et . . . superati **sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti.** Magnam **Caesar** iniuriam **facit** qui suo adventu vectigalia **mihi** deteriora **faciat.** Aeduis (**ego**) obsides non **reddam,** neque his . . . bellum **inferam,** si in eo **manebunt** quod con-

venit stipendiumque . . . **pendent** ; si id non **fecerint,** longe eis **fraternum** nomen populi Romani **aberit.** Quod **mihi** Caesar **denuntiat se** Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, **nemo mecum** sine **sua** pernicie **contendit.** Cum **volet, congrediatur** ; **intelleget** quid invicti Germani . . . qui inter annos xiv tectum non **subierunt (subierint)** virtute **possint.**

677. qui: sc. **ei** as antecedent. **iis:** § 23. **vellent:** § 243.

678. ad: *at, according to.*

679. alterius: *another's ;* the genitive of **alius** is not in common use, so **alterius** takes its place.

680. si praescriberet, oportere: § 242, 1.

681. suo, uteretur: plural in translation, because referring to **populus Romanus. Suo** below refers to Ariovistus.

685. facere: in the direct discourse, **facit** is progressive, *is doing;* hence, in indirect discourse, *was doing.* **se :** i.e. Ariovistus. **qui :** *because he ;* § 173. **sibi:** § 28. **deteriora:** § 16.

686. non: very emphatic. **neque,** etc.: *but on the other hand he would not.*

687. si—manerent: § 242, 5; see also vocabulary.

688. convenisset: vocabulary; so with **fraternum, afuturum** below.

689. iis : § 28.

690. populi Romani: this modifies **fraternum** as if it were **fratrum,** to which it is equivalent. **sibi:** § 23.

691. se: refers to Caesar. **neminem contendisse:** in such a sentence both English and Latin may omit what is logically the main clause; *in regard to the fact that Caesar had threatened him,* (he would say) *that no one,* etc. **se cum :** refers to Ariovistus.

692. sua: antecedent **neminem;** translate, *without being annihilated.* **congrederetur:** §§ 245 and 226.

694. qui, etc.: this he states as evidence of their vigor.

695. possent: *could (effect).*

Alarmed by the complaints of the Aeduans, Caesar hastens against Ariovistus and occupies Vesontio.

Chapter 37.

697. Aedui: sc. **veniebant.**

698. questum: § 275. **quod,** etc.: §§ 170, 229.

700. datis: *by giving;* § 264, 6. **Treveri:** sc. **veniebant questum.**

704. vehementer commotus: the only use of this expression in Caesar. It marks a very serious condition of affairs, in Caesar's opinion, for he was very seldom *seriously alarmed.* **ne:** § 159.

706. resisti posset: sc. **iis;** (it could be resisted them), *they could be resisted;* §§ 23 and 26.

707. quam—potuit: see **quam potest,** l. 112.

Chapter 38.

709. tridui: §§ 44 and 45. **viam:** § 12, note.

711. Vesontionem: Caesar's description fits very nearly the site of the modern French town of Besançon (see map), and excavations have brought to light many remains of an ancient town.

713. magnopere praecavendum: (it ought to be guarded in advance earnestly), *that he ought to take great precaution.*

714. usui: see vocabulary and § 32.

717. ut (flumen) circumductum: (as a river drawn around), *as though its course had been described.*

719. pedum: §§ 45 and 70. The distance given in the manuscripts is 600 feet, but since the distance now is found to be nearly 1,600 feet, it is thought that the M of the Roman MDC may have disappeared in process of manuscript transmission.

720. altitudine: § 80. **radices:** accusative. **ripae:** nominative.

722. hunc (montem): § 11. **circumdatus:** (having been put around), *surrounding.*

Panic in the Roman camp; Caesar's speech, and march against Ariovistus.

Chapter 39.

727. percontatione, etc.: the soldiers naturally inquired about this unknown foe from those traders who always follow and mingle with an army.

728. qui—praedicabant: this with the following parenthesis would best be omitted until the rest of the sentence is understood. **magnitudine:** § 80; so **virtute** and **exercitatione,** all predicate with **esse.**

731. cum his congressos: (having met with them), *when they encountered them in battle.* This, then, is a statement of the Gauls, not of the traders.

732. timor, etc.: i.e. the army was thrown into a panic. The description that follows, while very brief, shows exactly the way in which

a body of men becomes demoralized. You can see the spread of the panic in each successive sentence, until it culminates in the report (really a threat) that not a man will stir from Vesontio except to retreat.

733. non : modifies **mediocriter ;** another example of litotes; see l. 188.

735. tribunis, etc.: see introduction.

736. amicitiae causa: (for the sake of friendship), *out of friendship;* these men were politicians, who had attached themselves to Caesar for the patronage he had to bestow; they were after what they could get for themselves, were ready to desert when danger threatened, and Caesar is either ironical or politic in using this expression.

737. alius: see vocabulary. **quorum:** §§ 47 and 136.

738. diceret: § 229; singular, agreeing with **alius,** but may be translated plural. **voluntate:** *with his consent ;* § 86.

744. castris: § 92.

745. horum vocibus ac timore; *from their expressions of fear;* § 280.

747. centuriones, etc.: these officers had risen from the ranks, in contrast to those mentioned in l. 735.

748. qui ex his: *those of these who;* § 53.

751. ut posset: § 211.

754. dicto: see vocabulary under **audio** and § 33.

Chapter 40.

756. convocatis, adhibitis; *calling, admitting.*

757. omnium ordinum: as a rule only centurions of the first rank were admitted to such assemblies, but in this case Caesar wanted to get at a man in every maniple, so that his words could reach the whole army more quickly; not so much for the purpose of argument as to inspire every officer in the army with confidence instead of fear, through his own wonderful personality and magnetism.

758. vehementer eos incusavit: *he lectured them severely,* or *he reproached them bitterly.* In the same way that the successive steps in the spread of the panic are shown in Chapter 39, note the course of Caesar's speech to quiet it. It is wonderfully shrewd.

758-760. Censure for breach of discipline. Obedience was the first duty of a Roman soldier. They had no business to ask or even to think where they were going or why.

759. ducerentur: § 243. **sibi quaerendum (esse):** (it ought to be asked by them), *they ought to ask.* **putarent:** § 229.

760-765. But (since they had made these things their business) he wanted to tell them that Ariovistus was not going to fight at all; he would find there was no reason for it; so there was no need for them to be afraid of those Germans.

760. Ariovistum appetisse: all the rest of the speech is in indirect discourse; the introductory conjunction *that* of English indirect discourse may be omitted. **se consule:** § 88.

761. hunc: § 128.

762. iudicaret: direct discourse, **iudicet;** § 155. **sibi—persuaderi:** (it was persuaded him indeed), HE, *indeed, was persuaded* (*that*); § 26.

764. eum: *Ariovistus.*

765-780. But just supposing (merely for the sake of argument), that Ariovistus was fool enough to fight, what in the world were they afraid of? The Cimbri and Teutones, a generation before, and more lately the Gladiators, many of whom were Germans, trained to Roman methods of fighting, had gone down before Roman armies; and two weeks ago they themselves had annihilated the Helvetii, who had fought on equal terms with these very Germans.

765. quod: see vocabulary.

766. intulisset: *did declare war;* § 242, 5. **quid—vererentur:** see synopsis above; § 228.

767. sua: *their own.* **ipsius:** *his;* § 132. By this he puts the soldiers in the position of going back on themselves as well as on him.

768. desperarent: § 155. **factum:** supply **esse.** **hostis:** § 40. **periculum:** see vocabulary. Rome (all but the capitol) had once been taken and sacked by the Gauls, in 390 B.C. After that time, the words *Gaul* and *German* struck terror to the Romans. A similar threatened invasion by the Cimbri and Teutones had been checked in northern Italy (102 and 101 B.C.) by Marius, to the intense relief of Rome. **memoria:** § 105.

771. meritus: sc. **esse,** forming complementary infinitive with **videbatur.** **videbatur:** §§ 182 and 240. **factum:** supply **eius hostis periculum** from l. 768. **servili:** **quos** follows as if we had **servorum,** to which **servili** is equivalent.

772. aliquid: *somewhat;* § 13.

773. ex quo: *from this* (*experience*).

774. quantum—constantia: (how much of good firmness has in itself), *how much advantage there is in firmness.*

775. quos, hos: (*those*) *whom, these;* the antecedent is postponed in Latin, and repeated in English, for emphasis.

777. quibuscum saepe numero Helvetii congressi plerumque superarint: (with whom the Helvetii having met had generally defeated), *whom the Helveti had very often encountered . . . and generally defeated.*

779. exercitui: § 33.

780–788. It was true that Ariovistus had defeated the Gauls at Magetobriga; but it was by a threadbare stratagem, which he would scarcely try to repeat against the Romans.

780. quos: *any,* i.e. of these men who were so scared. **proelium:** see synopsis above, and l. 589.

781. hos: antecedent **quos,** l. 780. **posse:** the structure of the rest of the sentence, in indirect discourse after **reperire,** is as follows: **Ariovistum, cum tenuisset . . . (Gallos) desperantes et dispersos adortum, vicisse:** (*that*) *Ariovistus, after he had,* etc., *having attacked the Gauls when they were despairing and were dispersed, had conquered them.*

782. defatigatis Gallis: ablative absolute, *when the Gauls,* etc.

783. castris ac paludibus: § 92. **sui:** § 43.

784. de: *of.*

786. cui rationi, hac (ratione): *by this stratagem for which.* Compare **si quos . . . hos,** above.

787. locus: *opportunity.* **ipsum:** Ariovistus.

788. capi: see vocabulary.

788–794. The supply of grain would be all right; three tribes were furnishing it. As for the road, they would soon have a chance to judge for themselves.

788. rei: *concerning,* etc.; § 40.

790. facere arroganter: *were assuming a good deal.* **cum viderentur:** *in seeming;* § 172.

791. praescribere: i. e. *to him.* **curae:** § 32.

793. de itinere: see synopsis above. This is a good example of Caesar's "nerve." He knew nothing at all about the country into which they were going, and he could rely on no one except Diviciacus to tell him anything. But so thoroughly had he shamed and at the same time encouraged the officers that, when he came to the one point on which he could not give them assurances, he felt that he could just pass over it, though a few minutes before it had been one chief reason for the panic.

794–800. It was said that the army would mutiny if ordered to advance. He did not believe it, for an army never mutinied except for one of two reasons, neither of which applied in his case.

794. quod non fore dicantur: *in regard to the fact that* (they were said not to be about to be) *it was said that they would not be;* Latin uses the

personal construction where English prefers the *impersonal.* **dicto:** see l. 754.

795. nihil: § 13.

796. scire, quibuscumque . . . aut fortunam (eis) defuisse: *he knew that, to whomsoever . . . either fortune had failed them.* **male:** see vocabulary.

797. vita: § 105.

798. innocentiam: Caesar has said that an army loses confidence in a general because he has been proven either *inefficient* (**male re gesta**) or *dishonest* (**aliquo—convictam**). He now speaks first of his *honesty,* then of his *success.* This shift in the order is rhetorical.

800-806. So he would put them to the test at once and find out immediately whether they were a set of cowards or not. The tenth legion, he knew, would go with him and the rest might do as they chose.

800. quod: *what.*

801. collaturus fuisset: (he had been going to put off), *he had intended to put off;* § 277.

803. utrum—an: double or alternative question; in direct discourse **utrum** is not translated.

804. quod: cf. l. 765.

806. sibi eam futuram: (it would be to him), *he would make it;* § 30.

807. legioni: § 23. Though the Latin style requires the verb at the end of the clause, the position here lays particular stress on **praecipue** and **maxime.**

Chapter 41.

811. princeps : § 115.

813. iudicium: see vocabulary. **fecisset:** § 170.

814. paratissimam: see vocabulary.

816. egerunt: *arranged.* **satis facerent:** see vocabulary under **satis,** and § 208. **se:** (*saying that*) *they,* etc. **nec umquam** = **numquam.**

817. de summa: *as to the conduct.* **suum:** predicate after **esse.**

818. imperatoris: § 46; in the same construction as **suum,** one being a possessive adjective, the other a possessive case.

820. ei: *in him;* §§ 23 and 24.

821. circuitu amplius: (*though*) *by a circuit of more than,* etc.; § 70. **locis:** § 92. The idea is that Caesar thought best to march through an open country even if he had to take a roundabout way to do it.

822. duceret: § 157; limits **exquisito.**

Caesar's conference with Ariovistus is broken off by an attack of the Germans.

Chapter 42.

827. **quod:** (*saying that*) *what.* **postulasset:** the subject is **Caesar.** **per se:** *as far as he was concerned.*

828. **quoniam accessisset:** §§ 170 and 228. **se:** supply another **se** as subject of **posse.**

831. **petenti:** sc. **sibi,** (to him asking), *when he asked it.*

832. **magnam—veniebat:** see vocabulary under **venio,** and note the tense. **pro—beneficiis:** see note on l. 657; translate after the *that* suggested in the next note.

834. **fore uti desisteret:** (that it would be that he would desist) *that he would give up;* **fore** is in indirect discourse, in apposition with **spem. uti—desisteret** is the subject accusative of **fore;** § 213, 2. **colloquio:** § 32.

837. **vereri:** see note on **se,** l. 816.

838. **ne:** § 211. **uterque venerit:** § 155, 1

839. **non esse venturum:** supply introductory verb again as for **vereri.**

843. **equitibus:** § 29. **detractis:** ablative absolute with **equis;** translate coördinate with **imponere,** *to take—and place.* **eo:** adv. (thither), *on them,* i.e. **in his equis.**

845. **quid:** § 13. **facto:** § 74.

846. **non irridicule:** another example of litotes; see note on l. 188.

847. **ex militibus:** § 53.

848. **facere:** progressive, *was doing;* direct discourse, **facit,** *is doing.* **pollicitum:** (having promised), *while he had promised merely that,* etc.

849. **ad equum rescribere:** this is Caesar's famous pun (hence **irridicule** above); and like almost every play upon words it is untranslatable. The point is that these three words were the regular formula for enrolling a man among the knights (**equites**) at Rome, while the soldier considered that the phrase also described pretty well what Caesar was doing with the legion. Translate, *he was actually knighting them.*

Chapter 43.

850. **terrenus:** (of earth), perhaps *smooth.*

851. **spatium:** § 99. **castris:** here plural in sense.

862. **cum haberet:** § 199. **postulandi:** sc. **aditum.**

864. quam: *how.*
865. cum: *and.*
866. quotiens: adv., (how often); translate as adjective, *how frequent.*
867. ut: *how.*
869. prius quam appetissent: § 181.
871. sui nihil: (nothing of their own), *none of their prestige.* **gratia:** § 82.
872. auctiores: *more (and more) increased.*
873. iis: § 29. **posset:** §§ 228, 243 and 244. **postulavit eadem:** (demanded the same things), *made the same demands;* § 12.
877. quos: § 139.

Chapter 44.

878–879. pauca respondit, multa praedicavit; cf. **postulavit eadem,** ll. 873, 874; § 12.
881. spe praemiisque: hendiadys = **spe praemiorum;** § 280.
882. ipsis: i.e. **Gallis.**
884. capere: *exacted.* **quod:** antecedent, **stipendium.**
889. si velint: § 242, 1.
892. ornamento, etc.: § 32.
893. petisse: sc. **eam** (i.e. **amicitiam populi Romani**), as object. **si remittatur:** § 242, 5.
896. appetierit: § 228. **quod:** § 215, 3.
897. traducat: progressive; cf. l. 848; so **facere,** in the next line. **sui muniendi causa:** §§ 55 and 272.
899. quod: § 215, 2, *b.*
900. defenderit: sc. **bellum,** and see vocabulary.
903. quid—vellet: see vocabulary under **volo,** and § 28. **sibi** refers to Caesar, **suas** to Ariovistus.
904. veniret: §§ 243 and 244. **hanc Galliam:** i.e. Celtic Gaul, contrasted with Transalpine Gaul; the latter was limited, as Ariovistus considered, to the small territory near the Mediterranean coast and bounded by the Rhone; this was all that had really been subdued to Rome before Caesar came.
905. ut oporteret: (as it ought not to be yielded to him, i.e. by the Roman people), *as we ought not to yield to him;* **ut** would have the indicative in direct discourse.
909. rerum: § 58. **ut non sciret:** (that he did not know), *as not to know;* §§ 165 and 166.
913. debere: see vocabulary. **simulata Caesarem amicitia:**

(that) *Caesar under the pretence of friendship, had,* etc. When an ablative absolute has a word inserted which does not belong to it, this word is almost always one which denotes the real agent of the participle; so here the friendship was feigned by Caesar.

914. sui opprimendi causa: see l. 897.

915. nisi decedat: § 245, 5.

916. pro: *as.*

917. eum: i.e. Caesar. **interfecerit:** § 245, 5. The statement here given was probably true, but Caesar had as little fear of his enemies at Rome as of Ariovistus, and he publishes this threat to show it.

918. se id compertum habere: (he had this found out), *he had found this out;* § 266.

921. discessisset: same construction as **interfecerit** above; these two verbs show how little the law of sequence is regarded in a long speech. Other examples may easily be found.

922. praemio: § 75.

923. eius: *on his* (Caesar's) *part;* § 39.

Chapter 45.

926. qua re posset: § 243. The clause is in apposition with **sententiam.**

927. uti desereret: (that he desert), *him to desert.* **optime meritos:** *well-deserving.*

929. Ariovisti: § 46.

930. quibus: § 23. With **redegisset** we ought strictly to have **quos,** and with **imposuisset** we would have **quibus** again, but with different construction; English uses the objective in each case.

932. quod: *therefore.* **si oporteret:** § 242, 1. **antiquissimum—tempus:** (each most ancient time), *priority of arrival in Gaul.*

935. si oporteret: § 242, 1. **liberam:** i.e. from such encroachments as that of Ariovistus. Caesar does not allow for a moment that he is taking away the freedom of Gaul, but poses as the champion of an invaded country.

936. victam: (*though*) *conquered.* **suis:** *its own,* referring to **Galliam.** **voluisset:** § 228; the subject is **is** (i.e. the senate), *it.*

The argument beginning with l. 929 is as follows: Rome had established a claim to Gaul before Ariovistus, though she had not made it a province; so Ariovistus had no claim on the ground of previous possession. Furthermore, if he still paid any regard to the Roman senate, he was in the wrong, for the senate had taken the ground that Gaul

was to remain free. Caesar's coming was no encroachment, that of Ariovistus was.

Chapter 46.

937. propius tumulum: § 33, note.

940. suis: § 23.

941. quod: § 139.

942. legionis: § 40.

943. committendum ut dici posset: (that it ought to be permitted that it could be said), *that he should give the enemy a chance to say;* the subject of **committendum** is **ut dici posset,** and the subject of **dici posset** is the following infinitive clause.

944. pulsis hostibus: *when they were routed.*

946. usus: see vocabulary.

947. Gallia: § 65. **Romanis:** § 27. **interdixisset:** § 243.

948. ut: *how.*

949. multo: § 81.

950. exercitui: § 27.

Two Gauls, sent to Ariovistus as ambassadors, are thrown into chains.

Chapter 47.

951. biduo: § 81.

952. coeptae essent: see vocabulary.

953. uti—constitueret: object of velle; § 208.

954. minus: *less,* i.e. than the other proposition; translate, *not.* **ex legatis:** § 53.

955. Caesari visa non est: *there did not seem to Caesar* (*to be*).

956. diei: § 56.

957. quin conicerent: *from hurling;* § 214.

958. legatus ex suis: as we say, "a lieutenant of his"; *one of his legati.*

959. missurum (esse) cum: (would send with), *could not send without.*

960. visum est: subject, mittere, l. 866.

961. virtute: § 80.

962. civitate: §§ 20 and 21.

963. et: *both.*

964. qua multa utebatur: (which he used much), *which he spoke freely;* **multa** agrees with **qua.**

965. in eo: (in the case of him), *in his case.* **Germanis:** § 30.

970. **quid venirent:** *why did they come:* §§ 243 and 244.

971. **conantes:** sc. **eos:** (trying), *when they tried.*

A cavalry battle.

CHAPTER 48.

972. **promovit:** Caesar had been marching northeast toward Ariovistus. The latter now moves forward, i.e. south. **milibus:** § 81.

973. **diei:** § 56.

974. **traduxit:** he probably took his line of march some distance up the slope of neighboring hills, so that, if Caesar tried to attack him, as he undoubtedly would have done had he tried to pass in the plain, the Romans would have to fight uphill. Thus he really outgeneralled Caesar.

976. **supportaretur:** § 203; the tense indicates continued action; use past progressive to translate.

980. **ei:** § 30. **non deesset = esset;** litotes again.

981. **diebus:** § 105; contrast with **dies,** l. 977.

984. **numero:** § 82.

985. **singuli singulos:** *each selecting a man.* **cum:** *in company with.*

986. **versabantur:** § 148; so with the following imperfects.

987. **hi:** i.e. **pedites.** **quid erat durius:** (there was anything harder), *the engagement was unusually sharp.* **quid, qui:** § 139. **concurrebant:** *ran to their aid.*

988. **quo:** see vocabulary.

989. **longius:** *further* (*than usual*), and so **celerius.** **prodeundum:** § 278.

990. **exercitatione:** *as a result of their practice;* § 84. The method of fighting here described was afterwards adopted by Caesar.

Ariovistus attacks Caesar's smaller camp, but does not dare to fight a pitched battle.

CHAPTER 49.

992. **castris:** § 92. **ut—prohiberetur:** this shows that Ariovistus was suceeding in his design; see ll. 972–977.

993. **ultra:** i.e. to the south, along the line of his communications.

994. passus: § 99.

995. castris: § 32 or § 33.

999. numero: § 82. **hominum milia expedita:** (light-armed thousands of men), *thousand light-armed troops.*

1000. quae prohiberent: § 162.

1001. nihilo: see vocabulary and § 81.



LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.

Chapter 50.

1006. instituto suo: § 86.

1007. paulum: § 99.

1009. circiter: this adverb modifies the adjectival idea in **meridie.**

1012. pugnatum est: § 144, 2.

1013. multis — vulneribus: (many wounds having been both inflicted and received), *after an indecisive engagement.*

1015. quam ob rem: see vocabulary under ob and § 243.

1016. quod—esset: § 215, 2, *a.*

1017. ut—declararent: § 213.

1018. utrum—esset: § 243.

Being finally forced to fight, the Germans are conquered and flee to the Rhine. The Gallic ambassadors are freed.

Chapter 51.

1021. praesidio: § 32.

1024. minus valebat: (was less strong), *was weaker.* **multitudine:** § 82. **pro hostium numero:** (in proportion to the number of the enemy), *than the enemy.*

1031. eo: (thither), *on these*; see l. 843.

1032. proficiscentes: (setting out), *as they advanced.*

1033. manibus: § 78. **flentes:** with quae. **se:** i.e. **mulieres.**

Chapter 52.

1035. legionibus: § 27. **quaestorem:** Caesar perhaps had only five *legati,* and had to use his *quaestor* as general officer for the other legion.

1037. a: § 98.

1039. ita: with **acriter.**

1040. itaque: = **et ita,** with **repente celeriterque.**

1041. ut daretur: §§ 165 and 166.

1043. ex: *as a result of, according to;* . § 85.

1045. insilirent: § 168.

1047. a: § 98; see l. 1037.

1051. tertiam aciem: for the use of the third line in battle, see introduction.

1052. laborantibus: see vocabulary. **subsidio:** § 32.

This was the end of the battle. "The victory was decisive. The Suevi, who were on the point of crossing the Rhine, lost heart and set out homewards. And Caesar—where was he to go? What was he to make of his victory? It would be fatal to withdraw his legions into the Province. That would be to invite the German to attempt a new invasion: to confess weakness to the Gaul. Fortune beckoned him on. Gaul was disunited: her foremost state was on his side: and others felt the spell of his success. For the present indeed he must return to Cisalpine Gaul to conduct the civil duties of his government and watch the politics of Italy : but leaving his legions under the command of Labienus, he quartered them for the winter in the stronghold of Vesontio. In this last act of his we may read the registration of a great resolve: and doubtless he reflected, as he travelled southward, upon the magnitude of the undertaking to which he had committed himself. For to all who had eyes to see and ears to hear he had made it evident that his purpose was nothing less than the conquest of Gaul."—Holmes.

Chapter 53.

1056. viribus: § 72.

1057. inventis, reppererunt: invenio means *find* (by chance), *come upon;* **reperio,** *find* (by seeking).

1060. consecuti interfecerunt: (having followed, killed), *followed and killed.*

1061. natione: § 82. **duxerat:** *had brought.*

1063. duxerat: sc. **in matrimonium.**

1064. filiae: sc. **fuerunt,** from l. 1060.

1066. trinis: (triple), *three sets of.* **hostes:** object of **insequentem.**

1071. restitutum: sc. **et,** connecting with **ereptum. calamitate.** *loss.* **tanta:** (so great *as his*), *his great.*

1073. consultum (esse): impersonal;—(it had been consulted), *the Germans had consulted.*

1075. beneficio: see vocabulary.

The Suebi return home. The army is stationed in winter quarters. Caesar hastens into nearer Gaul.

Chapter 54.

1077. **Suebi:** the most powerful German tribe; see ll. 700-708.

1078. **quos:** *that they;* § 136.

1079. **Ubii:** the most civilized German tribe. **Rhenum:** § 33, note. **perterritos:** sc. **esse.**

1081. **paulo:** § 81.

1084. **ad conventus agendos:** see vocabulary under **ago;** § 271.

BOOK II.

57 B.C.

For the heading **Commentarius Secundus**, see note on similar heading for Book I. Those who have not studied the first book should read the summaries of the two campaigns given on pp. 3 and 28.

I. THE WAR WITH THE BELGIANS.

CHAPTERS 1–33.

The campaign of 58 B.C. had brought to Caesar the submission of central Gaul, at least for the time being. But the Belgians were as yet unterrified. They formed a league to resist the further progress of Caesar and, if possible, to drive him from the country. The Remi cast in their lot with Caesar. Every other Belgian tribe joined the league against him. Galba, king of the Suessiones, was chosen commander-in-chief, and was able to muster more than 200,000 men, while Caesar had less than 50,000.

But Caesar was not caught napping for a moment. He made preparations during the late winter and crossed from Cisalpine Gaul in the early spring. He marched from the country of the Sequani, entered the territory of the Remi and remained there some days. His headquarters probably were near Durocortorum (Rheims), their chief town.

Hearing that the Belgae were marching against him, he crossed the Axona by a bridge which was within an easy march of the eastern frontier of the Suessiones, and there, close to the right bank of the river, pitched his camp. The camp was on a hill, which, with the defences which he constructed, is described in Chapter 8. It was probably situated near the modern town of Berry-au-Bac, about seven miles from Bibrax, a stronghold of the Remi, which the Belgae proceeded to attack.

Caesar came to the assistance of the garrison and defeated the Belgae, but did not care to attack the camp of so vast a host. The armies faced each other for some time, neither caring to make an advance, although the Roman cavalry was making havoc with the Belgian forces. Caesar at length led his army back into camp.

The Belgae finally moved down the Axona about two miles, to a place where the river was fordable. Caesar attacked them while

they were crossing with his cavalry and light-armed troops and inflicted serious losses upon them. Disheartened by this, they decided to disband and go home. Caesar pursued with his cavalry and slaughtered them in great numbers. He then pushed on to the westward, down the river to Noviodunum, the stronghold of the Suessiones. This town surrendered shortly after and Caesar moved on still farther westward to Bratuspantium, chief town of the Bellovaci, which also surrendered. Continuing northward, he received the submission of the Ambiani.

"But now he learned that his progress was about to be disputed. On the northeast, among the inhospitable forests of the Sabis (Sambre) and the marshes of the Scaldis (Scheldt), dwelt a tribe whose primitive virtues had not yet been enfeebled by contact with civilization. No traders were suffered to cross their frontier, for fear the luxuries of which the rude warriors were still ignorant might sap their manhood." These people would not yield without a stubborn resistance, and here was fought one of the hottest fights of Caesar's career. After the battle, Caesar moved eastward against the Aduatuci, whose stronghold was finally taken; and the campaign of 57 B.C. ended in the complete overthrow of the Belgian Confederacy.

Confederation of the Belgians, with the exception of the Remi, who intrust themselves to Caesar's protection.

Chapter 1.

1. **cum esset:** §182. **citeriore Gallia:** this was the part of modern Italy north of the Po. **ita:** omit in translation. **uti:** for the meaning with the indicative, see vocabulary. **supra demonstravimus:** this refers to the closing statement of Book I.

2. **afferebantur, fiebat:** note the imperfect tense used of repeated action; §148.

3. **certior:** see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. **omnes Belgas coniurare:** in direct discourse, **omnes Belgae coniurant,** progressive, *all the Belgians are uniting;* hence in indirect discourse, *that all the Belgians were uniting;* it is governed by **certior fiebat,** an expression of *saying.* If indirect discourse has not been studied before, see §§ 217–246.

4. **quam:** subject accusative of **esse;** it agrees with **partem,** but in English we must make it agree with its antecedent and say *whom.* **dixeramus:** see Book I, Chapter 1. In such an expression the English prefers the present perfect, which the Latin may use, as in l. 2, above.

5. **dare**: like **coniurare**; see l. 3. For the phrase **inter se dare**, see vocabulary under **inter**.

6. **coniurandi**: §§ 40 and 267. **has esse**: indirect discourse, like **coniurare** and **dare**; *that these were*, etc.; for the case, see § 1. **quod vererentur, quod sollicitarentur**: substantive clauses in apposition with **causas**: §§ 215, 2, *a*, 170 and 228. **ne adducerentur**: § 211.

7. **omni pacata Gallia**: (all Gaul having been "pacified"), *now that all* (*Celtic*) *Gaul was subdued*. For the sense in which **Gallia** is used, see notes on Book I, Chapter 1. **ad**: *against*.

8. **ab non nullis Gallis**: § 68.

9. **qui**: sc. **eis** as antecedent, in distributive apposition with **non nullis Gallis** (§ 4); *those who*. **Germanos versari noluerant**: § 257. The subjunctive might have been expected instead of **noluerant, ferebant**, etc. (§ 228). In using the indicative, Caesar gives the explanations as a fact; § 170.

10. **hiemare, inveterascere**: progressive, like **coniurare**, l. 5.

11. **qui**: see note, l. 9. **mobilitate**, etc.: § 84. **ferebant, studebant** and **occupabantur**: these imperfects denote a continued condition; § 148.

12. **novis imperiis**: see vocabulary under **novus**, and § 23. **ab non nullis**: this is in addition to those designated by the **non nullis** of l. 8.

13. **ad conducendos homines**: § 272.

14. **regna**: plural, because the Latin thinks of a **regnum** in each state; translate, *the power in individual states*.

15. **imperio nostro**: *under our rule*; a combination of the idea of time and cause: §§ 84 and 89.

This chapter means that the Belgians feared "(1) annexation, (2) foreign garrisons, (3) repression of irregular native greatness founded on birth or wealth."—MOBERLEY.

CHAPTER 2.

17. **duas legiones novas**: the thirteenth and fourteenth; he already had six in transalpine Gaul, numbered seventh to twelftl inclusive; see Book I, Chapter 10.

18. **inita aestate**: ablative absolute; see vocabulary under **ineo**.

19. **qui deduceret**: §§ 156, 162 and 163. **legatum**: §§ 1 and 2.

20. **cum primum inciperet**: (when first began), *as soon as there began*; § 182. This would be late in June; see Book I, Chapter 16. **cum primum** almost always takes the indicative.

21. **dat negotium**: see vocabulary under **negotium**, and §147.

22. **Belgis**: § 33. **uti cognoscant, faciant**: in apposition with **negotium**: § 208. **quae gerantur**: § 203.

24. **de**: *of*. **certiorem**: see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. **manus, exercitum**: the former refers to small numbers of men from single localities, the latter to the force that was organized when the small bands had been drilled and brought together. So in this country in 1861 companies were recruited in towns and villages, and regiments were organized in the cities, which were afterwards united into brigades, divisions and corps. **cogi, conduci**: progressive passive: *were being collected*, etc.

25. **dubitandum (sibi esse)**: §278.

26. **quin proficisceretur**: § 214. **re frumentaria comparata**: (a grain supply having been prepared), *after he had provided for a supply of grain.*

27. **castra movet**: (he moves camp), *he breaks up his winter quarters.* **diebus**: §§ 89 and 105.

Chapter 3.

29. **cum venissent**: § 182. **opinione**: see vocabulary and § 69.

30. **Galliae**: § 33. **ex Belgis**: § 53.

31. **primos**: § 111.

32. **qui dicerent**: §§156, 162 and 163. The rest of the chapter is indirect discourse. For the use to be made in study of the direct form given below, see Book I, l. 224.

Nos (§ 222) **nostraque** (like **nos**) omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani **permittimus** (§ 237); neque [**nos**] (§§ 222 and 122) cum Belgis reliquis **consensimus** (like **permittimus**) neque contra populum Romanum **coniuravimus, paratique sumus** et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare: **reliqui omnes Belgae** (§ 237) in armis **sunt, Germanique,** qui cis Rhenum **incolunt** (§§ 239 and 202), sese cum his **coniunxerunt, tantusque est** eorum omnium **furor** ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque **nostros,** qui eodem iure et isdem legibus **utuntur** (like **incolunt**), unum imperium unumque magistratum **nobiscum habent, deterrere potuerimus** (§§ 239 and 165) quin cum his **consentiant** (§§ 239 and 214).

32. **se**: this is object, as shown by **suaque omnia** (§ 111); another **se** is to be understood as subject accusative of **permittere**; *that they intrusted,* etc.

35. et: see note, Book I, l. 410. **dare**: this and the three following infinitives are complementary to **paratos**, which is to be considered as a predicate adjective.

36. facere: see vocabulary. **oppidis**: §92. **frumento**: §71. **recipere, iuvare**: supply object.

37. esse, coniunxisse, esse: these are infinitives of indirect discourse after **dicerent**, like **permittere**, etc.

38. cis: *on this side of*, i.e. on the side towards Rome, the southwestern side. **incolant**: §228.

40. ut potuerint: §§ 151, 152, note, 165 and 166. **Suessiones**: accusative; this may be translated after **ut ne quidem**, then the following appositives and clauses, finally **deterrere potuerint**, *could they prevent.*

41. iure: § 73. **isdem**: = **iisdem**. **utantur**: § 228; after it supply **et qui**, with **habeant**.

43. quin consentirent: § 214.

The origin of the Belgians and their forces.

CHAPTER 4.

44. ab his: § 67. **quae, quantae**: interrogative adjectives.

45. essent: § 243. **quid**: interrogative pronoun; contrast with **quae** above. **quid possent**: (what they were able), *how strong they were;* §13. **sic reperiebat**: the direct discourse of the rest of the chapter would be as follows:

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque antiquitus **traducti** propter loci fertilitatem ibi **consederunt**, Gallosque qui ea loca **incolebant expulerunt, solique sunt** qui patrum nostrorum memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos fines ingredi prohibuerint: qua ex re **fit uti** . . . **magnam** sibi auctoritatem . . . **sumant**. De numero eorum omnia (**nos**) **habemus** explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit **cognovimus**. Plurimum inter eos **Bellovaci . . . valent**; **hi possunt** conficere armata milia centum, **polliciti** (**sunt**) ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi **postulant**. Suessiones **nostri sunt finitimi**; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros **possident**. Apud eos **fuit rex** nostra etiam memoria **Diviciacus**, totius Galliae **potentissimus**, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium **obtinuit**; nunc **est rex Galba**; ad hunc . . . summa totius belli . . . **defertur**; oppida **habent** numero duodecim, **pollicentur** milia armata quinquaginta: totidem **Nervii**, qui maxime feri inter ipsos **habentur**, longissimeque **absunt**; quindecim milia **Atrebates, Ambiani** XXV milia, **Morini**,

etc. . . . Condrusos, Eburones, etc. . . . qui . . . Germani **appellantur arbitramur ad** XL miiia.

46. ab Germanis: § 67.

48. Gallos: object of **expulisse; Belgas** is the subject of all the infinitives in this sentence. **solos:** *the only ones.*

49. patrum: § 39. **memoria:** see vocabulary and §§ 89 and 105. **omni Gallia vexata:** *when all,* etc.; §§ 87 and 264, 1.

50. ingredi prohibuerint; see vocabulary under **prohibeo,** and §168. Verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid* (e.g. **iubeo** and **prohibeo)** govern the infinitive as a rule; **impero,** which takes an ut clause, means *command.*

51. qua ex re fieri: (from which fact it was happening), *the result was;* the subject accusative of **fieri** is the clause **uti—sumerent** (§ 213). **rerum:** § 40; contrast with **patrum,** l. 49. **memoria:** § 84.

53. omnia habere explorata: § 266.

54. propterea: modifies **habere.**

55. coniuncti: agrees with the subject of **cognoverint. quantam —polliciti sint:** indirect question after **cognoverint.**

57. cognoverint: §§ 170 and 228. For the primary tenses of the subjunctive here and below, as compared with **sumerent,** l. 53, see § 152, note. **plurimum valere:** (availed most), *were strongest;* § 13. **virtute,** etc.; § 84.

59. conficere: see vocabulary. **armata milia:** (armed thousands), *thousand armed men.* **pollicitos:** sc. **esse. electa:** agrees with **milia;** translate similarly, *picked men.*

61. suos: i.e. of the Remi. **fines—agros:** notice the so-called chiastic arrangement of the words—noun, adjective; adjective, noun.

62. possidere: subject, **eos** (i.e. **Suessiones).**

63. memoria: see vocabulary and § 105.

64. cum . . . tum: § 279, 3.

66. hunc: § 128. **summam:** see vocabulary under **summa.**

67. voluntate: § 86.

68. numero: § 82. **milia armata:** see l. 59.

69. maxime feri: superlative, *fiercest;* this adjective is not compared by terminations. **inter ipsos:** (among themselves, i.e. the Belgians), *among them.* **habeantur:** *were considered;* this is a quite common meaning of **habeo.**

70. absint: i.e. from the Remi; they were in the northwest of Belgic Gaul. **quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambianos decem milia:** see note on l. 61. This and the different forms of expression employed here serve to break the monotony of the passage.

74. appellantur: § 240. Contrast with **habeantur,** l. 69.

75. arbitrari: i.e. (Remos) **arbitrari Condrusos, . . . ad XL milia** (con-**ficere posse**); *that they (the Remi) thought that the Condrusi . . . (could furnish) about forty thousand;* or, *they rated them at,* etc.

Caesar's camp at the Aisne.

CHAPTER 5.

76. cohortatus: § 261.

77. prosecutus: see vocabulary. **senatum venire:** § 255.

78. obsides: § 2, note. This was a characteristic act on Caesar's part. He took the Remi at their word when they said they intrusted **se suaque omnia** to him, and thus got security that they would assist him. The Gauls were notably fickle (see Chapter 1 of this book), and Caesar never felt that he could trust them unless their direct interests or their fears compelled them to side with him. In this case, however, as it turned out, the Remi proved the most faithful to Caesar of all the Gallic states. **quae:** § 136. **omnia:** § 111. **ab his:** § 68.

79. diem: see vocabulary. **Diviciacum Aeduum:** the year before, Caesar had taken the part of the Aeduans, one of the strongest states of Celtic Gaul, in their contests with other states for the leadership; Diviciacus was the most influential leader of the conservative party among the Aeduans, and a trusted adviser of Caesar.

80. quanto—distineri: § 63.

82. ne confligendum (sibi) sit: (that it might not have to be contended by him), *that he might not have to contend;* §§ 31, 156 and 278.

83. id: i.e. **manus hostium distineri.** **posse:** sc. **docet.**

84. si introduxerint: § 242, 5 or 6.

85. postquam vidit: § 176.

86. venire: in direct discourse, **veniunt,** *are coming* (§145, *a*); hence in indirect discourse, *were coming.* **neque:** connects **vidit** and **cognovit,** but negatives **longe.** **abesse:** sc. **a se,** *from him;* the subject is **copias Belgarum.** **ab iis . . . exploratoribus et ab Remis:** ablatives of source modifying **cognovit;** translate immediately after it.

88. flumen: § 11.

90. quae res: *this movement.* **et:** see note, Book I, l. 410.

91. ripis: § 71. **post eum quae essent:** (what were behind him), in military language, *his communications.*

92. tuta: predicate adjective agreeing with **ea** understood, the antecedent of **quae;** § 16. **commeatus ut possent efficiebat:** (effected that provisions were able), *made it possible for provisions;* § 213.

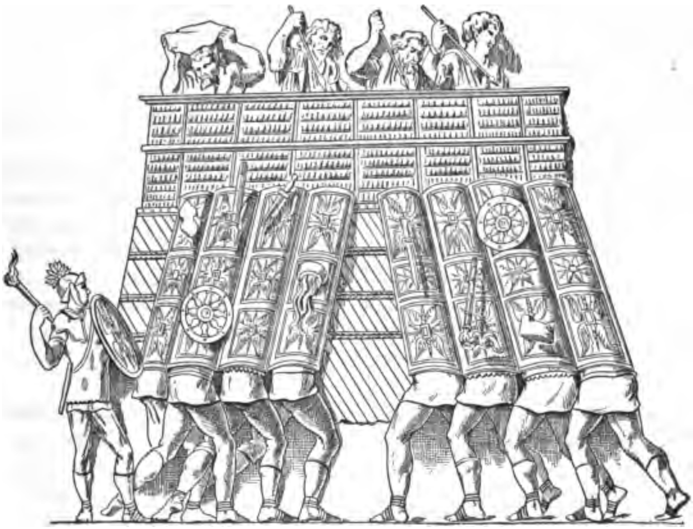
95. in altera parte: i.e. on the southern side; see map.

97. pedum duodecim: §§ 44 and 45.
98. munire: sc. **eum** (i.e. **Sabinum**), as subject.

Bibrax, a town of the Remi besieged by the Belgians, is relieved by Caesar. The Belgians, while withdrawing, suffer heavy loss.

CHAPTER 6.

99. nomine: § 82.
100. milia: §§ 14 and 99. **magno impetu**: § 78.
101. die: § 104. **sustentatum est**: § 144, 2.



TESTUDO.

102. eadem atque Belgarum: (*which is*) *the same as that of the Belgians;* parenthetical.
103. moenibus: § 27.
105. defensoribus: § 65. **testudine facta**: (a " testudo " having been made), *they form a testudo and.*
106. quod: § 136. **tum**: i.e. in the storming of Bibrax.
107. conicerent: § 143.
108. potestas erat nulli: § 30. Note the emphatic position of **nulli**. **finem oppugnandi**: § 267.

109. summa nobilitate: § 80.

110. oppido: § 27. **ex iis:** § 53.

111. legati: § 2, note. **de:** *concerning, to sue for.*

112. nisi, etc.: (*saying that*) *unless*, etc.; § 227. For mood and tense, see § 242, 5.

Chapter 7.

114. de media nocte: (from, i.e. after, the middle of the night), *about midnight;* § 113. **isdem:** = **iisdem hominibus.** **ducibus:** § 2, note. So **nuntii,** l. 115.

115. Cretas: notice Greek ending. **sagittarios:** appositive to **Numidas et Cretas,** but the latter may be translated as adjectives.

116. subsidio: § 32.

117. et . . . et: *not only . . . but also.* **Remis:** § 27.

118. hostibus: § 29. **potiundi:** old form of gerundive. For the use of the gerundive of such verbs, see § 273, 2.

121. quo adire potuerant: (whither they were able to go to), *which they could get at.* **omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis:** this ablative absolute is coördinate with **morati** and **populati,** but since deponent verbs have no passive participle and active verbs have no perfect active participle, we find this awkward combination. In translating make the voices of all the participles the same, here rendering **incensis** by the perfect active. **omnibus copiis:** § 77.

122. a: adverb, *away.* **milibus duobus:** §§ 70 and 81.

123. quae: § 136.

124. milibus: § 69. This statement is given to show the great number in the Belgian army. See Chapter 4.

Chapter 8.

126. primo: § 115.

127. virtutis: § 40. **proelio:** § 65.

128. quid—posset: (what the enemy could in bravery), *how brave the enemy was;* §§ 13, 82 and 243.

129. quid—auderent: like the above clause, *how daring our men were.* **periclitabatur:** notice tense; § 148.

130. loco pro castris idoneo: *the ground in front of the camp* (*being*) *convenient.* This use of **pro,** local, is rare. It is so employed only when it means *immediately before*, practically, *on the edge of.*

131. natura: § 84.

132. quod redibat: this gives the reason for **opportuno atque idoneo.**

133. **editus**: agrees with **collis**; *rising.* **tantum—patebat**: (extended in breadth, turned toward *the camp*, so much of place as a line drawn up could occupy), *covered as much space in front of the camp as his line of battle would fill.* In describing a hill it is hard to use definitely such terms as *width, end, side,* etc., unless it has a very distinct ridge, which was not the case here. **tantum**: § 14.

134. **quantum**: object of **occupare.** **loci**: § 47.

135. **ex utraque parte**: *on each end* (*of the ridge*); § 98. **lateris deiectus**: (slopes of side), *comparatively steep slopes.*

136. **ab utroque latere**: compare **ex utraque parte** above. It means, on either side of the ridge at the end near which the camp was.

137. **transversam**: *at right angles* (*to the front of his line of battle*); this was on his right, the **latus apertum**; see Book I, line 457, note.

"The camp was situated on rising ground between the river (Aisne) and its tributary, the Miette, a small stream flowing through a marshy ooze. The camp was, as usual, quadrilateral, as nearly square as the lie of the land permitted. The rampart, eight feet high, was faced with sods and revetted with timbers and fascines, to keep its slope of the requisite steepness; along the top of it was set a palisade of interlaced branches, and the ditch which surrounded it was eighteen feet wide and ten feet deep. Caesar's rear was protected by the Aisne; and his supplies could be brought up in safety by the Remi."—Holmes.

138. **extremas**: § 113.

139. **tormenta**: *engines,* which corresponded exactly to modern artillery. **ne possent**: § 158. **cum instruxisset**: § 182.

140. **quod—poterant**: *because they were so strong in numbers; with their superior numbers;* it modifies **possent,** and should be translated immediately after it. **ab lateribus circumvenire**: (to come around on the sides), *to outflank.*

141. **pugnantes**: (*while*) *fighting; during the battle.*

143. **si quo**: (if anywhere), *wherever;* **quo,** adverb, is indefinite after **si,** like forms of **quis** and **qui** (§ 139). **opus**: the indeclinable noun; see vocabulary. **esset**: § 242, 5. **subsidio**: § 32.

145. **copias eductas instruxerunt**: (drew up their troops, having been led out), *led out their troops and drew them up.*

Chapter 9.

147. **si transirent**: § 243, note. **exspectabant**: § 148.

148. **si—fieret**: (in case a beginning of crossing should be made

by them), *if they began to cross;* § 242, 5. **transeundi:** § 267. **impeditos:** sc. **eos;** for translation, see vocabulary.

150. proelio equestri contendebatur: impersonal; (it was contended by means of a cavalry battle), *a cavalry battle was going on;* § 144. **ubi faciunt:** § 176.

151. neutri: *neither army;* when designating one of two *bodies of men,* the plural of this word, as of **alter,** is used. **secundiore proelio:** §§ 87 and 88. For the translation of **secundiore,** see § 116.

152. nostris: § 33.

156. eo consilio: (this being their plan), *with this design.* **si possent:** § 242, 5. **cui:** § 27.

157. pontemque interscinderent: they would thus have the Romans cut off from provisions and from retreat. It was good strategy, if they could have carried it out.

158. minus potuissent: (should be less able), *could not do this;* § 242, 5. **popularentur, prohiberent:** sc. **ut;** they are coördinate with **ut expugnarent, interscinderent,** above. **qui:** the antecedent is **agros.**

159. usui: see vocabulary and § 32. **gerendum:** gerund or gerundive? See § 271. **commeatu:** § 65.

Chapter 10.

161. certior factus: it is not stated of what he was informed, but it can be easily supplied,—*of their attack, of what was going on,* etc.

162. levis armaturae: § 44. He takes these troops because they can get there more quickly than the heavily armed legionaries. The fact that he goes with them shows that he understood the vital importance of preventing the enemy from crossing.

163. ponte: § 71. This is the bridge mentioned in l. 94. **eos:** i.e. the Belgians.

164. pugnatum est: § 144. **hostes:** the case is shown by **impeditos;** for the latter, see l. 148.

165. per: *on, over.* Without any fear or sentiment, the others tried to use the bodies of the men in the front ranks as a causeway across the stream, so as to be better able to get at the Romans.

166. reliquos . . . conantes . . . reppulerunt: keep the Latin order; *the rest, trying . . . , they drove back.* Observe Caesar's terse description of the fight. He divides the slaughter into three parts: first, those who were trying to cross when he came (**hostes impeditos in flumine**); second, those who tried to cross after them (**reliquos per eorum corpora audacissime transire conantes**); third, those who had crossed before he

arrived (**primos qui transierant**). He did not deal first, as might at first thought be expected, with this last division, because not enough had crossed to do any harm and it was more important to stop the rest; but he kept them occupied with the cavalry, while dealing with the others, and finally cut them to pieces.

168. equitatu: § 71. **primos circumventos interfecerunt:** keep the order and translate participle by main verb, *they surrounded and killed.*

169. oppido: i.e. Bibrax; see Chapters 6 and 7. **spem se fefellisse:** (that the hope had deceived them), *that they were disappointed in the hope* (*of*, etc.).

170. neque: = **et non**; take the negative part of the conjunction with **progredi,** *did not advance.* It was a great feature of Caesar's tactics in Gaul to get the enemy to attack him in a place of his own choosing.

171. pugnandi causa: §§ 54 and 55. **ipsos:** emphatic, contrasted with the Romans, whom a little while before they had hoped to cut off from their base of supplies.

172. convocato consilio: translate by main clause: *called a council and,* etc.

173. optimum: predicate adjective agreeing with the subject accusative of **esse,** i.e. the infinitive clauses following. **domum:** § 94. **suam quemque:** in this combination the possessive regularly precedes. **quemque reverti:** § 257. **quorum in fines:** *into whose territory;* the antecedent of **quorum** is **eos,** l. 175. **introduxissent:** *should lead;* §§ 153 and 203.

175. convenirent: this is the second object of **constituerunt;** the first was a mere statement of a fact, that a certain thing was best; hence the accusative and infinitive. The *purpose* of their decision was that they should reassemble; hence the subjunctive, which, used thus without **ut,** is much like the use that appears when an imperative becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse; §§ 208, 212, 221 and 245. **ut—uterentur:** adverbial purpose clause modifying **convenirent.**

176. finibus: § 91. **copiis:** § 73.

178. quod—cognoverant: § 215, 2, *b*.

179. finibus: § 27. **appropinquare:** progressive, *was approaching.*

180. his persuaderi non poterat: (it could not be persuaded these), *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded;* §§ 23 and 26. So this terrible league dissolved, and Caesar proceeds against the various tribes separately.

181. neque: *and not;* see l. 170.

Chapter 11.

182. ea re constituta: *when this move had been settled on.* **magno —tumultu:** § 78.

183. nullo—imperio: attendant circumstance; § 78.

184. cum—properaret: § 172: this clause modifies **fecerunt ut—videretur.** **sibi:** § 28.

185. ut videretur: § 213.

186. fugae: § 33. **hac re cognita:** § 264, 4.

187. veritus: § 261. **qua de causa:** *for what reason, why.* **qua** is here an interrogative adjective.

188. discederent: § 245. Note the tenses of **perspexerat** and **discederent;** the latter is progressive.

189. castris: § 92.

190. qui moraretur: §§ 162 and 163.

191. his: § 27. **Pedium, Cottam:** these two *legati* were often detailed together. We find that they were men of different characteristics, so that perhaps Caesar thought that one would serve to balance the other.

192. Labienum: see vocabulary.

195. fugientium: (*while*) *fleeing.* **cum (ei) ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent . . . (et) priores (i.e. priores hostes) praesidium ponerent:** (since those on the extreme end of the line of march, to whom it had been come, made a stand, . . . and those in front placed a guard), *since,* (*while*) *those on the extreme rear who were overtaken made a stand . . . those in advance took refuge.* **ab:** § 98. **extremo:** § 113.

197. priores: § 111. **quod viderentur:** § 170. **abesse a:** *be out of.*

199. perturbatis ordinibus: (their ranks having been disturbed), *broke ranks and.*

201. tantam quantum fuit diei spatium: *as great as* (was the space of the day) *the day allowed.* The comparison is careless and illogical.

The Suessiones are received in surrender.

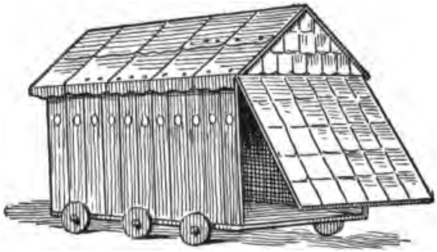
Chapter 12.

205. postridie eius diei: § 56. **prius quam reciperent:** § 181.

207. Remis: what other case might have been used? See § 33, note.

208. ex itinere: i.e. without encamping or making any especial preparations.

209. ab defensoribus: § 65.
211. paucis defendentibus: § 264, 4.
212. quaeque: *and* (*the other things*) *which.*
213. usui: see l. 159.



VINEA.

215. actis: *being pushed.* For the methods of the Romans in siege operations, see introduction.
216. quae: *such as; the like of which.*
219. petentibus Remis: see note on Book I, l. 512. **ut conservaretur:** object of **petentibus;** § 208.

At the request of Diviciacus, Caesar receives the Bellovaci in surrender; he inquires about the character and customs of the Nervii.

Chapter 13.

220. primis: (the first), *the chief men;* § 111.
221. ex oppido: we use an adjective phrase, *the arms in the town;* the Latin uses an adverbial phrase, *having been handed over out of the town.*
223. qui—contulissent: *when they had retired with all their possessions into the town* (*of*) *Bratuspantium.*
226. natu: see vocabulary under **magnus,** and § 276.
227. voce: *tone of voice,* for Caesar would not have understood their language.
230. accessisset, ponerent: notice tenses.
231. ex muro: (*standing*) *on the wall.* **more:** § 86.

Chapter 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter would be as follows:
Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae

fuerunt; impulsi ab **suis** principibus, qui **dicebant, "Aedui a Caesare in servitutem redacti** omnes indignitates . . . **preferunt,"** et ab Aeduis **defecerunt** et populo Romano bellum **intulerunt.** Qui eius consili principes **fuerant,** quod **intellegebant** quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam **profugerunt. Petunt** non solum **Bellovaci** sed etiam **pro his Aedui** ut **tua** clementia ac mansuetudine in eos **utaris.** Quod **si feceris,** Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas **amplificabis,** quorum auxiliis atque opibus, **si** qua bella **inciderunt,** sustentare **consuerunt.**

235. **omni tempore, fide:** see vocabulary. **civitatis:** § 39.

236. **impulsos,** etc.: the construction is **(eos), impulsos . . . , et defecisse et intulisse,** (*that*) *they* (the Bellovaci), (having been) *urged on . . . , had both revolted and waged.* **qui dicerent:** § 228; this governs the indirect discourse, **Aeduos . . . redactos, . . . perferre,** *that the Aeduans, having been,* etc. . . . , *were enduring.*

239. **Qui:** sc. **eos** as antecedent and subject accusative of **profugisse;** *that those who* etc. . . . , *had fled.*

240. **quod:** conjunction. **quantam—intulissent:** § 243.

242. **Bellovacos, Aeduos:** subjects of **petere,** the object of which is the clause **ut—utatur.**

243. **sua:** *his* (*usual*), *his* (*well known*); this is not an unusual force of **suus. quod si fecerit:** *if he did this;* § 242, 5.

245. **amplificaturum:** sc. **eum (Caesarem)** as subject. **si qua bella inciderint (Aedui) consuerint:** for the form in direct discourse, see above; English, *if any wars happen, we are accustomed.* Indirect discourse, *if any wars happened, they were accustomed;* § 228. **qua:** this form may be used instead of **quae** in the feminine singular and neuter plural of the indefinite pronoun.

Chapter 15.

247. **honoris Diviciaci causa:** (for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus), *as a mark of honor to Diviciacus;* **honoris,** § 54; **Diviciacus,** § 40.

249. **magna auctoritate:** § 80.

250. **multitudine:** § 82.

251. **ex oppido:** see note on l. 221.

254. **quorum:** § 135. **Caesar cum quaereret:** *when Caesar inquired.* It would be possible here to consider **Caesar** the subject of **reperiebat;** but often a nominative preceding a **cum** clause cannot be the subject of the main verb. This shows that, in such a sentence as we have here, the subject that is expressed belongs to the subordinate clause.

255. mercatoribus: § 30.
256. vini: § 49. **pati:** sc. **eos** as subject.
259. magnae virtutis: § 44.
260. qui: *because they;* § 173.
261. confirmare: progressive; see note on l. 179. It is coördinate with **esse, increpitare** and **incusare.** **sese—accepturos:** this is indirect discourse, object of **confirmare.**

The Nervii, with the Atrebates and Viromandui, are defeated by Caesar with heavy loss on both sides, and their surrender is accepted.

Chapter 16.

263. cum fecisset: § 182. **eorum:** i.e. *of the Nervii.* **triduum:** § 14.
264. ex captivis: § 67. **Sabim:** note the ending.
265. milia: §§ 14 and 70.
266. consedisse, exspectare: note change of tense, *had encamped, were waiting for.*
268. uti—experirentur: object of **persuaserant;** §§ 25 and 208. **eandem:** (the same), *with them.*
270. copias: notice the voice of **exspectari;** then is **copias** subject or object? **quique:** = **et eos qui.**
271. coniecisse: notice voice; then is **mulieres** subject or object? **eum locum quo:** = **talem locum ut eo,** *such a place that to it;* §§ 165 and 166.
272. exercitui: § 30.

Chapter 17.

273. exploratores, centuriones: the former would try to find various possible sites; then the latter, experienced officers, would confer and select the best place.
274. qui deligant: §§ 162 and 163. **castris:** § 33. **cum facerent:** § 182. **ex:** § 53. Notice here the difference between a bad and a good translation. Following the Latin we might say, "When from the surrendered Belgians and the remaining Gauls, several, having followed Caesar, were making a march," etc. This is "Latin-English." Contrast the following: "When quite a number of other Gauls and of the recently surrendered Belgians had joined Caesar and were marching with him," etc.

276. ex his: cf. **ex—Gallis,** above. **ex captivis: § 67.**

277. cognitum est: § 148. **eorum dierum:** (of) *during these days;* with **itineris;** § 37. **consuetudine:** (custom), *order.*

278. nostri exercitus: with **itineris;** § 39. **nocte:** § 89.

279. inter singulos legiones: *between* (the single) *every two legions.*

280. numerum: *amount.* **neque—negotii:** (nor was anything of trouble), *and that it was not a difficult matter;* § 49.

281. cum venisset, abessent: in direct discourse, **cum venerit** (future perfect indicative), **aberunt,** (when it shall have come, shall be away), *when it has come, are behind;* § 182. In indirect discourse the English tenses are like the Latin.

283. adoriri: subject of **esse. qua pulsa:** (which having been driven), *that when this had been routed.*

284. futurum (esse): *it would* (be) *happen* (*that,* etc.); object of **demonstrant.**

285. adiuvabat, etc.: the subject is the clause **quod—effecerant;** (the fact that the Belgians had made . . . , aided the plan of those who . . .); translate passively, *the advice of those who . . . , was reënforced by the fact that the Belgians . . .*

286. equitatu nihil possent: (since they were nothing able in respect to cavalry), *since they had no cavalry at all;* §§ 13 and 82.

287. neque enim: see vocabulary under **enim. ad hoc tempus:** (to this time), *at present;* i.e. when Caesar was writing. **ei rei:** *this arm of the service.* **quicquid possunt:** *so far as they can.*

288. valent, etc.: (they are strong in), *they rely on.* **quo facilius impedirent:** § 160.

289. si venissent: § 242, 5. **praedandi causa:** see vocabulary under **causa.**

290. teneris, etc.: (tender trees having been cut into and bent over, and numerous branches having grown out laterally, and brambles and briars having been planted among them); *had planted young trees and then cut into them and bent them over;* thus they would remain bent over but would keep on growing; *numerous branches would then grow out sidewise, and by planting briars and brambles among them they had made* (that) *these hedges* (should) *furnish,* etc.; § 213.

292. instar: in apposition with **munimentum. muri:** § 57.

293. quo . . . intrari, . . . perspici posset: § 168; verbs impersonal; (whither it was able . . . to be entered, . . . to be seen through), *such that one could . . . penetrate it, . . . see through it.*

294. cum—impediretur: this clause modifies **omittendum (esse);** in direct discourse the future indicative would be used (§ 182). **cum**

iter agminis eorum impedietur, non omittendum nobis consilium erit; *when the advance of their column* (shall be) *is impeded, we ought not,* etc.

295. sibi: § 31.

Chapter 18.

296. haec: (this), *as follows.* **castris:** § 32.

297. ab summo: *from the top.*

299. pari acclivitate: *with a similar slope;* § 80. **adversus:** note that this, with **contrarius, infimus, apertus** and **silvestris** are all adjectives modifying **collis.**

300. huic: § 33. **passus:** § 99. **infimus apertus:** the former of these adjectives is partitive in force (§ 113), the latter predicate; (the lower part open), *open at the base.*

301. a superiore parte: contrasted with **infimus;** (on the higher part), *towards the top.* **ut perspici posset:** see l. 293 and § 166.

303. continebant: compare the different uses of the imperfect in this chapter; § 148. **secundum:** a preposition; see vocabulary.

305. pedum trium: § 45. This is a clear description of a battlefield; try to imagine how it looked, and draw a plan.

Chapter 19.

306. subsequebatur: note the imperfect again; with which imperfect in Chapter 18 does this correspond? Note also the meaning of the compounds of **sequor** with the various prepositions. **omnibus copiis:** § 77.

308. hostibus: § 27.

309. consuetudine sua: § 86.

311. duae legiones: see l. 18.

312. praesidio: § 32.

315. illi: i.e. **hostes.**

317. quem—pertinebant: (to what limit the open places extended, stretched out), *to the edge of the woods.* **quem ad finem:** = **ad eum finem ad quem.**

318. cedentes: sc. **eos** (i.e. **hostes**); (*when*) *retreating.* **interim:** i.e. while this game of hide and seek was going on between the two bodies of cavalry.

319. opere dimenso: this had been done by the centurions who had been sent ahead; see l. 273.

320. prima: § 113.

321. abditi latebant: *were lying hidden.* **quod:** relative pronoun, subject of **convenerat,** having for its antecedent the clause **ubi—visa sunt. tempus:** predicate nominative; (*as*) *the moment;* § 2, note.

322. convenerat: see vocabulary. **ut—confirmaverant:** *as they had formed . . . and had urged each other* (*to do*).

323. ipsi sese confirmaverant: § 133.

327. ut viderentur: § 166.

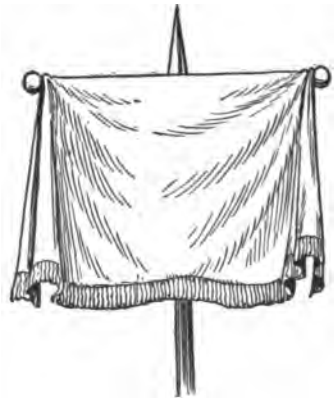
328. in manibus nostris: (in our hands), *within our reach.*

329. adverso: see vocabulary. **ad:** *toward.*

Chapter 20.

This passage is one of the most brilliant in Caesar. Notice the directness of statement and the rapidity of style corresponding to the action described.

331. Caesari—agenda: (all things were to be done by Caesar at one time), *Caesar had to do everything at once;* §§ 31 and 278.

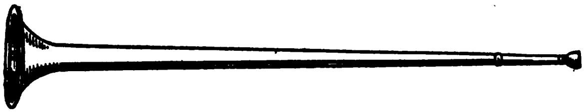


VEXILLUM.

332. proponendum, etc.: supply the proper form of **sum** with this and each of the following gerundives, and compare **erant agenda** for translation; these clauses explain **omnia. concurri oportebat:** both impersonal, § 144; (it ought to be run), *the soldiers were to rush;* **concurri** is the subject of **oportebat.**

333. tuba: those who did not see the **vexillum** might hear the **tuba.**

334. qui: the antecedent is **ei**, indefinite, the subject of **arcessendi (erant).** **longius:** § 116. **aggeris:** see vocabulary.



TUBA.

335. milites cohortandi: see note on Book I, l. 444.

336. signum: this means the signal to begin fighting or to charge.

337. difficultatibus: § 92.

338. subsidio: § 32.

339. duae res: the first of these is **scientia atque usus** taken together as a single thing, *discipline*, which is explained by the clause **quod—poterant**; the second is the clause **quod—vetuerat**, *the fact that*, etc. **superioribus:** *former*. **exercitati:** participle agreeing with **ei** (i.e. **milites**), the subject of **poterant**. **quid—oporteret:** § 243; it is the direct object of **praescribere** and the second object of **doceri** (§ 15, end). **quid fieri** taken as a whole is the subject of **oporteret**.

340. non minus commode . . . quam: (not less readily than), *as easily . . . as*. **ipsi sibi:** (themselves to themselves), *to each other;* § 133.

341. singulis legionibus singulos legatos: (the single legati from the single legions), *each commander from his particular command.*

342. nisi munitis castris: here we have an ablative absolute introduced by a subordinating conjunction. This happens most frequently after **nisi**, but also after conjunctions such as **tamquam, quasi, quamquam**, etc. Translate, *unless the camp was fortified.*

344. nihil exspectabant: (awaited not at all), *did not wait a moment for;* § 13.

345. per se: *on their own responsibility.* **videbantur:** see vocabulary.

Chapter 21.

It is part of Caesar's design to show his own part in the battle, and attention is called to him at the beginning of this and the preceding chapter.

346. necessariis rebus imperatis: (the necessary things having been ordered), *after giving the necessary orders.*

347. quam [in] partem: *in whatever direction; wherever.*

348. non longiore oratione quam uti: *with a speech not longer than* (*to urge them*) *to*, etc. "Keep cool, men, and remember the honor of the legion. Stand up against that rush."—Holmes.

350. animo: § 82.

352. non—posset: *the enemy were* (away not farther than whither a javelin could be driven), "*within a javelin's cast.*"

354. pugnantibus occurrit: (he ran against fighting *men*), *he found them* (*already*) *fighting*.

355. temporis—exiguitas: (so great was the shortness of the time); what does this mean? **hostium animus**: scarcely different from **hostes**.

356. ut: what Latin words should be translated directly after **ut**, to give the English order? **insignia**: *decorations;* i.e. badges indicating rank, medals won for bravery, and perhaps colored crests or some other sign for every soldier to indicate the legion and maniple to which he belonged. These latter would correspond to the different devices used to distinguish the army corps and divisions in the Union army in the Civil War.



GALEAE.

357. galeas: the helmets that were worn in battle would be too heavy and uncomfortable to be worn all the time. These, with the shields in their leather coverings (**tegimenta**) and the **insignia**, the soldier while marching carried in his pack or hung on his person, as our soldiers carry their cartridges and canteens. **scutis**: § 65.

358. quam in partem: see l. 347. **defuerit**: this sequence of tense is exceptional in a result clause.

359. prima: *were the first that;* § 115.

360. ad haec: (at these), *here*.

CHAPTER 22.

363. rei—ordo: (the reason and custom of military affairs), *the principles of military science.* The first subjects of **postulabat** are **natura, deiectus** and **necessitas,** which are contrasted with **ratio atque ordo.** For the agreement of **postulabat,** see § 142.

364. cum legiones resisterent, -que prospectus impediretur: § 172. **aliae alia in parte:** (some in another part), *some in one place, and others in another.* Such an abridged form of expression is called *brachylogy.*

365. saepibusque, etc.: repeat the **cum** here to keep the connection clear; *and since,* etc. **saepibus interiectis:** *by the intervening hedges;* § 264, 7.

367. neque: *neither;* this begins the main clause. **neque provideri (poterat):** impersonal; the subject is the clause **quid—esset;** *nor could it be foreseen what need there would be in each part* (*of the field*).

370. fortunae eventus: *vicissitudes of fortune; fortunes.*

CHAPTER 23.

Having described the circumstances under which the battle began, Caesar now begins to tell what actually happened,—what the **fortunae eventus varii** were. He begins with the success of his own left wing.

372. cursu—confectos: translate this after **compulerunt** and its modifiers and the parenthesis; (out of breath from running and weariness and exhausted with wounds), *because they were tired out with running and* (*so many*) *were wounded* (*by the javelins*).

375. conantes: accusative, agreeing with **eos** understood; (*when they were*) *trying.* **transire:** i.e. *to recross the river.* **gladiis:** if this modified **secuti,** it would probably be before it, so we may conclude that it modifies **interfecerunt.** **impeditam:** (*while thus*) *embarrassed; by taking them at this disadvantage.*

376. ipsi: i.e. **legionis nonae et decimae milites,** l. 371.

377. locum iniquum: *an unfavorable position;* i.e. they were now fighting up hill.

378. rursus—proelio: resistentes hostes is accusative, object of **coniecerunt,** *the enemy,* (*who were*) *beginning to resist again and trying to renew the battle.*

381. ex—proeliabantur: *were fighting from their higher position right on the bank of the river;* i.e. they had driven the Viromandui back down the hill, but the latter were making a stand on the edge of the water and were between this and the Romans, who were still fighting down hill.

The plural (ripis) refers to different points on the same side of the river.

382. at totis nudatis: *and so, while the whole,* etc. At the start the eighth and eleventh legions were in front of the camp, the ninth and tenth on the left, and the twelfth and seventh on the right. By the success of those in the front and on the left, and because of their pursuit of the flying enemy, the places they had occupied were left open and the camp exposed on these two sides.

385. confertissimo agmine: § 78. **duce Boduognato:** *under the lead of;* § 88.

386. summam: see vocabulary. **imperii:** § 47. **ad eum locum:** where they saw the two legions.

387. ab aperto latere circumvenire: (to come around on the exposed flank), *to turn their right flank.* They had numbers enough so that those in front could divide and pass to either side of the two legions so as to attack them more advantageously, and, at the same time, those coming behind could attack them and keep them busy in front.

388. summum castrorum locum: (the highest part of the camp's location), *the top of the hill where the camp was;* § 113.

Chapter 24.

More than anything that has preceded, the description of this battle marks Caesar as an artist in literature. He begins with the left, the point of the easiest and most complete Roman success, then takes the less decisive victory of the centre, and at the close of Chapter 23 he hints of disaster on the right. Chapter 24 might be omitted; but like a dramatist he waits before telling the outcome of the Nervian attack, and details the movements of the cavalry, the camp-followers and the mule-drivers in such a manner as to present to the reader in the most vivid form the picture of the crushing reverse which had apparently been inflicted on the Roman arms.

389. levis armaturae: see l. 162.

390. quos pulsos (esse) dixeram: either, *whom I had said to have been routed,* or, *who, I had said, had been routed;* do not mix the two.

391. cum reciperent: § 182; the action is progressive.

392. adversis, occurrebant, partem: see vocabulary.

393. porta: sc. **castrorum.**

394. summo: § 113.

395. egressi: i.e. **e castris;** they had followed the ninth and tenth legions.

396. versari: (were turning about), *were actually;* it is a strong synonym for **esse**. **praecipites:** § 114.

398. oriebatur: (was rising), *began to be heard.* **alii—partem:** compare ll. 364, 365.

401. virtutis: § 40. **opinio:** see vocabulary.

402. cum: conjunction, introducing **vidissent;** § 182.

405. dispersos dissipatosque fugere: *were fleeing, dispersed and scattered.* As a result of this report, the Treveri lost pretty much all their respect for Caesar and gave him repeated trouble. Had such a report gone out three years later, it is probable that there would instantly have been a general uprising of Gaul.

Chapter 25.

For the time being, we have lost sight of Caesar. The last mention of him was in l. 354. Notice how he brings out his own part in the battle. He had started the successful charge on the left. Now, after the scene showing the desperate pass to which affairs had come without him, he reappears and assumes command in person.

409. Caesar, etc.: the structure of this, the longest sentence in the Bellum Gallicum, is as follows: **Caesar, . . . profectus, ubi . . . vidit** (l. 412) . . . **vidit** (l. 421), **processit . . . -que . . . iussit;** each **vidit** governs some clauses of indirect discourse; **quartae—posset** consists of ablatives absolute and their modifiers, giving various circumstances; **scuto—detracto** is an ablative absolute that is practically coördinate with **profectus** (l. 410). The sentence should first be mastered as it stands, then broken up into shorter sentences in translation, as suggested below. **cohortatione:** see ll. 346–348.

410. signis collatis: ablative absolute denoting cause (§ 246, 2); *and (that), because the standards were collected,* etc.

411. confertos: *being (therefore) huddled together.* **sibi ipsos esse impedimento:** (themselves were for a hindrance to themselves), *hindered each other;* §§ 32 and 133.

416. multis—confecto: (overcome by many and severe wounds), *who had received many severe wounds.* When **multi** is followed by another attributive adjective, the two are regularly connected by a conjunction, contrary to the English idiom.

418. tardiores esse, etc.: here begins the indirect discourse which is the object of the second **vidit** (l. 421); this verb should be translated here, repeating the **ubi** for clearness, and supplying a conjunction; *(and when) he saw that the rest were,* etc. **tardiores:** § 116. **non**

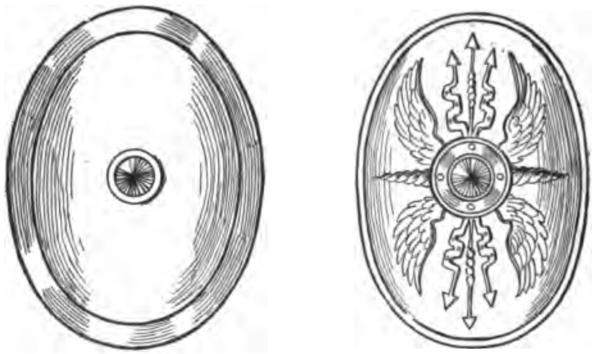
nullos: for clearness express the introductory particle *that* (§ 220) before each clause of indirect discourse; *and that some*, etc. **ab:** *at* or *in;* § 98.

419. deserto loco: ablative absolute, (their place having been deserted), *deserting their posts.* **proelio:** § 65. **discedere:** progressive, *were withdrawing;* so also **vitare.** **hostes neque:** = **et hostes non;** *and that the enemy did not.*

420. subeuntes intermittere: an example of what is called the *supplementary participle*, agreeing with the subject but really adding to the predicate; *cease coming.* **ab:** § 98.

421. neque: see note on **neque,** l. 419; take the negative with **ullum. rem esse in angusto:** (that the thing was in a narrow *place*), *that a crisis had come;* compare our colloquial expression, "things were in a tight place."

422. scuto detracto: (a shield having been seized), *seizing a shield;* see note on l. 409. **ab novissimis:** see l. 418.



CLIPEI.

423. [**uni**]: omit. See note on Book I, l. 433. **militi:** § 29.

424. centurionibusque appellatis: *and, calling,* etc. "Among them (his soldiers) there was hardly one not known to him by name or one who had not formed more or less of a personal relation to the general." —MOMMSEN.

425. cohortatus: (*and*) *encouraging.*

426. quo posset: § 160.

The sentence may now be broken up as follows. Make the first statement include what he saw when he came, i.e. as far as **vidit,** l. **412,**

—"When Caesar reached the right wing, he saw that . . ." Next, state in simple sentences what is told in the following ablatives absolute,—"All the centurions were killed . . ." Then bring in the second **vidit** with its indirect discourse,—"He saw *also that* . . ." Finally tell what he did,—"So, seizing a shield, . . ."

The effect of this long sentence may be explained. Caesar takes in at a glance all the varying conditions of the field. With the same instantaneous decision he takes his resolution to put his own life to the hazard, the last resort of a desperate position. All the confusion of the field, all the quickness and resoluteness of Caesar's marvellous mind, are shown in the structure of this sentence, and by this single event in his life he made his reputation as one of the world's greatest commanders secure. *He did not lose his head.*

427. cuius: § 135. **militibus:** § 27.

428. cum cuperet: § 172.

429. in extremis suis rebus: (in his own extreme affairs), *though his own danger was extreme.*

Chapter 26.

431. Caesar cum: see note on l. 254.

433. conversa: see vocabulary. Just what manœuvre this phrase describes we do not know, but it appears that one line, probably the third, took a new front: to right, to left, or to the rear. Here if the third line of the twelfth legion swung around to the left, and that of the seventh legion to the right, the two legions would then form three sides of a rectangle with double line to the front where the attack was heaviest. This formation could then easily be closed in to nearly a hollow triangle if necessary. See plan, and Book I, l. 461.

435. cum—ferrent: (since some bore aid to others), *since they aided each other.* **aversi:** see vocabulary.

438. impedimentis: § 32. **proelio nuntiato:** *learning of the battle.*

439. cursu incitato, conspiciebantur: *quickened their speed and began to be seen;* § 148.

441. gererentur: see vocabulary.

442. subsidio: like **impedimentis,** l. 438.

443. qui cum: *when they.* **quo—esset:** (in what place the thing was), *what was the condition of affairs.*

446. reliqui: see vocabulary. The whole phrase means that they came as fast as their legs would carry them.

Chapter 27.

448. qui: (*those*) *who*. **volneribus confecti:** (finished with wounds), *severely wounded*. **procubuissent:** § 168.

449. scutis: § 72. **innixi:** *leaning;* § 261. So **conspicati** below. **calones:** sc. **et** before it.

450. inermes: (*though*) *unarmed.*

451. vero: emphasizing **equites;** *while* THE CAVALRY.

452. pugnando: § 82.

453. extrema spe salutis: (their last hope of safety), *their last stand.*

455. (**eis**) **iacentibus:** modifies **insisterent** (§ 27); observe that this cannot be a form of **iacio.**

456. his, etc.: the result clause, **ut . . . insisterent atque . . . pugnarent,** is continued by **remitterent;** to show this clearly, repeat a part of the main statement before beginning the ablatives absolute; (*such courage, indeed, that,*) *when these,* etc.

457. qui: as in l. 448. **ut:** see vocabulary.

458. pila intercepta remitterent: (sent back intercepted javelins), *caught javelins as they flew past and threw them back.* **ut non—deberet:** this clause expresses the result of all that has preceded. **nequiquam:** modifies **ausos esse;** translate after it.

459. virtutis: § 44. **homines:** the subject of **iudicari deberet** (impersonal) is **homines tantae virtutis nequiquam ausos esse,** etc. The sense is, that the Belgians were so brave that they were justified in expecting success in the execution of their daring plan. Nowhere else does Caesar pay such a tribute to the Gauls, which is at the same time an indication of the peril he had himself so narrowly escaped.

461. ex: *instead of.*

462. animi magnitudo: (the greatness of their courage), *their great courage.*

"The two legions which guarded the baggage had heard of the fight and were marching up at their utmost speed. Suddenly above the ridge they appeared, and presently the tenth, despatched by Labienus, recrossed the river, hurried up the hill-side and threw themselves upon the enemy's rear. The effect was electrical. Even the wounded leaned on their shields and plied their swords; the scattered camp-followers plucked up courage and turned upon the enemy; while the cavalry did all they could to atone for their flight.

"The Nervii in their turn were hemmed in. But in their last agony they made good their proud boast [ll. 260, 261]. Man by man, beneath the javelin and the thrust of the short sword, their front ranks fell.

Higher rose the heap of prostrate bodies; and leaping into them, the survivors snatched up the fallen javelins and flung them back, till they too fell; and all was still. So ended this wild fight, a soldier's battle, and withal the battle of a great man. Within an hour it was over, fought and wellnigh lost and won."—HOLMES.

CHAPTER 28.

463. prope ad internecionem: this is greatly overstated. They had plenty of men left, as events three years later proved.

464. natu: § 82. **quos coniectos dixeramus:** see note on l. 390.

466. cum: § 172. **victoribus:** § 28.

467. impeditum (esse): *stood in the way of.*

468. consensu: § 86.

470. sexcentis: sc. **senatoribus.**

471. vix: modifies **quingentos.** **qui possent:** § 168.

473. usus (esse): we would use the present infinitive. This is a cynical confession that his humane action was also partly politic.

474. uti: (to use), *to return to.*

475. finitimis: (their neighbors), *the chiefs of the neighboring tribes.*

The Aduatuci also are subdued.

CHAPTER 29.

478. venirent: progressive. **nuntiata:** see note on l. 438. **ex itinere:** modifies **reverterunt;** it means, *without stopping to encamp.*

480. sua omnia: sc. *possessions;* § 111. **egregie natura munitum:** (conspicuously fortified by nature), *naturally well fortified.*

481. quod cum: *while* this; § 199. **ex—partibus:** *on all sides in succession;* if one began at a certain place and followed around, he found himself facing ledges and cliffs all the way until he got *nearly* around.

484. pedum: §§ 45 and 70. **duplici altissimo muro:** = **duobus altissimis muris;** these had a space between them so that, if the enemy succeeded in getting through the first, they would be more or less between two fires.

485. tum: i.e. when Caesar arrived. Notice tenses. **magni ponderis:** § 44.

486. in muro collocabant: i.e. for ammunition.

488. iis impedimentis depositis: (that baggage having been put down), *had deposited that baggage . . . and.*

489. agere ac portare: (to drive and carry), *to take.* The **impedimenta** included not only the ordinary baggage of an army, but cattle, sheep, etc., taken along for food; also prisoners and captured spoils. The Latin word (literally, *hindrances*) is much more inclusive in its meaning than the English *baggage.* We cannot speak of *driving* baggage, so we must use one less accurate word that will combine the idea of the two employed in Latin.

490. custodiam ex suis: (a watch of theirs), *some of their number as a watch,* to take care of it. **praesidium:** *a guard,* to defend it.

491. eorum: (their), *of the rest of the two tribes.* **obitum:** see note on Book I, l. 769.

492. annos: § 14. **alias:** adverb. **cum bellum inferrent, illatum (bellum) defenderent:** (since they were either bringing on war and warding off war brought on), *since they were waging offensive and defensive war.*

493. eorum omnium: *of all those concerned.*

494. pace facta: in translating, make this a main clause, like **impedimentis depositis,** ll. 488, 490.

Chapter 30.

495. primo: adverb.

496. faciebant: § 148. The subject is **Aduatuci.**

498. milium: sc. **pedum** from l. 497. **circummuniti:** (having been), *being hemmed in* by Caesar. **oppido:** § 93.

499. ubi, vineis actis, etc.: *when, after the vineae,* etc.

500. constitui: progressive; *was being built.* **irridere:** § 258.

501. a: see **ab,** l. 122.

502. spatio: § 81. **instrueretur:** § 170. **quibusnam,** etc.: (*asking*) *with what,* etc.; §§ 223 and 227.

503. praesertim homines: *especially* (*being*) *men.* **nam,** etc.: reserve the parenthesis until the end.

504. omnibus: emphatic, including Belgians, Celts and Aquitanians.

505. contemptui: see vocabulary and § 32.

506. sese posse confiderent: *did they trust that they could;* § 243.

Chapter 31.

507. moveri, appropinquare: progressive; see line 500; sc. **turrim** as subject.

509. de: see l. 111. **qui,** etc.: the construction is: **qui, locuti, dixerunt;** (who, having spoken, said), *who spoke and said.* **ad**

hunc modum: *to this effect;* this is explained by the indirect discourse **non—possent; dixerunt** governs **se—permittere.**

510. non se existimare: the negative makes a difference in the form of translation; **existimamus,** *we think;* **non existimamus,** *we do not think;* indirect discourse of the latter, *that they did not think* (*that,* etc.).

511. qui possent: § 172. **tanta celeritate:** § 78.

512. se: this, as shown by **suaque omnia,** is object accusative; strictly, another **se** is to be supplied as subject accusative, but it is regularly omitted in such cases. This phrase is the formula for "surrender at discretion," or "unconditional surrender."

513. unum petere: sc. **se** as subject; keep the Latin order; *one thing they sought.* **unum** is explained by the clause **ne—spoliaret** (§ 208), *that he would not,* etc. In translating, place the *that* before the **si** clause. **petere ac deprecari:** (sought and entreated), *most earnestly begged.* Latin frequently emphasizes one idea by employing two words of similar meaning to express it; see **clementia ac mansuetudine,** l. 514.

514. pro sua: *in accordance with his usual;* this force of **suus** is not uncommon. **audirent:** the direct discourse would be the imperfect indicative, *were* (*continually*) *hearing of.*

515. esse conservandos: § 278. **se:** i.e. **Aduatucos;** § 123.

516. armis: § 65. **sibi:** § 33.

517. virtuti: § 23. **traditis armis:** *if their arms were surrendered;* § 264, 3.

518. possent: § 228. It might be expected that this would have been treated as a main clause, with the verb in the infinitive. **praestare:** direct discourse, **praestat,** impersonal, *it is better* (subject, **pati**); indirect discourse, *that it was better* (subject, **pati**). **si—deducerentur:** *if they were brought to this pass,* i.e. if they must submit to somebody; § 242, 1.

519. a: *at the hands of.*

520. per cruciatum interfici: (to be killed through torture), *to be tortured to death.*

Chapter 32.

522. merito eorum: (because of their merit), *because they deserved it;* § 84. **si dedidissent:** § 242, 5.

524. prius quam attigisset: § 181.

525. nisi armis traditis: see note on l. 342.

526. in: *in the case of.*

527. quam: § 139.

529. facere: progressive; see l. 500.

531. summam altitudinem: *the greatest height*, i.e. the height where it was greatest.

534. portis patefactis: *they opened . . . and*, etc. **die:** § 89. **pace:** § 73. **usi:** see vocabulary.

Chapter 33.

535. sub vesperum: *towards evening.* Caesar uses **sub** in a temporal sense only with **lucem, occasum solis, noctem** and **vesperum.**

536. quam: § 139.

537. ante inito consilio: (the plan having been gone into before), *according to a plan previously arranged.* **ut intellectum est:** that is, by the subsequent attack.

539. denique: see vocabulary. **indiligentius:** the standard of comparison is often omitted when it is self-evident; so here, supply *than usual.*

540. partim—partim: this is in distributive apposition with **illi,** the subject of **fecerunt** below; it may be loosely translated: *some—others.*

541. ex cortice: § 67. **viminibus intextis:** § 71.

542. pellibus: § 71.

543. qua: adverb.

545. fecerunt: the whole sentence beginning with **illi** is apparently very complicated, but, like most of Caesar's long sentences, is clear and easy if the proper relation of the clauses is observed.

547. concursum est: (it was run together), *the soldiers all ran;* § 148. Treat in the same way **pugnatum ab hostibus est.** **ita:** *as.* **in—salutis:** see l. 453.

548. a viris fortibus pugnari debuit: compare l. 547.

550. iacerent: (*were so situated as*) *to throw;* § 168.

551. consisteret: see vocabulary. **ad:** adverb.

553. diei: § 56.

555. Caesar vendidit: Caesar's constant purpose in dealing with the Gauls was, indeed, to subdue them to Rome, but to make subjection as easy as possible for them; to absorb them ultimately into the Roman state as contented people, rather than to hold them down, discontented, under an iron rule. To do this he granted them easy terms, but insisted that these be strictly kept. So when a tribe broke faith with him they were made a terrible example, for the warning and ultimate benefit of the rest.

556. milium: explanatory to **numerus;** § 36. The translation should be the nominative.

II. THE EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO THE AREMORICAN STATES.

CHAPTER 34.

559. miserat: this is the first intimation of the detachment of Crassus. It must have been after the battle with the Nervii, for all the eight legions were engaged there. Crassus seems to have been a very energetic officer, who was quite capable of independent command.

561. Oceanum: except for the description of the geography of Gaul in Book I, Chapter 1, we have had no reference to the ocean. Of course the Atlantic is meant, although it was understood to include also the North Sea, into which the Rhine empties ; see Book IV, l. 138.

III. OCCURRENCES AT THE CLOSE OF THE YEAR.

CHAPTER 35.

564. omni Gallia pacata: this ablative absolute should be distinguished in translation from **his rebus gestis.** The latter is the means by which Gaul was subdued: *when all Gaul had been subdued by these operations.*

565. opinio: see vocabulary.

566. incolerent: § 203.

567. qui pollicerentur: § 162. **daturas, facturas:** feminine, because **se** refers to **nationibus.** The conjunction **et** is omitted between these two participles, to increase the effect. There is thus brought about a kind of rhyme, which under ordinary circumstances the Romans avoided.

569. inita aestate: see vocabulary and l. 537.

570. quae civitates: (what states), *those states which.* **in Carnutes,** etc.: modifies **deductis.**

572. legionibus . . . deductis: the location of these legions was thus such that the Gallic tribes on different sides of the river could not combine. This was characteristic of all Caesar's plans.

573. ex litteris: *on receipt of despatches.* **supplicatio:** this was a religious ceremony, a thanksgiving and a rejoicing for victory, with which the people were ordered by the senate to honor the gods when there was cause for it. And now there *was* cause for it; as Plutarch says: "The enemies from the north who had so long threatened Italy had been followed to their remote fastnesses, conquered, slaughtered and sold." Now for the first time the republic was released from the fear of Gallic invasion, the only dread the Romans had.

574. quod: the antecedent is the preceding clause; (*an honor*) *which.* **accidit nulli:** note the position of the pronoun; *had been bestowed upon no one.* This action of the senate was partly spontaneous as shown above, partly political; for no doubt Caesar's supporters made the most of the opportunity to shower honors upon him for political effect. The longest previous thanksgiving was of twelve days, in honor of Pompey after the war with Mithradates.

APPENDIX

The grammars cited are those of Gildersleeve (G.), Allen & Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Harkness (H.), and West (W.).

SYNTAX OF NOUNS

Agreement of Appositive and Predicate Substantive. G. 321, 211; A. 281–284; B. 169, 168; H. 393; W. 291, 292, 290.

1 RULE: An appositive or a predicate substantive agrees in case with the word it explains; when possible, it agrees in gender and number also.

reperit ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, I. 18, 3, *he finds that Dumnorix is* THE VERY ONE. **cōniūrandī hās esse causās,** II. 1, 2, *that the causes of uniting were* THESE.

In these examples both words are accusative in Latin and nominative in English, but the rule holds equally.

2 An appositive is placed beside the word it explains without a connecting verb.

NOTE.—When an appositive has also a predicate force, it is often best shown in translation by inserting the word *as*.

hominēs bellicōsōs . . . fīnitimōs habēre, I. 10, 2, *to have warlike men* (AS) NEIGHBORS. **līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iūssit,** II. 5, 1, *he ordered the children to be brought to him* (AS) HOSTAGES.

3 A predicate substantive occurs after **sum,** and **fīō,** *become,* **videor,** *seem, appear,* **appellor,** *be called,* etc. See § 17.

quī Celtae appellantur, I. 1, 1, *who are called* CELTS. So II. 4, 10.

4 An appositive may explain in part the word it modifies; e.g. **alius, alter, pars.** This is called *distributive apposition.*

Helvētiī, . . . aliī vadīs Rhodanī, I. 8, 4, *the Helvetians*. . .SOME *by the fords of the Rhone.*

Nominative Case.

Subject of Verb. G. 203; A. 339; B. 170; H. 387; W. 289.

5 Rule: The subject of a finite verb (i.e. one that has person and number) is in the nominative.

The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the accusative (§ 257). But the subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative (§ 258).

Vocative Case.

Vocative of Address. G. 201, Remark 1; A. 340; B. 171; H. 402; W. 307.

6 Rule: The name of a person or thing addressed is in the vocative.

It is independent of the rest of the sentence in construction, and therefore has no real syntax (i.e. relation to another word).

dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs, IV. 25, 6, *jump down,* FELLOWS!

Accusative Case.

Accusative of Direct Object. G. 328–330; A. 387, 388; B. 172–174; H. 404, 405; W. 308–310.

7 Rule: The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.

8 Many verbs of emotion and the like, which are intransitive in English, may be transitive in Latin; they then require the addition of a preposition in translating, as follows: **queror** *complain* (*of*), **contendō,** *strive* (*for*) **labōrō,** *labor* (*for*), **horreō,** *shudder* (*at*), **dēspērō,** *despair* (*of*), etc.; the last only in the ablative absolute passive (see vocabulary).

9 Some verbs of motion, usually intransitive, may be used transitively, especially **fugiō,** *flee,* and its compounds **dēfugiō** and **effugiō,** in the sense of *escape*, *shun* or *avoid*. See vocabulary.

Accusative with Compounds. G. 331; A. 388, *b*, 395; B. 175, 2, *a*, 179; H. 406, 413; W. 311.

10 Rule: Verbs compounded with prepositions take the accusative, *when they become transitive,* as follows: all with

circum, per, praeter, trāns and **subter,** many with **ad, in** and **super,** some with **ante, con, inter, ob** and **sub.**

id Helvētiī trānsībant, I. 12, 1, THIS *the Helvetians* (were going across) *were crossing.* **suōs circumvenīre,** II. 8, 4, *to surround* HIS MEN.

So **praecēdunt** in the following example, a very unusual use. See lexicons.

reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, I. 1, 5, *they* (go before) *surpass* THE REST OF THE GAULS.

11 If the simple verb is transitive, the compound verb may take two accusatives, (1) one the object of the verb, (2) the other of the preposition. In the passive the object of the verb becomes the subject (1), the object of the preposition (2) remains accusative.

trēs partēs[1] **cōpiārum id flūmen**[2] **trādūxērunt,** I. 12, 2, *they have led* THREE FOURTHS[1] *of their troops across* THIS RIVER.[2] So II. 5, 4. **multitūdō**[1] **Rhēnum**[2] **trādūcitur,** I. 31, 16, A GREAT NUMBER[1] *is being led across* THE RHINE.[2] So II. 4, 1.

With many of these compounds the preposition may be repeated, but never **circum.**

Accusative of Inner Object (Accusative of Result Produced). G. 332, 333; A. 390, *c;* B. 176, 2; H. 409; W. 312, 313.

12 RULE: Neuter pronouns and adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive idea that lies in the verb.

idem cōnārī, I. 3, 5, (to attempt THE SAME THING), *make the same attempt.* **id eīs persuādēre,** I. 2, 3, (to persuade them IT), *to persuade them of it,* or *to persuade them* (*to do*) *it.*

NOTE.—When this accusative takes the form of a noun of kindred derivation or signification with the verb, it is called the *cognate accusative.* Examples in English are,—*to dream a dream, to run a race, to see a sight* or *vision.*

triduī viam prōcēdere, I. 38, 1, *to proceed* A *three days'* MARCH. So IV. 4, 5.

Accusative of Extent in Degree (Adverbial Accusative). G. 334; A. 390, *c, d,* 397, *a;* B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; W. 316.

13 RULE: The accusative is used adverbially to denote extent in degree.

This accusative answers the question, *How much? To what extent?* It is an extension of the preceding use (§ 12), and is mostly confined to the neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns (often classed as adverbs), e.g. **multum,** *much,* **plūs,** *more,* **plūrimum,** *very much, very, the*

most, **paulum,** *a little*, **nihil,** *not at all*, **quid** (indefinite), *at all*, **aliquid, nōn nihil,** *somewhat*, etc. It also includes some special expressions.

plūrimum posse, I. 3, 7, II. 4, 5, *to be* THE MOST *powerful.* **māximam partem vīvunt,** IV. 1, 8, *they live* FOR THE MOST PART.

Accusative of Extent in Time and Space (Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space). G. 335, 336; A. 423, 2, 425; B. 181, 1; H. 417; W. 324.

14 RULE: Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

This construction appears in English as one form of the *adverbial objective* (see translation of examples below). It answers the question, *How long?* *How far?* Or, with **longus, lātus** or **altus,** simply, *How?*

rēgnum multōs annōs obtinēre, I. 3, 4, *to hold royal power* MANY YEARS. **mīlia passuum CCXL patēre,** I. 2, 5, *to extend two hundred and forty* MILES.

Two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing. G. 339; A. 396; B. 178; H. 411; W. 318.

15 RULE: Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching* and *concealing* may govern two accusatives, (1) one of the person, (2) the other of the thing.

With verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, the English may also have the same construction, e.g. *he asked me*[1] *my opinion*,[2] *he teaches me*[1] *Latin*.[2] With the verb *to demand*, the name of the person is expressed with *of*; and with *to conceal*, with *from*, e.g. *he concealed it*[2] *from me.*[1]

Aeduōs[1] **frūmentum**[2] **flāgitāre,** I. 16, 1, *he was demanding* (§ 258) GRAIN[2] (OF) THE AEDUANS.[1] Only example in the Bellum Gallicum.

In the (rare) passive of this construction, either of the accusatives may become nominative, the other remaining accusative.

NOTE.—Verbs of asking more frequently express the person by the ablative of source (§ 67).

ab eō pōstulāre, I. 34, 1, *to demand* OF HIM.

Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing. G. 340; A. 393; B. 177; H. 410; W. 317.

16 RULE: Verbs of *naming, making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing* and the like may govern two accusatives of the same person or thing.

quem vergobretum appellant, I. 16, 5, WHOM *they call* "VERGO-

BRET." **Caesarem certiōrem faciunt,** I. 11, 4, (they make CAESAR MORE CERTAIN), *they inform Caesar.*

17 In the passive of this construction the first accusative becomes subject nominative, the second a predicate nominative (§ 3).

(Caesar) certior fīēbat, II. 1, 1, (CAESAR was made MORE CERTAIN), *Caesar was informed.* See also example under § 3.

Two Accusatives with Compounds. See § 11.

Terminal Accusative (Place to Which, Place Whither). See § 94.

Accusative, Subject of Infinitive. See § 257.

Accusative with Prepositions. G. 416; A. 220, *a;* B. 141; H. 420; W. 242.

18 The accusative is used with all prepositions which do not govern the ablative. For the list of the latter and of those that govern either case, see § 90.

DATIVE CASE.

Dative of Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs. G. 345; A. 362–365; B. 187, 1; H. 424; W. 326, 327.

19 RULE: The dative is used to denote the indirect object, with transitive verbs which already have a direct object expressed or understood in the active voice, or which are in the passive.

It is translated in English by the indirect object or by *to* or *for,* and may be distinguished from other uses of the dative translated by the same prepositions by inquiring if it *can* be translated by an indirect object.

eī fīliam suam dat, I. 3, 5, *he gives* HIM *his daughter,* or, *he gives his daughter* TO HIM. **ea rēs est Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta,** I. 4, 1, *this conspiracy was made known* TO THE HELVETIANS, or, *was told* THE HELVETIANS. **illīs rēgna conciliāre,** I. 3, 6, *to win* (FOR) THEM *the power.*

20 Some verbs, especially **dōnō,** *present,* **circumdō,** *put around, surround,* and **circumiciō,** *throw around,* may take either (1) the dative of the person and (2) the accusative of the thing, or (3) the accusative of the person and (4) the ablative (of means) of the thing. See next page.

patrem[3] **cīvitāte**[4] **dōnāre,** I. **47,** 4, *to present* HIS FATHER[3] WITH CITIZENSHIP;[4] this might have been written, **patrī**[1] **cīvitātem**[2] **dōnāre,** *to present* HIS FATHER[1] CITIZENSHIP.[2] Compare VII. **11,** 9. **circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus,** II. **6,** 2, (a multitude of men having been thrown around THE WHOLE WALLS), *after stationing a large force of men all around the walls.*

21 In Caesar **circumdō** always takes the accusative and the ablative, except in VII. **72,** 3, where there is the accusative of the thing and the locative ablative.

Dative of Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. G. 346; A. 366; B. 187, II; H. 424; W. 330.

22 RULE: The dative is used to denote the indirect object with intransitive verbs.

fortūnae cēdere, VII. **89,** 2, *to yield* TO FORTUNE.

Under this construction is included the so-called

Dative with Special Verbs. G. 346; A. 367; B. 187, II. *a*; H. 426, 1, 2; W. 330 f.

23 RULE: With certain verbs the Latin uses a dative which with the corresponding English verbs is translated by an objective. These are,—

"Verbs of *advantage* or *disadvantage, yielding* and *resisting, pleasure* and *displeasure, bidding* and *forbidding.*"—GILDERSLEEVE.

"Most verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust,* and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare.*"—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH.

"Verbs signifying *favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade,* and the like."—BENNETT.

"Verbs meaning to *please* or *displease, command* or *obey, serve* or *resist, benefit* or *injure, favor* or *oppose, trust* or *distrust,* and the like; and to *indulge, aid, spare, pardon, believe, persuade, flatter, threaten, envy, be angry,* and the like."—HARKNESS.

"Verbs meaning to *favor, please, trust, assist,* and their opposites; *command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, persuade,* and the like."—WEST.

A dative put, remember, pray,
After *envy, spare, obey,*
Persuade, believe, command; to these
Add *pardon, succor* and *displease;*
With **vacāre,** *to have leisure,*
And **placēre,** *to give pleasure,*
With **nūbere,** of the woman said,
The English of it is *to wed.*
Servīre add, and add **studēre,**
Heal, favor, hurt, resist and **indulgēre.**

cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded* (THE STATE) THE CITIZENS *to emigrate.* **novīs imperiīs studēre,** II. 1, 3, *to desire* CHANGES OF GOVERNMENT.

24 The verbs in the Bellum Gallicum that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: **persuādeō** (17), **studeō** (16), **noceō** (6), **parcō** (6), **resistō** (5), **ignōscō** (3), **indulgeō** (3), **placeō** (3), **pareō** (3), **cōnfīdō** (3), **dēspērō** (3), **diffīdō** (2), **serviō** (2), **faveō** (2), **imperō** (2), **cupiō** (1), **dēnūntiō** (1), **invideō** (1), **medeor** (1), **temperō** (1), **obtemperō** (1), **repūgnō** (1); perhaps also **prōsum** (1), **cōnsulō** (9), **prōspiciō** (2); and **audiēns sum** (4) = **oboediō,** *obey,* and **fidem habeō** (1) = **cōnfīdō;** and **satis faciō** (4).

25 Some of these verbs may also take as a direct object an accusative of a neuter pronoun, an accusative and infinitive, or a clause. But the English, having translated the dative by a direct object, has to express the Latin accusative by some other method. See the first example under § 23 and the second under § 12.

26 In the passive these verbs are used impersonally, thus: **mihi persuādētur,** I. 40, 3, (it is persuaded me), *I am persuaded.* So **tibi persuādētur,** *you are persuaded,* **eī persuādētur,** etc.

Dative with Verbs compounded with Prepositions. G. 347; A. 370–372; B. 187, III; H. 429; W. 332.

27 RULE: The dative of indirect object is used with many (but not all) verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes with **circum.**

This dative is due to the meaning of the compound verb and really follows the principles laid down in §§19, 22 and 23.

1. When one of these prepositions is compounded with a transitive verb, there may be both an accusative and a dative, and the construction is that of § 19; the dative is usually rendered as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin verb.

fīnitimīs bellum īnferre, I. 2, 4, *to wage war on* THEIR NEIGHBORS. **hīs lēgātōs praefēcit,** II. 11, 3, *he placed legati in command of* THESE.

2. When the simple verb is intransitive the construction is the same as that of § 22; if the English verb used in translation is transitive, the dative is translated by the objective (compare § 23); otherwise as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin.

omnibus praestāre, I. 2, 1, *to surpass* ALL. **Rēmīs studium prōpūgnandī accēssit,** II. 7, 2, (a desire of fighting forth came to THE REMI), *a disposition to make sorties was inspired in the Remi.*

The *intransitive* verbs in the Bellum Gallicum that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: **appropinquō** (11), **occurrō** (10), **succēdō** (6), **subveniō** (4), **obveniō** (3), **intercēdō** (2), **succurrō** (2), **accēdō** (1), **adsum** (1), **īnsistō** (1), **obsistō** (1), **praestō** (1), **succumbō** (1), **intersum** (1).

Note.—The passive of these verbs must be used impersonally; compare § 26.

Quibus rēbus occurrendum est, I. 33, 5, (it must be run against WHICH THINGS), *these conditions must be met.* **huīc reī praevertendum existimāvit,** VII. 33, 3, THIS MATTER *he thought should be forestalled.*

Dative of Reference. G. 345, 352; A. 376–379; B. 188; H. 425, 4; W. 335.

28 RULE: The dative denotes the person with reference to whom a statement is true.

This use of the dative may be tested by trying the translation "*with reference to*"; it is frequently rendered by a possessive. It does not modify the verb directly but belongs to the thought of the whole predicate.

Caesarī ad pedēs sēsē prōiēcērunt, I. 31, 2, (they threw themselves, WITH REFERENCE TO CAESAR, at his feet), *they threw themselves at Caesar's feet.* **mīlitibus spem minuit,** V. 33, 1, (WITH REFERENCE TO THE SOLDIERS, it lessened hope), *it lessened the soldiers' hope.*

Dative of Separation. G. 345, 1; A. 381; B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; W. 337.

29 This term is applied to a dative of reference which occurs with verbs of *taking away* and the like, usually with verbs compounded with **ab, dē** or **ex.** It is usually best translated as the object of the preposition *from*, suggested by the verb, though the Latin thought was simply *with reference to* (§ 28).

Aeduīs lībertātem ēripere, I. 17, 4, *to take away liberty* FROM THE AEDUANS. **hostibus spēs discēssit,** II. 7, 2, FROM THE ENEMY *hope departed.*

Dative of the Possessor. G. 349; A. 373; B. 190; H. 430; W. 340.

30 RULE: The dative is used with forms of the verb **sum** to denote the person possessing the subject.

In this construction three points are to be noticed:

	Person Possessing.	*Verb.*	*Thing Possessed.*
Latin	**mihi,** dative	**est**	**liber,** nominative
English	*I,* nominative	*have*	*a book,* objective

nōbīs nihil est, I. 11, 5, (nothing is TO US), *we have nothing.* **nōbīs est in animō iter facere,** I. 7, 3, (to make a march is TO US in mind; WE have it in mind to march), *we intend to march.* **potestās erat nūllī,** II. 6, 3, (the power was TO NO ONE, NO ONE had the power), *no one could.*

Some compounds of **sum,** especially **absum** and **dēsum,** also take this construction.

Dative of (Apparent) Agent. G. 354, A. 374; B. 189; H. 431; W. 339.

31 RULE: The dative is used to denote the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation or the gerundive alone.

Since the preposition *by* is used to express agency in English, it must be employed in translating this dative. For the passive periphrastic conjugation, see § 278.

mihi exspectandum est, I. 11, 6, (it must be waited BY ME), *I must wait.* **omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum,** I. 31, 14, *the same thing must be done* BY ALL THE GAULS. **(mihi) dubitandum est,** II. 2, 5, (it ought to be hesitated BY ME), *I ought to hesitate.*

Dative of the Object for Which (Dative of Purpose or End). G. 356; A. 382; B. 191; H. 433; W. 341–343.

32 RULE: A dative is used to denote the object for which a thing serves, or the purpose of an action.

This may be accompanied by another dative of indirect object or of reference, and the construction is then sometimes termed the *double dative*,—*object for which* and *person to whom*.

The dative of the object for which is literally translated as the object of the preposition *for;* but the best translation when used with a form of **sum** is by a predicate noun; in most other cases after *as*.

equitātus quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, I. 18, 10, *the cavalry which the Aeduans had sent to Caesar* (FOR AID), AS AN AUXILIARY FORCE. So II. 8, 5. **Gallīs impedīmentō erat, I. 25,** 3, *it was* (for) A DISADVANTAGE *to the Gauls.* **praesidiō impedīmentīs erant, II. 19,** 3, (were FOR A GUARD to the baggage), *guarded the baggage.*

Dative with Adjectives. G. 359; A. 383–385; B. 192; H. 434; W. 333.

33 RULE: Adjectives of *likeness, fitness, friendliness, nearness,* and the like, with their opposites, are modified by a dative.

proximī Germānīs I. 1, 4, *nearest* (TO) THE GERMANS So II. 3, 1. **castrīs idoneus, I. 49,** 1, **II. 17,** 1, *suitable* FOR A CAMP.

An adverb derived from such an adjective may also take this construction.

legiōnī fēlīciter, IV. 25, 3, *fortunately* FOR THE LEGION.

NOTE.—**Propior** and **proximus**, and corresponding adverbs, *may* govern the accusative, as if prepositions.

proximī Rhēnum, I. 54, 1, *nearest* THE RHINE. So III. 7, 2.

GENITIVE CASE.

I. Genitive with Nouns.

Adnominal Genitive (Genitive with Nouns). G. 360, 1; A. 342; B. 195; H. 439; W. 347.

34 RULE: A substantive in the genitive is used to limit or describe another usually denoting a different person or thing.

The genitive with nouns is usually equivalent to the English possessive case or to the objective with *of*, but the following subdivisions of its use need to be distinguished.

Appositional Genitive. G. 361, 1; A. 343, *d;* B. 202; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

35 The genitive is sometimes used in the sense of an appositive after such words as **vox,** *expression,* **nōmen,** *name,* **verbum,** *word,* etc.

nōmen obsidum, III. 2, 5, *the name* (of) HOSTAGES.

Epexigetical Genitive (Explanatory Genitive, Genitive of Material). G. 361, 2; A. 344; B. 197; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

36 The genitive is sometimes used to explain the noun it modifies.

locus grātiae, I. 18, 8, *a position* OF FAVOR. **cōpia pābulī,** II. 2, 1, *plenty* OF FODDER.

Possessive Genitive. G. 362; A. 343; B. 198; H. 440, 1; W. 353.

37 The possessive genitive designates a person, more rarely a thing, to whom something (denoted by the modified noun) belongs. It may include the idea of origin or of fitness.

fīnēs Belgārum, I. 1, 5, II. 2, 6, *the territory* OF THE BELGIANS.

38 Possession in the first and second persons and in the third person *if reflexive* is indicated by the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns), instead of by the genitive of a personal pronoun. But when **omnium** is added, **nostrum** and **vestrum** (genitives plural of **ego** and **tū**) are used. Distinguish these forms from **nostrī** and **vestrī,** used as objective genitives (§ 43).

prōvinciam nostram, I. 2, 3, OUR *province.* **suīs fīnibus,** I. 1, 4, *from* THEIR OWN *territory.* **in eōrum fīnibus,** I. 1, 4, *in* THEIR (i.e. some one's else) *territory.* **omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū,** VII. 77, 4, *by the consent* OF YOU *all.*

Subjective and Objective Genitives. G. 363, 364; A. 343, Note 1, 348; B. 199, 200; H. 440, 1, 2; W. 350, 351.

39 The subjective genitive (§ 39) and the objective genitive (§40) are
40 used *only with nouns having corresponding verbal ideas.*

When the thought of the two words is expanded into a sentence, the genitive is *subjective* if it would become the subject of an active verb in such a sentence, *objective* if it would become the object of an active verb or the subject of a passive verb, or any adverbial modifier.

The subjective may also be described as denoting the one *on whose part* the action takes place or the condition is true; the objective as denoting that *toward which* the action is directed, or *with reference to which* the condition is true.

SUBJECTIVE: **occāsus sōlis**, I. 1, 7, (the setting OF THE SUN), *sunset;* the sun sets; the setting on the part of the sun. **omnium opīniō**, II. 3, 1, *the expectation* OF ALL; all expected; expectation on the part of all. **patrum nostrōrum memoria**, II. 4, 2, *the memory* (OF OUR FATHERS) *of the last generation;* our fathers remembered; memory on the part of our fathers.

OBJECTIVE: **rēgnī cupiditās**, I. 2, 1, *desire* (of) FOR ROYAL POWER; royal power was desired; desire directed toward royal power. **eārum rērum memoria**, II., 4, 3, *the memory* OF THESE DEEDS; remembering these deeds.

41 The sense is the only guide to the relation of the two nouns, for in an isolated expression it may be impossible to tell which is meant. E.g. **amor Deī**, *the love of God*, may mean in either Latin or English, (1) *the love which God has for some one, love on the part of God* (God loves), subjective, or (2), *the love which some one has for God, love directed toward God* (God is loved), objective.

To avoid this ambiguity both languages may substitute prepositional phrases for the objective genitive, Latin **in, ergā**, English *for, toward, to.*

Dīviciācī (subjective) **summum in populum Rōmānum studium**, I. 19, 2, *the great devotion* OF DIVICIACUS TO THE ROMAN PEOPLE. **dēspectus in mare**, III. 14, 9, *a view* OF THE SEA. So **ergā**, V. 54, 4.

42 Both these genitives may be connected with the same noun.

veterēs Helvētiōrum (subjective) **iniūriae populī Rōmānī** (objective), I. 30, 2, (THE HELVETIANS' ancient injuries OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE), *the ancient injuries inflicted by the Helvetians upon the Roman people.*

43 The subjective genitive, like the possessive (§ 38), is used only of the third person, not reflexive. For the first and second persons and the third person *if reflexive*, the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns) are used. But for the objective relation in such cases the forms **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī** and **vestrī** are generally used.

SUBJECTIVE: **suī mōrēs**, I. 4, 1, THEIR *customs.* **nostra memoria**, II. 4, 7, OUR *memory.* But, **scelus eōrum**, I. 14, 5, THEIR *crime.* OBJECTIVE: **suī potestās**, I. 40, 8, *a chance* OF *(getting at)* HIM. But **suum perīculum**, IV. 28, 2, *danger* TO THEMSELVES.

Genitive of Quality (Descriptive Genitive, Genitive of Characteristic). G. 365; A. 345; B. 203; H. 440, 3; W. 354.

44 The genitive, *when modified by an adjective or its equivalent*, is used to denote a quality.

levis armātūrae Numidae, II. 10, 1, (Numidians OF LIGHT ARMOR), *light-armed Numidians.* **hominēs māgnae virtūtis,** II. 15, 4, *men* OF GREAT BRAVERY.

With this use compare the ablative of quality (§ 80). The use of the genitive is limited chiefly to essential qualities and is therefore used of number, measure, time and space; but often the use seems indifferent.

45 Under this use is included the *genitive of measure.* **trium mēnsium molita cibaria,** I. 5, 3, THREE MONTHS' *flour;* i.e. *flour enough to last three months.*

NOTE 1. The adjective may be implied in the noun.

triduī viam, I. 38, 1, IV. 4, 5, *a* THREE DAYS' *march.*

NOTE 2. This genitive may be connected with the predicate.

erat altitūdō pedum trium, II. 18, 3, *the depth was* (OF) THREE FEET.

Predicate Possessive Genitive. G. 366; A. 343, *b;* B. 198, 3; H. 439, second part, and 3; W. 359, 360.

46 The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate, with a form of sum or a similar verb. Sum with this construction may often be translated *belong to.*

quid suī sit cōnsiliī ostendit, I. 21, 2, *he shows* (what is OF HIS PLAN, what belongs to his plan), *what his plan includes.* **iūdicium est imperātōris,** I. 41, 3, *the decision is* THE COMMANDER'S, *belongs to the commander.* **Gallia est Ariovistī,** I. 45, 1, *Gaul belongs* TO ARIOVISTUS.

Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole). G. 367–372; A. 346; B. 201; H. 440, 5–444; W. 355–358.

47 The partitive genitive denotes the whole of a class, of which the modified noun denotes a part. It is used especially as follows:

48 (1) With substantives of quantity, number and weight. This use is often hardly to be distinguished from the genitive of material (§ 36).

carrōrum numerus, I. 3, 1, *a number* OF CARTS. **multitūdō eōrum,** II. 11, 4, *a great number* OF THEM.

49 (2) With the neuter singular of many adjectives and pronouns of quantity, in the nominative and accusative. *Here the English uses no preposition.*

nihil reliquī, I. 11, 5, *nothing* (of) LEFT. **minus dubitātiōnis**, I. 14, 1, *less* (of) HESITATION. **satis causae**, I. 19, 1, *sufficient* (of) REASON, *reason enough.* **tantum quantum locī**, II. 8, 3, (so much as OF PLACE), *as much* SPACE. **nihil vīnī**, II. 15, 4, (nothing OF WINE), *no* WINE.

This genitive is often widely separated from its noun. E.g. **quid . . . auxiliī**, I. 31, 14; **quid . . . negōtiī**, I. 34, 4.

NOTE.—Adjectives of the second declension can be used as substantives in the neuter in this construction; e.g. **reliquī** (see above). But adjectives of the third declension cannot be so used, unless (rarely) when combined with one of the second.

50 (3) With numerals, both general and special if used substantively; *with the latter the English uses no preposition.*

GENERAL: **multī eōrum**, V. 22, 2, *many* OF THEM. SPECIAL: **mīlia passuum**, I. 2, 5, II. 6, 1, (thousands OF PACES), *miles.* **hominum mīlia**, I. 26, 5, II. 28, 2, (thousands OF MEN), *thousand men.*

51 **Uterque** is commonly used as an adjective with nouns but as a substantive with pronouns.

uterque eōrum, VII. 32, 3, *each* OF THEM. Not so, however, II. 16, 2, and IV. 17, 6.

52 (4) With comparatives and superlatives, of either adjectives or adverbs.

Hōrum fortissimī, I. 1, 3, *the bravest* OF THESE. **tōtīus Galliae plūrimum possunt**, I. 3, 7, *they are the most powerful* (§ 13) OF ALL GAUL. **quārum interior**, VII. 72, 3, *the interior* OF WHICH.

53 Instead of the partitive genitive with numerals, pronouns, comparatives and superlatives, the ablative with **dē** or **ex**, or, less often, the accusative with **inter** or **apud**, may be used; especially with cardinals (except **ūnus** when denoting the first of a series) and with **quīdam**. In such cases these prepositions should be translated *of.*

paucī dē nostrīs, I. 15, 2, *a few* OF OUR MEN. **proximī ex Belgīs**, II. 3, 1, *the nearest* OF THE BELGIANS.

Genitive with Prepositional Substantives. G. 373; A. 359, *b;* B. 198, 1, 2, 201, 3; H. 475, 2, 446, 4, 5; W. 348, 349.

54 The genitive precedes **causā** and **grātiā**, *because, on account, for the sake, for the purpose.* Examples follow on next page.

hūius potentiae causā, I. 18, 6, *for the sake* OF (*increasing*) THIS POWER. **reī frūmentāriae causā,** I. 39, 1, *for the purpose* OF (*procuring*) GRAIN; *for grain.* **auxiliī causā,** II. 24, 4, (for the purpose OF AID), *as an auxiliary force.*

55 A gerund or gerundive preceding **causā** or **grātiā** forms an expression of purpose.

suī mūniendī causā, I. 44, 6, (for the purpose OF PROTECTING HIMSELF), *to protect himself;* see § 272. **pūgnandī causā,** II. 10, 4, (for the purpose OF FIGHTING), *to fight;* see § 267.

56 The genitive **ēius diēī** is used with the adverbs **prīdiē** and **postrīdiē** (old case forms; see vocabulary). In the Bellum Gallicum, **prīdiē** is used alone four times and with the genitive once; **postrīdiē,** six times, always with the genitive.

prīdiē ēius diēī, I. 47, 2, *the day before* (THIS DAY). **postrīdiē ēius diēī,** I. 23, 1, *the day after* (THIS DAY); *the next day.*

57 The genitive is used with the indeclinable noun **īnstar,** *likeness.*

īnstar mūrī, II. 17, 4, (the likeness OF A WALL), *like a wall.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

II. Genitive with Adjectives.

(Objective) Genitive with Adjectives. G. 374; A. 349; B. 204, 1; H. 450, 451, 1, 2; W. 352.

58 RULE: The objective genitive is used with some adjectives denoting *fulness* and *want, participation, power, knowledge,* and *ignorance, desire* and *disgust.*

"Desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt and their opposites."—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH. *"Desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness* and their opposites."—BENNETT. *"Desire, knowledge, skill, recollection,* and the like, with their contraries." —HARKNESS.

bellandī cupidus, I. 2, 4, *desirous* OF CARRYING ON WAR. **cūius reī perītissimus,** III. 21, 3, *very skilled* IN SUCH MATTERS.

This construction occurs in the Bellum Gallicum 21 times, as follows: —with **perītus** (3), **imperītus** (6), **cupidus** (4), **medius** (3), **īnsuētus** (2), **plēnus** (1), **cōnscius** (1), and with **similis** in the phrase **vērī simile,** III. 13, 6; elsewhere **similis** takes the dative (§ 33).

The corresponding English meanings do not always admit *of* as a following preposition; the proper ones in such cases are suggested in the vocabulary.

III. Genitive with Verbs.

Genitive with Verbs of Memory. G. 376; A. 350, 351; B. 206; H. 454; W. 364.

59 RULE: Verbs of *reminding, remembering* and *forgetting* govern the genitive.

This genitive is translated by the objective in English.

reminīscere veteris incommodī, I. 13, 4, *remember* THE FORMER DEFEAT. So with **oblīvīscor**, I. 14, 3 and VII. 34, 1. Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum.

Genitive with Verbs of Emotion (Genitive with Impersonals). G. 377; A. 354; B. 209; H. 457; W. 368.

60 RULE: **Misereor** and the impersonals **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet,** take[1] the accusative of the person and[2] the genitive of the thing.

cōnsilia, quōrum[2] eōs[1] paenitet, IV. 5, 3, *plans,* OF WHICH[2] (it repents THEM[1]) THEY *repent.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

Genitive with Verbs of Judicial Action. G. 378; A. 352; B. 208; H. 456; W. 367.

61 RULE: Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning* and *acquitting* govern the genitive of the charge.

inīquitātis condemnārī, VII. 19, 5, *to be condemned* FOR MISCONDUCT. **prōditiōnis īnsimulātus**, VII. 20, 1, *accused* OF TREASON. Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum.

Genitive with Verbs of Buying, Selling and Rating (Genitive of Price or Value). G. 379; A. 417; B. 203, 3, 4; H. 448; W. 361–363.

62 RULE: With verbs of *buying, selling* and *rating* the genitive is usually employed to express indefinite price.

tantī tua apud mē grātia est, I. 20, 5, *your favor with me* (is worth so MUCH, is OF SO GREAT ACCOUNT), *is so great.* **cūius auctōritās māgnī habēbātur**, IV. 21, 7, *whose influence was considered* (OF GREAT WEIGHT), *great.* Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum besides the two under the following rule.

Genitive with *Interest* and *Rēfert*. G. 381, 382; A. 355; B. 212, 2; H. 458, 3; W. 369.

63 RULE: **Interest** and **rēfert,** *it concerns,* take[1] a genitive of the person, rarely of the thing, concerned.

The degree[2] of concern is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial accusative, or a genitive of value.

The thing[3] about which there is concern is expressed by the subject, which may be a neuter pronoun, an infinitive with subject accusative, or an indirect question.

docet quantō opere[2] reī pūblicae[1] intersit manūs[3] hostium distinērī,[3] II. 5, 2, *he shows* (HOW GREATLY[2] it concerns), *how important it is to* THE REPUBLIC,[1] *that* THE FORCES[3] *of the enemy* BE DIVIDED.[3] This is the only example of (1) in the Bellum Gallicum. **māgnī[2] interest,** with accusative and infinitive, V. 4, 3, VI. 1, 3, *it* GREATLY *concerns, it is* OF GREAT IMPORTANCE. **neque interest, ipsōsne[3] interficiāmus an impedīmentīs exuāmus,[3]** VII. 14, 8, *and* (it does not concern *us*), *it makes no difference,* WHETHER[3] WE KILL THEM OUTRIGHT, OR[3] STRIP THEM OF THEIR BAGGAGE. These are the only instances of **interest** in the Bellum Gallicum; **rēfert** does not occur.

Genitive with Verbs of Plenty and Want. See § 65, note.

Genitive with *Potior*. See § 73, note.

ABLATIVE CASE.

64 The ablative case unites in its different uses the functions of three cases that were originally distinct in form and meaning,—the true ablative (**ab, ferō**), denoting separation, the instrumental and the locative.

Ablative of Separation. G. 390; A. 400–402; B. 214; H. 461–466; W. 374–377.

65 RULE: Separation is expressed by the ablative sometimes with, sometimes without, the prepositions **ab, dē** or **ex.**

The preposition is regularly omitted with verbs and adjectives of *freeing, excluding, depriving, lacking, abstaining* and *removing,* but is expressed if the substantive denotes a person.

Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna dīvidit, I. 1, 2, *the Garonne separates the Gauls* FROM THE AQUITANIANS. **suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent,** I. 1, 4, *they keep them* (forth FROM) *out of* THEIR OWN TERRITORY.

tūta ab hostibus, II. 5, *safe* FROM THE ENEMY. **ab hīs castrīs oppidum aberat,** II. 6, 1, FROM THIS CAMP *a town was distant.*

NOTE. Instead of the ablative, the genitive may be used with certain verbs of *plenty and want.* The Bellum Gallicum shows but one example.

auxiliī egēre, VI. 11, 4, (to be destitute OF AID), *to lack aid.*

66 The words with which the ablative of separation is used without a preposition can be learned only by practice. The following list contains all the verbs that are *ever* used without a preposition in the Bellum Gallicum. The first number in parenthesis indicates the number of times it is used *with* a preposition, the second the number of times it is used *without* a preposition.

Verbs and adjectives of *freeing,* etc. (§ 65): **abstineō** (1, **ā mulieribus;** 1, **proeliō**), **careō** (0; 2), **dēpellō** (0; 3), **dēspoliō** (0; 1), **exspoliō** (0; 1), **exuō** (0; 1), **interclūdō** (6, not collective or personal; 2, **ab exercitū, ā praesidiō et impedīmentīs**), **interdīcō** (0; 3), **levō** (0; 1), **līberō** (0; 3), **nūdō** (0; 2), **spoliō** (0; 3), **supersedeō** (0; 1).

Other verbs: **absum** (25; 1, **tōtō bellō**), **cēdō** (0; 1, **locō**), **dēcidō** (0; 1, **equō**), **dēiciō** (0; 6), **dēsistō** (0; 8), **ēdūcō** * (18, including **castrīs;** 2, **castrīs**), **ēgredior** * (13; 5), **ēruptiōnem faciō** (1, **ex oppidō;** 4, **portīs,** including idea of means), **excēdō** * (6; 10), **expellō** (2, **ex cīvitāte, ex silvīs;** 6), **labor** (0; 1, **spē**), **praecipitō** (0; 1, **mūrō**), **prohibeō,** in sense of *keep away* (2; 14), **prohibeō** in other senses (5; 0).

Ablative of Place from Which (Place Whence). See § 91.

Ablative of Origin (Source). G. 395, 396; A. 403; B. 215; H. 467, 469, 470; W. 378.

67 RULE: Origin or source is expressed by the ablative, generally with **ab** or **ex.**

Besides the ordinary forms of source, this use includes *parentage* and *material.* Parentage is expressed without a preposition except in the case of remote ancestors, when **ab** is used, and in the case of personal pronouns, when **ex** is used. Material is expressed with **dē** or **ex.**

SOURCE: **ab aliquō quaerere,** cf. I. 18, 2, II. 4, 1, *to inquire* (FROM) *of* ANY ONE. **ex sōlō quaerere,** I. 18, 2, *to inquire* OF (*him*) ALONE. **Rhēnus oritur ex Lepontiīs,** IV. 10, 3, *the Rhine rises* (FROM) *among* THE LEPONTII. MATERIAL: **nāvēs factae ex robore,** III. 13, 3, *ships made* (out) OF OAK. PARENTAGE: **amplissimō genere**

* Takes and omits preposition, sometimes with the same noun, without apparent difference in meaning.

nātus, IV. 12, 4, (born) OF MOST DISTINGUISHED FAMILY. **ortī ab Germānīs**, II. 4, 1, (SPRUNG FROM THE GERMANS), *of German descent.*

Ablative of Agent. G. 401, second part; A. 405; B. 216; H. 468; W. 379.

68 RULE: Agency is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, except in connection with the gerundive.

This ablative answers the question, *By whom?* It is the name of a person and is used with the passive voice.

quī ā senātū amīcus appellātus erat, I. 3, 4, *who had been called friend* BY THE SENATE. **quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur**, II. 1, 3, *because they were stirred up* BY SOME (OF THE) GAULS.

For the dative of the agent see § 31.

The person through whom an action takes place is expressed by the accusative with **per.**

Ablative of Comparison. G. 398; A. 406, 407; B. 217; H. 471; W. 380.

69 When a comparison between two substantives is expressed in full, the comparative word is usually followed by **quam**, *than*, with the second substantive in the same case as the first. This construction may sometimes be condensed, however, in Latin, as follows:

RULE: The ablative may be used after comparatives, instead of **quam** with the nominative or accusative.

This ablative is translated by *than* with the case of the first substantive.

nōn amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum, I. 15, 5, *not more* THAN FIVE MILES (*a day*). So II. 7, 3, 4.

70 After **plūs, minus, amplius** and **longius, quam** *may* be omitted without changing the construction to the ablative. In such cases *than* must be supplied in translation.

spatium quod nōn amplius pedum sēscentōrum, I. 38, 5, *a distance which is not more* (*than*) (OF) SIX HUNDRED FEET (§ 45). **flūmen nōn amplius mīlia passuum X abest**, II. 16, 1, *the river is not more* (*than*) *ten* MILES *away* (§ 99).

Ablative of Means or Instrument. G. 401; A. 409, *c;* B. 218; H. 466; W. 386.

71 RULE: Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *By what means?* It is translated with the prepositions *by* or *with*, when the sense of these is *by means of*. It is almost always the name of a *thing;* if of a person, it is one considered as a "tool."

flūmine continētur, I. 1, 5, *it is bounded* BY THE RIVER. **legiōne mīlitibusque mūrum perdūcit**, I, 8, 1, WITH THE LEGION AND THE SOLDIERS *he constructs a wall.* **litterīs certior fīēbat**, II. 1, 1, *he was informed* BY THE DISPATCHES.

72 This ablative is sometimes translated otherwise than as above; for example, when some other idea that is denoted by the ablative is combined with it, or when the English thought is different from the Latin.

proeliīs contendere, I. 1, 4, *to contend* IN BATTLES. **dolō nītī**, I. 13, 6, *to rely* ON TREACHERY. **flūmine subvehere**, I. 16, 3, *to bring up* (by) THE RIVER. **vīribus cōnfīdere**, I. 53, 2, *to rely* ON ONE'S STRENGTH. **victōriīs frētī**, III. 21, 1, *relying* ON THEIR VICTORIES. **peditātū contentus**, VII. 64, 2, *content* WITH INFANTRY.

Ablative with Deponents. G. 407; A. 410; B. 218, 1; H. 477. I; W. 387.

73 RULE: The ablative of means is used with **ūtor**, *use*, **fruor**, *enjoy*, **fungor**, *perform*, **potior**, *obtain* (*control of*), **vēscor**, *eat*, and their compounds.

This ablative is translated by the objective in English.

imperiō potīrī, I. 2, 2, *to obtain* CONTROL. **eōdem iūre et īisdem lēgibus ūtī**, II. 3, 5, (to use THE SAME RIGHT and THE SAME LAWS), *to have the same constitution and the same laws.*

NOTE. Instead of the ablative, the genitive is once used with **potior** in the Bellum Gallicum.

tōtīus Galliae potīrī, I. 3, 8, *to obtain control* OF ALL GAUL.

Ablative with *opus* and *ūsus*. G. 406; A. 411; B. 218, 2; H. 477, III.; W. 389.

74 RULE: The ablative of means is used with **opus** (indeclinable), *need*, and **ūsus**, *need*, to denote the thing needed.

sī quid (acc.) **opus** (nom.) **factō erit**, I. 42, 5, (if there shall be need at all, § 13), *if there is any need* OF ACTION. **sī quō opus erit**, II. 8, 5, (if there shall be need OF ANYTHING), *if there is any need.* Only examples in the Bellum Gallicum.

Ablative of Price. G. 404; A. 416; B. 225; H. 478; W. 395.

75 RULE: Price is expressed by the ablative when **pretiō** or a similar word is used, or when the amount is definite.

parvō pretiō, I. 18, 3, AT A SMALL PRICE. So IV. 2, 2. **levī mōmentō**, VII. 39, 3, OF SLIGHT CONSEQUENCE. **quantō dētrīmentō victōria cōnstet**, VII. 19, 4, WITH HOW GREAT LOSS *victory would be obtained, how great a loss the victory would cost.* Only examples in the Bellum Gallicum. Compare the genitive of price, § 62.

Ablative of Attendance (Accompaniment). G. 392; A. 413; B. 220; H. 473; W. 390.

76 RULE: Attendance or accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum**.

This ablative answers the question, *With whom? In company with what?*

cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre, I. 2, 1, *to set out* WITH ALL THEIR POSSESSIONS. **Sabīnum cum sex cohortibus relīquit**, II. 5, 6, *he left Sabinus* WITH SIX COHORTS.

77 **cum** may be omitted in military descriptions when the noun is modified by an adjective that is not a numeral.

omnibus cōpiīs contendere, II. 7, 3, *to hasten* WITH ALL THEIR TROOPS.

Ablative of Manner (including Attendant Circumstance). G. 399; A. 412; B. 220; H. 473, 3; W. 390, 391.

78 RULE: Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, which may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative answers the question, *How? Under what circumstances?*

māgnō cum perīculō erit, I. 10, 2, *it will be* (WITH GREAT DANGER), *very dangerous.* **multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāre**, I. 20, 1, *to beseech* WITH MANY TEARS. **māgnō impetū oppūgnāre**, II. 6, 1, *to*

attack WITH GREAT VIGOR. **māgnō cum strepitū ēgredī, II. 11,** 1, *to set out* WITH GREAT NOISE.

79 A few words, many of which have practically become adverbs, are used without a preposition: e.g. **iniūriā,** (with injustice), *unjustly, wrongfully;* **silentiō,** (in silence), *silently;* **commodō,** (with advantage), *advantageously.*

Ablative of Quality (Characteristic). G. 400; A. 415; B. 224; H. 473, 2; W. 394.

80 RULE: A quality or characteristic is expressed by the ablative modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative always modifies a substantive, and may be tested by the translation "characterized by," which in actual rendering should be replaced by *of*.

Allobrogēs bonō animō nōn vidēbantur, I. 6, 3, *the Allobroges did not seem* (CHARACTERIZED BY A GOOD FEELING), *of friendly disposition, well disposed.* **Iccius summā nōbilitāte,** II. 6, 4, *Iccius,* (*a man*) (characterized by), OF THE GREATEST PROMINENCE.

With this construction compare the descriptive genitive, § 44.

Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference. G. 403; A. 414; B. 223; H. 479; W. 393.

81 RULE: The amount (degree) of difference between two objects or actions is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *How much?* It appears before comparatives and words implying a comparison, and in expressions of distance.

In translation it takes the construction of the English adverbial objective; hence *there is no preposition in the English rendering.*

nīhilō minus, I. 5, 1, (less BY NOTHING, NONE the less), *nevertheless.* **multō facilius,** I. 6, 2, (easier BY MUCH), MUCH easier. **paucīs ante diēbus,** I. 18, 10, (before BY A FEW DAYS), A FEW DAYS *before.* **ā** (adverb) **mīlibus passuum duōbus,** II. 7, 3, TWO MILES *away.* **paulō longius,** II. 20, 1, (too far BY A LITTLE), A LITTLE *too far.*

Ablative of Specification. G. 397; A. 418; B. 226; H. 480; W. 396.

82 RULE: Specification is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *In respect to what? In what respect?* It is translated as the object of *in*, or, less frequently, of *by*. It modifies verbs, adjectives and, more rarely, nouns.

virtūte praecēdunt, I. 1, 4, *they excel* IN (respect to) COURAGE. **oppida numerō duodecim**, II. 4, 7, *towns twelve* IN (respect to) NUMBER. **nōmine Bibrax**, II. 6, 1, *Bibrax* BY NAME.

83 Under this use of the ablative is generally considered to belong that with **dīgnus**, *worthy* (of), VII. 25, 1, and **indīgnus**, *unworthy* (of), V. 35, 5, VII. 17, 3. ALLEN and GREENOUGH, however, class this under the ablative of cause.

Ablative of Cause. G. 408; A. 404; B. 219; H. 475; W. 384, 385.

84 RULE: Cause is expressed by the ablative generally without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *Why? On what account? For what reason?* It is translated *because of, on account of, for, from*, etc., according to the English word with which it is connected.

grātiā plūrimum poterat, I. 9, 3, *he was very influential* ON ACCOUNT OF HIS POPULARITY. **virtūte cōgnitī**, I. 28, 5, *noted* FOR THEIR VALOR. **mōbilitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant**, II. 1, 3, ON ACCOUNT OF THEIR FICKLENESS (of mind) *they desired changes of government.*

85 Instead of the simple ablative prepositions are often used; especially **dē** or **ex** with the ablative, or **ob** (see vocabulary) and **propter** with the accusative.

quā dē causā, I. 1, 4, FOR THIS REASON. **ex cōnsuētūdine**, I. 52, 4, ACCORDING TO THEIR CUSTOM.

Ablative of Accordance.

86 An ablative translated *in accordance with* is classed by GILDERSLEEVE and ALLEN and GREENOUGH as specification, by BENNETT and WEST as manner, by HARKNESS as cause.

mōribus suīs, I. 4, 1, *according to their customs.* So II. 13, 3.

Ablative Absolute. G. 409, 410; A. 419; B. 227; H. 489; W. 397–399.

87 RULE: A noun and a participle or their equivalents are

used in the ablative to add an attendant circumstance to a sentence.

This construction corresponds to the independent *nominative* with participle in English, hence no preposition is used to translate the Latin case. On account of the rarity of this construction in good English, however, the literal translation should rarely be retained, but should be changed to an active participial construction, a phrase or a clause.

While connected logically or in thought with the rest of the sentence, it has no grammatical connection; hence the name *absolute*.

rēgnō occupātō, I. 3, 8, (the control of the government having been seized), *having seized control of the government; after seizing control of the government.* **initā aestāte**, II. 2, 1; see vocabulary under **ineō**. See also § 364.

88 Instead of a noun and a participle there may be (*a*) two nouns, (*b*) a noun and an adjective, when the lacking participle of the verb **sum** is understood.

Messālā, Pīsōne cōnsulibus, I. 2, 1, (MESSALA AND PISO) *being* CONSULS, *in the consulship of Messala and Piso.* **sē invītō**; see vocabulary.

Ablative of Place Where (Place in Which). See § 91.

Ablative of Time. G. 393, 394; A. 423, 1; B. 230, 231; H. 486–488; W. 406, 407.

89 RULE: The time when or within which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *When?* It is translated with the preposition *at* or *on* if it is "*time when*," with the preposition *within* if it is distinctly "*time within which.*"

eō tempore, I. 3, 5, AT THAT TIME. **eō diē**, II. 6, 2, (ON) THAT DAY. **patrum nostrōrum memoriā**, I. 12, 5, WITHIN THE MEMORY (of our fathers), *of the last generation.* So II. 4, 7. See also § 105.

Ablative with Prepositions. G. 417; A. 220, *b, c;* B. 142; H. 490; W. 243, 245.

90 The following prepositions, used in the Bellum Gallicum, govern the ablative only: **ā (ab, abs), cum, dē, ē (ex), prae** (twice), **prō, sine.**

In and **sub** govern either accusative or ablative. See vocabulary.

Expressions of Place.

Place Where (Place in Which or at Which). G. 385–389, 411; A. 426–431; B. 228, 232; H. 482–485; W. 401–403.

91 Rule: Place where is expressed by the locative case when it exists (see § 93), otherwise by the ablative with **in.**

domī, I. 18, 5, AT HOME. **in eōrum fīnibus**, I. 1, 4, IN THEIR TERRITORY. **in Galliā**, II. 1, 1, IN GAUL.

92 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition, and it is frequently omitted in expressions containing forms of **locus**, **pars**, or **tōtus**, and when some other idea is combined with that of place.

nōn nūllīs locīs, I. 6, 2, IN SOME PLACES. So II. 33, 4. **tōtīs castrīs**, I. 39, 5, THROUGHOUT THE CAMP. **castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuerat**, I. 40, 8, *he had kept himself* IN CAMP (and) AMONG THE MARSHES. **proeliō Nervicō**, III. 5, 2, IN THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII.

93 Locative.—Forms of the locative case are confined to the names of towns and small islands in the singular of the first and second declensions, where it is like the genitive; to a very few in the singular of the third declension, where it is like the dative; and to the following forms of common nouns,—**domī**, *at home*, **rūrī**, *in the country*, **humī**, *on the ground*, **mīlitiae** and **bellī**, *in war.*

The locative occurs as follows in the Bellum Gallicum: **domī**, I. 18, 5, 20, 2, 28, 3, IV. 1, 5, 6, VII. 4, 8, 39, 1; names of towns, V. 24, 1, VI. 44, 3, VII. 3, 3, 10, 4, 14, 1 (three times), 31, 4, 32, 1, 47, 5, 55, 5, 57, 1, 77, 1, 90, 7, 8.

Terminal Accusative (Place Whither, Place to Which). G. 337; A. 426–431; B. 182; H. 418, 419; W. 325.

94 Rule: Place whither or to which is usually expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in.**

pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis, I. 1, 6, *they extend* TO THE LOWER PART *of the river.* **in interiōrem Galliam dēdūcere**, II. 2, 1, *to lead* (*them*) INTO THE INTERIOR OF GAUL (§ 113).

95 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also **domum, domōs,** when meaning *home,* and **rūs,** *into the country.* But **ad** may be used with the name of a town to denote motion to its vicinity.

domum reditiō, I. 5, 7, *a return* HOME. **domum pervenīre,** II. 11, 1, *to get* HOME. **Bibracte īre,** I. 23, 1, *to go* TO BIBRACTE. **ad Genāvam pervenit,** I. 7, 1, *he arrives* IN THE VICINITY OF GENEVA.

Place Whence (Place from Which). G. 390, 391; A. 426–431; B. 229; H. 491, I. 2, II. 2; W. 404.

96 RULE: Place whence or from which is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab, dē** or **ex.**

dē suīs fīnibus exīre, I. 2, 1, *to go out* FROM THEIR TERRITORY. **ex castrīs ēdūcere,** II. 8, 5, *to lead out* FROM CAMP.

97 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also **domō,** *from home,* and **rūre,** *from the country.* But **ab** may be used with the name of a town to denote motion from its vicinity.

domō efferre, I. 5, 3, *to take* FROM HOME. So IV. 7, 3. **Metiosēdō fugere,** VII. 58, 6, *to flee* FROM METIOSEDUM. **ab Ocelō,** I. 11, 5, FROM THE VICINITY OF OCELUM.

98 THE POINT OF VIEW is expressed by the ablative with **ab** or **ex**; English use, *at* or *on.*

ūnā ex parte, I. 2, 3, ON ONE SIDE. **ab utrōque latere,** II. 8, 3, ON EACH SIDE.

99 DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS EXTENT OF SPACE is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14).

100 THE WAY BY WHICH is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. This is generally considered as a subdivision of the ablative of means (§ 71).

101 LOCATION AMONG TRIBES is expressed by the ablative with **in** or by the accusative with **inter** or **apud.**

102 LOCATION NEAR A PLACE is expressed by the accusative with **ad,** *near, at.*

103 DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS AN INTERVAL BETWEEN TWO PLACES is expressed by the ablative of degree of difference (§ 81).

Expressions of Time.

104 TIME WHEN (TIME AT WHICH) is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89).

105 TIME WITHIN WHICH is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89), or, for clearness, with the preposition **in** (e.g. **in cōnsulātū suō**, I. 35, 2).

106 TIME DURING WHICH (TIME HOW LONG) is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14). See also note to Book I., line 476.

107 THE INTERVAL OF TIME before or after an event is generally expressed by **ante** or **post** as prepositions with the accusative, or by **ante** or **post** as adverbs, modified by an ablative of degree of difference (§ 81). E.g. **post trēs annōs**, *after three years*, or **tribus annīs post**, *three years after*.

Roman Dates. G. Appendix; A. 424, *g*, 631; B. 371; H. 754, 755; W. 718–754.

108 The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (**Kalendae**), Nones (**Nōnae**), and Ides (**Īdūs**), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: **Kalendae Iānuāriae, Nōnae Februāriae, Īdūs Mārtiae.** The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

> In March, July, October, May,
> The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
> The Nones the seventh; but all besides
> Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward the Romans used for "the day before" **prīdiē** with the accusative. E.g. **prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās,** Dec. 31.

The longer intervals are expressed by **ante diem tertium, quārtum,** *etc.*, before the accusative, so that **ante diem tertiam Kal. Iān.** means "two days before the Calends of January;" **ante diem quārtum,** or **a.d. iv.,** or **iv. Kal. Iān.,** "three days before," and so on. (See note on Book I. line 176.) These expressions are idiomatic; the nouns cannot be parsed separately, and the whole may be treated as an indeclinable noun.

TO TURN ROMAN DATES INTO ENGLISH.—For Nones and Ides, add one to the date on which these fall, and subtract the given number;

for Kalends, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs), I. 6, 4, (31 + 2 — 5), *March* 28.

SYNTAX AND USES OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives. G. 289, 286; A. 286, 287; B. 234, 235; H. 394, 395; W. 293–295.

109 RULE: An adjective, a participle (verbal adjective) or an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) agrees with the substantive it modifies in gender, number and case.

110 The common attributive modifier of two or more substantives usually agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important.

vir et cōnsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, III. 5, 2, a *man of* (both) GREAT *wisdom and courage.* So V. 11, 5.

Substantive Use of Adjectives. G. 204, Notes 1–4; A. 288, 289; B. 236–238; H. 494, 495; W. 409–411.

111 Any gender of an adjective may be used alone as a substantive, the ending or the context showing the appropriate sense.

nōbilissimus, adjective, I. 2, 1, THE MOST PROMINENT. **nōbilissimōs cīvitātis**, I. 7, 3, THE MOST PROMINENT (*men*) *of the state.* **sua omnia**, II. 3, 2, ALL THEIR (*possessions*).

112 A certain adjective may have been used most frequently with a particular noun, which comes to be regularly omitted. The gender remains that of the noun with which it was combined.

hīberna (sc. castra), I. 10, 3, III. 2, 1, (WINTER camp), WINTER *quarters.* **hominēs ferī**, I. 31, 5, II. 15, 5, FIERCE *men;* but **fera** (sc. **bestia**, *beast*), VI. 25, 5, 28, 2, WILD *beast.*

Partitive Use of Adjectives. G. 291, 1, Remark 2; A. 293; B. 241, 1; H. 497, 4; W. 416.

113 The following adjectives in the Bellum Gallicum, being superlatives, or implying order or sequence, sometimes designate a *part* of a following substantive,—**prīmus, extrēmus, summus, medius, īnfimus (īmus), reliquus.** See vocabulary. Examples follow.

summus mōns, I. 22, 1, THE HIGHEST PART OF *the hill*, THE TOP OF *the hill*. **ad extrēmās fossās**, II. 8, 4, *at* THE ENDS OF *the ditches*.

Predicate or Adverbial Use of Adjectives. A. 191; B. 290; H. 497, 1; W. 412.

114 Certain adjectives are best rendered adverbially when they modify the subject;—in the Bellum Gallicum, **annuus, laetus, invītus, frequēns, trīstis, praeceps.** See vocabulary.

quī creātur annuus, I. 16, 5, *who is chosen* ANNUALLY. **praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant**, II. 24, 2, *they took to flight* PRECIPITATELY.

Adjective Contrasted with Adverb. B. 241, 2; H. 497, 3, W. 417.

115 **Prīmus** and some similar adjectives must be carefully distinguished from the corresponding adverbs.

prīmus prōgressus est, (he, FIRST, advanced), *he was the first to advance;* others, it is implied, advanced afterward. So II. 19, 5. **prīmum prōgressus est**, *he* FIRST *advanced;* afterward, it is implied, he did something else. So I. 25, 1, II. 10, 4. **prīmō celeriter prōgressus est**, AT FIRST *he advanced quickly*, but presently, it is implied, he slackened his pace. So I. 31, 5, II. 8, 1.

Translation of the Comparative of Adjectives and Adverbs. G. 297; A. 291, *a;* B. 240, 1; H. 298; W. 414, 2.

116 The Latin comparative is translated not only by the English comparative, but by *too, rather, somewhat,* or *quite,* with the positive; and by *very* when the comparative is negatived.

Translation of the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs. G. 302, 303; A. 291, *b;* B. 240, 2, 3; H. 498; W. 414, 3, 4.

117 The Latin superlative may be translated not only by the English superlative but by *very* with the positive. It may be strengthened by **vel** (compare VII. 37, 6, where **prīncipēs** = **prīmī**), or by **quam** with a form of **possum** expressed or understood (see **quam** in vocabulary).

SYNTAX AND USES OF PRONOUNS.

118 All Latin pronouns may be divided into two classes as regards their syntax: substantive pronouns and adjective pronouns (pronominal adjectives).

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUN: **erant itinera duo quibus exīre possent,** *there were two routes* BY WHICH *they could emigrate.*

ADJECTIVE PRONOUN: **erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exīre possent,** I. **6**, 1, *there were two routes* BY WHICH ROUTES *they could emigrate.*

119 The syntax of an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) is the same as of any adjective,—it agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number and case (§ 109).

Agreement of a Substantive Pronoun.

120 RULE: Any substantive pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender. Its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

NOTE.—The distinction is not always made clear in English grammars. Thus *my* or *mine* is sometimes considered the possessive case of the personal pronoun, *I*, sometimes a possessive adjective. Contrast, "*this box came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative adjective), with "*this came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative pronoun).

121 Table of Personal and Possessive Pronouns.

		First Person.		*Second Person.*	
		Ordinary.	Reflexive.	Ordinary.	Reflexive
Personal		**ego,** *I*	———	**tū,** (thou), *you*	———
		meī, *my*	**meī,** *of myself*	**tuī,** *your*	**tuī,** *of yourself*
		mihi, *to me*	**mihi,** *to myself*	**tibi,** *to you*	**tibi,** *to yourself*
		etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
Possessive	Sing.	**meus, a, um,** *my*		**tuus, a, um,** (thy), *your*	
	Plu.	**noster, tra, trum,** *our*		**vester, tra, trum,** *you*	

Third Person.

		Ordinary.	Reflexive.
Personal		**is,** *he,* **ea,** *she,* **id,** *it*	———
		ĕius, *his, her, its*	**suī,** *of himself, of herself, of itself*
		eī, *to him, to her, to it*	**sibi,** *to himself, to herself, to itself*
		etc.	etc.
Possessive	Sing.	**ĕius,** *his, her, its*	**suus, a, um,** *his, her, its (own)*
	Plu.	**eōrum, eārum,** *their*	**suus, a, um,** *their (own)*

Nominative of the Personal Pronouns Omitted. G. 304, 1; A. 295, *a;* B. 242, 1; H. 500; W. 419.

122 The personal pronoun is regularly omitted when it would be the subject of a finite verb, being expressed only for emphasis or for contrast.

is coniūrātiōnem fēcit, I. 2, 2, HE *made a conspiracy.* Compare also **ego,** IV. 25, 3.

For the use of the possessive pronouns for the genitive of the personal pronouns see §§ 38 and 43.

Direct and Indirect Reflexives. G. 309; A. 299–301; B. 244, I, II; H. 502–504; W. 421, 422.

123 The reflexive personal and possessive pronouns may refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive); but often, especially in indirect discourse, they refer to the subject of the main clause (indirect reflexive); sometimes to another particularly emphatic word.

124 Since the possessive pronouns (except the substitute possessive genitives, **ēius, eōrum, eārum**) are adjectives (see §§ 118 and 121), they take their gender, number and case from the word they modify, not from their antecedent. Therefore it is necessary to find the antecedent of a form of **suus, a, um,** in order to translate it correctly.

Casticus rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupat, I. 3, 4, *Casticus seizes the royal power in* HIS *state.*

125 For illustration of the contrast between the two possessives of the third person (§ 121), note the following sentence.

Helvētiī aut suīs (i.e. **Helvētiōrum**) **fīnibus eōs** (i.e. **Germānōs**) **prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum** (i.e. **Germānōrum**) **fīnibus bellum gerunt,** I. 1, 4, *the Helvetians either keep them* (*the Germans*) *out of* THEIR OWN *territory or carry on war themselves in* THEIR (*the Germans'*) territory.

126 Sometimes two reflexives stand in the same clause of indirect discourse, one referring to the subject of the main verb, the other to the subject of the infinitive. English has the same ambiguity.

Ariovistus respondit . . . nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse, I. 36, 6, *Ariovistus answered . . . that no one had fought* WITH HIM *without* HIS OWN *destruction,* i.e. *without being destroyed.* Here **sēcum** refers to **Ariovistus,** and **suā** to **nēminem.**

Demonstrative Pronouns. G. 305–308; A. 296–298; B. 246–249; H. 505–509; W. 426–428.

127 The three especial demonstrative pronouns are (1) **hīc, haec, hōc,** *this* (of mine, or near me), called the demonstrative of the *first* person; (2) **iste, ista, istud,** *that* (of yours, or near you), called the demonstrative of the *second* person, and (3) **ille, illa, illud,** *that* (of his, or near him), called the demonstrative of the *third* person.

When only two objects are contrasted, **hīc** and **ille** are generally used; in such cases **hīc** usually means *the nearer*, if referring to real position, *the latter*, if referring to that which is nearer in thought; and **ille**, *the more remote, the former*.

Iste has often a contemptuous, sneering force, as in VII. 77, 5, its only occurrence in the Bellum Gallicum.

128 These pronouns, like the English demonstratives (see § 120, note), may be used either as adjectives or as substantives. When used substantively, *especially when referring to persons*, they are generally best translated by personal pronouns.

huīc (i.e. **Galbae**) **permīsit**, III., 1, 3, *he permitted* HIM. It is very bad English ever to say, "He permitted this one," or "He permitted this man."

129 **is**, when used *adjectively*, is demonstrative and means either *this* or *that* (*these* or *those*), according to the sense. When used simply as the antecedent of the relative pronoun, it is to be translated *that* (*those*).

PERSONAL PRONOUN: **eī fīliam dat**, I. 3, 5, *he gives* HIM *his daughter*.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE: **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās**, I. 3, 3, *for completing* THESE *preparations*. **eō tempore**, I. 3, 5, *at* THAT *time*.

ANTECEDENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: **id quod**, I. 5, 1, THAT *which*.

130 **ipse** is the intensive or emphatic pronoun, like the English *himself*, etc., when the latter is *not reflexive* (see § 121); it emphasizes the word with which it is joined. When it is nominative its translation is shown by the person of the verb.

ipsī bellum gerunt, I. 1, 4, *they* THEMSELVES *carry on war*. **ipsī bellum gerimus**, *we* OURSELVES *carry on war*.

131 When **ipse** is used to strengthen a noun not the name of a person it may be translated in various ways.

in ipsīs ripīs, II. 23, 3, RIGHT *on the bank*(s). **hōc ipsō tempore** VI. 37, 1, *at this* VERY *time;* JUST *at this time*.

132 The genitive case of **ipse** is often used, for contrast or emphasis, instead of forms of the possessive reflexive pronoun, **suus, a, um,** and is then translated *his own, their own*, etc.

ipsōrum linguā, I. 1, 1, *in* THEIR OWN *language*. Here **suā** might have been used, but contrast with the following **nostrā** is desired. So I. 21, 1.

133 **Ipse** is often used in the nominative to intensify a reflexive pronoun. In such cases it may often be omitted in translation; it sometimes gives the reciprocal force (*each other*). See the examples.

ipse sibi mortem cōnscīvit, I. **4,** 4, (he HIMSELF decreed death to himself), *he committed suicide.* **sibi ipsī sunt impedīmentō,** II. **25,** 1, (they THEMSELVES are for a hindrance to themselves), *they hinder each other.*

Relative Pronouns. G. 614–619; A. 303–308; B. 250, 251; H. 510; W. 229–304.

134 RULE: A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number. Its case is determined by the structure of the clause in which it stands. See § 120.

135 Note the use of the relative *adjective* in Latin, much more common than in English.

quae cīvitās, I. **10,** 1, (WHICH state), *a state which.* See also the first example under § 118.

136 The Latin often uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence. This should never be translated literally, but generally by a demonstrative (regularly so if it is used adjectively), sometimes by a personal pronoun.

quārum, I. **1,** 1, OF THESE. **quā dē causā,** I. **1,** 4, *for* THIS *reason.* **quī,** I. **15,** 2, THEY. **quī cum,** II. **13,** 2, *when* THEY.

For the compound relatives, **quisquis, quīcumque,** see vocabulary.

Interrogative Pronouns. G. 467, Remark 2, 106; A. 148, 104; B. 90; H. 511; W. 148.

137 In both English and Latin the relative and interrogative words are almost the same if not identical in form. Compare the following sentences:

Interrogative.	*Relative.*
Who came? What boy came? Which boy came?	The boy who came.
What happened? What event happened? Which event happened?	The event which happened.
I know who came. I know what boy came. I know which boy came.	I know the boy who came.

138 For the interrogative pronouns used in the Bellum Gallicum, **quis, quī, quisnam,** and **uter,** see vocabulary. The last is used adjectively, I. **12,** 1, and substantively, V. **44,** 14, VI. **19,** 2.

Indefinite Pronouns. G. 313–319; A. 309–315; B. 252; H. 512–515; W. 430–435.

139 Forms of **quis** and **quī** are usually indefinite (meaning *any, any one*) after **sī, nisi, nē** and **num.**

See vocabulary for the uses of the other indefinite pronouns used in the Bellum Gallicum,—**aliquis, aliquī, quīdam, quispiam, quisquam, quīvīs, quisque.**

140 **Quisque** following a superlative is to be noted, as an idiom.

nōbilissimī cūiusque līberī, I. 31, 12, (the children OF EACH most prominent man), *the children of all the most prominent men.* So I. 45, 3.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Agreement of Verb. G. 211, 285–287; A. 316, 317; B. 254, 255; H. 388–392; W. 296–298.

141 **RULE: A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.**

142 The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural unless the two are considered together as a unit.

Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit, I. 1, 2, *the Marne-and-Seine* DIVIDES. Here the principal river and its tributary are considered as one, like the "Missouri to the sea."

143 Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the plural.

cum tanta multitūdō cōnicerent, II. 6, 3, *when such a great number* (WERE) *was throwing.* Similarly **exīrent** (sc. **cīvitās**), I. 2, 1.

Impersonal Verbs. G. 208, 528, 2; A. 208; B. 138; H. 302, 611; W. 233, 442, 4.

144 Besides the impersonal verbs common to both Latin and English pertaining to the state of the weather (*it rains,* etc.), which do not occur in the Bellum Gallicum, and those which are active and take a neuter pronoun, an infinitive or a clause as the subject (**oportet, licet, interest** (§ 63), etc., there are the following impersonal uses of *passive* verbs.

1. Verbs that take an indirect object in the active voice. See §§ 26 and 27, note.

2. Verbs that take no object in the active voice. These are used impersonally, especially in the compound tenses. The literal translation should not be retained.

pūgnātum est, I. 26, 1, (it was fought), *they fought; the battle raged.* **sustentātum est,** II. 6, 1, (it was sustained), *the attack was sustained.*

Tenses of the Indicative. G. 222–245; A. 465–479; B. 257–264; H. 526–540; W. 445–460.

145 SPECIFIC PRESENT. The present tense is used of (a) *that which is now going on* or of (b) *that which is undefined or habitual* in the present.

(a) **quō proficīscimur,** VII. 38, 2, *where* ARE WE GOING? (b) **turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant,** VII. 77, 3, THEY TERM *the basest slavery a surrender.*

146 UNIVERSAL PRESENT. The present tense is used of statements *that apply to all time.*

omnēs hominēs nātūrā lībertātī student, III. 10, 3, *all men naturally* DESIRE *liberty.*

147 HISTORICAL PRESENT. The present tense is used far more frequently than in English *as a lively representation of the past,* or in an annalistic sense.

profectiōnem cōnfīrmant, I. 3, 2, THEY DECREE (*decreed*) *their departure.*

148 IMPERFECT TENSE. The imperfect indicative primarily denotes an action as continued in the past, or a past condition of affairs. It is then accurately translated by the English past progressive. But if the idea of continuance is not strong, or if the voice is passive, the simple past should be used.

hiemābant, I. 10, 3, *were passing the winter.* So **populābantur,** I. 11, 1; **exspectābant,** II. 9, 1. Contrast the following: **arbitrābantur,** I. 2, 5, *they thought.* **patēbant,** I. 2, 5, *extended.* **māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur,** I. 2, 4, (they were being affected with great grief), *they were greatly grieved.*

The imperfect also denotes (1) attempted, (2) repeated, (3) accustomed or habitual action in the past.

(1) **prohibēbant,** V. 9, 6, *they tried to prevent.* (2) **cōniciēbant,** I. 26, 3, *they kept throwing.* (3) **versābantur,** I. 48, 6, *they would engage.* **servī cremābantur,** VI. 19, 4, *slaves used to be burned.*

149 PERFECT TENSE. The Latin perfect has two distinct uses. It is equivalent either to (1) the English past, or to (2) the English present perfect (e.g. **dēmōnstrāvimus,** II. 1, 1, *we have shown*).

Tenses of the Subjunctive. G. 277; A. 480–485; B. 266–269; H. 541–550; W. 461–472.

150 *The tenses of the subjunctive do not express absolute time.* (Over.)

In independent clauses (§§ 154 and 155) the tenses of the subjunctive generally have especial uses.

In dependent clauses the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive express incomplete action, the perfect and pluperfect completed action. Further than this, the choice of tense is usually determined by the law of *sequence of tenses.*

151 Sequence of Tenses. If the tense of the principal verb is *present, future* or *future perfect* (the so-called *principal* tenses), it is followed by the *present* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *perfect* subjunctive to denote completed action; if the tense of the principal verb is *imperfect, perfect* or *pluperfect* (the so-called *historical* tenses), it is followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *pluperfect* subjunctive to denote completed action.

152 This rule is subject to several modifications. (1) The historical present (§ 147) may be considered according to its form as present or according to its sense as past; in the Bellum Gallicum it is considered a principal tense about three times out of every four. (2) The present perfect (§ 149, 2) may be felt as giving the past starting point and so be considered as historical, or as giving the present completion and so be considered as principal.

Principal Tenses.

Pr. (Pure or Hist.),	**cōgnōscō,**	*I am finding out,*	**quid faciās,** *what you are doing;*
Fut.,	**cōgnōscam,**	*I shall* (try to) *find out,*	**quid fēcerīs,** *what you have done, what you have been doing* (*what you did*), *what you were doing* (*before*).
Pure Pf.,	**cōgnōvī,**	*I have found out* (*I know*),	
Future Pf.,	**cōgnōverō,**	*I shall have found out* (*shall know*),	

Historical Tenses.

Hist. Pr.,	**cōgnōscō,**	*I am* (*was*) *finding out,*	**quid facerēs,** *what you were doing;*
Impf.,	**cōgnōscēbam,**	*I was finding out,*	**quid fēcissēs,** *what you had done, what you had been doing, what you were doing* (*before*).
Hist. Pf.,	**cōgnōvī,**	*I found out,*	
Plupf.,	**cōgnōveram,**	*I had found out* (*I knew*),	

It will be noticed from the above examples that the English has the same rule. Compare also "He *comes* that he *may* see," with "He *came that he might* see."

NOTE.—Exceptions to all these rules of sequence are common, especially in indirect discourse, being sometimes required by the sense, sometimes by clearness, and being often used for vividness.

153 FUTURE TIME IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. Since the subjunctive tenses do not represent absolute time, but only complete or incomplete action relative to the time of the principal verb, it follows that *any tense of the subjunctive may refer to the future,* when the action of the principal verb looks to the future. For especial clearness in this respect the active periphrastic conjugation is used (§ 277).

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Subjunctive as an Imperative (Hortatory Subjunctive). G. 263, 1; A. 439; B. 274; H. 559, 1; W. 482.

154 RULE: The present subjunctive, first person plural, is used to express an exhortation. The negative is **nē.**

persequāmur eōrum mortem, VII. 38, 8, LET US AVENGE *their* death. So **interficiāmus,** following, and **respiciāmus,** VII. 77, 7.

155 NOTE.—The following uses of the subjunctive appear in the Bellum Gallicum only in the changed form made necessary by indirect discourse.

1. Subjunctive as an Imperative (Jussive Subjunctive). G. 263, 3; A. 439; B. 275; H. 559, 2; W. 482.

RULE: The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the third person, more rarely in the second. The negative is **nē.**

cum volet, **congrediātur** I. 36, 7, LET HIM COME ON *when he* (shall wish) *wishes.*

2. Deliberative Subjunctive. G. 265; A. 444; B. 277; H. 559, 4; W. 493.

RULE: The subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt or indignation. The negative is **nōn.**

Cūr quisquam iūdicet, I. 40, 2, *why* SHOULD ANY ONE JUDGE?

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

Pure Final Sentences (Subjunctive of Purpose). G. 545; A. 531; B. 282; H. 564; W. 506–508, 517, 518.

156 RULE: The subjunctive is used to express purpose or design with **ut (utī), nē, quō, quō minus,** forms of the relative pronoun, and relative adverbs.

157 **ut,** the normal introductory word in this construction, means *in order that,* or simply *that.* When either of these conjunctions is used in English, the subjunctive is translated by *may* or *might.* See § 152, end, and § 164.

sēmentēs facere, ut cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, I. 3, 1, (to make plantings), *to plant corn,* IN ORDER THAT A SUPPLY *of grain* MIGHT BE AVAILABLE. **duās legiōnēs in castrīs relīquit ut subsidiō dūcī possent,** II. 8, 5, *he left the two legions in camp* (IN ORDER THAT THEY MIGHT BE ABLE to be led for aid) *to act as reserves* (§ 164).

158 **nē** is the negative of **ut;** it means *in order that . . . not,* or simply *that . . . not.* The verb is translated as with **ut** (§ 157).

id nē accidat, mihi praecavendum est, I. 38, 2, *I must be on my guard* THAT THIS MAY NOT HAPPEN. **ibi tormenta collocāvit nē hostēs suōs circumvenīre possent,** II. 8, 4, *he placed his artillery there,* THAT THE ENEMY MIGHT NOT BE ABLE *to surround his troops.*

159 When the sentence involves the idea of fearing that a thing *will* happen, though the purpose is that it shall *not* happen, **nē** is translated *lest,* and the subjunctive, usually, by *shall* or *should.*

nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī trānsīrent, I. 28, 4, *he did not wish this region to be unoccupied,* LEST THE GERMANS SHOULD CROSS.

160 **quō** is really an ablative of means (or degree of difference) and is generally used when there is a comparative in the purpose clause. **quō,** *by which,* = **ut eō,** *that thereby,* or simply *that.*

castella commūnit, quō facilius prohibēre posset, I. 8, 2, *he constructed forts* THAT (THEREBY) HE MIGHT BE ABLE *more easily to prevent them* (*from crossing*). So II. 17, 4.

161 **quō minus** is used after verbs of *hindering, refusing, preventing,* and the like. See § 210.

162 The relative pronoun is used chiefly when its antecedent is the object of an active or the subject of a passive or intransitive verb. The equiva-

lent translation is by the periphrastic use of the infinitive with forms of *to be*, or by *shall* or *should*.

lēgātōs mittunt quī dīcerent, I. 7, 3, *they sent ambassadors* (WHO WERE TO ASK) *to ask.* So **quī dēdūceret,** II. 2, 1.

163 A form of the relative pronoun in such clauses is equivalent to **ut** with the corresponding form of **is.**

diem dīcunt quā (= ut eā) diē conveniant, I. 6, 4, they *appoint a day* ON WHICH (day) THEY SHALL ASSEMBLE; i.e. they appoint a day that on this day they may assemble.

164 Since after many English verbs purpose is regularly expressed by the infinitive, this often forms the best translation for Latin purpose clauses. But this is impossible when the subject of the subjunctive is an expressed noun. See examples, §§ 157–163.

For substantive clauses of purpose, see §§ 208–212.

Consecutive Sentences (Subjunctive of Result). G. 552; A. 537; B. 284; H. 570; W. 519, 527, 528.

165 RULE: The subjunctive is used to denote result with **ut (utī), ut nōn** and **quīn.**

ut means *that* or *so that;* the subjunctive is usually translated by the English indicative. **ut nōn** is the negative of **ut.**

tantī tua grātia est utī condōnem, I. 20, 5, *your favor is so great* (§ 62) THAT I PARDON. (collis) **silvestris ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset,** II. 18, 2, *a hill wooded* (SO THAT IT COULD NOT easily be seen into), *so thickly that one could not easily see anything among the trees.*

166 *Purpose or Result?* Negative result clauses cannot be mistaken for purpose clauses, since **nē**, the introductory word for a negative purpose clause, is not used in expressions of result. Compare the rules.

Clauses of result frequently follow such words as **tantus,** *so great,* **tālis,** *such,* **ita,** *so,* **ēius modī, hūius modī,** *of such sort,* etc. A sentence containing one of these words is incomplete without a result clause following, so that the presence of such a word indicates this construction.

167 If there is no such word as those mentioned above (§ 166), the matter is entirely a question of *meaning,*—was there any *intention* or *will* on the part of the subject of the main clause? If so, the subordinate clause denotes *purpose;* if not, it denotes *result.*

mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent, I. 6, 1, a *mountain rose sharply near by,* SO THAT A VERY FEW (*men*) COULD *check* (*them*). Here, of course, the mountain did not have any *intentions;* hence the clause is one of result.

For substantive clauses of result see §§ 213 and 214.

Subjunctive of Characteristic. G. 631; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591; W. 587.

168 RULE: The subjunctive with **quī** or any relative word may be used to characterize an antecedent, especially when it is general, indefinite or unexpressed.

This subjunctive usually needs an expansion in accurate translation if its force is to be clearly shown. This may be done by supplying words to show its limitations.

obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, popōscit, I. 27, 3, *he demanded* (*of the Helvetians*) *hostages, their arms, and the slaves* THAT HAD DESERTED *to them,* or *what slaves had deserted to them.* If the indicative had been used, the sense would have been different,—*he demanded the slaves, a class which had all escaped to them.* **domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent,** I. 28, 3, *there was nothing at home* (BY WHICH THEY COULD SUSTAIN a famine, i.e. such that by it they could endure a famine), *to live on.* **duo itinera quibus itineribus exīre possent,** I. 6, 1, *two routes* (BY WHICH ROUTES THEY COULD go out), (*such that*) *by them they could emigrate.* **sōlī sunt quī prohibuerint,** II. 4, 2, *they are the only ones* THAT PREVENTED.

169 A subjunctive introduced by **quī** follows **dīgnus, indīgnus** and **idoneus.** This use is generally referred to the above construction, but by Bennett, to § 156. Caesar shows but one example, VII. 31, 2.

Causal Clauses.

Causal Clauses with *quod, quia, quoniam* **and** *quandō.* G. 539, 542; A. 540; B. 286, 1; H. 588; W. 543, 544.

170 RULE: Causal clauses introduced by **quod,** *because,* **quia, quoniam** and **quandō,** *since,* take the indicative when the reason is stated as a fact, the subjunctive when it is given doubtfully or upon the authority of another person.

The force of the subjunctive can be given in English only by adding parenthetically, "as we said," or a similar phrase.

INDICATIVE: **fortissimī sunt Belgae propterea quod longissimē absunt,** I. 1, 3, *the bravest are the Belgians* (on this account) BECAUSE THEY ARE *farthest* AWAY. **[sollicitābantur], quod rēgna vulgō occupābantur,** II. 1, 4, *they were stirred up* BECAUSE THE POWER (*in individual states*) WAS GENERALLY SEIZED.

SUBJUNCTIVE: **quod sit dēstitūtus queritur,** I. 16, 6, *he complains* BECAUSE (AS HE SAYS) HE HAS BEEN DESERTED; *he complains that he has been deserted.* **Ubiī ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter ab Suēbis premerentur,** IV. 16, 5, *the Ubii were asking him to aid them* BECAUSE, AS THEY SAID, THEY WERE HARD PRESSED *by the Suebi.*

171 Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* are occasionally put in the subjunctive when the sense is the same as that which would be given by the subjunctive of the verb they govern, only less clearly expressed.

Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine bellum gestūrōs esse dīcerent, VII. 75, 5, *the Bellovaci did not furnish their complement* (*of men*), (BECAUSE THEY SAID THAT) *because, as they said, they were going to wage war on their own account.* Similarly, **quod vidērentur,** II. 11, 5, *because they thought that they were.*

Causal Clauses with *cum*. G. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H. 598: W. 542.

172 RULE: Causal clauses introduced by **cum,** *since,* take the subjunctive.

This subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, I. 9, 2, SINCE THEY COULD *not persuade them, they send ambassadors.* So. II. 11, 1.

Causal Clauses with *quī*. G. 633; A. 535, *e;* H. 592; W. 586, 5.

173 RULE: Causal clauses introduced by **quī** take the subjunctive.

The relative is here equivalent to cum, causal (§ 172), and the corresponding form of is.

māgnam Caesar iniūriam facit quī vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra faciat, I. 36, 4, *Caesar is doing me great injury,* SINCE HE IS MAKING *my revenues less.* So V, 33, 1, 2, VI. 31, 5.

174 A peculiar use of **quō,** *because,* for **eō quod,** *for this reason, because,* occurs once in the phrase **magis eō . . . quam quō.**

mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut (ea) quae bellō ceperint, (eōs) quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō . . . dēsiderent, IV. 2, 1, *the traders are allowed access to them* MORE FOR THIS REASON, *that they may have men to whom they may sell what they have captured in war,* THAN BECAUSE *they desire . . .*

Temporal Clauses.

175 The action of a temporal clause may be in one of three relations to the action of the principal verb:—it may be antecedent (conjunction, *after*) contemporaneous (conjunction, *while, as long as*), subsequent (conjunction, *before*).

Temporal Clauses with *postquam,* etc. G. 561–567; A. 543; B. 287; H. 602; W. 530–532.

176 RULE: Temporal clauses introduced by **postquam, posteāquam,** *after,* **ut, ubi,** *when,* **simul āc (atque),** *as soon as,* take the indicative, usually the perfect.

The historical present is used with **ubi** II. 9, 2, and the pluperfect IV. 26, 2. The English translation is frequently past perfect.

Ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt, I. 7, 3, WHEN THEY WERE INFORMED, *they sent ambassadors.* **postquam . . . cōgnōvit, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit,** II. 5, 4, AFTER HE HAD LEARNED (*this*), *he hastened to lead his army across.*

Temporal Clauses with *dum, dōnec* and *quoad.* G. 568–573; A. 553–556; B. 293; H. 603, 604; W. 533.

177 The English word *while* has two distinct meanings,—(1) *as long as,* and (2) *at some time during the time that.* Compare the following sentences:—(1) *he waited while* (i.e. *as long as*) *his friend was talking;* (2) *he arrived while* (i. e. *at some time during the time that*) *his friend was talking.*

178 RULE: Temporal clauses with **dum** in the sense of *while* (= *at some time during the time that*), take the (historical) present indicative.

dum ea conquīruntur, ē castrīs ēgressī sunt, I. 27, 4, WHILE THESE WERE BEING SOUGHT FOR, *they set out from camp.* So III. 17, 1.

179 RULE: Temporal clauses with **dum, dōnec, quoad,** and

quam diū, in the sense of *while* (= *as long as*), take the indicative.

quoad potuit, restitit, IV. 12, 5, *he resisted* AS LONG AS HE COULD. So V. 17, 3, and **dum**, VII. 82, 1.

180 RULE: Temporal clauses with **dum, dōnec** and **quoad** in the sense of *until* take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or* to represent an act as expected or anticipated).

Compare the construction with **antequam** and **priusquam**, § 181. The subjunctive is idiomatically translated by *can* or *could.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: **ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs convenīrent, respondit**, I. 7, 6, *in order that time might* (be able to) *intervene*, UNTIL THE SOLDIERS COULD ASSEMBLE, *he answered.* So IV. 13, 2, 23, 4, VII. 23, 4; and I. 11, 6, where the direct discourse would be the same. **Quoad**, IV. 11, 6, V. 24, 8.

The indicative under this construction does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum. An example is: **Epamīnōndās ferrum in corpore retinuit quoad renūntiātum est vīcisse Boeōtiōs**, Nepos, xv. 9, 3, *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body* UNTIL WORD WAS BROUGHT BACK *that the Boeotians had conquered.*

Temporal Clauses with ***antequam*** **and** ***priusquam.*** G. 574–577; A. 551; B. 292; H. 605; W. 534.

181 RULE: Temporal clauses with **antequam** and **priusquam** take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or* to represent an act as expected or anticipated).

Compare the construction with **dum**, § 180. The subjunctive is sometimes idiomatically translated by *can* or *could.* The words are often separated,—**ante quam, prius quam**, *sooner than* = *before, until.* **antequam** does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum.

INDICATIVE: **nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt**, I. 53, 1, *and they did not stop fleeing* (SOONER THAN) UNTIL THEY REACHED *the Rhine.* So VII. 25, 4, 47, 3.

SUBJUNCTIVE: **prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum vocārī iubet**, I. 19, 3, (SOONER THAN) BEFORE HE ATTEMPTED (*to do*) *anything, he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned.* **prius quam hostēs sē ex**

terrōre reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit, II. 12, 1, BEFORE THE ENEMY COULD RECOVER *from their fright, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.* The indicative would mean "before the enemy recovered," and would imply that they did recover afterward. The subjunctive indicates that they did *not* recover.

Temporal Clauses with ***cum.*** G. 578–588; A. 545–548; B. 288–290; H. 600–601; W. 535–539.

182 RULE: Temporal clauses with **cum** take the indicative of any tense when they define the *date* at which the action of the leading verb took place, takes place or will take place; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to define the *circumstances* under which the action of the leading verb took place.

Either mood is translated by the indicative.

INDICATIVE: **contendunt cum suīs fīnibus prohibent,** I. 1, 4, *they fight* WHEN THEY ARE KEEPING THEM OUT *of their own territory.* **hīs cum fūnēs comprehēnsi adductīque sunt, praerumpēbantur,** III. 14, 6, WHEN THE ROPES HAD BEEN CAUGHT *by these (hooks)* AND DRAWN TAUT, *they were snapped off short.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: **cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est,** I. 4, 3, WHEN THE STATE WAS TRYING *to assert its lawful power by force of arms, Orgetorix died.*

183 **Cum** INVERSE. When the two actions are independent, **cum** is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

iam nōn longius bíduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cōgnōscunt, VI. 7, 2, *they were now not more than two days' march away,* WHEN THEY LEARNED *that the two legions had come.*

Conditional Sentences.

Conditional Sentences with ***sī, nisi, sīn.*** G. 589–597: A. 511–525; B. 301–306; H. 572–583; W. 551–562.

184 Conditional sentences with **sī, nisi, sīn,** may be divided into *three* classes as regards *time,*—present, past, and future; and into *two* classes as regards *form,*—whether the condition is regarded as a *fact,* or not. A condition is thus fully described by two terms.

185 When a condition is regarded as a *fact*, it may be called a "logical" condition; or, in the present and past a "simple" or "assumed" condition, and in the future a "more vivid" or "probable" condition.

186 When a condition is regarded not as a fact but as an assumption, it may be called in the present and past an "unreal" or "contrary to fact" condition, and in the future an "ideal," "less vivid," or "possible" condition.

187 In both English and Latin, a condition that is regarded as a fact is put in the indicative, in whatever tense is required. A condition that is regarded as an assumption is put in the potential or subjunctive in English, the subjunctive in Latin.

188 TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

	REGARDED AS A FACT Called "LOGICAL," "SIMPLE," or "ASSUMED"	REGARDED AS AN ASSUMPTION Called "UNREAL" or "CONTRARY TO FACT"
Time of Condition \ Mood	*Indicative*	*Subjunctive*
	Tense of the Indicative	Tense of the Subjunctive
Present	Present, sometimes (Present) Perfect	Imperfect
Past	Imperfect or Perfect, sometimes Pluperfect	Pluperfect
		Called "IDEAL," "POSSIBLE," or "LESS VIVID"
Future	Future or Future Perfect	Present or Perfect

Type Conditional Sentence in All Its Ordinary Forms.

189 PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). Present indicative.

Sī iter facit, bene est.

If he marches (or *is marching*), *it is well.*

190 PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Imperfect subjunctive.

Sī iter faceret, bene esset.

If he were marching, it would be well.

This form implies that he *is* NOT *marching.*

191 PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE or ASSUMED). Any past tense of the indicative.

Sī iter faciēbat, bene erat.
If he was marching, it was well.
Sī iter fēcit, bene fuit.
If he marched, it was well.

192 PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Pluperfect subjunctive.

Sī iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.
If he had marched, it would have been well.

This form implies that he *did* NOT *march*.

NOTE.—The indicative is the regular construction in the conclusion, with verbs which signify *possibility* or *power*, *obligation* or *necessity*.

sī [populus Rōmānus] alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre, I. 14, 2, *if the Roman people had been conscious* (to themselves) *of any injury*, IT WOULD *not* HAVE BEEN DIFFICULT (*for them*) *to be on their guard.*

193 FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE or MORE VIVID). Future indicative, sometimes the future perfect (usually in the condition).

Sī iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.
If he marches [for *shall march* (*shall have marched*)] *it will be well.*

In this form the English is peculiar in using the present tense to refer to the future.

194 FUTURE IDEAL (POSSIBLE or LESS VIVID). Present subjunctive, sometimes the perfect (usually in the condition).

Sī iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.
If he should march, it would be well.

This form implies that the speaker considers the condition only as *possible.*

195 MIXED CONDITIONS. The above are the ordinary types of conditional sentences. But a conditional sentence may be "mixed," that is, it may have a condition of one form and a conclusion of another; in this case the two parts must be described separately. Especially, the condition and conclusion may be in different *tenses*, or the condition may be compound, containing two clauses, one of one tense and the other of another tense. E.g. "If he *was* there yesterday and *is* coming home to-day, we *shall be* glad." "If he *had been* here yesterday and *were* going away to-day, it *would be* different."

Conditional Clauses of Comparison. G. 602; A. 524; B. 307; H. 584; W. 566–568.

196 RULE: Conditional clauses of comparison introduced by **āc sī, ut sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam (sī), velut sī,** etc., *as if, than if,* take the subjunctive.

The uses of tenses is under the law of sequence.

absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī adsit, horrent, I. 32, 4, *they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus (though) absent,* AS IF HE WERE PRESENT. So VII. 38, 7.

Concessive Clauses.

197 **Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with** *quamquam.* G. 605; A. 527, *d;* B. 309, 2; H. 586; W. 570.

RULE: Concessive clauses introduced by **quamquam** take the indicative.

quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt hūmāniōrēs, IV. 3, 3, ALTHOUGH THEY ARE *of the same race, they are more civilized.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *etsi,* **etc.** G. 604; A. 527; B. 309, 2; H. 585; W. 572.

198 RULE: Concessive clauses introduced by **etsī, etiamsī,** etc., take the same construction as conditional clauses with **sī** (§§ 189–194).

nam etsī . . . vidēbat, tamen putābat, I. 46, 3, *for* ALTHOUGH HE SAW . . . , *yet he thought.*

The subjunctive under this construction does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum in direct discourse.

Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *cum, ut,* **etc.** G. 606–608, 587, 634; A. 313, 320, *e;* B. 309; H. 586, II., 569, II.; W. 571, 586, 7.

199 RULE: Concessive clauses introduced by **cum, ut, nē, licet,** or the relative pronoun, take the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, I. 26, 2, THOUGH THE BATTLE CONTINUED *from one o'clock until evening, nobody could see one of the enemy in retreat.*

Cicerō, quī . . . mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, quīnque cohortēs

mittit, VI. 36, 1, (Cicero WHO), THOUGH *Cicero* HAD KEPT *the soldiers in camp, he sent out five cohorts.*

ut is concessive, III. 9, 6.

Relative Clauses.

Relative Sentences. G. 624–637; A. 534, 535; B. 311, 312; H. 589–593; W. 580–589.

200 A relative clause is most often introduced by the relative pronoun, **quī**; also by relative adjectives, **quantus** (antecedent, **tantus**), **quālis** (antecedent, **tālis**), **quot** (antecedent, **tot**), etc.; and by relative adverbs, **ubi**, *where, when* (antecedent, **ibi**), **unde**, *whence, from which* (antecedent, **inde**), **quō**, *whither, where* (antecedent, **eō**), etc.

201 Relative clauses taken as a class have no especial rules of construction; the relative may take the place of almost any conjunction, coördinate or subordinate, together with its corresponding demonstrative form.

202 INDICATIVE MOOD. When a relative clause simply describes the antecedent of the relative, or states an additional fact, the indicative mood is used.

[Helvētiī] proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt, I. 1. 4, *the Helvetians are nearest to the Germans*, WHO LIVE *across the Rhine*, WITH WHOM THEY CARRY ON *war*. Here **quī—incolunt** simply describes the Germans, and **quibuscum—gerunt** merely gives an additional fact about the Helvetians.

203 SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION. Relative sentences which depend on infinitives and subjunctives and form an integral part of the thought (i.e. a part which could not well be omitted if the sense is to be preserved), are put in the subjunctive.

cum . . . eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iūssisset, paruērunt, I. 27, 2, *when he had ordered them to await his arrival at that point* WHERE THEY *then* WERE, *they obeyed.* So **quae gerantur**, II. 2, 3.

For the subjunctive in relative clauses see the rules for the various kinds of subordinate clauses and examples of the use of the relative pronoun given under them, as follows:

Subjunctive of Purpose, §§ 156–164.

Subjunctive of Characteristic, §§ 168, 169.

Causal Clauses, § 173. Concessive Clauses, § 199.

Kinds of Subordinate Clauses.

204 Subordinate clauses may be divided into three kinds as regards their use in sentences,—(1) *attributive* (used like an adjective), (2) *adverbial* (used like an adverb) and (3) *substantive* (used like a noun).

205 Attributive Clauses. Relative clauses which explain the antecedent of the relative word are attributive. See §§ 168 and 202, and examples.

206 Adverbial Clauses. The following kinds of clauses may be adverbial, and all the examples given are such:—purpose (§§ 156–164), result (§§ 165–167), causal (§§170–173), temporal (§§ 175–183), conditional (§§ 184-197), and concessive (§§ 198, 199), including the equivalent relative clauses (§ 203, end).

207 Substantive Clauses. Various adverbial clauses have developed into substantive clauses. Thus in the sentence, **suīs ut idem faciant imperat,** V. 37, 1, the clause is not thought of as answering the question, *For what purpose?* but as defining *what order was given.* It becomes practically the internal object of **imperat,**—*he orders his men to do the same.*

Substantive clauses are therefore described according to the adverbial clauses from which they are developed or according to the introductory word.

Complementary Final Sentences (Substantive Clauses of Purpose).

G. 546–550; A. 563–566; B. 295; H. 564; W. 510–516.

208 Verbs of *will* and *desire,* including those of *warning* and *beseeching,* of *urging* and *demanding,* of *resolving* and *endeavoring,* are followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.

cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded* (the state) *the citizens* TO EMIGRATE. See § 164. **obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius statueret,** I. 20, 1, *he began to beseech* (*him*) NOT TO TAKE *any very severe measures.*

209 Verbs of *hindering,* including verbs and phrases signifying to *prevent, forbid, refuse* and *beware,* are often followed by **nē** with the subjunctive *if they are not negatived.*

nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit, I. 4, 1, *he saved himself* FROM PLEADING *his case; he escaped* PLEADING *his case.* **multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōnferant,** I. 17, 2, *they prevent the people* FROM BRINGING *grain.* So I. 31, 16.

210 Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* may be followed by **quō minus** (= **ut eō minus**, *that thereby the less*). See §§ 160 and 161.

recūsāre quō minus essent, I. 31, 7, *to refuse* TO BE. **nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent,** IV. 22, 4, *the ships were prevented by the wind* (FROM BEING ABLE to come to the same port) *from reaching the same port.* So VII. **49,** 2. Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum.

211 After verbs of *fearing,* **ut** means *that . . . not,* and **nē** means *that.*

rem frūmentāriam timēmus ut supportārī posset, I. 39, 6, (we fear the grain supply, THAT IT CAN NOT be furnished), *we are afraid* THAT *a supply of grain can* NOT *be furnished.* Only instance of **ut** in this construction in the Bellum Gallicum.

nē offenderet verēbātur, I. **19,** 3, *he was afraid* THAT HE WOULD HURT. So. II. **1,** 2.

212 **ut** is sometimes omitted in object clauses, especially after verbs of *wishing, necessity* and *permission.*

rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat, I. **20,** 5, *he asks* (*him*) (TO MAKE an end of his entreating), *to end his entreaties.*

Substantive Clauses of Result. G. 553, 557; A. 567–571; B. 297; H. 571; W. 521–526.

213 Substantive clauses of result include chiefly those used (1) after verbs of *effecting* and *accomplishing,* (2) as subjects of impersonal verbs signifying *to happen, to follow,* etc., (3) to explain a noun or pronoun.

(1) **nōlī committere ut hīc locus . . . nōmen capiat,** I. **14,** 7, (*be* unwilling to allow THAT THIS PLACE TAKE a name), *do not allow this place to get a name* (*in history*). **fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur,** II. **11,** 2, (they made THAT THEIR DEPARTURE SHOULD SEEM similar to a flight), *they made their departure seem like a flight.*

(2) **fīēbat ut vagārentur,** I. **2,** 4, *it happened* THAT THEY WANDERED. **erit ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audeant,** II. **17,** 3, *it will* (be) *happen* THAT THE REST WILL not DARE *to stand against* (*us*).

(3) **id . . . ut flūmen trānsīrent,** I. **13,** 2, *this* . . . NAMELY, CROSS *the river.* **iūs est bellī ut quī vīcērunt eīs quōs vīcērunt imperent,** I. **36,** 1, *it is a law of war* THAT (those who have conquered) *the conquerors* GIVE COMMANDS TO (those whom they have conquered) *the conquered.*

Substantive Clauses with *quīn.* G. 555, 556; A. 557–559; B. 298; H. 594, II, 595, 596; W. 573–579.

214 Substantive clauses with **quīn** are used after sentences and phrases of *doubting, hindering,* and the like when they are *negatived* or *questioned.* The general translation of **quīn** is *but that* (taken together as a subordinate conjunction), often shortened to *that;* but **quīn** and its verb are often condensed into an entirely different idiom.

nōn est dubium quīn Helvētiī plūrimum possint, I. 3, 6, *there is no doubt* (BUT) THAT THE HELVETIANS ARE *the most* POWERFUL. Similarly I. 4, 4, 17, 4, 31, 15, VII. 38, 8, 66, 6. **nōn dubitāre quīn proficīscātur,** II. 2, 5, *not to hesitate* (BUT THAT HE SHOULD SET OUT) *to set out.* **nōn cunctārī quīn pūgnā dēcertet,** III. 23, 7, *not to delay* (BUT THAT HE SHOULD FIGHT IT OUT in close conflict) *fighting a pitched battle.* Similarly V. 55, 1, and VII. 36, 4. **exspectārī nōn oportet quīn eātur,** III. 24, 5, (it ought not to be awaited BUT THAT IT SHOULD BE GONE), *he ought not to defer going.* **neque longius abest quīn . . .,** III. 18, 5, (and it is not further off BUT THAT), *and not later than . . . .* **neque multum abest ab eō quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint,** V. 2, 2, (and it is not very far from this *stage,* THAT THEY CAN be launched within a few days), *and they will, in a few days, be nearly ready for launching.* Similarly VII. 11, 8. **sine sollicitūdine quīn acciperet,** V. 53, 5, *without anxiety* (THAT HE WOULD RECEIVE), *lest he should receive.* **nōn sibi temperābunt quīn exeant,** I. 33, 4, (they will not restrain themselves BUT THAT THEY SHOULD GO OUT), *they will not refrain from passing out.* Similarly I. 47, 2, II. 3, 5. **nōn recūsāre quīn contendant,** IV. 7, 3, *not to refuse* TO FIGHT. **neque aliter sentiunt quīn . . .,** VII. 44, 4, (and they do not think otherwise THAN THAT), *and they certainly think that . . .*

These are the only instances of **quīn** in the Bellum Gallicum except in the conjunctive phrase **quīn etiam** (see vocabulary).

Substantive Clauses with *quod.* G. 524, 525; A. 572; B. 299; H. 588, 3, 4; W. 549.

215 Causal clauses with **quod** (§ 170) shade into substantive clauses. As a conjunction **quod** has four principal meanings, (1) *because,* (2) *that* or *the fact that,* (3) *in regard to the fact that,* (4) *so far as.*

1. When **quod** means *because,* the clause may be,— (*a*) adverbial (see § 170), or (*b*) substantive, in apposition with some such word as **proptereā, eō, hōc,** *on this account;* this usage shades into (2).

(*a*) **Caesar quod... memoriā tenēbat, concēdendum nōn putābat,** I. 7, 4, *Caesar,* BECAUSE HE REMEMBERED..., *did not think that* (it) *their request ought to be granted.* (*b*) **eō minus dubitātiōnis mihi datur quod... memoriā teneō,** I. 14, 1, (less of hesitation is given to me), *I can hesitate less* (*in this matter*) FOR THIS REASON, BECAUSE I REMEMBER.

2. When **quod** means (*a*) *that* or (*b*) *the fact that,* it is a substantive clause, used either as subject, object, or appositive.

(*a*) **num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere possum, quod... vexāstis?** I. 14, 3, (can I lay aside the memory of your recent wrongdoing, THAT YOU HAVE HARASSED), *can I forget your recent wrongdoing, in plundering...?* (*b*) **accēdēbat quod... dolēbant,** III. 2, 5, (there approached THE FACT THAT THEY GRIEVED), *an additional fact was that they grieved...*

3. When **quod** means *in regard to the fact that, as for the fact that,* it introduces a substantive clause that has also an adverbial force with reference to the whole sentence.

quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī causā faciō, I. 44, 6, IN REGARD TO THE FACT THAT I AM BRINGING *a host of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the purpose of protecting myself.*

4. Similar to the above is **quod,** *so far as.*

quod commodō reī pūblicae facere poterit, Aeduōs dēfendet, I. 35, 4, SO FAR AS HE SHALL BE ABLE *to do* (*so*) *with advantage to the public interests, he shall defend the Aeduans.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

216 CLAUSES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The accusative and infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 228) and indirect questions (§ 245) are also substantive clauses.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN ENGLISH.

217 DEFINITION OF DIRECT DISCOURSE. Direct discourse (Latin, **ōrātiō rēcta**) is the quotation of words in the exact form in which they were spoken. E.g. *He said,* "I AM GOING."

218 DEFINITION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Indirect discourse (Latin, **ōrātiō oblīqua**) is the quotation of words *with adaptations in grammatical construction, in person, or in tense* to the standpoint of the person who quotes. E.g. *He said* THAT HE WAS GOING.

219 INTRODUCTORY VERB. Indirect discourse occurs after verbs of

saying, hearing, believing, thinking and the like. Such a verb is said to introduce or govern the indirect discourse and is called the introductory verb.

220 INTRODUCTORY PARTICLE. Indirect discourse is further introduced by the subordinate conjunction *that*, expressed or understood, which is called the introductory particle.

221 CHANGE OF TENSE. When indirect discourse occurs after an introductory verb that is in any *past* tense, all the verb forms that were in the present tense in the direct discourse, both main verbs and auxiliaries, change to the corresponding past tense.

Direct Discourse.		*Indirect Discourse.*
My son WRITES daily.	He said that	his son WROTE daily.
My son IS writing.		his son WAS writing.
My son MAY write.		his son MIGHT write.
My son CAN write.		his son COULD write.
My son HAS written.		his son HAD written.
My son WILL write.		his son WOULD write.
My son SHALL write.		his son SHOULD write.

Observe that number and voice do not change; a change in the former would alter the *sense* of the original statement, a change in the latter would alter its *form*.

NOTE.—An exception to this change of tense occurs when the verb of the direct discourse is a universal present (§ 146).

DIRECT: *All men naturally* DESIRE *liberty.* INDIRECT: *he knew that all men naturally* DESIRE *liberty.* Compare B. G., III. **10**, 3.

222 CHANGE OF PRONOUNS. In passing from direct to indirect discourse changes of pronouns often occur. These changes depend entirely upon the relation of the person quoting to the one who is addressed. Thus, A says to B, "I will help you."

If A quotes this to	B, it becomes,—	I said that	I would help	you.
" A "	C, "	I "	I "	him.
" B "	A, "	You "	you "	me.
" B "	C, "	He "	he "	me.
" C "	D, "	He "	he "	him.

23 INDIRECT QUESTIONS. When an interrogative sentence is quoted, it often has an introductory verb different from those that introduce declarative sentences; especially verbs and phrases signifying *to ask, to*

doubt, to be a question, etc., though such a verb as *to know* may introduce either a declarative or interrogative clause.

The rule for changing a question to the indirect form divides into two parts.

224 1. If an interrogative sentence contains an interrogative word (a pronoun, an adjective or an adverb), it is put into the indirect form in the same manner as a declarative sentence. E.g. "Who is going?" I know who is going. He ASKED who WAS going.

225 2. If an interrogative sentence is one that can be answered by "Yes" or "No" and has the inverted order (i.e. verb or auxiliary before the subject), the declarative is restored in the indirect form, and *whether* or *if* is added after the introductory verb as an introductory particle. E.g. "Are you ready?" I doubt if you are ready. I do not know whether he is ready. I could not see whether he was ready.

226 INDIRECT FORM OF IMPERATIVES. An imperative is changed to indirect discourse by the use of (1) the auxiliary *should,* or (2) the infinitive. E.g. "Shut the door." (1) He said you should shut the door. (2) (He said to shut the door.) He told you to shut the door.

Other English colloquial forms, such as the auxiliary *might,* or *for* with the infinitive, should be avoided.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN LATIN.

Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Obliqua). G. 648–663; A. 573–592; B. 313–323; H. 641–653; W. 597–619.

227 The definition of indirect discourse is the same for Latin as for English. The construction, however, is far more widely extended and *the introductory verb is very often merely implied.* E.g. He persuaded the citizens to emigrate; [saying] that it was very easy.

228 RULE: Declarative principal clauses of direct discourse, on becoming indirect, change the indicative (or subjunctive) with subject nominative to infinitive with subject accusative. Interrogative and imperative principal clauses and all subordinate clauses become subjunctive.

229 SUBJUNCTIVE IN IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Under the construction of subordinate clauses of indirect discourse are included many

subjunctives which depend on an infinitive or another subjunctive, where the idea of indirect discourse is merely implied.

230 TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE. A present indicative of direct discourse becomes present infinitive in indirect; an imperfect, perfect or pluperfect indicative becomes perfect infinitive; and a future or future perfect indicative becomes future infinitive.

The tense of the introductory verb has nothing to do with the tense of the infinitive.

231 TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. The tense of the subjunctive is determined by the general law of the sequence of tenses (§ 151). If either the introductory verb or the infinitive is a past tense, the subjunctives are regularly imperfect or pluperfect. But the law of sequence is frequently suspended for vividness.

NOTE.—An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive of the direct discourse, as in unreal (contrary to fact) conditions, is always retained in the indirect.

232 CHANGES IN PERSON depend upon the same principles as in English (§ 222).

233 As in English (§ 221) VOICE *and* NUMBER *do not change.*

234 TRANSLATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. The subjunctive is usually translated by the indicative (the tense being according to the English rules), unless in the direct discourse it would be a use of the subjunctive that requires some special auxiliary in translation (e.g. a purpose clause, see § 156).

235 TRANSLATION OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE. English sometimes employs the accusative and infinitive like the Latin, in such expressions as, "I thought the man to be honest," "I understood him to say it"; but the use of this construction is limited. It is *not* English to say, "He declares himself to be about to win"; and such expressions should be changed to the regular construction of English indirect discourse, viz. a subordinate clause introduced by *that,* with subject nominative and a finite mood.

236 CHANGE FROM INDIRECT TO DIRECT DISCOURSE. For a complete understanding of a sentence of indirect discourse it must be changed to the direct form in Latin, this translated to the direct in English, and the last changed to the English indirect, when it becomes a translation of the given Latin. See next page.

Latin Indirect; **dīxit perfacile esse,** I. 2, 2, cf. I. 3, 6, 7, etc.
Latin Direct: **dīxit "perfacile est."**
English Direct: *He said, "It is very easy."*
English Indirect: *He said that it was very easy.* This is the translation of the first.

237 RULES FOR CHANGING PRINCIPAL CLAUSES. 1. *Subject accusative changes to nominative of the same number.* If it is a pronoun, there may be a change of person. For this no rule can be given because it depends upon circumstances (see § 222); but forms of the reflexive pronouns and adjectives usually become first person.

2. Present infinitive changes to	present	indicative of same voice.
Perfect " " "	imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect	" " " "
Future " " "	future or future perfect	" " " "

The person and number is determined by the subject, already found by Rule 1.

3. Pronouns (other than the subject) require change *in person only.*

(Orgetorix) cōnfīrmat sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum (esse), I. 3, 7.

1. The subject accusative is **sē,** which refers to the subject of **cōnfīrmat,** namely, **Orgetorix.** Since Orgetorix is speaking of himself, in his own words he must have used the first person. For the same reason the number of **sē** is singular. Hence according to the rule, the direct discourse of **sē** is first person, singular, nominative, **ego.**

2. **conciliātūrum (esse)** is future, active. It therefore changes to future, indicative, active, and agrees with **ego;** hence **conciliābō.**

Since the person and number are shown by the personal ending, **ego** may be omitted (§ 122).

3. Like **sē,** the possessive adjectives **suīs** and **suō** refer to the subject, and for the same reason would become first person; their construction is in no way affected and they change to the corresponding forms of **meus,** namely, **meīs** and **meō.**

illīs refers to Dumnorix and Casticus, to whom this promise was made. Hence this changes to the corresponding form of the second personal pronoun, namely **vōbīs.**

The sentence in direct discourse thus reads, **meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō.**

English Direct: I WILL *win the power* (*in your states*) *for* YOU *with* MY *forces and* MY *army.*

English Indirect: *Orgetorix* { *declares* / *declared* } *that* HE { WILL / WOULD } *win the power* (*in their states*) *for* THEM *with* HIS *forces and* HIS *army.*

Notice that it is not necessary to translate a Latin sentence before finding the Latin direct discourse, but only that the relations of any persons mentioned shall be understood.

Notice also that after changing the English direct to indirect, the pronouns are a translation of those in the Latin indirect; so that, as far as concerns getting a translation of Latin indirect discourse, there is nothing that requires attention except the accusative and infinitive.

238 The following type sentences should be kept thoroughly in mind. They cover all cases that occur in the Bellum Gallicum (if the historical present is translated by the past), except such as are mentioned especially in the notes. If these are used, it will not be necessary to go through the process of changing to direct discourse in order to get the translation.

	Latin		English
Dīxit sē	**appellāre,**	*he said that he*	*called* (*was calling*).
	appellārī,		*was called.*
	appellāvisse,		*had called.*
	appellātum esse,		*had been called.*
	appellātūrum esse,		*would call.*
	appellātum īrī,		*would be called.*
	fore ut appellārētur,		

239 CHANGE OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TO DIRECT DISCOURSE. The mood of a subordinate clause of direct discourse depends upon its construction under the various rules that have been given (§§ 156–215). Therefore in changing from indirect to direct discourse, the mood of a subordinate clause may or may not change.

If the indicative is to be used in the direct discourse, the tense may be prescribed (e.g. in clauses with **dum**) or may depend upon the sense (e.g. in clauses with **quod**).

If the subjunctive is to be retained (e.g. in a purpose clause), the tense may or may not change, under the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 151).

perfacile esse probat proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset, I. 3, 6.

Here **quod** introduces a reason which was certainly assigned by

Orgetorix as a fact. Hence the indicative in direct discourse; tense, present periphrastic or future (§ 153).

perfacile est, propterea quod ipse meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum (obtinēbō), *it* IS *very easy, because* I AM GOING TO HAVE (*shall have*) *control of* MY *state* MYSELF. Indirect: *He proved that it* WAS *very easy, because* HE WAS GOING TO HAVE (WOULD HAVE) *control of* HIS *state* HIMSELF.

(dīcit) nōn esse dubium quīn plūrimum Helvētiī possent, I. 3, 7.

Clauses introduced by **quīn** always take the subjunctive (§ 214), hence the mood of the direct discourse is the same. As it stands, **possent** is imperfect because it depends upon an historical present (**probat,** I. 3, 6), which may take the sequence of an historical tense (§ 152). In the direct discourse the subjunctive will depend upon **est,** and hence will change to the present.

nōn est dubium, quīn plūrimum Helvētiī possint, *there* IS *no doubt that the Helvetians* ARE *the most powerful.* Indirect: [*He said*] *that there* WAS *no doubt that the Helvetians* WERE *the most powerful.*

240 INDICATIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. The indicative is sometimes used in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse, (1) when the clause is inserted by the writer by way of explanation and does not form a part of the quotation (e.g. II. 4, 10), (2) to show that the writer himself considers the matter as a fact (e.g. I. 40, 5).

241 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, while following the same general rules as other complex sentences, present peculiarities of sequence, periphrastic forms, etc., so that all the regular forms of condition are presented for reference.

242 When reference is made to this article, see what tense, mood and auxiliary is used in translating the type sentence, and use the same in translating the desired passage.

1. PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). See § 189.

Sī iter facit, bene est.
If he marches (or *is marching*), *it is well.*
Dīcit sī iter faciat, bene esse.
He says that if he marches (or *is marching*), *it is well.*
Dīxit sī iter faceret, bene esse.
He said that if he marched (or *was marching*), *it was well.*

2. PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). See § 190.

Sī iter faceret, bene esset.
If he were marching, it would be well.
Dīcit sī iter faceret, bene futūrum esse.
He says that if he were marching, it would be well.
Dīxit sī iter faceret, bene futūrum esse.
He said that if he were marching, it would be well.

3. PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). See § 191.

Sī iter faciēbat, bene erat.
If he was marching, it was well.
Sī iter fēcit, bene fuit.
If he marched, it was well.
(For either) **Dīcit sī iter faceret, bene fuisse.**
He says that if he marched (or *was marching*), *it was well.*
Dīxit sī iter faceret, bene fuisse.
He said that if he marched (or *was marching*), *it was well.*

4. PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). See § 192.

Sī iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.
If he had marched, it would have been well.
Dīcit sī iter fēcisset, bene futūrum fuisse.
He says that if he had marched, it would have been well.
Dīxit sī iter fēcisset, bene futūrum fuisse.
He said that if he had marched, it would have been well.

NOTE.—A sentence of this type, the conclusion of which is passive, requires a periphrastic form in indirect discourse.

Sī iter fēcisset, victus esset.
If he had marched, he would have been conquered.
Dīcit / Dīxit } **sī iter fēcisset, futūrum fuisse ut vincerētur.**
He says / He said } *that if he had marched,* (it would have been that he would be conquered), *he would have been conquered.*

5. FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE OR MORE VIVID). See § 193.

Sī iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.
If he marches [for *shall march* (*shall have marched*)], *it will be well.*
Dīcit sī iter faciat (fēcerit, subjunctive), **bene futūrum esse.**
He says that if he marches, it will be well.
Dīxit sī iter faceret (fēcisset), bene futūrum esse.
He said that if he marched, it would be well.

6. Future Ideal (Possible or Less Vivid). See § 194.

Sī iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.
If he should march, it would be well.
Dīcit sī iter faciat, bene futūrum esse.
He says that if he should march, it would be well.
Dīxit sī iter faceret, bene futūrum esse.
He said that if he should march, it would be well.

243 Indirect Questions. It has been said (§ 228) that interrogative principal clauses of direct discourse on becoming indirect discourse (indirect questions) take the subjunctive.

Such clauses present no difficulties in translation since the English has the same construction, including the rules for the sequence of tenses. See §§ 152 and 223. This use of the subjunctive in Latin is easily recognized from the fact that there is always an interrogative word in the clause.

To change to the direct form follow the principles of the changes for declarative sentences. Thus:

oculīs in utram partem [Arar] fluat iūdicārī nōn potest, I. 12, 1. Direct: **in utram partem Arar fluit?** *In what direction* DOES *the Saône* FLOW? Indirect: *It cannot be judged by the eye* (s) *in what direction it* FLOWS.

Note.—**Sī** is sometimes used in the sense of *to see if*, introducing an indirect question after verbs of trial. E.g. **sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī,** I. 8, 4; see note. So II. 9, 1.

244 Indirect questions usually have different introductory verbs in Latin as in English (§ 223). But when a long speech in Latin is quoted in indirect form, neither Latin nor English takes the pains to insert a different introductory verb before an interrogative clause.

[dīxit] Ariovistum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr quisquam iūdicāret . . . ? I. 40, 2, *he said that Ariovistus had sought the friendship of the Roman people; why should any one judge . . . ?* [*he asked why any one should judge* . . .]. So I. 40, 4, 43, 8, 44, 8, etc.

245 Imperatives in Indirect Discourse. It has been said (§ 228) that imperatives of direct discourse on becoming indirect become subjunctive. The tense is according to the rules of sequence. For the different methods of translation see § 226.

respondit . . . sī quid vellent, reverterentur, I. 7, 6. Direct: **sī quid vultis, revertiminī,** *if you want an answer,* RETURN. Indirect: *He answered . . . that if they wanted an answer,* THEY SHOULD (MIGHT)

RETURN; or, *he answered . . . if they wanted answer*, (FOR THEM) TO RETURN. So I. 13, 4.

nē . . . suae virtūtī tribueret, I. 13, 5. DIRECT: **nōlī . . . tuae virtūtī tribuere,** (BE UNWILLING TO ATTRIBUTE), DO NOT ATTRIBUTE (*it*) *to* YOUR OWN *valor*. INDIRECT: HE SHOULD NOT ATTRIBUTE *it to* HIS OWN *valor;* or, (FOR HIM) NOT TO ATTRIBUTE *it to* HIS OWN *valor*.

246 RHETORICAL QUESTIONS. When a question is asked merely for effect, it is usually equivalent to a strong declarative statement. Such questions, like a declarative sentence, take the accusative and infinitive in indirect discourse.

num memoriam dēpōnere posse, I. 14, 3, COULD *he* (lay aside the memory) *forget?* So V. 28, 6.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

First or Present Imperative. G. 268, 270, and Remark 2; A. 448, 450; B. 281; H. 560; W. 473, 474, 495, 496.

247 The use of the present imperative in Latin is the same as in English. The imperative occurs seven times in the Bellum Gallicum, IV. 25, 3 (see § 6), V. 30, 1, VII. 38, 3, 50, 4, 6, 77, 9 (see note), 16. The other imperative does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum.

248 A negative imperative sentence or prohibition is most frequently expressed by **nōlī** (sometimes **cavē**) with the infinitive, sometimes by **nē** with the imperative, or perfect subjunctive.

nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, VII. 77, 9, (BE UNWILLING TO DEPRIVE), DO NOT DEPRIVE *them of your aid*. Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum of a prohibition in direct discourse.

INFINITIVE.

249 The Latin infinitive has two uses, (1) as a substantive, (2) as a representative of the indicative.

The Infinitive as a Substantive. G. 280; A. 451–458; B. 326–328; H. 606–612; W. 622–626.

250 As a substantive the infinitive has two tenses, present and perfect.

251 The present is the common form of the infinitive used as a substantive; it has to do with continued action. The perfect infinitive used as a sub-

stantive, having to do with completed action, does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum.

252 The infinitive as a substantive is used only as the subject and object of verbs. For the oblique cases and for the objective after a preposition, the gerund is used (§ 267).

253 As subject the infinitive is used chiefly with forms of **sum** and impersonal verbs.

praestat perferre, I. **17**, 3, *it is better* TO ENDURE.

254 As an object (complementary infinitive) it is used to complete the meaning of verbs meaning to *wish, decide, fear*, etc., which take the same construction in English.

cōnstituērunt comparāre, I. **3**, 1, *they determined* TO PREPARE.

255 An accusative and a complementary infinitive may both be used as the objects of verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid, to permit*, etc.

eōs īre patī, I. **6**, 3, *to allow* THEM TO GO. So II. **5**, 1.

The Infinitive as the Representative of the Indicative. G. 281; A. 459; B. 329–331; H. 613–619; W. 628–635.

256 As the representative of the indicative, the infinitive has three tenses, —present, perfect and future.

257 The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as a substantive clause (i.e. as subject or object) like the infinitive alone. See §§ 253 and 254.

poenam sequī oportēbat, I. **4**, 1, (PUNISHMENT-TO-FOLLOW was fitting), *it was the law for the punishment to follow;* or, *that the penalty . . . be inflicted.* **quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est**, I. **1**, 5, (GAULS-TO-CONSTITUTE-which, has been said), *which it has been said that the Gauls constitute.* **optimum est quemque revertī**, II. **10**, 4, *it is best* (*for*) EACH ONE TO RETURN, or, THAT EACH ONE RETURN.

This construction is essentially that of indirect discourse. The first and third examples show instances which are *informal* indirect discourse, and show the development of the construction from that of § 255.

Historical Infinitive. G. 647; A. 463; B. 335; H. 610; W. 631.

258 The infinitive with subject nominative is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indicative for vividness in historical narration.

Caesar flāgitāre, I. **16**, 1, *Caesar* WAS DEMANDING. So I. **16**, 4, **32**, 3; II. **30**, 3; III. **4**, 1, 2, 3; V. **33**, 1.

PARTICIPLES.

259 A participle is a verbal adjective. All Latin participles are declined like adjectives and agree with some substantive expressed or understood in gender, number and case, while at the same time they have tense and voice.

260 TENSE OF PARTICIPLES. The participle, both in Latin and in English, denotes time *relative* to that of the principal verb. Thus:

The present participle denotes action that is continuing at the time of the principal verb. E.g. *he comes running, he came running, he will come running.*

The perfect participle denotes action prior to that of the principal verb. E.g. *he is coming* (*came,* or *will come*), *having run all the way.*

261 COMPARATIVE TABLE OF PARTICIPLES.

	Active	Passive
Present	**dūcēns,** *leading*	————, *being led*
Past		**ductus,** *led*
Perfect	————, *having led*	**ductus,** *having been led*
Future	**ductūrus,** (*going to lead*)	**dūcendus,** (*to be led*)

A deponent verb has the three active participles and the gerundive. E.g. **cōnāns,** *trying,* **cōnātus,** *having tried,* **cōnātūrus,** *going to try,* and **cōnandus,** gerundive. See however § 262.

NOTE.—Latin is more exact than English in the use of participles, especially the perfect. E.g. *Seizing the bone, the dog ran away.* Strictly, this would mean that the dog was seizing the bone all the time that he was running. Therefore the perfect participle should be used,—*Having seized the bone, the dog ran away.* But the former has come to be an English idiom and should be used in translation.

262 Perfect participles of deponent verbs are sometimes passive in meaning. So **dēpopulātus,** I. **11,** 4, **dīmēnsus,** II. **19,** 5; IV. **17,** 3, **partītus,** VII. **24,** 5.

263 Participles often imply some especial relation to the thought of the sentence aside from merely limiting a substantive. E.g. "*Running as fast as he could, he caught the train.*" Here the participle implies *cause;* the thought is that he caught the train *because* he ran.

Again, "*Running as fast as he could, he was unable to catch the train.*" Here the participle implies *concession;* the thought is that he could not catch the train *although* he ran.

Participles may also denote merely an attendant circumstance. E.g. "*Entering the water, he waded out.*" This merely notes two acts,— he entered the water, he waded out. Latin often employs a participle in this way where English requires two coördinate verbs.

Uses of Latin Participles. G. 664–668; A. 488–499; B. 336–337; H. 636–640; W. 645–652.

264 Latin participles or participial phrases may express,—1, *time*, 2, *cause*, 3, *condition*, 4, *concession*, 5, *attendant circumstance*, 6, *means*, 7, the thought of a *relative clause*.

1. **patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā,** II. 4, 2, (in the memory of our fathers, ALL GAUL HAVING BEEN OVERRUN), *within the memory of the last generation*, WHEN ALL GAUL WAS IN CONFUSION. 2. **timōre perterritī Rōmānī discēdunt,** I. 23, 3, *the Romans are withdrawing* (HAVING BEEN TERRIFIED by fear), BECAUSE THEY ARE AFRAID. 3. **datā facultāte nōn temperābunt,** I. 7, 5, (AN OPPORTUNITY HAVING BEEN GIVEN), IF OPPORTUNITY IS GIVEN, *they will not refrain*. 4. **hāc rē cōgnitā exercitum castrīs continuit,** II. 11, 2, (THIS THING HAVING BEEN ASCERTAINED), THOUGH HE FOUND THIS OUT, *he kept the army in camp*. In the same sentence the participle veritus denotes cause. 5. **persuādent fīnitimīs, uti . . ūsī . . . oppidīs . . . exūstīs . . . proficīscantur,** I. 5, 4; see note, Book I., l. 88. 6. **ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs phalangem perfrēgērunt,** I. 25, 2, (SPEARS HAVING BEEN THROWN), BY THROWING THEIR SPEARS *from the higher position, they broke the line*. 7. **frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferēbat,** IV. 12, 5, (he was bearing aid to his brother, CUT OFF by the enemy), *he was trying to help his brother* WHO HAD BEEN CUT OFF (*from retreat*) *by the enemy*.

265 The perfect passive participle modifying a substantive is sometimes translated by a verbal noun with an object.

iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, III. 10, 2, (the wrong of RETAINED Roman knights), *the crime of retaining Roman knights*.

266 **Habeō** with a direct object modified by a perfect passive participle is often used in a sense that is practically equivalent to the pluperfect tense of the latter verb. Strictly, however, it denotes more than the pluperfect, laying emphasis on the *maintenance of the result*.

portōria . . . redēmpta habet, I. 18, 3, (HE HAS the import duties BOUGHT UP), *he has bought up the import duties*, (*and still holds them*). **omnia explōrāta habēmus,** II. 4, 4, (WE HAVE all things FOUND OUT), *we have found out everything*.

Besides the above examples this construction occurs as follows,— I. **9**, 3 (see note), **15**, 1, **44**, 12; III. **2**, 5; VI. **13**, 6, **20**, 1; VII. **29**, 6, **54**, 2.

For uses of the future passive participle (the gerundive) see §§ 269, 270, and 278.

The Gerund.

The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used in the nominative and as the object of verbs (not of prepositions).

Uses of the Gerund. G. 426–433; A. 502–507; B. 338; H. 625–631; W. 637–639.

267 The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used as the nominative and the accusative after verbs (the gerund after prepositions).

The uses of the gerund in the Bellum Gallicum are as follows:

Genitive: Objective, explanatory, with adjectives (I. **2**, 4; V. **6**, 3), with **causā** and **grātiā**. See examples under §§ 56 and 58.

Dative: Of purpose or end (III. **4**, 1; V. **27**, 5).

Accusative: Only after **ad.** E.g. **ad proficīscendum,** I. **3**, 1, (to setting out), *for leaving home.*

Ablative: Of means (IV. **13**, 5; V. **54**, 1; VII. **71**, 4), and after **dē** and **in.**

268 The gerund *may* take an object in the case which the verb regularly governs, accusative, dative (with special verbs), genitive (with verbs of *remembering*, etc.), but for this use the gerundive construction is generally substituted, regularly so after prepositions.

The Gerundive.

269 The gerundive has two uses,—(*a*) as the future passive participle, (*b*) as a substitute for the gerund.

Gerundive as a Participle. G. 251, 2, note; A. 500; B. 337, 7; H. 621–622; W. 638, 643, 644.

270 As the future passive participle the gerundive implies *necessity, obligation,* or the idea of *deserving.* In these senses it is used in the Bellum Gallicum as follows:

1. As a predicate adjective.

nōn ferendus, I. **33**, 5, (not to be borne), *unendurable.* Similarly

cōnferendum, comparandam, I. 31, 11, (to be compared,) *comparable;* **laudanda,** V. 8, 4, (to be praised), *praiseworthy.* **māximē admīrandum,** VI. 42, 3 (most to be wondered at), *most remarkable.*

2. As a predicate accusative after **cūrō,** *provide for, cause,* **dō,** *give,* **trādō,** *hand over,* and similar verbs.

pontem faciendum cūrāvit, I. 13, 1, *he caused a bridge* TO BE BUILT. **Sabīnum mittit, quī eam manum distinendam curet,** III. 11, 4, *he sent Sabinus* (who was to cause this force TO BE KEPT SEPARATE), *to see that that force was kept separate.* **exercitum Sabīnō in Menapiōs dūcendum dedit,** IV. 22, 5, *he gave the army to Sabinus* TO BE LED *among the Menapii.*

See also § 278.

Gerundive for Gerund. G. 427; A. 503; B. 339; H. 623; W. 640.

271 When the gerund might be used but would have an object, the gerundive construction is often substituted, regularly so after a preposition. Also III. 25, 1, in the ablative of means; see example below.

272 The gerundive construction consists in putting the substantive in the case which the gerund would have had, and making the gerundive agree with it, as a verbal *adjective,* in gender, number, and case.

GERUND: **ad effēminandum animōs,** I. 1, 3, *to* WEAKENING *the minds.* Here the construction is identical in both languages: **effēminandum** is the object of **ad,** and **animōs** is the object of **effēminandum,** just as *weakening* is the object of *to,* and *minds* is the object of *weakening.*

GERUNDIVE: **ad animōs effēminandōs.** Here **animōs** is the object of **ad,** and **effēminandōs** agrees with it in gender, number, and case. English has no such verb form as the gerundive, and cannot translate any differently from above,—(to weakening the minds), *to weaken the character.*

GERUNDIVE: **lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs,** III. 25, 1. GERUND: **lapidēs tēlaque subministrandō,** BY FURNISHING STONES AND SPEARS. So **caespitibus comportandīs** following. What would be the form of these two words if the gerund were used?

273 1. With **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī,** and **vestrī,** the gerundive is employed with the same ending, regardless of gender or number, since these forms were originally neuter singular.

suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt, III. 6, 1, *they leave the enemy a chance* (OF COLLECTING THEMSELVES), OF COLLECTING

THEIR WITS. Here **suī**, referring to **hostibus**, is plural, and strict agreement would require **colligendōrum.**

2. The gerundive construction would naturally be confined to transitive verbs, but the deponent verbs which govern the ablative (§ 73) regularly admit it.

spēs potiundī oppidī, II. 7, 2, *hope of capturing the town.* So III. 7, 6.

SUPINES.

274 The supines are the accusative and ablative of a fourth declension verbal noun.

Accusative Supine (Supine in *-um*, Former Supine). G. 435; A. 509; B. 340, 1; H. 632–634; W. 654.

275 RULE: The accusative supine is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose (design). It may take an object.

It is translated by the infinitive.

lēgātōs mittunt rogātūm auxilium, I. 11, 2, *they send envoys* TO ASK *help.*

This construction occurs 14 times in the Bellum Gallicum.

Ablative Supine (Supine in *-ū*, Latter Supine). G. 436; A. 510; B. 240, 2; H. 635; W. 655.

276 RULE: The ablative supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes an object.

It is translated by the infinitive, if retained in English at all.

perfacile factū, I. 3, 6, *very easy* (TO DO). So IV. 30, 2, VII. 64, 2. **horribiliōrēs āspectū**, V. 14, 2, *more terrible* IN APPEARANCE. Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

Active (First) Periphrastic Conjugation. G. 247; A. 194, *a;* B. 115; H. 236; W. 188.

277 The active periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future active participle with forms of **sum.**

The participle is translated separately in its usual way (§ 261), and the form of **sum** according to its tense, mood, use, etc.

quod portātūrī || erant, I. 5, 3, *what* THEY WERE || GOING TO CARRY. **ubi bellum gestūrī || essent,** III. 9, 6, *where* THEY WERE || GOING TO WAGE *war.* See also example under § 239.

Passive (Second) Periphrastic Conjugation. G. 251; A. 194, *b;* B. 115; H. 237; W. 188.

278 The passive periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future passive participle (the gerundive) with forms of **sum.**

From the adjective use of the future passive participle (§ 270) there is developed the idea of *obligation* or *necessity,* which is expressed in various ways in English.

agendum est, *it has to be done, it must be done, it ought to be done.*

agendum erat, *it had to be done.*

agendum erit, *it will have to be done.*

For examples in the Bellum Gallicum see §§ 31 and 215.

Note that this construction does not correspond to that of § 277 in the ordinary relations of active and passive. Obligation in the active voice is expressed with **dēbeō** or **oportet.** But intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in this construction.

The agent under this construction is expressed by the dative (§ 31).

Uses of Cum.

279 1. Preposition with ablative, *with.*

2. Subordinate conjunction, *when, since, although.*

If it introduces an indicative, it certainly means *when.* If the clause is followed by **tamen,** *nevertheless,* it certainly means *although.* In other cases the meaning can only be determined by the connection, and there is often a combination of the ideas of time and cause, or of time and concession.

3. Practically a correlative conjunction, **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also, both . . . and,* II. 4, 7, V. 4, 3, etc. Note **cum . . . etiam . . . tum,** *not only . . . and . . . but also,* III. 16, 2.

Hendiadys.

280 Hendiadys (ἓν διὰ δυοῖν) is a figure of syntax whereby two nouns connected by a conjunction are used for one with an adjective or a genitive.

exempla cruciātūsque, I. 31, 12, (examples and cruelties), *sorts of cruelty.*

PARADIGMS.

NOUNS.

First Declension.

F. **lingua, -ae, -ae, -am, -a, -ā; -ae, ārum, -īs, -ās, -ae, -īs.**
For locative, see § 93; for **fīlia**, see vocabulary; **dea**, *goddess*, like **fīlia.**

Second Declension.

M. **animus, -ī, -ō, -um, -e, -ō; -ī, -ōrum, -īs, -ōs, -ī, -īs.**
ager, agrī, agrō, agrum, ager, agrō; agrī, agrōrum, etc.
puer, puerī, puerō, puerum, puer, puerō; puerī, puerōrum, etc.
vir, virī, virō, virum, vir, virō; virī, virōrum, etc.
N. **bellum, -ī, -ō, -um, -um, -ō; -a, -ōrum, -īs, -a, -a, -īs.**
For locative, see § 93. Nouns of this declension ending in **-ius** or **-ium** often have a single **ī** for the ending of the genitive singular, without change of accent; so also the vocative singular of **fīlius** and of proper names. For **deus** and **vulgus**, see vocabulary.

Third Declension.*

I. Consonant Stems.

M. **†cōnsul, cōnsulis, -ī, -em, -e; -ēs, -um, -ibus, -ēs, -ibus.**
N. **flūmen, flūminis, flūminī, flūmen, flūmine; flūmina, -um, -ibus, -a, -ibus.**
F. **lēx, lēgis, lēgī, lēgem, lēge; lēgēs, -um, -ibus, -ēs, -ibus.**
N. **caput, capitis, capitī, caput, capite; capita, -um, -ibus, -a, -ibus.**

*** The vocative is hereafter omitted in these paradigms.**
† A feminine noun does not differ in endings from a masculine noun.

II. I and Mixed Stems.

M. or F. **hostis, hostis, hostī, hostem, hoste; hostēs, -ium, -ibus, -ēs** (or **-īs**), **-ibus.**

N. **vectīgal, vectīgālis, vectīgālī, vectīgal, vectīgālī; vectīgālia, -ium, -ibus, -ia, -ibus.** See also in vocabulary **mīlle.**

F. **pars, partis, partī, partem, parte; partēs, -ium, -ibus, -ēs** (or **-īs**), **-ibus.**

Note.—Declined like (1) **hostis,** (2) **vectīgal,** or (3) **pars** are the following: (1) Nouns ending in **is** or **ēs,** having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative; (2) neuters ending in **e, al, ar;** (3) nouns ending in **ns** or **rs,** and monosyllables ending in **s** or **x,** if these letters are preceded by a consonant.

The accusative singular of **nāvis, puppis, sēmentis,** and **turris** may end in **im;** the ablative singular of **avis, cīvis, clāssis, collis, fīnis, īgnis, nāvis, orbis, puppis, sēmentis, turris,** and **imber** may end in **ī** or **e.** In the plural **imber, linter,** and **nox** are declined like nouns having i stems; while **iuvenis** is not so declined.

Many names of tribes have (Greek) accusative plural in **-as;** *e.g.*, **Allobrogas,** I. 14, 3.

For the locative see § 93. For **senex, vīs, bōs** and **Iuppiter,** see vocabulary.

Fourth Declension.

M. **passus, -ūs, -uī** (or **-ū**), **-um, -ū; -ūs, -uum, -ibus, -ūs, -ibus.**
N. **cornū, -ūs, -ū, -ū, -ū; -ua, -uum, -ibus, -ua, -ibus.**
For **domus, lacus,** and **portus,** see vocabulary.

Fifth Declension.

M. and F. **diēs, diēī, diēī, diem, diē; diēs, diērum, diēbus, diēs, diēbus.**
F. **rēs, reī, reī, rem, rē; rēs, rērum, rēbus, rēs, rēbus.**
For all other nouns of this declension, see vocabulary.

ADJECTIVES.

First-and-Second Declension.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**māgnus**	**māgna**	**māgnum**
Gen.	**māgnī**	**māgnae**	**māgnī**
	etc.	etc.	etc.
Voc.	**māgne**	**māgna**	**māgnum**
Nom. and Voc.	**noster**	**nostra**	**nostrum**
Gen.	**nostrī**	**nostrae**	**nostrī**
	etc.	etc.	etc.
Nom. and Voc.	**līber**	**lībera**	**līberum**
Gen.	**līberī**	**līberae**	**līberī**
	etc.	etc.	etc.

For **alius, alter, ūllus, nūllus, uter, neuter, sōlus, tōtus. ūnus**, see vocabulary.

Third Declension.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**celer**	**celeris**	**celere**	**celerēs**	**-ēs**	**-ia**
Gen.	**celeris**	**celeris**	**celeris**	**celerium**	**-ium**	**-ium**
Dat.	**celerī**	**celerī**	**celerī**	**celeribus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**celerem**	**celerem**	**celere**	**celerēs(-īs)**	**-ēs(-īs)**	**-ia**
Abl.	**celerī**	**celerī**	**celerī**	**celeribus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
Nom.	**equester**	**equestris**	**equestre**	**equestrēs**	**-ēs**	**-ia**
Gen.	**equestris**	**equestris**	**equestris**	**equestrium**	**-ium**	**-ium**
	etc.			etc.		

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	**fortis**	**forte**	**fortēs**	**fortia**
Gen.	**fortis**	**fortis**	**fortium**	**fortium**
Dat.	**fortī**	**fortī**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**
Acc.	**fortem**	**forte**	**fortēs(-īs)**	**fortia**
Abl.	**fortī**	**fortī**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs(-īs)	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre(-ī)	fortiōre(-ī)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Nom.	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
Gen.	orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
Dat.	orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
Acc.	orientem	oriēns	orientēs(-īs)	orientia
Abl.	orientī(-e)	orientī(-e)	orientibus	orientibus

The ablative singular in ī is more common in the case of adjectives, and that in e in the case of participles.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Adjective	longus, -a, -um	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	longē	longius	longissimē
Adjective	fortis, -e	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
Adjective	potēns, potentis	potentior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	potenter	potentius	potentissimē

For irregular comparisons see page 227 and vocabulary.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Cardinals.—ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex, septem, octo, novem, decem, ūndecim, duodecim, trēdecim, quattuordecim, quīndecim, sēdecim (sexdecim), septendecim, duodēvīgintī, ūndēvīgintī, vīgintī; 30, trīgintā; 40, quadrāgintā; 50, quīnquāgintā; 60, sexāgintā; 70, septuāgintā; 80, octōgintā; 90, nōnāgintā; 100, centum; 200, ducentī (ae, a); 300, trecentī; 400, quadringentī; 500, quīngentī; 600, sexcentī; 700, septingentī; 800, octingentī; 900, nōngentī; 1000, mīlle.

Ordinals.—prīmus, secundus, tertius, quārtus, quīntus, sextus, septimus, octāvus, nōnus, decimus, ūndecimus, duodecimus, tertius decimus, quārtus decimus, quīntus decimus, sextus decimus, septimus decimus, duodēvīcēsimus, ūndēvīcēsimus, vīcēsimus.

PRONOUNS.

	1st Pers.	*2nd Pers.*	*3rd Pers.* (*Reflex.*)
Nom.	**ego**	**tū**	——
Gen.	**meī**	**tuī**	**suī**
Dat.	**mihi (mī)**	**tibi**	**sibi**
Acc.	**mē**	**tē**	**sē, sēsē**
Voc.	——	**tū**	——
Abl.	**mē**	**tē**	**sē, sēsē**
Nom.	**nōs**	**vōs**	——
Gen.	**nostrum** / **nostrī**	**vestrum** / **vestrī**	**suī**
Dat.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**	**sibi**
Acc.	**nōs**	**vōs**	**sē, sēsē**
Voc.	——	**vōs**	——
Abl.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**	**sē, sēsē**

Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī, iī**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**eius**	**eius**	**eius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**

Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**	**eīdem** / **iīdem, īdem**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīsdem** / **iīsdem**	**eīsdem** / **iīsdem**	**eīsdem** / **iīsdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**eīsdem** / **iīsdem**	**eīsdem** / **iīsdem**	**eīsdem** / **iīsdem**

For all other pronouns, see vocabulary.

VERBS.

First

		Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Pres.	*Act.*	**laudō, -ās, -at;**	**laudem, -ēs, -et;**
		laudāmus, -ātis, -ant.	**laudēmus, -ētis, -ent.**
	Pass.	**laudor, -āris** *or* **-re, -ātur;**	**lauder, -ēris** *or* **-re, -ētur;**
		laudāmur, -āminī, -antur.	**laudēmur, -ēminī, -entur.**
Imp.	*Act.*	**laudābam, -ābās,** *etc.*	**laudārem, -ārēs,** *etc.*
	Pass.	**laudābar, -ābāris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*	**laudārer, -ārēris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	**laudābō, -ābis, -ābit;**	
		laudābimus, -ābitis, -ābunt.	
	Pass.	**laudābor, -āberis** *or* **-re, -ābitur;**	
		laudābimur, -ābiminī, -ābuntur.	

Gerund. **laudandī, -ō, -um, -ō.**

Second

		Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Pres.	*Act.*	**moneō, -ēs, -et;**	**moneam, -eās, -eat;**
		monēmus, -ētis, -ent.	**moneāmus, -eātis, -eant.**
	Pass.	**moneor, -ēris** *or* **-re, -ētur;**	**monear, -eāris** *or* **-re, -eātur;**
		monēmur, -ēminī, -entur.	**moneāmur, -eāminī, -eantur.**
Imp.	*Act.*	**monēbam, -ēbās,** *etc.*	**monērem, -ērēs,** *etc.*
	Pass.	**monēbar, -ēbāris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*	**monērer, -ērēris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	**monēbō, -ēbis, -ēbit;**	
		monēbimus, -ēbitis, -ēbunt.	
	Pass.	**monēbor, -ēberis** *or* **-re, -ēbitur;**	
		monēbimur, -ēbiminī, -ēbuntur.	

Gerund. **monendī, -ō, -um, -ō.**

Third

		Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Pres.	*Act.*	**regō, -is, -it;**	**regam, -ās, -at;**
		regimus, -itis, -unt.	**regāmus, -ātis, -ant.**
	Pass.	**regor, eris** *or* **-re, -itur;**	**regar, -āris** *or* **-re, -ātur;**
		regimur, -iminī, -untur.	**regāmur, -āminī, -antur.**
Imp.	*Act.*	**regēbam, -ēbās,** *etc.*	**regerem, -erēs,** *etc.*
	Pass.	**regēbar, -ēbāris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*	**regerer, -erēris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	**regam, -ēs, -et;**	
		regēmus, -ētis, -ent.	
	Pass.	**regar, -ēris** *or* **-re, -ētur;**	
		regēmur, -ēminī, -entur.	

Gerund. **regendī, -ō, -um, -ō.**

VERBS.

Conjugation.

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
laudā; **laudāte.**	**laudāre.**	**laudāns, -antis.**
laudāre; **laudāminī.**	**laudārī.**	
laudātō, -ātō; **laudātōte, -antō.**	**laudātūrum esse.**	**laudātūrus, -a, -um.**
laudātor, -ātor; **——, -antor.**	**laudātum** (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**laudandus, -a, -um.**

Supines. **laudātum, laudātū.**

Conjugation.

monē; **monēte.**	**monēre.**	**monēns, -entis.**
monēre; **monēminī.**	**monērī.**	
monētō, -ētō; **monētōte, -ento.**	**monitūrum esse.**	**monitūrus, -a, -um.**
monētor, -ētor; **——, -entor.**	**monitum** (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**monendus, -a, -um.**

Supines. **monitum, monitū.**

Conjugation.

rege; **regite.**	**regere.**	**regēns, -entis.**
regere; **regiminī.**	**regī.**	
regitō, -itō; **regitōte, -untō.**	**rēctūrum esse.**	**rēctūrus, -a, -um.**
regitor, -itor; **——, -untor.**	**rēctum** (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**regendus, -a, -um.**

Supines. **rēctum, rēctū**

VERBS.

FOURTH

		Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Pres.	*Act.*	audiō, -īs, -it;	audiam, -iās, -iat;
		audīmus, -ītis, -iunt.	audiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
	Pass.	audior, -īris *or* -re, -ītur;	audiar, -iāris *or* -re, -iātur;
		audīmur, -īminī, -iuntur.	audiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
Imp.	*Act.*	audiēbam, -iēbās, *etc.*	audīrem, -īrēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	audiēbar, -iēbāris *or* -re, *etc.*	audīrer, -īrēris *or* -re, *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	audiam, -iēs, -iet;	
		audiēmus, -iētis, -ient.	
	Pass.	audiar, -iēris *or* -re, -iētur;	
		audiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.	

Gerund. audiendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

THIRD CONJUGATION

Pres.	*Act.*	capiō, -is, -it;	capiam, -iās, -iat;
		capimus, -itis, -iunt.	capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
	Pass.	capior, -eris *or* -re, -itur,	capiar, -iāris *or* -re, -iātur;
		capimur, -iminī, -iuntur.	capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
Imp.	*Act.*	capiēbam, -iēbās, *etc.*	caperem, -erēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	capiēbar, -iēbāris *or* -re, *etc.*	caperer, -erēris *or* -re, *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	capiam, -iēs, -iet;	
		capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.	
	Pass.	capiar, -iēris *or* -re, -iētur;	
		capiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.	

Gerund. capiendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE

NOTE.—The perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses are conjugated

		Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Perf.	*Act.*	laudāvī, -istī, -it;	laudāverim, -eris, -erit;
		laudāvimus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.	laudāverimus, -eritis, -erint.
	Pass.	laudātus sum, es, est;	laudātus sim, sīs, sit;
		laudātī sumus, estis, sunt.	laudātī sīmus, sītis, sint.
Plup.	*Act.*	laudāveram, -erās, *etc.*	laudāvissem, -issēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	laudātus eram, erās, *etc.*	laudātus essem, essēs, *etc.*
F. P.	*Act.*	laudāverō, -eris, -erit;	
		laudāverimus, -eritis, -erint.	
	Pass.	laudātus erō, eris, erit;	
		laudātī erimus, eritis, erunt.	

VERBS.

CONJUGATION.

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participle.*
audī; auDīte.	**audīre.**	**audiēns, -ientis.**
audīre; audīminī.	**audīrī.**	
audītō, -ītō; audītōte, -iuntō.	**audītūrum esse.**	**audītūrus, -a, -um.**
audītor, ītor; ——, -iuntor.	**audītum** (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**audiendus, -a, -um.**

Supines. **audītum, audītū.**

IN **-iō.**

cape; capite.	**capere.**	**capiēns, -ientis.**
capere; capiminī.	**capī.**	
capitō, -itō; capitōte, -iuntō.	**captūrum esse.**	**captūrus, -a, -um.**
capitor, -itor; ——, -iuntor.	**captum** (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**capiendus, -a, -um.**

Supines. **captum, captū.**

PERFECT TENSES OF ALL VERBS.

with the same endings for all verbs, regular and irregular.

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participle.*
	laudāvisse.	
	laudātum (*partic.*) **esse.**	**laudātus, -a, -um.**

IRREGULAR

(For the perfect, pluperfect and future

Sum, esse, fuī,

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Pres.	**sum, es, est;**	**sim, sīs, sit;**
	sumus, estis, sunt.	**sīmus, sītis, sint.**
Imp.	**eram, erās,** *etc.*	**essem, essēs,** *etc.*
Fut.	**erō, eris, erit;**	
	erimus, eritis, erunt.	

Possum, posse, potuī,

Pres.	**possum, potes, potest;**	**possim, possīs, possit;**
	possumus, potestis, possunt.	**possīmus, possītis, possint.**
Imp.	**poteram, poterās,** *etc.*	**possem, possēs,** *etc.*
Fut.	**poterō, poteris, poterit;**	
	poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.	

Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made,*

Pres.	**fīō, fīs, fit;**	**fīam, fīās, fīat;**
	fīmus, fītis, fīunt.	**fīāmus, fīātis, fīant.**
Imp.	**fīēbam, fīēbās,** *etc.*	**fierem, fierēs,** *etc.*
Fut.	**fīam, fīēs, fīet;**	
	fīēmus, fīētis, fīent.	

Eō, īre, īvī

Pres.	**eō, īs, it;**	**eam, eās, eat;**
	īmus, ītis, eunt.	**eāmus, eātis, eant.**
Imp.	**ībam, ībās,** *etc.*	**īrem, īrēs,** *etc.*
Fut.	**ībō, ībis, ībit;**	
	ībimus, ībitis, ībunt.	

Gerund. **eundī, -ō, -um, -ō.**

Ferō, ferre, tulī,

Pres.	*Act.*	**ferō, fers, fert;**	**feram, ferās,** *etc.*
		ferimus, fertis, ferunt.	
	Pass.	**feror, ferris, fertur;**	**ferar, ferāris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*
		ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.	
Imp.	*Act.*	**ferēbam, ferēbās,** *etc.*	**ferrem, ferrēs,** *etc.*
	Pass.	**ferēbar, ferēbāris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*	**ferrer, ferrēris** *or* **-re,** *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	**feram, ferēs, feret;**	
		ferēmus, ferētis, ferent.	
	Pass.	**ferar, ferēris** *or* **-re, ferētur;**	
		ferēmur, ferēminī, ferentur.	

Gerund. **ferendī, -ō, -um, -ō.**

VERBS.

perfect tenses, see pages 210 and 211.)

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
futūrus, *be.*		
es; **este.**	**esse.**	——
estō, estō; **estōte, suntō.**	**futūrum esse** (*or* **fore**)	**futūrus, -a, -um.**
——, *be able, can.*		
	posse.	**potēns, -entis.**
be done; happen, become.		
fī; **fīte.**	**fierī.**	——
	factum (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**faciendus, -a, -um.**
(iī), itum, *go.*		
ī; **īte.**	**īre.**	**iēns; euntis.**
ītō, ītō; **ītōte, euntō.**	**itūrum esse.**	**itūrus.**

Supines. **itum, itū.**

lātum, *bear.*		
fer; **ferte.**	**ferre.**	**ferēns, -entis.**
ferre. **feriminī.**	**ferrī.**	
fertō, fertō; **fertōte, feruntō.**	**lātūrum esse.**	**lātūrus, -a, -um.**
fertor, fertor; **——, feruntor.**	**lātum** (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**ferendus, -a, -um.**

Supines. **lātum, lātū.**

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*

Volō, velle, voluī, ——,

Pres.	volō, vīs, vult; volumus, vultis, volunt.	velim, velīs, velit; velīmus, velītis, velint.
Imp.	volēbam, volēbās, *etc.*	vellem, vellēs, *etc.*
Fut.	volam, volēs, *etc.*	

Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——,

Pres.	nōlō, nōn vīs, nōn vult; nōlumus, nōn vultis, nōlunt.	nōlim, nōlīs, nōlit; nōlīmus, nōlītis, nōlint.
Imp.	nōlēbam, nōlēbās, *etc.*	nōllem, nōllēs, *etc.*
Fut.	nōlam, nōlēs, *etc.*	

Mālō, mālle, māluī, ——,

Pres.	mālō, māvīs, māvult; mālumus, māvultis, mālunt.	mālim, mālīs, mālit; mālīmus, mālītis, mālint.
Imp.	mālēbam, mālēbās, *etc.*	māllem, māllēs, *etc.*
Fut.	mālam, mālēs, *etc.*	

DEFECTIVE

Meminī, meminisse,

Perf.	meminī, -istī, *etc.*	meminerim, -eris, *etc.*
Plup.	memineram, -erās, *etc.*	meminissem, -issēs, *etc.*
F. P.	meminerō, -eris, *etc.*	

Ōdī, ōdisse,

Perf.	ōdī, -istī, *etc.*	ōderim, -eris, *etc.*
Plup.	ōderam, -erās, *etc.*	ōdissem, -issēs, *etc.*
F. P.	ōderō, -eris, *etc.*	
Fut.		

Coepī, coepisse, coeptus,

Perf.	coepī, -istī, *etc.*	coeperim, -eris, *etc.*
Plup.	coeperam, -erās, *etc.*	coepissem, -issēs, *etc.*
F. P.	coeperō, -eris, *etc.*	
Fut.		

For the present system and the passive of this verb, see vocabulary.

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
wish, be willing.		
	velle.	**volēns, -entis.**
not wish, be unwilling.		
nōlī; **nōlīte.**	**nōlle.**	**nōlēns, -entis.**
nōlītō, nōlītō; **nōlītōte, nōluntō.**		
wish more, prefer.		
	mālle.	

VERBS.

——, *remember.*		
mementō; **mementōte.**	**meminisse**	
ōsus, *hate.*		
	ōdisse.	**ōsus, -a, -um.**
	ōsūrum esse	**ōsūrus, -a, -um.**
began, have begun.		
	coepisse.	**coeptus, -a. -um.**
	coeptūrum esse.	**coeptūrus, -a, -um.**

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *it behooves, it is proper.*

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Infinitive.*
Pres.	**oportet.**	**oporteat.**	**oportēre.**
Imp.	**oportēbat.**	**oportēret.**	
Fut.	**oportēbit.**		
Perf.	**oportuit.**	**oportuerit.**	**oportuisse.**
Plup.	**oportuerat.**	**oportuisset.**	
F. P.	**oportuerit.**		

INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS.

Pres.	**arbitrārī.**		**arbitrāns, -antis.**
Perf.	**arbitrātum** (*partic.*) **esse.**		**arbitrātus, -a, -um.**
Fut.	**arbitrātūrum esse.**		**arbitrātūrus, -a, -um.**
		Gerundive.	**arbitrandus, -a, -um.**

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

For the periphrastic conjugations see §§ 277 and 278. They are conjugated in all tenses of the indicative and subjunctive, and have the present and perfect infinitives.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

The following list contains the principal parts of all the different simple verbs which should be learned, except those in **-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** and **-or, -ārī, -ātus sum**, in the order of their first occurrence in simple or compound form. If any compound that occurs in this work is different from its simple verb, an example is given.

BOOK I

CH. 1. **sum, esse, fuī, (futūrus)**, *be.*
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *divide.*
in-colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *cultivate.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear.*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold.*
  per-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum, *extend; pertain.*
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *carry.*
cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *go (from); yield.*
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsum or **tentum**, *stretch.*
  con-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, *hasten; fight.*
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have, hold.*
  pro-hibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum, *keep out; prevent.*
  dēbeō (for **de-hibeō**), **dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum**, *owe, tough.* So **praebeō** (for **prae-hibeō**), *furnish.*
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say.*
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take.*
  in-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum, *begin.*
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, *touch.*
  at-tingō, tingere, tigī, tāctum, *touch upon.*
vergō, vergere, ——, ——, *incline, lie.*
orior, orīrī (orī), ortus sum (oritūrus), *rise.*

CH. 2. **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**, *lead.*
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *do, make.* PASSIVE: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**, *be done, be made, happen, become.* So compounds with words other than prepositions; others like
  dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, *fail;* passive regular.
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, *advise.*
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go.*

stō, stāre, steti, stātum, *stand* (intransitive).
  prae-stō, stāre, stiti, ——, *stand before.*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *become master (of).*
possum, posse, potuī, ——, *be able; can.*

Ch. 3. **pateō, patēre, patuī, ——,** *lie open, extend.*
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, *stand* (transitive).
  cōn-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum, *determine; station.*
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move.*
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set out.*
emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, *take, buy.* So **co-emō**; other compounds like
  red-imō, imere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy back, purchase;* except
  sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take.*
petō, petere, petīvī (iī), petītum, *seek.*
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, *pick; read.*
  dē-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum, *choose.* So all compounds, except
  dī-ligō, ligere, lēxī, lēctum, *love;*
  intel-legō (ligō), legere (ligere), lēxī, lēctum, *understand;*
  neg-legō, legere, lēxī, lēctum, *neglect.*
dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give.* So compounds with dissyllabic prepositions; others like
  ab-dō, dere, didī, ditum, *hide.*

Ch. 4. **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum,** *drive, put through.*
  red-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum, *drive back, reduce.* **cōgō** contracts in present system.
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, ——, *it is fitting.*
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum, *seize.*
  ē-ripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptum, *snatch away.*

Ch. 5. **in-cendō, cendere, cendī, cēnsum,** *set fire to.*
tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum, *raise; take away.*
iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum, *order.*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, (*serve one's self*), *use.*

Ch. 6. **im-pediō, pedīre, pedīvī (iī), pedītum,** (*get one's foot in*), *impede.*
fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus, *flow.*
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see.*

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, allow.*
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

CH. 7. **mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum,** *send, let go.*
licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted; may.*
caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, *cause to fall, cut, kill.*
oc-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum, *kill.*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive.*
ex-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, *drive out.* But **re-pellō** has perfect **re-ppulī,** for **re-pepulī.**
spondeō, spondēre, spopondī, spōnsum, *promise.*
re-spondeō, spondēre, spondī, spōnsum, *answer.*
volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish, be willing.*
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn.* So the compounds, except **re-vertor, vertī, vertī, versum,** *turn back* (deponent in present system).

CH. 8. **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum,** *place.*
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (iī), mūnītum, *fortify.*
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw.*
dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **dē-jiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum,** *throw down.*
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join.*
sistō, sistere, (stitī), stātum, *cause to stand;* in comp., *stand.*
dē-sistō, sistere, stitī, stitum, *cease.* So all compounds, except **in-, circum-,** which have no supine; the last has perfect **circum-stetī.**

CH. 9. **linquō, linquere, līquī, lictum,** *leave.*
studeō, studēre, studuī, ——, *be eager.*

CH. 10. **scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum,** *write.*

CH. 11. **dē-fendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsum,** *defend.*
mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum, or deponent, *deserve.*

CH. 12. **gradior, gradī, gressus sum,** *step.*
ag-gredior, gredī, gressus sum, *approach, attack.*
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *avenge.*

CH. 13. **tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum,** *allot.*
(dē-) spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look (down upon).*
nītor, nītī, nīsus (nīxus) sum, *rest, rely.*

CH. 14. **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum,** *fall.*
ac-cidō, cidere, cidī, (cāsum), *happen.*
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard (for).*
timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, *be afraid of, fear.*
suēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētum, *become accustomed.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, ——, *feel pain.*
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*
CH. 15. **lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum,** *provoke.*
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began, have begun.*
CH. 16. **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——,** *be unwilling.*
queror, querī, questus sum, *complain.*
CH. 17. **valeō, valēre, valuī, ——,** *be strong.*
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, *frighten.*
CH. 18. **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum,** *perceive.*
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī (iī), quaesītum, *ask.*
  con-quīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī (iī), quīsītum, *seek for.*
re-periō, perīre, pperī, pertum, *find.*
audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.*
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase.*
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *favor.*
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (iī), cupītum, *desire.*
CH. 19. **(g)nōscō, (g)nōscere, (g)nōvī, (g)nōtum,** *know.* So
  ī-gnōscō, *pardon;* other compounds like
  cō-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnitum, *ascertain.*
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear.*
CH. 20. **plectō, plectere, (plexī), plexum,** *plait.*
  com-plector, plectī, plexus sum, *embrace.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī (iī), scītum, *know.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep.*
prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsum, sometimes shortened to, **prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum,** *grasp.*
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *warn.*
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak.*
CH. 21. **sīdō, sīdere, sīdī, ——,** *sit down.*
  cōn-sīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessum, *settle.*
scandō, scandere, scandī, scānsum, *climb.*
  ā(ad)-scendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsum, *climb to.*
CH. 22. **com-periō, perīre, perī, pertum,** *find out.*
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*
  ōc-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** *run against.*
struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum, *build.*
CH. 23. **claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum,** *close.*
  inter-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum, *shut off.*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust.*

Ch. 24. **pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum,** *fill.*
Ch. 25. **fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum,** *pierce.*
ā-periō, perīre, peruī, pertum, *open.*
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*
Ch. 26. **iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum,** *help.*
Ch. 27. **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum,** *flee.*
pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, ——, *demand.*
Ch. 31. **arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī (iī), arcessītum,** *summon.*
ex-perior, perīrī, pertus sum, *try.*
Ch. 32. **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum,** *remain.*
Ch. 33. **premō, premere, pressī, pressum,** *press.*
ex-primō, primere, pressī, pressum, *press out.*
Ch. 34. **trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum,** *draw.*
Ch. 36. **pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum,** *hang* (transitive).
Ch. 38. **cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum,** *encircle.*
Ch. 39. **fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum,** *shape.*
audiō, audīre, audīvī (iī), audītum, *hear.*
Ch. 40. **spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsum,** *scatter.*
dī-spergō, spergere, spersī, spersum, *scatter abroad.*
in-dulgeō, dulgēre, dulsī, dultum, *indulge.*
Ch. 43. **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum,** *teach.*
Ch. 45. **dē-serō, serere, seruī, sertum,** *join.*
Ch. 51. **pandō, pandere, pandī, passum,** *spread.*
Ch. 53. **nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus (nanctus) sum,** *find.*
vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*
cōn-sulō, sulere, suluī, sultum, *consult.*

BOOK II

Ch. 13. **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum (nāscitūrus),** *be born.*
Ch. 19. **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum,** *rule.*
lateō, latēre, latuī, ——, *lie hidden.*
Ch. 25. **urgeō (urgueō), urgēre, ursī, ——,** *press.*
Ch. 27. **-cumbō, -cumbere, cubuī, cubitum,** *topple.*

IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES

The following substantives require notice as having irregular, extra, or lacking forms. See vocabulary or grammars.

Book I. 1. **bellum, sōl.** 2. **lacus, locus, mīlia.** 3. **fidēs, fīlia.** 4. **arma.** 5. **nihil, domus, spēs.** 6. **vīs.** 9. **angustiae.** 10. **hī-**

berna. 11. **līberī.** 12. **deus.** 18. **nēmō.** 20. **ops, vulgus.** 22. **aciēs.** 24. **phalanx.** 26. **vesper.** 34. **opus.** 50. **fās.**

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES

General Rules

Masculine. Names of male beings, rivers, winds, months and mountains.

Feminine. Names of female beings, countries, towns, plants and trees.

Neuter. Indeclinable nouns.

Special Rules — Subordinate to the Above

Declensions I. and V., *feminine.*

Declensions II. and IV., *masculine* or *neuter*, according to ending.

Declension III. *Masculine:* those ending in ō (except dō, gō, and iō), or, ōs, er, es. *Feminine:* those ending in dō, gō, and iō, ās, ēs, is, ūs, x, and s following a consonant. *Neuter:* all others.

Exceptions

Book I. 1. **fīnis** (*m.*), **mōns** (*m.*), **sōl** (*m.*). 2. **locus** (*m.* and *n.* plural). 3. **iter** (*n.*). 4. **diēs** (*m.*, sometimes *f.*, see vocabulary), **ignis** (*m.*), **iūs** (*n.*). 5. **domus** (*f.*), **mēnsis** (*m.*). 6. **pōns** (*m.*). 7. **Īdūs** (*f.*). 8. **pēs** (*m.*). 10. **Alpēs** (*f.*). 12. **linter** (*f.*). 20. **vulgus** (*n.*, accusative rarely *m.*). 22. **collis** (*m.*). 25. **manus** (*f.*). 38. **Vesontiō** (*m.*). 40. **ōrdō** (*m.*) 46. **lapis** (*m.*). 50. **merīdiēs** (*m.*).

Book II. 17. **arbor** (*f.*), **sentis** (*m.*). 27. **cadaver** (*n.*). 33. **cortex** (*m.* and *f.*).

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

The following adjectives and adverbs require notice on account of irregular comparison.

Book I. 1. **parvus** and adv., **saepe**, **propior** and adv., **exterus.** 2. **facilis** and adv., **māgnus** and adv. 3. **multus** and adv. 6. **bonus** and adv., **difficilis** and adv. 7. **ulterior.** 9. **novus.** 10. **citerior, prior** and adv., **superus.** 13. **aeger** and adv., **vetus.** 15. **posterus, audāx** and adv., **diū.** 18. **celer** and adv., **līber** and adv. 26. **ācer** and adv. 36. **dēterior.** 49. **idōneus.**

Book II. 1. **crēber.**

ENGLISH–LATIN EXERCISES

EXERCISE I

A. Objective Genitive, §§ 40–43. Study the examples very carefully, and note that this use of the genitive is sometimes the translation of *to* or *for*.

B. Predicate Possessive Genitive, § 46. Notice carefully the models and their translation.

C. Partitive Genitive, §§ 47–53, especially the uses mentioned in § 49 and the last part of § 50, which do not have *of* in English.

D. Prepositions instead of the Partitive Genitive, § 53. It will be better to use **ex** or **dē** with the ablative, instead of the genitive, after **ūnus, duo, trēs,** and **quīdam.**

A. 1. The desire for royal power. 2. The wrong to the Roman people. 3. A hope for power. 4. A reputation for bravery. 5. Danger to the legion.

B. 6. This duty is the commander's. 7. Gaul does not belong to Ariovistus, but to the Roman people. 8. This place belongs to the bravest legion. 9. What does the plan include?

C. 10. Two thousand men. 11. Three miles. 12. No grain. 13. Nothing left. 14. Less danger. 15. Sufficient reason. 16. More grain. 17. Some(-thing of)[1] help. 18. What business is it to Caesar (dat.)?

D. 19. One of the soldiers. 20. Two[2] of the legions. 21. Certain of the Belgians. 22. A lieutenant of (**ex**) ours. 23. A few of our [men].[3]

[1] Words in parentheses are explanatory.

[2] What gender?

[3] Words in brackets are to be omitted in translation.

EXERCISE II

Indirect Questions, § 243. Learn thoroughly the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 151), and study the examples under § 152. Review the subjunctive mood, pages 208–215.

Past Tenses, §§ 148, 149. In translating the simple past tense of English into a Latin indicative, always use the perfect tense, unless the English verb distinctly denotes *attempted*, *repeated*, *accustomed*, or *continued* action, when the imperfect is to be used.

1. I know what you are doing. 2. I know what you have done. 3. I knew what you were doing. 4. I knew what you had done. 5. I saw what you did. 6. He understands what you did. 7. They reported where the enemy were. 8. It was seen what had been done. 9. They will ask why you are coming. 10. We know what legions were sent.

11. They had found out what towns were being fortified. 12. We know why the towns are being fortified. 13. Part of our army and all the allies[1] will be sent. 14. He asked what help there was. 15. A thousand Gauls and thousands of Belgians came. 16. They found out where there was more grain. 17. Many of our soldiers and certain of the allies had been seen. 18. Three of the legions had started. 19. We know why the enemy's reputation for bravery is great. 20. We saw men who had even less grain.

EXERCISE III

Accusative of Direct Object, § 7.

Accusative of Extent, § 14. This may be used exactly like the adverbial objective in English, as the examples are translated; it may also be the translation of *for*, e.g. *they marched (for) many miles*.

Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing, § 16, and the passive construction of the same, § 17.

Accusative with Prepositions, § 18.

Accusative Subject of Infinitive, § 257.

[1] Not partitive in sense, and hence not genitive.

Uses of Infinitives. The infinitive is a verbal noun having the following uses:

1. Nominative Case.	*To see is to believe.*	The same in Latin.
2. Accusative Case.		
a. Direct object.	*He decided to go.*	The same in Latin.[1]
(With subject.)	*He allowed us to go.*	The same in Latin.[1]
b. Complementary.	*He is able to do it.*	The same in Latin.
	He can do it.	The same in Latin.
c. Used adverbially.	*He came to see us.*	Latin, Exercise IV.

1. The traders often come to the Celts. 2. We call the Celts Gauls. 3. The Celts are called Gauls. 4. For many years we shall fight among the Germans across the Rhine. 5. They marched a mile into our territory. 6. They will march ten miles through the province. 7. You ordered the army to set out across the river. 8. They will not allow the traders to come to the town. 9. They can remain two days. 10. For many miles he had built strong fortifications.

11. The traders also reported why the army had been led across the river. 12. For three days two of the legions which you see will remain near the town. 13. There is sufficient reason why they are coming. 14. We had allowed no grain to be sent. 15. It is easy to understand why they came. 16. Certain of the soldiers could not be sent for a longer distance. 17. I see where he is. 18. I see where (whither) he went. 19. These places belonged to the Helvetians. 20. He wishes to have more grain.

EXERCISE IV

Adverbial Clauses of Purpose, §§ 156, 157, 158, 164. Since a purpose is never a completed act, only the tenses of incomplete action in the subjunctive mood, the present and imperfect, are used in purpose clauses.

[1] Object infinitives that are not translated into Latin by infinitives will not be found until Exercise XX.

Distinguish carefully the infinitive used adverbially in English to express purpose, which becomes subjunctive in Latin, from the subject and object uses, which are the same in Latin as in English, and occurred in Exercise III.

1. We are doing this (in-order-) that we may defend the town. 2. We were doing this (in-order-) that we might defend the town. 3. We are doing this that the town may not be seized. 4. We did this that the town might not be seized. 5. They are coming to drive back the enemy. 6. They came to drive back the enemy. 7. We set out to attack them. 8. We shall start out to attack them. 9. We shall fortify the town that it may not be taken. 10. We fortified it that it might not be taken.

11. They will wait for many days to do this. 12. He showed what his plan included. 13. He understands why we could send no grain. 14. One of the soldiers came to see a friend. 15. They led the troops across the river so that they might not be seen. 16. They had marched several miles to attack the town. 17. You allowed the enemy's troops to come into the village. 18. We shall try to send the cavalry to meet the attack. 19. Three of the scouts returned to ask where [1] the others had been sent. 20. The towns which were taken belonged to the Germans.

EXERCISE V

Dative of Indirect Object, §§ 19, 22, contrasted with Accusative of Limit, § 94.

Either of these constructions may be the translation of *to*. The dative is generally used when the English phrase can be changed to an indirect object of the same or a similar verb (but not with *send*); e.g. *he gave the grain to him* = *he gave him the grain; he said this to him* = *he told him this*.

The dative is used especially with the following verbs: dō and nūntiō and their compounds, respondeō, polliceor, dīcō, licet,

[1] **quō or ubi?**

(con-)cēdō. The accusative with ad is used with verbs that denote motion.

1. He came to Caesar. 2. He reported the fact to Caesar. 3. They sent ambassadors to him. 4. He gave them this answer (answered them this). 5. The Aeduans did not bring the grain to the river. 6. This was not permitted to the soldiers. 7. The territory of the Belgians extended to the Ocean. 8. He had promised many things to his friends. 9. Orgetorix will go to the nearest states. 10. More grain was given to the men.

11. They told him what nations lived across the Rhine. 12. He is doing these things that an embassy may not be sent to that state. 13. The magistrates will collect a thousand men to bring back Orgetorix to the town. 14. Casticus will not be called a friend of the Roman people. 15. For two years the Helvetians will try to establish peace. 16. All the grain will be sent to the army. 17. Orgetorix had some influence among the Sequanians. 18. It will be reported to the lieutenant where the enemy have encamped. 19. We shall set fire to their private buildings in order that their hope may be taken away. 20. He asked what business it was to Caesar.

EXERCISE VI

Dative with Special verbs, §§ 23, 24, 26. Notice carefully from the examples in § 26 how the passive is expressed.

1. He persuaded the Helvetians. 2. The Helvetians were persuaded. 3. The Belgians do not desire (**studeō**) cavalry. 4. Caesar usually pardoned the Gauls. 5. The Gauls were usually pardoned. 6. Orgetorix desired (**cupiō**) royal power. 7. We shall not be harmed. 8. He had trusted our friends. 9. They did not obey their commander. 10. They had resisted the enemy bravely.

11. It was not easy to take away all the grain. 12. They will not allow us to go through their territory. 13. The legions advanced one by one to attack the enemy. 14. Certain of our soldiers were persuaded. 15. Either a wall or a ditch was built for several miles. 16. We cannot judge in which [of two] direction the river flows. 17. Caesar answered the ambassadors what seemed best. 18. They returned to camp and returned their horses to the Gauls. 19. We are giving hostages that we may not be harmed. 20. We know why Orgetorix desired a revolution.

EXERCISE VII

Dative with Compound Verbs, § 27, 1, 2.

A. The following are the most common compound transitive verbs that take the dative and accusative in Caesar: **īnfero, praeficiō, suscipiō, obiciō**; the verb **imperō**, when meaning *levy upon* or *demand from*, and the verb **mandō**, when meaning *entrust*, take the dative and accusative, and when meaning *command*, take a dative and an **ut** or **nē** clause (see Exercise XX).

B. The following are the most important intransitive compound verbs that take the dative in Caesar: **praesum, praestō, occurrō, accidō.** For the use of the passive of **occurrō**, see § 27, 2, note.

A. 1. We did not easily make war on the Helvetians. 2. War was not easily made on the Helvetians. 3. Caesar placed Labienus in command of the fortification. 4. Labienus was placed in command of the fortification. 5. Caesar levied soldiers on the province [*or*, demanded soldiers from the province]. 6. A great number of soldiers was demanded from the province. 7. They took to flight and hid in the woods. 8. I shall expose him to uncivilized [men]. 9. He will be exposed to uncivilized [men]. 10. He took upon himself (undertook) this mission to the states.

B. 11. Dumnorix commanded (was in command of) the cavalry which we had sent. 12. The Helvetians surpassed the rest of the Gauls. 13. I shall face these conditions (**rēs**).

14. These conditions will be faced. 15. Something will happen to the Romans.

16. One of the soldiers was persuaded. 17. For four miles they marched rapidly to overtake the enemy. 18. An embassy came to see me. 19. We shall give a pledge and an oath to him. 20. This fact was reported to the Helvetians. 21. Some help was sent to the garrison, that the town might not be taken. 22. Orgetorix was not pardoned. 23. He had collected all his friends to free himself. 24. Orgetorix had promised more help to Casticus and Dumnorix. 25. Those new troops cannot easily be resisted.

EXERCISE VIII

A. Purpose Clauses introduced by a Relative, §§ 156, 162, 163. This construction occurs especially after **mittō** and **veniō.**

B. Adverbial Clauses of Result, §§ 165–167. Contrast the negative of these clauses with the negative of purpose clauses.

The pluperfect subjunctive is not used in clauses of result, completed action being expressed by the perfect subjunctive after any tense.

A. 1. They sent ambassadors (who were) to say as follows (these things). 2. Men came to fortify the town. 3. Caesar is sending the cavalry ahead to learn the road. 4. Men were sent to build a bridge. 5. Ariovistus sent light-armed troops, which forces were to frighten our [men].

B. 6. The mountains are so high that we are shut in. 7. The river was so wide that we did not hear him. 8. Their hope was so great that they started out into Gaul. 9. They fought so bravely that they were not conquered. 10. The river was very deep, so that our [men] could not cross it.

11. The Gauls tried to find out where Caesar was going. 12. They marched so that there was less space between the two armies. 13. No one who tried to return was harmed. 14. It was reported to the commander in what direction

the enemy was marching. 15. This lieutenant is not in command of a legion; he has been placed in command of the cavalry. 16. He told the men who were present who he was. 17. The cavalry was sent to sustain the attack, so that the legions might not be disturbed. 18. We have deserved so [well] that our fields ought not to be laid waste. 19. A very high mountain was near, so that we could not go forward. 20. They did not dare to cross the river to attack us.

EXERCISE IX

Simple Indirect Discourse, §§ 217–224, 228 (first part), 230, 232, 233, 235–238.

Note especially (1) that simple indirect discourse consists of subject accusative and infinitive only; (2) that the tense of the infinitive is the same as the time of the same verb in direct discourse; (3) that when the infinitive is a compound of a participle and esse, the participle must agree with the subject accusative.

1. He says that he is coming. 2. He says that he came. 3. He says that he will come. 4. He said that he was coming. 5. He said that he had come. 6. He said that he would come. 7. He says that they are being sent. 8. He said that they were being sent. 9. He says that they have been sent. 10. He said that they had been sent. 11. He says that they will be sent. 12. He said that they would be sent. 13. We think that we are ready for (**ad**) this movement (**rēs**). 14. It was reported that they were trying to march through the farther province. 15. They thought that they would persuade the Allobroges.

16. They are hurrying to the walls to resist the enemy. 17. The soldiers asked who I was. 18. I told them that I was a Roman. 19. Three of our [men] were pardoned. 20. They were so exhausted that they did not reach the town. 21. One force was sent to keep the enemy away. 22. The Helvetians will ascertain that Caesar has come.

23. They fought sharply that they might not be surrounded.
24. They fought so sharply that they were not surrounded.
25. The bridge of which I was in command was not harmed.

EXERCISE X

Participles, §§ 259–264.
Ablative Absolute, §§ 87, 88.
In translating participles into Latin, determine first the *real tense* (§ 261, note), then see what voice must be used in Latin. Remember that a participle is a verbal adjective, and see with what it agrees to determine its gender, number, and case.

1. Greatly excited, they started out. 2. Having given this pledge, he tried to seize the royal power. 3. Sending ambassadors to Caesar, they sought peace. 4. Wandering to the Rhine, they tried to cross. 5. Fortifying the camp, he left a garrison there. 6. He found the legions fortifying the camp. 7. Fearing an ambuscade, he sent the cavalry ahead. 8. Having killed a large number of the enemy, he led back the army into camp. 9. I am going-to-hold the royal power. 10. Having defeated these tribes, he led back the army unharmed. 11. Peace being made, the ambassadors returned to their own [people]. 12. Having formed this plan, he ordered the army to advance. 13. [After] delaying around (**apud**) the town and setting on fire all the villages of the Remi, they hastened against Caesar. 14. Caesar [being] unwilling, the Helvetians could not cross the river. 15. Dropping their spears, they attacked the enemy sharply.

16. Orgetorix persuaded Casticus and Dumnorix, whom he saw [when] going to their states. 17. He found out that his plan had been reported to the Helvetians. 18. Having collected ten thousand men, he freed himself. 19. The Helvetians were going to carry sufficient grain, in order that they might not be compelled to return. 20. They

hoped that the Allobroges would allow them to go through their territory. 21. Having prepared everything, they were informed that Caesar was coming. 22. They were so alarmed that they sent ambassadors to him to say that they wished to march through the province. 23. They also said that they would harm no one. 24. Caesar remembered (**memoriā tenēre**) that Cassius had been killed and his army routed and sent under the yoke. 25. Therefore he told the ambassadors that he would not allow them to march through the province.

EXERCISE XI

A. Translations of "By," §§ 68, 71.

B. Direct Questions.

I. Introduced by interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. The same in Latin as in English.

II. Asked by placing a verb or auxiliary before the subject.

1. Asked for information, or not hinting at an expected answer:

   "Did you *see* the men?" "Did you see the *men?*" In Latin the enclitic **-ne** is appended to the word about which the question centers, and this word is put first:

   "**Vīdistīne hominēs?**" "**Hominēsne vīdistī?**"

2. Hinting at the answer "Yes."

   "Didn't you see the men?" "**Nōnne hominēs vīdistī?**"

3. Hinting at the answer "No."

   "You didn't see the men, did you?" (Or, in a tone of indignation or surprise, "Did you see the men?") "**Num hominēs vīdistī?**"

   NOTE. — These Latin questions, on becoming indirect, are introduced by **-ne** or **num** (without difference in meaning), *whether*.

A. 1. Caesar constructed works, by which he kept the Helvetians away. 2. The soldiers drove them back by their missiles. 3. Many missiles were thrown by the soldiers. 4. Dumnorix was the man by whom the Sequanians were persuaded. 5. They are bounded by wide rivers.

6. They were elated by their recent victory. 7. This was the route by which the Helvetians finally went.

B. 8. Are you going? 9. Aren't you going? 10. You aren't going, are you? 11. Don't you want to go? 12. Can't you go? 13. Why can't you go? 14. Did *you* do this? 15. Did you do *this?* 16. Did you *do* this? 17. You didn't do this, did you? 18. We want to know whether you can go. 19. They asked why you had gone. 20. We know why you came. 21. They asked whether you could go. 22. They are asking whether you have gone.

23. Dumnorix, who was very powerful among the Sequanians, desired a revolution. 24. It was reported to Caesar that the Helvetians were going to march through the province. 25. They tried to do this in order that they might no longer be shut in by mountains. 26. Caesar knows by whom this will be done. 27. He thinks that they will make war on the province. 28. The danger is so great that I am going into Italy to bring back larger forces. 29. I shall place you in command of the fortification that I have made. 30. Having seized the higher positions, the natives tried to check the Roman army. 31. Did Caesar send a lieutenant to lead the army back? 32. Didn't he go to Italy himself to bring back stronger forces?

EXERCISE XII

Translations of "With," §§ 71, 76, 78.

When feasible, the order of words in expressions of manner or attendant circumstance is: ***adjective*, cum, *noun*.**

Cum is enclitic with the relative and personal pronouns.

1. They were going out with all their forces. 2. With my army I shall seize the royal power. 3. We are going-to-carry all the grain with us. 4. We shall go with you. 5. With the legion which he had with him he built a wall. 6. This will be [attended] with great danger to the province.

7. He went with five legions in all. 8. The river flows very swiftly (with great swiftness). 9. They were crossing the river with rafts. 10. With a few horsemen we have defeated their whole army. 11. They are going-to-take-away our liberty together with [that of] the rest of Gaul. 12. I understand with what great (how great) danger you have done this. 13. Caesar talked with him. 14. Considius was sent ahead with the scouts. 15. They will follow with all their baggage. 16. Some were exhausted with wounds. 17. They approached with about fifteen thousand men. 18. I cannot allow you to help them with grain. 19. We shall hasten to the river with all our troops. 20. I came into Gaul with great hope.

21. Caesar learned that the Helvetians had already led their troops through the territory of the Aeduans and were laying waste their fields. 22. The latter (these) sent ambassadors to him to ask help. 23. The Ambarri said that the enemy were attacking their towns. 24. The Allobroges informed Caesar that there was nothing left to them. 25. We are going to check the enemy, that the property of the allies may not be lost. 26. Starting out with three legions, he attacked them at a disadvantage (impeded). 27. Having killed a great part of them, he put the rest to flight. 28. He crossed the river at once to follow up the rest. 29. The Helvetians were so frightened by this, that they sent ambassadors to seek peace. 30. Caesar asked whether they would give hostages to him. 31. The chief of the embassy replied to him that the Helvetians were accustomed to receive, not give, hostages.

EXERCISE XIII

Translations of "From," §§ 65, 66, 67, 84, 96. **If a preposition is to be used, think whether ab, dē, or ex best expresses the sense.**

Prohibeō and dēsistō are the verbs which in Caesar most commonly omit the preposition.

1. A river separates the Gauls from the Germans. 2. The Helvetians kept the Germans from their territory. 3. The Helvetians are going out of their territory. 4. A bridge separates this town from the Allobroges. 5. We shall start out of the town at once. 6. I shall obtain my request from the Sequanians. 7. They are not far away from our territory. 8. Most of the Belgians are descended from the Germans. 9. You will learn this from the words of the traders. 10. Many returned from fear of the enemy. 11. They ceased from this attempt. 12. Ambassadors will come from other states also.

13. Caesar sent ahead all the cavalry to see in what direction (pl.) the Helvetians were marching. 14. Engaging-in battle with their cavalry, our [men] were driven back. 15. Elated by this battle, having driven back four thousand cavalry with five hundred horsemen, they began to fight more boldly, and even to provoke our [men] to (by) battle. 16. Restraining his men from battle, Caesar marched so that there was not a great distance between the enemy's rearguard and his own van. 17. In the meantime the Aeduans had promised Caesar grain, that there might be sufficient provisions. 18. Finally he understood that the grain could not be brought by the Aeduan chiefs. 19. So, calling together Liscus and other chiefs, he told them that he had undertaken the war partly owing-to (from) their prayers. 20. Liscus held (**praesum**) the highest office (**magistrātus**) among the Aeduans. 21. Therefore Caesar complained more bitterly that no grain was being brought to him (-self).

EXERCISE XIV

Translations of "In," "At," "On," §§ 72, 82, 89, 91. **Note when a preposition is used.**

1. The Helvetians surpassed the rest of the Gauls in bravery. 2. They fight in almost daily battles with the

Germans. 3. They carry on war in the Germans' territory. 4. Their towns were twelve in number. 5. They were disappointed in their hope. 6. That state is in our province. 7. Fields were being laid waste almost in sight of our army. 8. In this affair Caesar by chance avenged not only public but also personal wrongs. 9. Caesar did in one day what they had done with the greatest difficulty in twenty days. 10. Divico had been leader of the Helvetians in a former war. 11. He came at that time. 12. They arrived [on] that day. 13. Their boats are on the lake. 14. On this journey his friends were persuaded. 15. He started at daybreak. 16. They fought on the bank of the river.

17. Then at length Liscus explained that there were some very powerful [men] among the Aeduans. 18. "These will not allow the people to bring the grain which they ought." 19. "They say that the Romans are going to take away the liberty of all the Gauls." 20. "By these same [men] all your plans are reported to the enemy." 21. "I have reported this critical fact to you under compulsion (having been compelled)." 22. "But I understand with how much danger I have done this." 23. Caesar perceived from this speech that Dumnorix was the man (**ipse**). 24. But he did not wish to talk [any] more about this matter in the presence of others (more being present). 25. Therefore, quickly dismissing the council, he detained (retained) Liscus. 26. He found out from others that all these things were true. 27. He asked what could be done.

EXERCISE XV

A. Ablative of Degree, § 81.
B. Ablative of Comparison, § 69. Note when **quam** may be omitted.

A. 1. The other road was much easier. 2. A battle had been fought (**faciō**) a few days before. 3. The war was finished a little earlier than the time of year demanded.

4. He complained much more bitterly. 5. A few months after, several thousand men had crossed the Rhine.

Write the following sentences in two ways when possible. Sentence 8 may be written in three ways (§§ 69, 70).

B. 6. This road was quicker than that. 7. Aren't mountains higher than hills? 8. There are not more than five miles between the armies. 9. Ariovistus had conquered the Gauls more by wisdom than by bravery. 10. The Romans were not braver than the Gauls, were they? 11. The scouts saw more Germans than Gauls. 12. A better[1] [fate] had happened to the Aeduans than to the Sequanians. 13. He said that Dumnorix was more powerful than his father.

14. Caesar thought there was sufficient reason why he should punish Dumnorix. 15. At the same time he talked with his brother, and showed what each [man] had said about him. 16. He proved that Dumnorix had harmed him. 17. Diviciacus said that, if Dumnorix was put to death (Dumnorix having been put to death), no one would think that it had not happened with his consent; 18. and that the sympathies (**animus**) of the whole of Gaul would be turned from him (-self). 19. Therefore Caesar showed Dumnorix what he understood himself, and what the state complained of. 20. He also found out afterward what he did and with whom he talked.

EXERCISE XVI

A. Genitive of Quality, § 44.
B. Genitive of Measure, § 45.
C. Ablative of Quality, § 80.
D. Ablative with Certain Deponent Verbs, § 73.

A. 1. Men of great bravery. 2. Rocks of smaller size. 3. A tower of greater height. 4. A man of extraordinary wisdom.

[1] Neuter.

B. 5. Three months' provisions. 6. The depth of the river was (of) two feet. 7. A wall (of) twelve feet in height (in with acc.). 8. A march of three days.

C. 9. Men of friendly or of unfriendly disposition. 10. A man of great popularity. 11. A mountain of great height. 12. The Germans were [men] of incredible bravery. 13. A man of the greatest[1] bravery. 14. A state of great influence. 15. An approach of not more than two hundred feet (§ 70).

D. 16. Our neighbors will use the same plan. 17. Our [men] obtained-possession-of the baggage and camp. 18. Ariovistus could use the Gallic language. 19. The Helvetians had left their homes to obtain control. 20. Procillus enjoyed the friendship of Ariovistus.

21. The same day Caesar was informed by scouts that the Helvetians had encamped at the foot of a mountain, a few miles from his own camp. 22. Labienus was sent with scouts to find out the road to the top of the mountain. 23. At daybreak Caesar went forward by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 24. Seizing the mountain, Labienus waited-for Caesar. 25. Caesar had been persuaded that the mountain was held by Labienus. 26. Therefore he did not attack them, for-fear-that (**nē**) he would be surrounded. 27. Afterwards he found out both that Labienus held the mountain, and that the Helvetians had gone ahead, 28. The next day he changed (turned) his route and hastened to go to the largest town of the Aeduans to get (**capiō**) a supply of grain. 29. The Helvetians thought he was so afraid of them that he did not dare to attack them. 30. And so, changing (turning) their route likewise, they began to follow and harass our men.

Note. — Sentences from Exercises XXV–XXX may be taken at any time after Exercise XVI, if desired.

[1] See vocabulary.

EXERCISE XVII

A. The Gerund, § 267.
B. The Gerundive for the Gerund, §§ 271–273.
C. The Gerundive as a Participle, §§ 269, 270.
D. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, § 278.

A. 1. Time for fighting was not lost. 2. He gave the enemy no opportunity of stopping. 3. Time was not given for fighting. 4. This day had been set for starting (dat., or **ad** with acc.). 5. This is a necessary reason for (**ad**) starting. 6. He obtained his request by urging. 7. On asking, Caesar found the reason. 8. The troops were sent for the purpose of defending the city.

The following sentences may be written first with the gerund and an object, but must be written with the gerundive.

B. 9. He came for the purpose of seeing the city. 10. A day has been set for attacking the town. 11. They considered two years to be enough for (**ad**) completing these preparations (**rēs**). 12. We shall be more ready to undergo (for undergoing) dangers. 13. They led the army across by building a bridge. 14. The legion is ready for carrying on the war. 15. All the states of Gaul have come to attack (for attacking) me. 16. I am doing these things for the purpose of defending myself, not of attacking Gaul. 17. Time will be lost in asking-for my [own men]. 18. The hope of obtaining-possession-of the town vanished (**discēdō**).

C. 19. Ariovistus is not to be borne. 20. The fields of the Germans are not to be compared with ours. 21. He caused a bridge to be built. 22. He gave an army to his lieutenant to lead (to be led) into Gaul.

D. 23. This work is to be done. 24. The soldiers are to be sent into Gaul. 25. These things had to be prepared. 26. Ambassadors will have to be sent. 27. This is not to be feared. 28. All [sorts of] cruelties will have to be

endured. 29. These things must be done. 30. It ought not to be granted.

31. Seeing this, Caesar led up his forces to the nearest hill, and sent the cavalry to meet the enemy's charge. 32. Then, drawing up four legions in line of battle (a line of battle of four legions having been drawn up), he ordered the other two to fortify the place. 33. The Helvetians, [after] bringing their baggage to one place, came up to our first line. 34. Our soldiers, throwing their spears from their higher position, made an attack with their swords so sharply that the Helvetians could not meet [it]. 35. But the Boii and Tulingi, with about fifteen thousand men, attacking our men on (**ab**) the exposed flank, began to surround them and the Helvetians to advance again. 36. Our first and second line[s] advanced to resist the defeated Helvetians, [and] the third to meet the [on-]coming Boii and Tulingi. 37. At length, all the enemy being either driven back or conquered in the double battle, our men obtained possession of the baggage and camp. 38. There they captured a daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons. 39. Caesar sent scouts to find out where the enemy had gone. 40. Three days having passed, he learned that they had arrived in the territory of the Lingones.

EXERCISE XVIII

A. Dative of Agent, § 31.
B. Dative of Possessor, § 30.

A. 1. The same thing must be done by all the Gauls. 2. All [sorts of] cruelties must be endured by the Sequanians. 3. Troops will have to be sent by Caesar. 4. This work had to be done by the soldier. 5. Ambassadors must be sent by our friends.

Sentences like the following must be changed to the passive.

6. We must seize the hill. 7. The legion must fortify all these places. 8. I must send a letter. 9. You will have to take grain from the fields. 10. They had to make peace.

Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive (§ 144, 2).

11. You (sing.) must go. 12. I ought not to wait. 13. You (pl.) will have to fight. 14. You ought to find out about the common welfare (**rēs**). 15. We ought not to fear without reason. 16. They had to come.

Note the same construction in indirect discourse.

17. He says that you must go. 18. He thought that he ought not to wait. 19. He thought he ought not to hesitate. 20. He thought these conditions ought to be faced (§ 144, 1).

B. 21. We have nothing left. 22. Ariovistus had two daughters. 23. What business has Caesar in Gaul? 24. No one could stand (had the power of standing) on the wall. 25. Caesar (dat.) had six legions; he had (**habeō**) four with him.

26. The Helvetians, alarmed by their utter destitution (lack of all things), sent ambassadors to Caesar about surrendering. 27. These (who) threw themselves at his feet, and speaking humbly [and] weeping, sought peace. 28. Caesar nevertheless demanded their arms and many hostages. 29. These being given up, he received the surrender of the rest (received the rest into surrender). 30. About six thousand men however who had sought safety in flight, he held as (in the number of) enemies. 31. All their grain being lost, he ordered the Allobroges to give (make) them a supply. 32. He did this especially on this basis (**ratiō**), that (**quod**) he did not wish the Germans to cross into the territory of the Helvetians. 33. The Aeduans gave lands to the Boii, who were noted for their bravery (§ 84); and afterwards admitted them (whom

they afterwards received) to equal rights and liberties (to an equal condition of right and liberty). 34. A reckoning had been made by the Helvetians, what number of men, women, [and] children had started from their territory. 35. The sum-total (**summa**) was three hundred sixty-eight thousand (§ 45) souls; of whom one hundred ten thousand returned.

EXERCISE XIX

A. Dative of Purpose, § 32. This construction is limited to a few abstract and collective nouns, and is therefore usually singular.
B. Dative with Adjectives, § 33.

A. 1. We shall send cavalry to reënforce (as a help) to Caesar. 2. They chose a place for a conference. 3. It was a great hindrance to the Gauls. 4. They are the rear-guard (a guard for the rear). 5. This will be a matter of concern (this matter will be for a care) to me. 6. The friendship of the Roman people is a protection. 7. These things are of (for) use to us in (**ad**) war. 8. He sent troops as a reënforcement to the Gauls.

B. 9. They are nearest to the Germans. 10. Geneva is nearest the territory of the Helvetians. 11. The Germans will be near the province. 12. They will choose any place suitable for a camp. 13. Orgetorix was friendly to the Helvetians. 14. Their departure seemed like a flight. 15. The Allobroges were unfriendly to the Romans.

16. The Helvetians having been subdued, the Gauls considered that Caesar had done these things in-return-for (**prō**) the wrongs of the Helvetians to the Roman people; but that these things had happened not less to the advantage of Gaul than [to that] of the Roman people. 17. For the Helvetians had left their homes to make war upon the whole of Gaul. 18. They were permitted (it was permitted to them) to set a certain day for a council. 19. A

few days afterward, they told Caesar as follows (these things): that Ariovistus had now obtained control of almost all Gaul; 20. that a little [while] before, more Germans had come. 21. "In a few years we shall all be driven out, and all the Germans will cross the Rhine." 22. "Having conquered the Gauls in battle, Ariovistus is ruling haughtily, and demanding as hostages (§ 2) the children of all the most prominent men (§ 140)." 23. All the other Gauls began to seek some help from Caesar with many tears; the Sequanians alone of all did none of these things that the others did. 24. He asked what the reason of this was. 25. Diviciacus replied that the Sequanians did not dare to complain; that having received Ariovistus within their territory, they must endure all his cruelties.

EXERCISE XX

A. Substantive Clauses of Purpose (Volitive Subjunctive), § 208. These clauses occur especially after **moneō; rogō, ōrō, petō, pōscō, pōstulō; mandō, imperō** (see Exercise VIII); **hortor, cohortor; persuādeō, impellō; committō, permittō, concēdō; contendō, impetrō; statuō, cōnstituō.** Some of these verbs may also take indirect discourse, according to the sense; see Book II, 172–175, **cōnstituērunt optimum esse . . ., et . . . cōnvenīrent.**

B. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing, § 211. Besides taking the constructions with **nē** and **ut**, verbs of fearing may take a direct object in Latin as in English; *e.g. he feared him, he feared to come, he feared that he would come.*

A. 1. We shall persuade our neighbors to go out with us. 2. I ask you not to do this (I ask that you do not do this). 3. He commanded their neighbors to bring them back. 4. He was warned not to follow. 5. I begged [him] with tears not to do this. 6. I shall ask and urge him to do that. 7. I will permit you to place (that you place) the Boii in your territory. 8. We must not permit this place to take its name from a disaster. 9. Dumnorix

obtained his request from the Sequanians, that they allow the Helvetians to go through their territory. 10. I shall send messengers with a letter (a letter and messengers) to the Lingones, [commanding them] not to aid the Helvetians with grain or (**nēve**) anything else (another thing). 11. We are striving that these [things] may not be reported. 12. He decided that he would not go, but that others should be sent. 13. We were urged by our chiefs to come into Gaul.

B. 14. We are afraid that he is coming. 15. I was afraid that he was not coming. 16. They are afraid that our army will be led against them. 17. They were not afraid that they would be surrounded. 18. We are afraid that arms cannot be sent. 19. We do not fear the enemy. 20. We are afraid to advance.

21. So, as Caesar saw, the Germans were gradually becoming accustomed to cross the Rhine, and a great number of them had already come into Gaul. 22. Caesar thought that they would then cross into the province and hasten into Italy. 23. Besides, Ariovistus was so haughty that he was not endurable. 24. Therefore he sent ambassadors to him to ask where there was a place suitable for a conference. 25. Ariovistus replied that he would not come to a conference, and asked what business Caesar had in his Gaul. 26. Caesar demanded that he should not bring [any] more Germans across; that he should return the hostages to the Aeduans; and that he should not harass them unjustly or (**nēve**) make war on them and their allies. 27. Ariovistus replied that he would not return the hostages, nor would he make war on the Aeduans unjustly. 28. At this time ambassadors came from the Treveri to complain that a hundred thousand Suebi had encamped near the banks of the Rhine; [adding] that two well-known brothers were in command of them. 29. Caesar was afraid

that this new force, joined with the veteran (old) troops of Ariovistus, could not easily be resisted. 30. And so, preparing a supply of grain, he hastened toward Ariovistus by forced marches.

EXERCISE XXI

Substantive Clauses of Result, § 213. These clauses are used especially after **faciō, efficiō, perficiō, cōnficiō; fit, accidit, erit; iūs est, mōs est, cōnsuētūdō est.** For the tenses in these clauses, see Exercise VIII, B.

1. It happened that they could not wander widely. 2. It had happened that Cassius had been defeated. 3. He has done this, [namely] cross the river in one night. 4. It will happen in a few years that all the Gauls will be driven out. 5. It is the right of war that victors rule the vanquished (**vincō**). 6. They made them leave their homes. 7. It is the custom of the Roman people not to wish their allies to be harmed. 8. It happened that the Germans were summoned. 9. They made their departure seem like a flight. 10. They made their baggage serve (be) as a protection like a wall.

11. Caesar was afraid that Ariovistus, who had advanced a three days' march from his territory, would seize Vesontio. 12. For in this town there is a great supply of everything that is of use in (**ad**) war. 13. And it is so fortified that it cannot easily be taken by storm. 14. For a river almost surrounds it. 15. A mountain of great height occupies (**contineō**) the space where the river leaves a gap (**intermittō**). 16. A wall surrounding this makes it possible for it to be defended (makes that it can be defended) more easily. 17. To this point Caesar hastened by forced marches, and seizing the town, placed a garrison there. 18. Here the soldiers were told (it was told to the soldiers) that the Germans were men of incredible size and training in arms. 19. And such great fear seized the army that it disturbed

(the minds of) all the soldiers greatly. 20. Some were afraid that the soldiers could not be persuaded to advance. 21. Caesar, however, calling a council of the centurions of all ranks, in a short time reassured them (strengthened the minds) by a speech. 22. Next day, during the fourth watch, he started out. 23. And the march not being interrupted (**intermittō**), he was informed on the seventh day that the enemy were not more than twenty-four miles away.

EXERCISE XXII

Causal Clauses with *quod*, *quoniam*, § 170.

Indicative. 1. The Belgians are bravest because they are farthest away from the province. 2. This road is much easier than the other, because the Rhine is fordable (is crossed by ford) in some places. 3. Caesar, because he remembered these things, did not think he ought to grant [their request]. 4. Dumnorix was friendly to the Helvetians because Orgetorix had tried to help him. 5. The Helvetians were elated because they had driven back the Roman cavalry. 6. Since you show (**referō**) this [sort of] gratitude, I make the following demands (demand these things).

Subjunctive. 7. Caesar sent Procillus, because [as he considered] the Germans had no reason for (of) harming [him]. 8. This seems to have been done because they feared him. 9. They attacked us because [as they thought] we were panic-stricken. 10. Caesar complained that he had been deserted by the Aeduans.

11. Because Caesar had approached nearer, Ariovistus voluntarily promised that he would come to a conference. 12. He demanded, however, that Caesar should bring cavalry; [saying] that he would not come on any other term[s]. 13. Caesar, because he did not trust the cavalry

of the Gauls, and because he had no Roman cavalry, wished to take the tenth legion with him. 14. Therefore he placed the soldiers on the horses of the Gallic cavalry, to have a guard as friendly as possible. 15. On their arrival, Ariovistus demanded that they should talk on horseback (from the horses). 16. Caesar, at the beginning of his speech, showed that Ariovistus had received favors and gifts; 17. that he had gained access to the senate and other rewards; 18. that the Aeduans had held the leadership of Gaul before; 19. that they had contributed their great influence to the alliance; 20. that it was the custom of the Roman people to protect [be a protection to] their allies. 21. He then asked him not to make war on the Aeduans; to return the hostages to them; and at least not to lead [any] more Germans into Gaul.

EXERCISE XXIII

A. *Cum* causal, § 172.

B. *Cum* concessive or adversative, § 199.

C. *Cum* temporal, § 182. Cum temporal, when introducing a statement of part fact, usually has the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, except when a date is given; then it has the indicative. It regularly has the indicative of present or future statement.

A. 1. This is easy, since we surpass all in bravery. 2. Since we cannot persuade the Sequanians, we will send ambassadors to Dumnorix. 3. They will hasten into Italy, since [only] the Rhone separates them from the province.

B. 4. Though the battle lasted (it was fought) for a long time, not one of the enemy (no enemy) turned his back. 5. Although the town has very high cliffs on all sides, in one place an approach is left. 6. Although the Sequanians had summoned the Germans, they could not send them back.

C. Indicative. 7. They fight when they keep away the Germans. 8. When they see (future) our men, they will attack them. 9. When we reach (future perfect) the town, we shall find our friends. 10. This happened then, when Caesar came into Gaul. 11. This had happened within the memory of the last generation, when the Cimbri were beaten by Marius.

Subjunctive. 12. When the magistrates were collecting men, Orgetorix fled. 13. When they understood this, they sent ambassadors. 14. When their arrival had been learned, our troops started. 15. When they could not sustain our attacks [any] longer, they began to retreat. 16. When this was reported to Caesar, he started from the city. 17. When they had met him, they threw themselves at (**ad**) his feet.

18. After Caesar had made these demands (these things having been demanded by Caesar), Ariovistus replied briefly (a few things) to (**ad**) them; 19. [saying] that the Gauls had attacked him, and that he had conquered them in battle. 20. He urged Caesar to go away and withdraw his army from these regions. 21. "When you go away, I will finish whatever wars you wish to be waged." 22. Caesar said that the senate had pardoned the Gauls [who had been] conquered, and had wished Gaul to be free and to enjoy peace. 23. While (when) he was saying this, the German cavalry began to approach nearer the mound, and to throw spears at (in) our men. 24. Caesar commanded his men not to throw back any spear at all. 25. For although he saw that a battle would be without danger to his picked (chosen) legion, he did not think it ought to be begun. 26. Two days afterward Ariovistus asked Caesar to appoint a day for a conference again, or to send a lieutenant of his. 27. Caesar thought the lieutenant would be exposed to especially fierce men. 28. Therefore he sent

a Roman from the province, and a certain Gaul, who used the Gallic language.

EXERCISE XXIV

Complex Sentences in Indirect Discourse, §§ 228, 234. If the introductory verb is a past tense, or if the perfect infinitive is used in the main clause of indirect discourse, a dependent subjunctive is historical.

1. The bridge which was near Geneva has been destroyed. 2. It was reported that the bridge which was near Geneva had been destroyed. 3. The legion which I have with me will come. 4. He said that the legion which he had with him would come. 5. He says that he will place Labienus in command of the fortification which he has made. 6. They reported that the Allobroges, who had villages across the Rhone, had fled to Caesar. 7. They say that this was done to frighten us. 8. Is it true that the things which are done in camp are reported to the enemy? 9. He said that he was going to advance by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 10. Did not Caesar say that the Helvetians were going to await his arrival in the place where (in which) they were then?

11. For several days in succession Ariovistus kept his army in camp, though Caesar gave him the opportunity of fighting. 12. Finally Caesar found out from the captives that it was the custom among the Germans for the matrons to use (that the matrons should use) lots to find out whether it was advantageous to begin battle. 13. These had said that the Germans must not fight at that time. 14. When Caesar found this out, drawing up [his troops in] a line of battle, he approached the enemy's camp. 15. Then the women, with [out-]spread hands, begged the soldiers not to give them up to the Romans. 16. Our men made the

attack so sharply on (ā) the right wing, that there was not space (space was not given) for (of) throwing their spears. 17. When Crassus noticed that the Romans were hard pressed, he sent the third line to reënforce (as a reënforcement to) our men. 18. Turning their backs, the enemy fled toward the Rhine. 19. There a very few, relying on their strength (§ 72), tried to cross; Ariovistus, finding a boat, escaped in it. 20. Caesar found that the two men whom he had sent to Ariovistus were unharmed. 21. Thus Caesar finished two very great wars in one summer.

EXERCISE XXV

Irregular Place Constructions, §§ 92, 93, 95, 97.

1. Frequent letters were sent to Rome. 2. There is beginning to be plenty of grain at home. 3. Everywhere (in all places) the tribunes were encouraging the soldiers. 4. At Geneva there was a small force. 5. Each one hurried home. 6. They returned to their homes. 7. The battle was begun in an unfavorable place. 8. The Belgians had driven out the Gauls from home. 9. There were few defenders left at Noviodunum. 10. He kept himself in camp (and) [among] the marshes.

EXERCISE XXVI

Special Translations of the Ablative, §§ 66, 67, 79, 84, 85, 86, 98.

1. On account of his popularity he is very powerful. 2. According to their custom, they met the attack with swords. 3. There was another kind of fight[-ing] on the left wing. 4. They sought peace of the king. 5. For this reason he dropped the shield from his arm. 6. He asked (of) his sister by what way they had come. 7. Under the rule (§ 78) of the Roman people we can in no way (manner)

seize the royal power. 8. It seemed more advantageous to cover (fill) the hill with men on each side. 9. He learned of the scouts that the enemy had arrived. 10. He learned of their arrival. 11. A tower was built at a great distance. 12. The wall was stripped of defenders. 13. They were noted for their bravery. 14. I will not make war on them unjustly. 15. In my opinion, this ought not to be done. 16. They went out of camp silently.

EXERCISE XXVII

Free Translations of Participles, § 264.

Express the subordinate clauses of the following sentences by participial phrases.

1. When the summer began, the Remi found out everything. 2. When the command had been conferred upon the king, he addressed the people courteously. 3. They wounded many who were approaching the gates. 4. Though few defended the town, he could not take it by storm. 5. After he had thrown up a causeway, the Gauls, who were greatly alarmed, sought to save themselves (to be saved). 6. Seeing the sudden danger, he moved his camp. 7. When they were retreating, we did not dare to follow them closely. 8. Since Caesar was away, his lieutenants carried out his orders. 9. When they were scattered, Ariovistus overwhelmed them. 10. Although he had refused Caesar's friendship, Ariovistus did not wish to fight.

Express the following sentences with a verb and a participle.

11. He led out his troops and drew them up. 12. The elders went out of the town and gave themselves up without delay. 13. They surrounded and killed the others. 14. The rest tried to cross and were driven back. 15. The soldier had been surrounded, and his brother tried to bring help to him.

EXERCISE XXVIII

Translations of *May*, *Must*, *Ought*.

Models. — You may go, **tibi īre licet.**
You ought to go, **tē īre oportet.**
You ought to have gone, **tē īre oportuit.**
You must go, you ought to go, **tibi eundum est** (Ex. VIII, A).

1. Must we seek places remote from the Germans? 2. The day on which grain is due (we ought to give grain to) the soldiers is at hand. 3. May we give the signal to begin (of beginning) battle? 4. We ought not to have withdrawn from the battle. 5. Timbers ought to be placed on various parts of the wall. 6. We must lie hidden. 7. You must go to the seacoast states. 8. Didn't they ask you whether they might go? 9. They fought[1] as (so) fiercely as brave men ought to have fought.[1] 10. The soldiers know what ought to be done.

EXERCISE XXIX

Special Forms and Uses of Adjectives, §§ 111–117.

1. Is [it possible that] this labor is too hard? 2. The bodies of the Germans are quite large. 3. The middle of the line was rather slow. 4. We were all dragged an equal distance. 5. Was not their running very swift? 6. They all fled headlong. 7. One was wounded, the other killed. 8. Some will be wounded, others killed. 9. He was a young [man] of the greatest bravery. 10. Some lay hidden in the thick woods; others were in the open places beside the river. 11. At the-end-of[2] the wall he placed a guard. 12. The-bottom-of[3] the hill was open. 13. They helped one another. 14. They fled, some in one direction, others

[1] Express by the impersonal passive.

[2] Super. of **exterus.** [3] Super. of **inferus.**

in another. 15. The eighth legion was nearer the enemy than the ninth. 16. They placed the tower at the least possible distance.

17. The fields of the Sequanians were the best of all Gaul. 18. Some things are very easy, others very difficult. 19. Very many of the enemy were [actually] in our camp. 20. They came very quickly. 21. The attack was sustained with the greatest difficulty. 22. Liscus spoke very freely. 23. Did the Germans fight more sharply than the Helvetians? 24. Didn't the men do this very carefully? 25. This seemed to us the least suitable place for a camp. 26. Rather frequent letters were sent. 27. When the head (first) of the baggage[-train] is seen, we ought not to neglect this plan. 28. During the third hour they attacked us three times. 29. We wintered in three (triple) camps. 30. They could not see the top of the hill. 31. He was the first to come. 32. First he conquered them, then he demanded hostages. 33. At first they stayed at home. 34. We surrender ourselves and all our [property] to you. 35. They said that they surrendered themselves and all their [property] to him. 36. They were unwilling to come.

EXERCISE XXX

Various Ways of expressing Purpose, §§ 157, 162, 267, 272, 275.
Models. — Men were sent to burn the city.

Hominēs missī sunt —

ut urbem incenderent;
quī urbem incenderent;
ad urbem incendendam;
urbem incendendī causā;
urbis incendendae causā;
urbem incēnsum.

Write the following sentences in as many ways as possible.

1. He will be sent to lead the army into Gaul. 2. They crossed to attack the town. 3. We are going to place

rocks on the wall to keep the enemy away. 4. They fought bravely to drive back the enemy. 5. We are putting the women and children among the marshes to save them.

EXERCISE XXXI

Clauses with *postquam*, *posteā quam*, *ubi*, *ut*, § 176. Note the tense that is regularly used.

1. After Caesar came into Gaul, the Aeduans experienced better fortune. 2. When they saw the enemy clearly, they made an attack. 3. As Caesar had foreseen, they tried to take the town by storm. 4. After he had learned [of] the decree of the senate, he decided that he must fight. 5. As was afterward found out from the captives, they had not neglected military affairs. 6. When Caesar understood this, he attacked Ariovistus.

EXERCISE XXXII

Miscellaneous Sentences.

1. Will any one think that this has happened by chance? 2. No one knows where to go. 3. I know that you came to see him. 4. He was afraid that the attack could not be sustained. 5. We asked the man where the others were, and where they were going. 6. He asked us not to follow them. 7. They ordered us to go. 8. They commanded us to go. 9. They were so brave that no one turned his back. 10. They attacked quickly so that no one might escape (§ 139). 11. It happened that no one was sent. 12. He begged that no one might be sent. 13. The scouts, being sent ahead, saw the enemy. 14. The scouts being sent ahead, the army advanced. 15. He went to Rome to see his daughters. (Write in as many ways as possible). 16. They were going-to-fortify the hill. 17. They were-going to-fortify the hill. 18. The Helvetians used boats to

cross the river. 19. They decided to return home, and that the others should remain. 20. I cannot be persuaded not to go. 21. I do not doubt [but] that this will be done (§ 214). 22. Didn't they do what they were ordered? 23. This happened in the consulship of Caesar. 24. They asked their allies not to surrender. 25. They thought that the Germans, with whom they fought, were much braver than the Gauls.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Retranslation.

The following chapters of Book II may now be translated back from English into Latin, if the accompanying words are given.

Chapter 2, **citerior, cōnstanter, quīndecim.**
9, **equester, neuter, prōtinus, castellum, interscindō.**
12, **terror, vinea.**
13, **tendō, significō.**
15, **honōs, vīnum, lūxuria, relanguēscō, increpitō, incūsō, patrius.**
16, **aetās, inūtilis.**
26, **iūxtā, urgeō, cōnspicor, cālō.**
32, **ariēs, dēditicus, acervus, adaequō, cēlō, patefaciō.**
34, **redigō.**
35, **quīndecim, supplicātiō, dēcernō.**

EXERCISE XXXIV

The following sentences contain the words from Books III and IV which should be learned while these books or their equivalents are being read.

1. The second winter after Caesar came into Gaul, he sent a lieutenant into winter quarters in a valley among the Alps. 2. The natives tried in vain to overwhelm the legion which he had with him, but compelled him to return into

Gaul. 3. The following summer a war arose among the Veneti, who live near the sea and know all the harbors and islands and even sail to Britain. 4. Neither the high (great) tides, which come (happen) twice a day (twice in the space of twenty-four hours), nor the storms nor the winds nor the waves harm their ships, which are built of oak and are driven by sails and oars, and are held at anchor by chains (**catēna, ae**) instead-of (**prō**) ropes. 5. By building dikes the Romans approached (partic.) their towns and captured them. 6. The fleet of the Veneti was defeated in a battle from which few of their ships escaped.

7. To reach two tribes of Belgians, Caesar, calling out the allies, started to cut down all the forests where they lived. 8. But storms of such severity (of this manner) followed that he was compelled to lead away the army into winter quarters.

9. The next year, Caesar landed (went out from ships) on the coast of Britain where there was a smooth shore. 10. The soldiers had to fight in deep water before they could (subjunctive) safely stand on dry [land]. 11. Caesar did not obtain much (great) booty there.

SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR

EDITED FOR

SIGHT TRANSLATION IN SECONDARY SCHOOLS

BY

HARRY F. TOWLE
CURTIS HIGH SCHOOL

AND

PAUL R. JENKS
FLUSHING HIGH SCHOOL
NEW YORK CITY

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

1 C 5

SUGGESTIONS FOR READING LATIN

Read through one sentence at a time, no faster than to be able to note what forms the words are or *may be.* Some forms may be located definitely at once; others, being one of two or more possible forms, will depend upon their connection with other words to determine their form; it may be disastrous to assume too quickly that a word is in one case, when it *may be* in another.

After the first reading it is usually a good thing to look through the sentence and see what words can be grouped together, e.g., phrases, clauses, nouns with dependent genitive, ablatives absolute, etc. In almost every sentence however long, if the words that go together in groups are eliminated, there will remain what may be called the frame work or skeleton of the sentence, which is not long, or difficult to understand. Sometimes one group will be found inside of another, so that words which did not at first appear to belong together will be clearly seen to form a group when two or three intervening words are eliminated.

After these groups have been observed, it is usually possible to determine the case of doubtful words *by seeing with what they are used.* Thus if a word which may be dative or ablative appears to be used with **persuādeō,** we judge that it is dative; if with **ūtor** or with a participle, ablative. If two or more words, each of which may be one of two or more forms, appear to belong to the same group, we may find from this fact what case they all are; e.g., **mūnītiōnēs integrae, ūsūs mīlitāris, linguae et īnstitūta,** etc.; and even more easily in groups where one word

cán be certainly known at once, e.g., **mente et animō, difficilī trānsitū rīpīsque praeruptīs,** etc.

After the framework or skeleton of the sentence has been found by eliminating these groups, and doubtful cases determined as far as possible, it may be well to translate first the framework and then the groups, and finally the whole sentence; but it is better to begin reading the whole sentence again in the Latin, thinking now of the *meaning* as well as of the constructions. Two or more readings, perhaps omitting some of the different groups, may be required before the sentence is fully understood; but if the structure of the sentence is once clear, it is usually only a question of repetition until the meaning also is grasped.

To illustrate these directions, let us take the following passages:

> **Quod cum Pompēius et reī pūblicae et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dīlēctū tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō āmīserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit quid populī Rōmānī dīsciplīna atque opēs possent.** — B. G., VI. 1, 4.

As we read this sentence we should proceed somewhat as follows: **Quod** (either neut. sing., nom. or acc., of the relative, or subord. conjunction) **cum** (either prep. with abl., or conjunctive adv.) **Pompēius** (nom. sing.) **et** (either *both* or *and*) **reī** (either gen. sing. or dat. sing.) **pūblicae** (gen. sing., dat. sing., or nom. plu.) **et** (*and*) **amīcitiae** (gen. sing., dat. sing., or nom. plu.) **tribuisset** (third sing. act. pluperf. subj.), **celeriter** (adv.) **cōnfectō** (masc. or neut. sing., dat. or abl. of the perf. part. of **cōnficiō**) **per** (prep. with acc.) **suōs** (masc. plu. acc.) **dīlēctū** (abl. sing.) **tribus** (dat. or abl. plu., any gender) **ante** (either adv., or prep. with acc.) **exāctam** (fem. sing. acc.)

hiemem (acc. sing.) **et** (either *both* or *and*) **cōnstitūtīs** (dat. or abl. plu., any gender, of the perf. part. of **cōnstituō**) **et** (*and*) **adductīs** (dat. or abl. plu., any gender, of the perf. part. of **addūcō**) **duplicātō** (dat. or abl. sing., masc. or neut.) **–que** (connecting **duplicātō** with what went before) **eārum** (fem. plu. gen.) **cohortium** (gen. plu.) **numerō** (dat. or abl. sing.) **quās** (fem. plu. acc. of the relative) **cum** (either prep. with abl. or conjunctive adv.) **Q. Titūriō** (dat. or abl.) **āmīserat** (third sing. act. pluperf. indic.), **et** (either *both* or *and*) **celeritāte** (abl. sing.) **et** (*and*) **cōpiīs** (dat. or abl. plu.) **docuit** (third sing. act. perf. indic.) **quid** (nom. or acc. neut. sing. of the interrogative) **populī** (gen. sing. or nom. plu.) **Rōmānī** (gen. sing. masc. or neut., or nom. plu. masc.) **dīsciplīna** (nom. sing.) **atque** (*and*) **opēs** (nom. or acc. plu.) **possent** (third plu. imperf. subjunct.).

Even while we are reading and saying these things more or less definitely to ourselves, we notice things that tell us that certain of the above possibilities are not actually the case in this particular sentence. **Cum** is not followed by an ablative and is therefore the conjunctive adverb. **Et** standing between a nominative and another case cannot connect them and must mean *both*. Since **pūblicae** evidently goes with **reī, reī pūblicae** and **amīcitiae** must all be dative. The following groups are noticed at once: **per suōs**; **ante exāctam hiemem**; **cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus**; **eārum cohortium**; **cum Q. Titūriō**; **populī Rōmānī**; **dīsciplīna atque opēs**; and perhaps one or two others.

Going back now to the beginning, we note some other things. Eliminating the group **et reī pūblicae et amīcitiae,** we see that **cum Pompēius tribuisset** is a clause. Eliminating the group **per suōs**, we see that **cōnfectō dīlēctū** is another group, evidently ablative absolute. Eliminating **ante exāctam hiemem,** we see that **tribus et cōnstitūtīs et**

adductīs legiōnibus is another group, evidently ablative absolute, and that the first **et** means *both*. Eliminating **eārum cohortium**, we have the group **duplicātō numerō;** and **–que,** connecting this with the preceding, shows that this is an ablative absolute, even if we did not suspect that **duplicātō** was a participle. **Quās . . . āmīserat** is a clause modifying **cohortium. Celeritāte et cōpiīs** is another group. **Quid . . . possent** is an indirect question, **quid** being interrogative and introducing a subjunctive in a subordinate clause.

Again, eliminating these groups, we have left the following as the framework or skeleton of the sentence: **Quod cum Pompēius . . . tribuisset, . . . et (celeritāte et cōpiīs) docuit quid . . . possent.** We see now, if we have not seen before, that **et** before **celeritāte** means *both*. **Quod** must be the pronoun, for there is no verb for it to introduce; it is accusative, for **tribuisset** has a subject.

Now read the whole sentence through again, thinking of the meaning as well as of the construction of the words. Some may be unfamiliar, e.g., **tribuō**, *grant* (a dative with **tribuō** is translated *for the sake of*); **dīlēctus**, *levy*; **exāctam** is the participle of **ex-igō (ex, agō)**, *drive out*, here meaning *finish*; **duplicō**, *double*, might be imagined from its English loan word *duplicate*; **disciplīna**, *training*; **opēs**, *resources*. Remember that some words, e.g., **cum** and **reī pūblicae**, may have any one of two or more meanings, and that each must be considered in translating. If the meaning of the sentence is not grasped on the second reading, try it again omitting some of the minor groups mentioned above; perhaps translate just the framework of the sentence. If the meaning of each word is known (as with the help given above it ought to be), it is only a question of reading repeatedly, before the sentence will be completely understood.

The same method applied to other sentences may be briefly indicated as follows:

Ipse, (cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent,) ad bellum Ambiorigīs profectus per Arduennam silvam, {(quae est tōtīus Galliae māxima) atque (ab rīpīs Rhēnī fīnibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet) (mīlibusque amplius quīngentīs in longitūdinem patet)}, L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, (sī quid celeritāte itineris atque opportūnitāte temporis prōficere possit.) B. G., VI. 29, 4. This leaves for the frame work of the sentence **ipse, . . . profectus, . . . Basilum . . . praemittit.**

(Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent,) ex captīvīs Caesar cōgnōvit [(Vercingetorīgem cōnsūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum) atque {ipsum cum equitātū expedītīsque (quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent,) īnsidiandī causā eō profectum} {quō (nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum venturōs) arbitrārētur.}] B. G., VII. 18, 1.

VOCABULARY

The following vocabulary contains all the words in the first two books of Caesar's Gallic War which are given in Professor Lodge's list for High School Latin. ("The Vocabulary of High School Latin," Gonzalez Lodge. Published by Teachers College, Columbia University, New York.) The pupil is supposed to have learned this list, and if so, he will have no difficulty so far as vocabulary is concerned in reading at sight the following selections from Caesar.

This list should be used to test the pupil's knowledge, and if any of these words have passed from his memory, it affords opportunity for drill upon them until the entire vocabulary is thoroughly fixed in mind.

A numeral after a word indicates the number of distinct meanings that a pupil should know. He should also know the form and meaning of the adverb corresponding to each adjective, and such other forms and idioms as are especially noted.

1 **ā, ab, abs** (3)
2 **abdō**
3 **absum** and part.
4 **accēdō**
5 **accidō** (2)
6 **accipiō**
7 **accommodō**
8 **accūsō**
9 **ācer** and adv.
10 **aciēs**
11 **ad** (2)
12 **adaequō**
13 **addūcō**
14 **adeō**
15 **adhibeō**
16 **adigō**
17 **aditus**
18 **adiuvō**
19 **administrō**
20 **admīror**
21 **adorior**
22 **adulēscēns**
23 **adventus**
24 **advertō**
25 **aedificium**
26 **aeger** and adv.
27 **aequus**
28 **aestās**
29 **afferō**
30 **ager**
31 **agger**
32 **aggredior**
33 **āgmen**
  novissimum āgmen
  extrēmum āgmen
  prīmum āgmen
  cōnfertum āgmen
34 **agō** (3)
35 **aliēnus** (2)
36 **aliquī, aliquis** (2)
37 **alius** (3)
  alius āc
  aliās (2)
  aliter
  aliter āc

38 **alter** (3)
39 **altitūdō** (2)
40 **altus** (2)
41 **amīcitia**
42 **amīcus** (2)
43 **āmittō**
44 **amplus** and adv. and compar.
45 **an**
46 **anceps**
47 **angustiae** (2)
48 **angustus** and adv.
49 **animadvertō** (2)
50 **animus** (3)
51 **annus**
52 **ante**
53 **aperiō**
54 **appellō, āre**
55 **appropinquō**
56 **apud**
57 **arbor**
58 **arcessō**
59 **arma**
60 **armō**
61 **āscendō**
62 **at** (2)
63 **atque, āc** (2)
64 **attingō**
65 **auctōritās**
66 **audāx** and adv.
67 **audeō**
68 **audiō**
69 **augeō**
70 **aut** (2)
71 **autem**
72 **auxilium**
73 **avertō**
74 **barbarus**
75 **bellō**
76 **bellum**
77 **beneficium**
78 **biduum**
79 **bonus,** compar., super., and adverbs
80 **bracchium**
81 **brevis** and adv.
82 **cadō**
83 **caedō** (2)
84 **calamitās**
85 **capiō**
86 **captīvus**
87 **caput**
88 **carrus**
89 **castellum**
90 **castra**
91 **cāsus**
92 **catēna**
93 **causa** and abl.
94 **caveō**
95 **cēdō**
96 **celer** and adv.
97 **celeritās**
98 **cēlō**
99 **centum**
100 **centuriō**
101 **certus**
certiōrem faciō
102 **cingō**
103 **circiter**
104 **circuitus**
105 **circum**
106 **circumdō**
107 **circumsistō**
108 **circumveniō**
109 **citerior** and super.
110 **cīvitās** (2)
111 **clāmor**
112 **cliēns**
113 **coepī**
114 **cōgnōscō**
115 **cōgō** (2)
116 **cohors**
117 **cohortor**
118 **collis**
119 **collocō**
120 **colloquium**
121 **colloquor**
122 **commeātus**
123 **committō** (4)
124 **commodus** and adv.
125 **commoveō**
126 **commūnis**
127 **commūtātiō**
128 **comparō**
129 **compellō**
130 **comperiō**
131 **complector**
132 **compleō**
133 **complūrēs**
134 **comportō**
135 **concēdō**
136 **concīdō**
137 **conciliō**
138 **concilium**
139 **conclāmō**
140 **concurrō**
141 **concursus**
142 **condiciō**
143 **condūcō**
144 **cōnferō**
145 **cōnfertus**
146 **cōnficiō** (2)
147 **cōnfīdō** (2)
148 **cōnfīrmō** (2)
149 **congredior**
150 **cōniciō**
151 **coniungō**
152 **coniūrō**
153 **cōnor**
154 **cōnsanguineus**
155 **cōnsentiō**
156 **cōnsequor** (2)
157 **cōnsīdō** (2)

158 **cōnsilium**
159 **cōnsistō**
160 **cōnspectus**
161 **cōnspiciō**
162 **cōnspicor**
163 **cōnstanter**
164 **cōnstituō** (2)
165 **cōnsuēscō**
166 **cōnsuētūdō**
167 **cōnsul**
168 **cōnsulō**
cōnsultum
169 **cōnsūmō**
170 **contendō** (2)
171 **contineō** (2)
172 **continuus**
173 **contrā**
174 **contrahō**
175 **contrārius**
176 **contumēlia**
177 **conveniō** (2)
178 **conventus** (2)
179 **convertō**
180 **convocō**
181 **cōpia** (2)
182 **cōram**
183 **cornū** (2)
184 **corpus**
185 **cotīdiānus**
186 **cotīdiē**
187 **crēber**
188 **creō**
189 **cruciātus**
190 **cum**, prep.
191 **cum**, conj. (3)
cum . . . tum
192 **cupidus** and adv.
193 **cupiō**
194 **cūr**
195 **cūrō** (2)
196 **cursus** (2)

197 **dē** (2)
198 **dēbeō**
199 **dēcēdō**
200 **decem**
201 **dēcertō**
202 **decimus**
203 **dēcipiō**
204 **dēcurrō**
205 **dēditiō**
206 **dēdō**
207 **dēdūco**
208 **dēfendō** (2)
209 **dēferō**
210 **dēfessus**
211 **dēficiō** (2)
212 **dēiciō** (2)
213 **deinde**
214 **dēligō**
215 **dēmōnstrō**
216 **dēmum**
217 **dēnsus**
218 **dēpōnō**
219 **dēserō**
220 **dēsistō**
221 **dēspiciō**
222 **dēsum**
223 **dēterior**
224 **dēterreō**
225 **dētrahō**
226 **dētrīmentum**
227 **dēveniō**
228 **dexter**
229 **dīcō** (2)
dictum
230 **diēs**
multus diēs
231 **differō**
232 **difficultās**
233 **dīligēns** and adv.
234 **dīmicō**
235 **dīmittō** (2)

236 **discēdō**
237 **discēssus**
238 **dīspergō**
239 **dispōnō**
240 **diū**
quam diū
241 **dīvidō**
242 **dō** (2 in comp.)
243 **doceō**
244 **doleō**
245 **domus**
246 **dubitō** (2)
247 **ducentī**
248 **dūcō** (2)
249 **dum** (2)
nōndum
250 **duo**
251 **duodecim**
252 **duplex**
253 **dūrus**
254 **dux**
255 **ēdō** and perf. part.
256 **ēdūcō**
257 **efficiō** (3)
258 **ego**
259 **ēgredior**
260 **ēgregius** and adv.
261 **emō**
262 **enim**
263 **ēnūntiō**
264 **eō**
265 **eques** (2)
266 **equester**
267 **equitātus**
268 **equus**
269 **ēruptiō**
270 **et** (2)
271 **etiam** (2)
272 **etsī**
273 **ēventus**
274 **ex**

275 **exanimō**
276 **excēdō**
277 **excipiō**
278 **exeō**
279 **exercitātiō**
280 **exercitus**
281 **existimō**
282 **expedītus** (2)
283 **expellō**
284 **experior**
285 **explōrātor**
286 **explōrō**
287 **expūgnō**
288 **exspectō**
289 **exstruō**
290 **exterus,** compar. and super.
291 **facilis** and adv.
292 **faciō** (2)
  factum
293 **facultās** (2)
294 **familiāris** (2)
  rēs familiāris
295 **faveō**
296 **ferē**
297 **ferō** (2)
298 **ferus**
299 **fidēs** (4)
300 **fīlia**
301 **fīlius**
302 **fingō**
303 **fīnis** (2)
304 **fīnitimus** (2)
305 **fīō** (3)
306 **firmus** and irreg. adv.
307 **flāgitō**
308 **fleō**
309 **flōrēns**
310 **flūmen**
311 **fluō**
312 **fortis** and adv.
313 **fortūna** (2)
314 **fossa**
315 **frāter**
316 **frāternus**
317 **fremitus**
318 **frōns**
319 **frūmentārius**
  rēs frūmentāria
320 **frūmentum**
321 **fuga**
322 **fugiō**
323 **genus**
324 **gerō** (2)
325 **gladius**
326 **grātia**
  grātiās agō
327 **gravis** and adv.
328 **gravō**
329 **habeō** (2)
330 **hībernus**
  hīberna
331 **hīc** and adverbs
  hīc, hinc, hūc
332 **hiemō**
333 **homō**
334 **hōra**
335 **hortor**
336 **hospes**
337 **hospitium**
338 **hostis**
339 **iaciō**
340 **iam** (3)
341 **ibi**
342 **īdem**
  eōdem
343 **idōneus**
344 **īgnis**
345 **īgnōscō**
346 **ille** and adverbs
  illīc, illō
347 **impedīmentum** (2)
348 **impediō** and perf. part.
349 **impellō**
350 **imperium**
351 **imperō** (2)
352 **impetrō** (2)
353 **impetus**
354 **implōrō**
355 **impōnō**
356 **imprōvīsus**
  (**dē**) **imprōvīsō**
357 **in** (2)
358 **incendō**
359 **incidō**
360 **incipiō**
361 **incitō**
362 **incolō**
363 **incolumis**
364 **incrēdibilis**
365 **inde** (2)
366 **indūcō**
367 **indulgeō**
368 **ineō**
  initā aestāte
369 **inermis**
370 **īnferō** (2)
371 **īnferus,** compar. and super.
372 **iniciō**
373 **inimīcus**
374 **inīquus**
375 **initium**
376 **iniūria** (3)
377 **inopia**
378 **īnsequor**
379 **īnsidiae**
380 **īnsīgnis**
381 **īnsistō**
382 **īnstituō**
383 **īnstō**
384 **īnstruō**

385 intellegō
386 inter (2)
387 intercēdō
388 interclūdō
389 interdum
390 intereā
391 interficiō
392 interim
393 intermittō (2)
394 interpōnō
395 intervāllum
396 intrā
397 invītō
398 invītus
399 ipse
400 is (2) and adv. **eō**
401 ita
402 itaque
403 item
404 iter (2)
405 iterum
406 iubeō
407 iūdicō
408 iugum
409 iungō
410 iūrō
411 iūs
    iūs iūrandum
412 iūstitia
413 iuvō
414 labor
415 labōrō
416 lacessō
417 lacrima
418 lacus
419 lapis
420 largus and irreg. adv.
421 lateō
422 lātitūdō
423 lātus and adv.
424 latus
425 lēgātiō
426 lēgātus (2)
427 legiō
428 legiōnārius
429 levis
430 līber, adv. and plu.
431 līberālis and adv.
432 lībertās
433 licet
434 lingua
435 littera (2)
436 locus
437 longinquus
438 longus and adv.
439 loquor
440 lūx
441 magistrātus (2)
442 māgnitūdō
443 māgnus, compar., super., and adverbs
    māior (2)
    māgnopere
444 maleficium
445 mandō (2)
446 maneō
447 manus
448 maritimus
449 māter
450 mātūrō
451 mātūrus and adv.
452 medius
453 memoria
454 mēnsis
455 mercātor
456 mereō
457 mīles
458 mīlitāris
459 mīlle
460 minuō
461 mīrus
462 mittō (2 in comp.)
463 modus
    quem ad modum (2)
    modo
464 moneō
465 mōns
466 mora
467 moror
468 mors
469 mōs
470 moveō
471 mulier
472 multitūdō
473 multus, compar. and super.
474 mūniō
475 mūnītiō
476 mūnus
477 mūrus
478 nam
479 namque
480 nancīscor
481 nāscor
482 nātiō
483 nātūra
484 nāvis
485 nē (3)
    nē . . . quidem
486 necessārius (2)
487 necō
488 neglegō
489 negotium (2)
490 nēmō
491 neque
492 neuter
493 nihil
    nihilō minus
494 nisi
495 nītor
496 nōbilis (2)
497 nōbilitās

498 **nōlō**
499 **nōmen**
500 **nōminātim**
501 **nōn**
502 **nōnāgintā**
503 **nōngentī**
504 **nōnus**
505 **noster**
506 **novem**
507 **novus**
  novae rēs
  novum imperium
508 **nox** and adv.
  multa nox
509 **nūdō**
510 **nūllus**
511 **nūmerus**
512 **nūntiō**
513 **nūntius** (2)
514 **nūtus**
515 **ob**
516 **obiciō**
517 **obses**
518 **obtineō**
519 **occāsus**
520 **occīdō**
521 **occulō**
  in occultō
522 **occupō**
523 **occurrō**
524 **oceanus**
525 **octāvus**
526 **octō**
527 **octōgintā**
528 **officium**
529 **omnīnō**
530 **omnis**
531 **onus**
532 **opera**
533 **opīniō** (2)
534 **oportet**
535 **oppidum**
536 **opportūnus**
537 **opprimō**
538 **oppūgnātiō**
539 **oppūgnō**
540 **opus** (2)
541 **ōrātiō**
542 **ōrdō** (2)
543 **orior**
544 **ōrō**
545 **ostendō**
546 **pācō**
547 **paene**
548 **pāgus**
549 **palūs**
550 **pandō**
551 **pār**
  pār atque
552 **parō** and perf. part.
553 **pars** (3) and adv.
554 **parvus,** compar., and super., and adverbs
555 **passus**
556 **pateō** (2)
557 **pater**
558 **patior** (2)
559 **paucī**
560 **paulātim**
561 **paulisper**
562 **paulus**
563 **pāx**
564 **pedes**
565 **pedester**
566 **pellis**
567 **pellō** (2)
568 **pendō**
569 **per**
570 **perdūcō**
571 **perferō** (2)
572 **perficiō**
573 **perīculum**
574 **perītus**
575 **permittō** (2)
576 **permoveō**
577 **perpetuus**
578 **perspiciō**
579 **persuādeō**
580 **perterreō**
581 **pertineō** (2)
582 **perturbō**
583 **perveniō**
584 **pēs**
585 **petō**
586 **phalanx**
587 **pīlum**
588 **plērusque** and adv.
589 **polliceor**
590 **pondus**
591 **pōnō**
592 **pōns**
593 **populor**
594 **populus**
595 **porta**
596 **portō**
597 **pōscō**
598 **possum** and part.
599 **post** (3)
600 **posteā**
  posteā quam
601 **posterus,** compar. and super.
602 **postquam**
603 **postrīdiē**
604 **pōstulō**
605 **potestās**
606 **potior**
607 **praebeō**
608 **praeceps**
609 **praedor**
610 **praeferō**
611 **praeficiō** and pf. part.
612 **praemittō**

613 **praemium**
614 **praescrībō**
615 **praesertim**
616 **praesidium**
617 **praestō** (2)
618 **praesum** and part.
619 **praeter**
620 **praetereā**
621 **premō**
622 **pretium**
623 **prex**
624 **prīdiē**
625 **prīnceps**
626 **prior,** super. and adverbs
627 **prīstinus**
628 **priusquam**
629 **prīvātus** and adv.
630 **prō** (4)
631 **probō** (2)
632 **prōcēdō**
633 **prōcumbō**
634 **prōdeō**
635 **prōdūcō**
636 **proelium**
637 **profectiō**
638 **proficīscor**
639 **profugiō**
640 **prōgredior**
641 **prohibeō** (2)
642 **prōiciō**
643 **prope,** compar., and super., and advbs.
644 **properō**
645 **propinquus**
646 **prōpōnō**
647 **propter**
648 **propterea**
propterea quod
649 **prōsequor**
650 **prōvideō**
651 **prōvincia**
652 **pūblicus** and adv.
rēs pūblica (2)
653 **puer**
654 **pūgna**
655 **pūgnō**
656 **putō**
657 **quadrāgintā**
658 **quadringentī**
659 **quaerō**
660 **quaestor**
661 **quam** (2)
662 **quantus** (2)
663 **quārtus**
664 **quattuor**
665 **quattuordecim**
666 **–que**
667 **queror** (2)
668 **quī** (3) and adverbs **quō, quā**
669 **quīcumque**
670 **quīdam**
671 **quidem**
672 **quīn**
673 **quīndecim**
674 **quīngentī**
675 **quīnī**
676 **quīnquāgintā**
677 **quīnque**
678 **quīntus**
679 **quis** (2)
680 **quisquam**
681 **quisque**
682 **quīvīs**
683 **quod** (3)
quod sī
684 **quōminus**
685 **quoniam**
686 **quoque**
687 **rādīx**
688 **rātiō** (5)
689 **ratis**
690 **recēns**
691 **recipiō**
sē recipere (2)
692 **recūsō**
693 **reddō** (2)
694 **redeō**
695 **redigō** (2)
696 **redimō**
697 **redūcō**
698 **referō**
699 **regiō**
700 **rēgnum**
701 **reiciō**
702 **relinquō**
703 **reliquus**
704 **remaneō**
705 **remittō**
706 **removeō**
707 **renūntiō**
708 **repellō**
709 **repentīnus** and adv.
710 **reperiō**
711 **reprehendō**
712 **rēs**
713 **reservō**
714 **resistō**
715 **respiciō**
716 **respondeō**
717 **restituō**
718 **retineō**
719 **revertor**
720 **rēx**
721 **rīpa**
722 **rogō**
723 **rūmor**
724 **rupēs**
725 **rūrsus**
726 **saepe**
727 **salūs**
728 **satis** (3)

729 **saxum**
730 **sciō**
731 **scūtum**
732 **secundus** (2)
    secundum (2)
733 **sed**
734 **sēdecim**
735 **semel**
736 **senātus**
737 **sententia**
738 **sentiō**
739 **septendecim**
740 **septentriō**
741 **septimus**
742 **sequor**
743 **servitūs**
744 **sex**
745 **sexāgintā**
746 **sexcentī**
747 **sextus**
748 **sī, sīve, seu**
749 **sīc**
750 **signum** (2)
751 **silva**
752 **simul**
753 **simulātiō**
754 **sine**
755 **singulī** (2)
756 **sinister**
757 **socius**
758 **sol**
759 **sōlus**
    nōn sōlum
760 **soror**
761 **sors**
762 **spatium**
763 **speciēs**
764 **spectō**
765 **spērō**
766 **spēs**
767 **sponte**
768 **statim**
769 **statiō**
770 **statuō**
771 **stīpendium**
772 **strepitus**
773 **studeō**
774 **studium**
775 **sub** (3)
776 **subdūcō**
777 **subeō** (2)
    subitus and adv.
778 **subiciō**
779 **submittō**
780 **subsequor**
781 **subsidium**
782 **succēdō**
783 **suī** (4)
784 **sum**
785 **sūmō**
786 **superbus** and adv.
787 **superō**
788 **supersum**
789 **superus**, compar. (3), super. (3), and summa
790 **supplex** and adv.
791 **suprā**
792 **suscipiō**
793 **sūspīciō**
794 **sūspicor**
795 **sustineō** (2)
796 **suus** (4)
797 **tam**
798 **tamen**
799 **tandem**
800 **tantus**
    tantum, subs.
801 **tardus** and adv.
802 **tēlum**
803 **temerē**
804 **temperō**
805 **temptō (tentō)**
806 **tempus**
807 **teneō**
808 **ter**
809 **tergum**
810 **ternī, trīnī**
811 **terra**
812 **tertius**
813 **tēstūdō**
814 **timeō**
815 **timidus** and adv.
816 **timor**
817 **tollō** (2)
818 **totidem**
819 **tōtus**
820 **trabs**
821 **trādō**
822 **trādūcō**
823 **trahō**
824 **trāns**
825 **trānseō**
826 **trānsportō**
827 **trecentī**
828 **tredecim**
829 **trēs**
830 **tribūnus**
831 **trīduum**
832 **trīgintā**
833 **triplex**
834 **tuba**
835 **tum**
836 **tumulus**
837 **turris**
838 **ubi** (2)
839 **ulcīscor** (2)
840 **ūllus**
841 **ūlterior** and super.
842 **ūltrā**
843 **ūltrō**
844 **unde**
845 **ūndecim**

846 **undique**
847 **ūnus**
  ūnā
848 **urgeō**
849 **ūsus** (2)
850 **ut, utī**
851 **uter**
  utrum
852 **uterque** and **adv.**
853 **ūtor**
854 **vacō**
855 **vacuus**
856 **vadum**
857 **vagor**
858 **valeō**
859 **vāllum**
860 **varius**
861 **vāsto**
862 **vel** (2)
863 **vēlōx**
864 **velut, velutī**
865 **vēndō**
866 **veniō**
867 **verbum**
868 **vereor**
869 **vergō**
870 **versō** (2)
871 **vertō**
872 **vērus** and abl.
873 **vesper**
874 **vetus**
875 **vēxō**
876 **via**
877 **victor**
878 **victōria**
879 **vīctus**
880 **vīcus**
881 **videō** (2)
882 **vigilia**
883 **vīgintī**
884 **vinciō**
885 **vincō**
886 **vīnea**
887 **vir**
888 **virtūs**
889 **vīs** (2)
890 **vix**
891 **volō** (2)
892 **voluntās**
893 **vox** (2)
894 **vulgus** and abl.
895 **vulnerō**
896 **vulnus**

In studying the above list, special attention should be paid to the generic meaning of the following simple verbs (all of which occur either specifically or in composition in the list), so that other compounds than those actually occurring in the list may be understood if used literally.

agō (**–igō**)
  (**cōgō**)
cadō (**–cidō**)
caedō (**–cīdō**)
cēdō (2)
–cendō
certō
claudō (**–clūdō**)
currō
dō, dare (**–dō, dere**) (2)
dūcō
emō (**–imō**) (2)
eō
faciō (**–ficiō**) (2)
ferō
fugiō
(g)nōscō
gradior (**–gredior**)
habeō (**–hibeō**) (2)
  (**dēbeō, praebeō**)
hortor
iaciō (**–iciō**)
iungō
iūrō
iuvō
legō (**–ligō**, ere)
  (Contrast **ligō, āre,** *bind*)
loquor
maneō
mittō (2)
moveō
nūntiō
orior
pellō
pleō
pōnō
portō
prehendō, prēndō
premō (**–primō**)
pūgnō
scrībō
servō
sentiō
sequor
sistō
–spiciō (2)
statuō (**–stituō**)
stō
suēscō
sūmō (**sub + emō**)
tangō (**–tingō**)
tendō
teneō (**–tineō**)
terreō
trahō
veniō

The following vocabularies contain the words in the selections from the Gallic War which belong to Professor Lodge's list and are not found in Books I and II. These words are marked with an asterisk as they occur for the first time in the text, and their meanings are given in the footnotes. Special effort should be made to fix the meaning of these words permanently in mind at the time of their first occurrence in the text. This list should be used for review.

BOOK V

accēdēbat, 6, 2
adimō, 6, 4
aedificō, 1, 1
aestus, 1, 2
alacer, 33, 5
ancora, 9, 1
aptus, 16, 1
aqua, 18, 3
aquila, 37, 5
cautus and adv., 49, 2
cēdō (3), 16, 1
certāmen, 44, 14
commeātus (2), 23, 2
cōnfestim, 18, 4
cōnscendō, 7, 4
cōnsultō, 16, 2
coōrior, 10, 2
cursus (3), 8, 4
dēdūcō (3), 23, 2
dēfigō, 18, 3
dēsiliō, 16, 2
dīmittō (3), 18, 5
distribuō, 24, 1
exanimō (2), 44, 6
flūctus, 1, 2
frūstrā, 23, 5
fūnis, 10, 2
gubernātor, 10, 2
hiems, 1, 1
humilis, 1, 2
immittō, 44, 6
īnsula, 8, 3
lītus, 8, 6
mare, 1, 2
materia, 40, 2
mollis, 9, 1
mōtus, 5, 4
nauta, 10, 2
nāvigātiō, 7, 3
nāvigō, 5, 2
noceō, 7, 2
obsidiō, 45, 2
occāsiō, 38, 2
octingentī, 8, 6
opīniō, 48, 1
pecus, 19, 1
peragō, 24, 1
portus, 5, 1
praeda, 34, 1
prōnuntiō, 33, 3
quoad, 17, 3
rārus, 9, 6
reficiō, 1, 1
rēmus, 8, 3
saucius, 36, 3
septem, 49, 7
stātiō (2), 15, 3
subdūcō (2), 11, 5
tempestās (1), 5, 1; (2), 7, 4
tēstūdō (2), 42, 5
ūltrō (2), 40, 7
ex ūsū, 6, 6
vallēs, 49, 5
ventus, 7, 3

BOOK VII

agger (2), 79, 4
bīnī, 75, 4
bis, 66, 7
bona, 3, 1
cēdō (4), 89, 2
cibus, 78, 4
cōnsulō (2), 8, 4
manus (3), 84, 3
meritum, subs., 71, 3
-ne, 5, 6
neu, neve, 8, 4
(g)nōscō, 80, 1
operam dare, 9, 2
patiēns and adv., 77, 5
postrēmō, 1, 8
rēctus and adv., 6, 4
recēns (2), 9, 4
sagitta, 81, 2
septuāgintā, 88, 4
ūsus (3), 80, 1
ūtilis, 76, 1
virtūs (2), 6, 1

Description of the Gauls, Germans, and Britons.

appellō, ere, V. 13, 1
arō, V. 14, 2
lāc, IV. 1, 8
regō, VI. 17, 2
septingentī, V. 13, 5
vestīgium, VI. 27, 4

WORD FORMATION

(Note. — Before beginning to translate at sight the pupil should have learned the principal meanings of **ab, ad, ante, circum, con, dē, dis-, ex, in, in-, inter, ob, per, prae, prō, re(d)-, sub** and **trāns,** when used in composition with verbs, and the force of the suffixes given below.)

A. Nouns derived from Verbs

tor

The suffix **tor** is added to verb stems to designate the agent or doer of an action.

The English equivalents of this suffix are *–er*, *–or*, and *–tor*.

Models. **mercātor** = **mercā** (stem of **mercŏr**, *trade*) + **tor** (denoting the agent) = one who trades, *i.e.*, a *trader*.

victor = **vic** (stem of **vincō**, *conquer*) + **tor** (denoting the agent) = one who conquers, *i.e.*, a *conqueror*, *victor*.

In adding the suffix **tor** the same euphonic changes are usually found as appear in the fourth principal part, since the supine was formed by adding **tum** to the general stem of the verb.

Model. **dēfēnsor** (changed for euphony from **dēfendtor**) = **dēfend** (stem of **dēfendō**, *defend*) + **tor** (denoting the agent) = one who defends, *i.e.*, a *defender*.

Examples for Practice. **dēprecātor, explōrātor, praetor** (for **prae-itor**), **imperātor, speculātor, ōrātor, pābulātor, adiūtor,** (**ante-**) **cursor, auctor, dēsertor, gubernātor, lignātor, prōditor,** (**prō-**)**pūgnātor, vēnātor.**

iō, tiō, tus

The suffixes **iō, tiō, tus** (gen. **tūs**), are added to verb stems to form verbal nouns which denote an *act* or the *result* of an act.

The commonest English equivalents of these suffixes are *–ion*, *–tion*, and *–ing*, which also may express either the *act* or the *result*. For example, "the collection of coins is an interesting pursuit," *i.e.*, the *act* of collecting is interesting; "this collection of coins is interesting to see," *i.e.*, the *result* of the collecting is interesting. Notice the same two uses of the words *invention*, *direction*, *binding*, *crossing*, *shaving*, etc.

Both the endings **tiō** and **tus** may be added to the same stem, forming nouns with little or no difference in meaning. *E.g.*, **occāsus**, **occāsiō**; **reditus**, **reditiō**; **stātus**, **stātiō**.

The euphonic changes occurring in formation are the same as those found in the supine (cf. page xxv).

MODELS. **coniūrātiō** = **coniūrā** (stem of **coniūrō**, *conspire*) + **tiō** (denoting result) = the result of conspiring, *i.e.*, a *conspiracy*.

profectiō = **profec** (from the stem of **proficīscor**, *start out*, *depart*) + **tiō** (denoting act) = the act of starting out or departing, *i.e.*, *departure*.

cursus (changed for euphony from **currtus**) = **curr** (stem of **currō**, *run*) + **tus** (denoting act) = *running*, then, *course*, *passage*, etc.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. **lēgātiō, ōrātiō, sūspīciō, legiō, mūnītiō, commūtātiō, dēditiō, exercitātiō, nātiō, opīniō, oppūgnātiō, statiō, ēruptiō; occāsus, passus, exercitus, adventus, concursus, cōnātus, cōnspectus, cāsus, equitātus, conventus, circuitus, āscēnsus, ūsus, aditus.**

B. NOUNS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES

ia, tia, tās, tūs, tūdō

The suffixes **ia**, **tia**, **tās**, and **tūdō** are added to the stems of adjectives (often weakened) to form abstract nouns denoting *quality* or *condition*.

The English equivalents, *i.e.*, the endings of abstract nouns in English, include the following: *–ship*, *–(t)y*, *–ness*, *–tude*.

MODELS. **amīcitia** = **amīci** (weakened stem of **amīcus**, *friendly*) + **tia** (ending of an abstract noun) = *friendship, friendliness.*

potentia = **potent** (stem of **potēns**, *able*, present participle of **possum**, *to be able*) + **ia** (ending of an abstract noun) = *ability, power.*

nōbilitās = **nōbili** (stem of **nōbilis**, *noble*) + **tās** (ending of an abstract noun) = *nobleness, nobility.*

lātitūdō = **lāti** (weakened stem of **lātus**, *wide*) + **tūdō** (ending of an abstract noun) = *wideness, width, breadth.*

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. **multitūdō, fortitūdō, altitūdō, longitūdō, cōnsuētūdō** (from the perfect participle of **cōnsuēscō**, used as an adjective), **māgnitūdō, necessitūdō, mānsuētūdō** (like **cōnsuētūdō**), **lassitūdō, turpitūdō; memoria, angustiae, grātia, audācia, iūstitia, temperantia, inopia, trīstitiā, āmentia, dīligentia, avāritia, sententia, scientia; hūmānitās, cupiditās, voluntās, fācultās, lēnitās, potestās, lībertās, līberālitās, bonitās, crudēlitās, aequitās, celeritās, mōbilitās, levitās, fertilitās, brevitās, inīquitās.**

The suffixes **ia, tia, tās,** and **tūs** are added to noun stems to denote *condition* or *characteristic.*

MODELS. **cīvitās** = **cīvi** (stem of **cīvis**, *citizen*) + **tās** (denoting characteristic) = the characteristic of a citizen, *i.e., citizenship.*

virtūs = **vir** (weakened stem of **vir**, *man*) + **tūs** (denoting characteristic) = the characteristic of a man, *i.e., manliness, bravery,* etc.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. **auctōritās, tempestās; servitūs, senectūs; victoria, pueritia, adolēscentia, mīlitia.**

Some of these nouns also become collective in force, *e.g.*, **cīvitās**, which also means a collection of citizens, *i.e.*, a *state.* So **familia.**

BELLUM GALLICUM III, IV

(It is assumed that Books I and II of Caesar's Gallic War have been read, but if not, a synopsis of these books should be given by the teacher.)

In the fall of the second year of his operations in Gaul 57 B.C., Caesar sent a legion to open up the road leading through the Alps into Italy by way of the pass now known as the Great St. Bernard, the shortest route between Gaul and the valley of the Po. The Swiss were beaten in several skirmishes and the road opened. But when the legion was settling in winter quarters, it was suddenly attacked with such severity that, though they beat off the natives with heavy loss, they were forced to retire into Gaul for the rest of the winter.

Crassus had wintered among the states of the west coast, which had nominally accepted Roman domination in the fall and had given hostages. But when he sent officers to levy provisions, chafing at this act and ignorant of Rome's reputation for defending her citizens, they seized and held these men, and proposed to exchange them for the hostages they had given.

Informed of this in Italy, Caesar ordered a fleet built during the winter. Arriving with the rest of the army on the coast, he divided his forces, and sent Labienus northeast to overawe the Treveri and keep the Germans from crossing the Rhine, Sabinus north to divide the coast states, and Crassus south into Aquitania. Taking personal command against the Veneti, the strongest of the seacoast tribes, Caesar besieged town after town to no purpose. For the towns of the Veneti were near the water, and whenever Caesar was

ready to storm one of them, the Veneti would bring up their fleet and deport the inhabitants and all their possessions; meanwhile the Roman fleet was held by storms near the mouth of the Loire.

The Romans had never fought on the high seas, and were at a loss to know just what they ought to do in such a battle, but they studied carefully the weaknesses of their opponents. When the fleets finally met, the Romans with sharp hooks on the end of long poles cut the ropes that held the sails on the ships of the Veneti, and captured their entire fleet, ship by ship. The Veneti were forced to surrender, and Caesar, remembering the cause of this campaign, put their senate to death and sold the rest of the tribe into slavery.

Sabinus and Crassus were also successful in their respective campaigns, and the Treveri gave Labienus no trouble.

During the following winter two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, four hundred thousand strong, crossed into Gaul near the mouth of the Rhine. They had been driven from home by the Suebi, the fiercest German nation, and lived only by plundering the Gauls into whose territory they had crossed; but once across the Rhine they were secretly urged by several Gallic tribes to join them against the Romans.

Just as Caesar had recognized that Ariovistus must be eliminated, so he knew that this new wave of German migration must be rolled back to save not only his province but Rome. He marched upon the two tribes, and, by a pretext for which he was bitterly assailed even at Rome, got all their leaders in his power; then, without losing a man, he wiped out the entire tribes, men, women, and children, in a few hours.

He was not content with this as a lesson to the Germans. Even if the Rhine was to bound Roman dominion, he must

show the world that he could and would go beyond it if necessary. So he bridged the Rhine, crossed with his army, and Gauls and Germans saw the mighty Suebi retreat before him to their forest fastnesses.

With the same motive, on his return from Germany he crossed the English Channel with two legions and made a reconnoitering expedition into Britain, preparatory to the greater one described in Book V.

So great did these two achievements seem at Rome, that a thanksgiving of twenty days was decreed in his honor, five days more than that after conquering the Belgians.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

THE SECOND EXPEDITION INTO BRITAIN

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs[1] facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possent *hieme[2] nāvēs *aedificandās[3] veterēsque *reficiendās[4] cūrent. Eārum modum[5] fōr- 5
2 mamque[6] dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī[7] subductiōnēsque[8] paulō facit *humiliōrēs,[9] quam quibus[10] in nostrō *marī[11] ūtī cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs *aestuum[12] minus māgnōs ibi *fluctūs[13] fierī cōgnōverat, ad onera āc multi- 10
tūdinem iūmentōrum[14] trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs,
3 quam quibus[10] in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās[15] imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humili-
4 tās[4] adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās[16] nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet. 15

[1] *yearly.* [2] **hiems, hiemis,** f., *winter.* [3] *build.* [4] Cf. derivation. [5] *size.* [6] *shape.* [7] *load.* [8] *drawing up on shore,* as the Romans did in winter. [9] **humilis, ior, limus,** *low.* [10] Sc. **eae (nāvēs)** as antecedent; translate, *what.* [11] **mare, is,** n., *sea.* [12] *tide.* [13] *wave.* [14] *beast of burden.* [15] *fitted with oars* (as well as sails). [16] *equip.*

* The meaning of the words marked with an asterisk should be permanently learned.

[Caesar quiets some minor troubles in Illyricum and among the Treveri.]

5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, Caesar ad *portum[1] Itium[2] cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, *tempestāte[3] reiectās, cursum[4] tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad *nāvigandum[5] atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās[6] invenit.[7] Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit numerō mīlia quattuor prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs,[8] quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat,[9] quod cum ipse abesset *mōtum[10] Galliae verēbātur.

The end of Dumnorix.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs[11] Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. *Accēdēbat[12] hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī[13] causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod īnsuētus[14] nāvigandī[15] mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus[16] impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteā quam id obstinātē[17]

[1] **portus, ūs,** *harbor.* [2] *Itius,* modern *Wissant.* [3] *storm.* [4] *course.* [5] *sail.* [6] *equip.* [7] *find.* [8] **per-** intensive. [9] *decide.* [10] **mōtus, ūs,** *uprising.* [11] *the others.* [12] **accēdēbat hūc** (it went thither, it was added to this) *an additional reason was.* [13] *beg off.* [14] *unaccustomed;* with gen. [15] *sail.* [16] *vow.* [17] *firmly.*

sibi negārī[1] vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī *adēmptā,[2] 40
prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre,[3] sēvocāre[4] singulōs hor-
5 tārīque coepit, utī in continentī[5] remanērent; metū[6]
territāre:[6] nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbi-
litāte spoliārētur;[7] id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs
in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in 45
6 Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem[8] reliquīs inter-
pōnere,[8] iūs iūrandum pōscere, ut, quod esse *ex[9] *ūsū[9]
Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent.
Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Ae- 50
duae dīgnitātis[10] tribuēbat,[11] coercendum[12] atque dēter-
rendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem
2 statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam[13] prōgredī vidē-
bat, prōspiciendum,[14] nē quid[15] sibi āc reī pūblicae
3 *nocēre[16] posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō 55
commorātus,[17] quod chōrus[18] *ventus[19] *nāvigātiōnem[20]
impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs
locīs flāre[21] cōnsuēvit, dabat[22] operam[22] ut in officiō
Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō[23] tamen[23] sētius[23] omnia
4 ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus 60
*tempestātem[24] mīlitēs equitēsque *cōnscendere[25] nāvēs
5 iubet. At omnium impedītīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum
equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente[17] Caesare

[1] *deny.* [2] **ad-imō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum,** *take away.* [3] *stir up.* [4] **sē-,** *aside.* [5] Cf. Eng. derivative. [6] (to terrify them with fear) *to fill them with apprehension* (*that*, etc., the following indirect discourse explaining **metū**). [7] *strip.* [8] (*saying that*) *he pledged his honor.* [9] *of advantage.* [10] *rank.* [11] *assigned.* [12] *restrain.* [13] *folly.* [14] *look out.* [15] adverbial acc., *at all.* [16] **noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitum,** *harm;* with dative [17] Cf. derivation. [18] *the northwest.* [19] **ventus, ī,** *wind.* [20] Cf. Eng. derivative. [21] *blow.* [22] *he took pains.* [23] *nevertheless.* [24] *weather.* [25] Cf. **āscendō.**

domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, in- 6
65 termissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs,[1]
māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mit-
tit retrahīque[1] imperat; sī vim[2] faciat neque pareat,[2] 7
interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō[3] sānō[3] factū-
rum arbitrātus, quī[4] praesentis imperium neglēxisset.
70 Ille autem revocātus[1] resistere āc sē manū[5] dēfend- 8
ere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmi-
tāns[6] līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat
imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt;
at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar crosses to Britain and routs the natives.

75 **8.** Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēnō in cōntinentī[7] cum tribus
legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs[8]
tuerētur[9] et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Gal-
liā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et
prō rē[10] caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī 2
80 numerō equitum, quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad
sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit;[11] et lēnī[12] Āfricō[13] prōvectus,[14]
mediā circiter nocte, ventō intermissō, *cursum[15] nōn
tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū,[16] ortā lūce sub sinistrā
Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs 3
85 commūtātiōnem secūtus[17] *rēmīs[18] contendit, ut eam
partem *īnsulae[19] caperet,[20] quā optimum esse ēgressum[21]
superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum[22] fuit 4

[1] Cf. derivation. [2] *use force and not obey.* [3] *like a sane man.* [4] *since he.* [5] *vigorously.* [6] *shout.* [7] Cf. Eng. derivative. [8] *harbor.* [9] *protect.* [10] *circumstances.* [11] (loose); with **nāvēs,** *set sail.* [12] *gentle.* [13] *southwest wind.* [14] (borne forth), *carry.* [15] *course.* [16] *tide.* [17] *taking advantage of.* [18] *oar.* [19] *island.* [20] *make; gain.* [21] noun; cf. derivation and force of suffix. [22] *greatly; highly.*

mīlitum virtūs laudanda,[1] quī vectōriīs[2] gravibusque[2] nāvigiīs,[2] nōn intermissō rēmigandī[3] labōre, longārum
5 nāvium cursum[4] adaequārunt. Accēssum est ad Bri- 90
tanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō[5] ferē tempore[5]
6 neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs[6] prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī 95
causā fēcerat, amplius *octingentae[7] ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā *lītore[8] discēsserant āc sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar expositō[9] exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium 100
cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictīs et equitibus ccc, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore *mollī[10] atque apertō dēligātās[11] ad *ancorās[12] relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium 105
2 praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter
3 xii hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs[13] ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs
4 prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nanctī 110
ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī[14] bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant;
5 nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs[15] omnēs introitūs[16] erant

[1] *praise.* [2] (in ships adapted to carry, and heavy) *in their heavy transports.* [3] *row.* [4] Different meaning from that in line 82. [5] *midday, noon.* [6] (*the ships*) *built the year before.* [7] *eight hundred.* [8] **lītus, oris,** n., *shore.* [9] Cf. derivation of the Latin word (not the Eng. derivative). [10] **mollis, e,** (soft) *smooth.* [11] (bound) *riding.* [12] *anchor.* [13] *war chariot.* [14] *civil.* [15] Consider carefully the simple verb and the prefix. [16] *entrance.*

praeclūsī.[1] Ipsī ex silvīs *rārī[2] prōpūgnābant[3] nos- 6
115 trōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At 7
mīlitēs legiōnis septimae tēstūdine factā et aggere ad
mūnītiōnēs adiectō[4] locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs
expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs 8
fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit,[5] et quod
120 locī nātūram īgnōrābat,[6] et quod māgnā parte diēī
cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī
volēbat.

The fleet is wrecked by a storm, but repaired.

10. Postrīdiē ēius diēī māne[7] tripertītō[8] mīlitēs equi-
tēsque in expedītiōnem[9] mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant,
125 persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum[10] itineris prōgressīs, 2
cum iam extrēmī[11] essent in[12] prōspectū,[12] equitēs ā
Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superi-
ōre nocte māximā *coortā[13] tempestāte prope omnēs
nāvēs afflīctās[14] atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod ne-
130 que ancorae *fūnēsque[15] sustinērent neque *nautae[16]
*gubernātōrēsque[17] vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque
ex eō concursū[18] nāvium māgnum esse incommodum[19]
acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque
135 revocārī atque in itinere resistere[20] iubet, ipse ad nāvēs
revertitur: eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs cōgnōverat, 2
cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus

[1] Cf. **interclūdō**. [2] *in small groups.* [3] **prō-**, *outside.* [4] consider carefully the simple verb and the prefix. [5] *forbid.* [6] *be ignorant of; not know.* [7] *early in the morning.* [8] Adverb, from **trēs** and **pars**. [9] *rapid march.* [10] *somewhat;* with **itineris**, *some distance.* [11] *only the rear* of the Roman detachments. [12] *in sight ahead.* [13] **co-** intensive. [14] *wreck.* [15] **fūnis, is,** m., *rope, cable.* [16] *sailor.* [17] *pilot.* [18] Note the literal meaning. [19] *disaster.* [20] *remain behind.*

reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur.
3 Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs[1] dēligit et ex continentī
4 aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūri- 140
mās possit, iīs legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs
5 īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae[2] āc labōris,
tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs *sub-
6 dūcī[3] et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs
rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs[4] quidem 145
7 temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Sub-
ductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cō-
piās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem,
8 unde redierat, proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, mā-
iōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum 150
convēnerant, summā imperiī bellīque administrandī
commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cūius fīnēs ā
maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur
9 Tamesis,[5] ā mārī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huīc
superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia[6] 155
bella intercēsserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Bri-
tannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

[Description of Britain and its inhabitants.]

Caesar crosses the Thames, routs the Britons, and subdues Cassivellaunus.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque[7] ācriter proeliō cum
equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt,[8] ita tamen ut
nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in 160
2 silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus inter-
fectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt.

[1] *workman; mechanic.* [2] *exertion.* [3] *draw up; beach.* [4] Adj. from **nox.** [5] *Thames.* [6] *incessant.* [7] *charioteer.* [8] *fight.*

At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus[1] nostrīs atque 3
occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs
165 ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in[2] *sta-
tiōne[2] prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt;
duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque 4
hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō[3] inter-
missō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere
170 pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē per-
rūpērunt[4] sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē 5
Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī
plūribus submissīs[5] cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae cum sub oculīs[6] om-
175 nium āc prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nos-
trōs propter gravitātem[7] armōrum, quod neque īnsequī
*cēdentēs[8] possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent,
minus *aptōs[9] esse ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs 2
autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea
180 quod illī etiam *cōnsultō[10] plērumque cēderent et, cum
paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs[11]
*dēsilīrent[12] et pedibus disparī[13] proeliō contenderent.
[Equestris[14] autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnse- 3
quentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat.] Accē- 4
185 dēbat hūc, ut numquam[15] cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque
intervāllīs proeliārentur[16] statiōnēsque dispositās habē-
rent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps[17] exciperent,[18] integrīque[19]
et recentēs[20] dēfatigātīs[21] succēderent.[22]

[1] (unforeseeing) *off their guard.* [2] *on guard.* [3] *very small.* [4] *break through.* [5] sub-, *to their assistance.* [6] *eye.* [7] Cf. formation. [8] *retreat.* [9] *fitted, adapted.* [10] *purposely.* [11] *chariot.* [12] **dē-siliō, īre, siluī, sultum,** *jump down.* [13] **dis-**, here negative in its effect. [14] Omit words in brackets. [15] *never.* [16] *fight.* [17] *in succession.* [18] *relieve.* [19] *fresh.* [20] *rested.* [21] *tired.* [22] Cf. **submissis**, line 173.

17. Posterō diē procul[1] ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius[2] quam 190
2 prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē[3] cum Caesar pābulandī[4] causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs[5] advolāvērunt,[6] sīc utī ab[7] sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn[7] 195
3 absisterent.[7] Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, *quoad[8] subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent,
4 praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī[9] neque cōnsistendī aut 200
5 ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus,[10] quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discēssērunt, neque post id tempus umquam[11] summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flū- 205
men ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī
2 potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās.
3 Rīpa autem erat acūtīs[12] sudibus[13] praefīxīsque[14] mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub *aquā[15] *dēfīxae[16] sudēs[13] 210
4 flūmine tegēbantur.[17] Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque[18] Caesar praemissō equitātū *cōnfestim[19]
5 legiōnēs subsequī iūssit. Sed eā[20] celeritāte atque eō[20]

[1] *at a distance.* [2] (more gently) *more cautiously.* [3] *at midday.* [4] *forage.* [5] Cf. **pābulandī**, 192, and force of suffix. [6] (fly to) *rush.* [7] (did not stand away from) *were close to.* [8] *until.* [9] *collect.* [10] (forthwith) *immediately.* [11] *ever.* [12] *sharpened.* [13] *stakes.* [14] *drive down in front.* [15] *water.* [16] **dē-fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxum,** *fasten down, drive down.* [17] *cover.* [18] *deserter.* [19] *immediately.* [20] *such.*

215 impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent,[1] ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent[2] āc sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī 220 dēpositā spē contentiōnis,[3] dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum[15] relictīs, itinera nostra servābat[4] paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs āc silvestribus[5] sēsē occultābat[16] atque iīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, *pecora[6] 225 atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum 2 equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs effunderet,[7] omnibus viīs sēmitīsque[8] essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et māgnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnflīgēbat[9] atque hōc metū[17] 230 lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur[10] ut neque 3 longius ab āgmine legiōnum discēdī[11] Caesar paterētur, et tantum[13] [in] agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque[12] faciendīs hostibus[13] nocērētur,[13] quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

Surrender of the Trinovantes and several other states.

235 20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem[14] secūtus[14] ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat (cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem

[1] *stand out.* [2] *abandon.* [3] Cf. formation; from **contendō,** *fight.* [4] *watch.* [5] *wooded.* [6] **pecus, pecoris,** n., *cattle;* plu., *herds of cattle.* [7] (pour out) *scatter.* [8] *path.* [9] *fight.* [10] (it was left) *the result was.* [11] (it to be departed) *any one to go.* [12] *fires,* of forests and villages. [13] (it was harmed the enemy only so much) *only as much harm was done the enemy.* [14] *accept the protection.* [15] *chariot fighters.* [16] *hide.* [17] *fear.*

2 vītāverat[1]), lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicentur- 240
3 que sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī praesit imperiumque
4 obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs 245 mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. 250
2 Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit.
3 Oppidum autem[2] Britannī vocant,[3] cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis[4] 255
4 hostium vītandae[5] causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus
5 oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex 260
6 parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī[6] atque interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium,[7] quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrā- 265 vimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs

[1] *avoid.* [2] *now.* [3] here equivalent to **appellō**. [4] *raid.* [5] *avoid.* [6] *seize.* [7] modern *Kent.*

castra[1] nāvālia[1] dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppū-
270 gnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne 2
factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce
Lugotorīge suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus 3
hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot[2] dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vā-
stātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne[3]
275 cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēdi-
tiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset 4
hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae
mōtūs,[4] neque multum aestātis superesset atque
id[5] facile extrahī[6] posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat
280 et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis[7] populō Rōmānō
Britannia penderet cōnstituit; interdīcit[8] atque imperat 5
Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus
noceat.

Caesar's return to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare,
285 nāvēs invenit[9] refectās. Hīs *dēductīs,[10] quod et cap- 2
tīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōn nūllae
tempestāte dēperierant[11] nāvēs, duōbus *commeāti-
bus[12] exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Āc sīc accidit utī 3
ex tantō nāvium numerō tot[2] nāvigātiōnibus[13] neque
290 hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae
mīlitēs portāret,[14] dēsiderārētur;[15] at ex iīs, quae inānēs[16] 4
ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, priōris commeātūs
expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās

[1] *fortifications which protected the ships.* [2] indeclin. adj.; *so many.* [3] *revolt.* [4] (movements) *uprisings.* [5] refers to **multum aestātis.** [6] (draw out) *waste.* [7] *tribute;* genitive. [8] *warn.* [9] *find.* [10] *launch.* [11] (perish) *be lost.* [12] *voyage.* [13] *sailing.* [14] Cf. **comportō, importō, trānsportō.** [15] (miss) *lose.* [16] *empty.*

cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent;[1]
5 reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum ali- 295
quamdiū[2] Caesar *frūstrā[3] exspectāsset, nē annī tem-
pore ā nāvigātiōne[4] exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium[5]
6 suberat,[6] necessāriō angustius[7] mīlitēs collocāvit āc,
summā tranquillitāte[8] cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum
solvisset[9] vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque 300
incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX

The Roman legions distributed among more states than usual.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Sama-
robrīvae[10] *perāctō,[11] quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā
propter siccitātēs[12] angustius[13] prōvēnerat,[14] coāctus est
aliter āc superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs col- 305
2 locāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitātēs *distribuere.[15] Ex
quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō
dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in
Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō
3 in cōnfīniō[16] Trēverōrum hiemāre iūssit; trēs in Bel- 310
lovacīs collocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium
4 Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam
legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum[17] cōnscrīpserat,
et cohortēs quīnque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima
est inter Mosam[18] āc Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō 315
5 Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus

[1] *make, reach.* [2] *for some time.* [3] *in vain.* [4] *sailing.* [5] *the equinox* (with its "equinoctial storm"). [6] *be close at hand.* [7] (narrowly) *closely.* [8] *calm.* [9] (loose) sc. **nāvēs**, *set sail.* [10] locative. [11] (drive through) *hold.* [12] (dryness) *drought.* [13] (narrowly) *scantily.* [14] **prō-**, *up; forward.* [15] **dis-tribuō, ere, tribuī, tribūtum**; cf. Eng. derivative. [16] ("confines") *territory.* [17] *the Po.* [18] *the Meuse* or *Maas.*

Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iūssit. Ad[1] hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē mederī[2] posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam[3] partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur.[4] Ipse intereā, quoad[5] legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

[Tasgetius, a friend of Caesar, restored to his former place as king of the Carnutes, is assassinated.]

The Eburones, under Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, attack the camp of Sabinus and Cotta.

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs[6] āc dēfectiōnis[7] ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī, cum ad fīnēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō[8] fuissent[8] frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī[9] Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt[10] subitōque oppressīs līgnātōribus[11] māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque āscendissent atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs[12] equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā[13] rē[13] hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī[14] ex nostrīs

[1] *in.* [2] *remedy;* deponent; with dative, **inopiae**. [3] Cf. Eng. derivative. [4] *were contained;* no one of these camps was more than a hundred miles from at least two others. [5] *until.* [6] *uprising.* [7] *revolt.* [8] *be waiting.* [9] a chief whose rival had gained Caesar's support. [10] *arouse.* [11] *wood-chopper.* [12] *Spanish.* [13] (the thing having been despaired of) *despairing of success.* [14] singular; oftener **aliquis**.

ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās[1] minuī posse spērārent. 340

[In a crafty speech Ambiorix persuades Sabinus and Cotta that all the Gauls have risen against Caesar at once; that the Germans have come to their aid, the other *legati* are being attacked, and their only hope is to get to Labienus; Ambiorix will allow them to pass safely out of his territory in return for Caesar's kindness to him.

Cotta ridicules the speech and proposes to stay and fight it out, but yields to Sabinus. The Romans spend the whole night in breaking camp, and start out at daybreak, tired, heavily loaded, and trusting Ambiorix implicitly. In a deep ravine they are ambushed and surrounded.]

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius,[2] quī[3] nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidāre[4] et concursāre[5] cohortēsque dispōnere, haec[6] tamen ipsa[6] timidē atque ut[7] eum omnia[8] dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuēvit, 2 quī in ipsō negōtiō[9] cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At 345 Cotta, quī[3] cōgitāsset[10] haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor[11] nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīli- 3 tis officia[12] praestābat.[12] Cum propter longitūdinem[13] 350 āgminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre[14] et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iūssērunt *prōnūntiārī,[15] ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in 4 orbem[16] cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī in ēius

[1] Cf. Eng. derivative. [2] i.e., *Sabinus*. See line 317. [3] causal. [4] historical infinitive; *hurried about.* [5] *ran around.* [6] (*but did*) *even these things.* [7] *in such a manner that.* [8] *all his wits.* [9] *action.* [10] *think.* [11] (promoter) *responsible* (*for*). [12] *did the duty.* [13] Cf. formation. [14] *attend to.* [15] Cf. **ēnūntiō, renūntiō.** [16] *circle.*

355 modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē[1] cecidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus[2] spem minuit et 5 hostēs ad pūgnam *alacriōrēs[3] effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne[4] id factum vidēbātur. 6 Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse[5] erat, ut vulgō 360 mīlitēs ab sīgnīs discēderent, quaeque[6] quisque eōrum cārissima[7] habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere[8] properāret; clāmōre et flētū[9] omnia complērentur.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium[10] nōn dēfuit. Nam dūcēs 365 eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iūssērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse *praedam[11] atque illīs reservārī, quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde[12] omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent. Nostrī tametsī[13] ab duce 2 et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis 370 in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns[14] quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab[15] eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet, 3 ut procul[16] tēla cōniciant neu[17] propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant, 375 [levitāte[18] armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil 4 hīs nocērī[19] posse,] rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientēs īnsequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō[20] ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō,[21] cum quaepiam[22] cohors ex orbe[23] excēsserat atque impe- 380 tum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim 2

[1] *unfortunately.* [2] Dative of reference; translate by possessive. [3] **alacer, cris, cre,** *eager.* [4] *despair.* [5] indeclinable adjective; *necessary.* [6] i.e., **et quae.** [7] *dear.* [8] *snatch.* [9] Cf. formation. [10] *cunning.* [11] *booty.* [12] (thenceforward) *so.* [13] *although.* [14] *as often as.* [15] abl. of the point of view. [16] *from a distance.* [17] i.e., **ne-ve,** *and not.* [18] Cf. formation. [19] Cf. line 233. [20] *command.* [21] *obey.* [22] *any.* [23] *circle.*

eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō
3 tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant
prōgressī, revertī coeperant, et ab iīs, quī cēsserant, et
4 ab iīs, quī proximī steterant,[1] circumveniēbantur; sīn[2]
autem[3] locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relin- 385
quēbātur, neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla
5 cōnfertī vītāre[4] poterant. Tamen tot[5] incommodīs[6]
cōnflīctātī,[7] multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant et
māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad
hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset 390
6 indīgnum[8] committēbant.[9] Tum T. Balventiō,[10] quī
superiōre annō prīmum pīlum[11] dūxerat, virō fortī et
māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque[12] femur trāgulā trāici-
7 tur; Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns,
8 dum circumventō fīliō subvenit,[13] interficitur; L. Cotta 395
lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns[14] in
adversum ōs[15] fundā[16] vulnerātur.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul[17]
Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpre-
tem[18] suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut 400
2 sibi mīlitibusque parcat.[19] Ille appellātus respondit:
Sī velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine
impetrārī[20] posse,[20] quod[21] ad mīlitum salūtem per-
tineat; ipsī vērō[22] nihil nocitum īrī,[23] inque eam rem
3 sē suam fidem interpōnere.[24] Ille cum Cottā *sauciō[25] 405

[1] **stō**, *stand.* [2] *but if.* [3] *however.* [4] *avoid.* [5] *so many.* [6] *disadvantage.* [7] *harass.* [8] *unworthy;* with abl. [9] *do.* [10] Dat. of reference; see line 356. [11] nom. **pīlus**, *maniple.* [12] **Balventiō utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur**: freely, *both thighs of Balventius are pierced by a javelin.* [13] For **sub-**, cf. **submissīs**, line 173. [14] Cf. **hortor, cohortor.** [15] **in adversum ōs**: *squarely in the face.* [16] (*stone from a*) *sling.* [17] *at a distance.* [18] *interpreter.* [19] *spare.* [20] *that his request could be obtained.* [21] *so far as.* [22] *at any rate.* [23] Cf. line 233. [24] Cf. line 46. [25] *wounded.*

commūnicat,[1] sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā āc mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armā- 4 tum hostem itūrum negat[2] atque in eō persevērat.[3]

410 **37.** Sabīnus quōs in[4] praesentia[4] tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accēssisset, iūssus arma abicere imperātum facit suīsque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter 2 415 sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō[5] ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō,[6] paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum 3 vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum[7] tollunt[8] impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte 4 420 mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant 5 ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer,[9] cum māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, *aquilam[9] intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem susti- 6 425 nent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā[10] salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī[11] incertīs[12] itineri- 7 bus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

The winter quarters of Cicero are attacked by the Eburones, Aduatuci, and Nervii.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus[13] Ambiorīx statim cum 430 equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitimī,

[1] *propose (to).* [2] (deny) *say . . . not.* [3] *persist.* [4] *at the time.* [5] *purposely.* [6] *speech.* [7] *yell.* [8] the first meaning. [9] **aquila**, *eagle*, and **ferō**, *standard-bearer*. [10] Cf. line 336. [11] deponent; *escape.* [12] Cf. either formation (**in-**, negative) or Eng. derivative. [13] (raised) *elated.*

proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit
2 peditātumque[1] sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs,[2] posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum līberandī[3] atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō iīs, quās accēperint, iniūriīs 435
3 *occāsiōnem[4] dīmittant: interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs
4 māgnamque partem exercitūs interīsse[5] dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtiī, subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur[6] adiutōrem.[7] Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs per- 440 suādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim[8] dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās manūs possunt, cōgunt et dē imprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna 445 advolant,[9] nōndum ad eum fāmā[10] dē Titūriī morte per-
2 lātā. Huīc quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī līgnātiōnis[11] mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discēssissent, repentīnō equitum adventū inter-
3 ciperentur.[12] Hīs circumventīs māgnā manū Eburō- 450 nēs, Nerviī, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeri-
4 ter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt.[13] Aegrē is diēs sustentātur,[14] quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī[15] victōriam in 455 perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne lītterae māgnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent;

[1] Cf. with **peditēs** and **equitātus**. [2] *arouse.* [3] verb from **līber.** [4] Cf. Eng. derivative. [5] *perish.* [6] *offer.* [7] Cf. formation. [8] *immediately.* [9] (fly to) *rush.* [10] *report.* [11] *cutting wood;* cf. **līgnātor,** line 332. [12] *intercept; cut off.* [13] Cf. **ā(ad)-scendō.** [14] intensive verb of **sustineō.** [15] from **adipīscor,** *gain.*

obsessīs[1] omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur.[2] Noctū 2
460 ex *māteriā,[3] quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum[4] cxx excitantur[5] incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs 3 posterō diē multō māiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne
465 quā prīdiē, resistitur. Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps[6] fit 4 diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī[7] temporis ad labōrem in- 5 termittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis[8] datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppūgnātiōnem 6 opus[9] sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae[10]
470 sudēs,[11] māgnus mūrālium[12] pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur,[13] pinnae[14] lōrīcaeque[15] ex crātibus[16] attexuntur.[17] Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā[18] 7 valētūdine[19] esset, nē nocturnum[8] quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem[8] relinquēbat, ut *ūltrō[20] mīlitum concursū
475 āc vōcibus sibi parcere[21] cōgerētur.

41. Tum ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis[22] aditum[22] causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, 2 eadem, quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat, comme-
480 morant:[23] omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs 3 Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppūgnārī. Addunt[24] etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem 4 ostentant[25] fideī faciundae causā. Errāre[26] eōs dīcunt, 5

[1] From **obsideō**, *blockade*. [2] Cf. line 450. [3] *timber*. [4] *as many as*. [5] *raise*. [6] *in succession*. [7] Cf. derivation and Eng. derivative. [8] Cf. Eng. derivative. [9] (need) *needed*. [10] *burned to a point*. [11] *stake*. [12] (adj., suitable for throwing from a wall) *heavy*. [13] *erect*. [14] *parapet*. [15] *breastwork*. [16] *wickerwork*. [17] *weave*. [18] *delicate*. [19] *health*. [20] *actually*. [21] *spare*. [22] (approach for conversation) *speaking acquaintance*. [23] *relate*. [24] Cf. derivation and Eng. derivative. [25] intensive form of **ostendō**. [26] *mistake, be mistaken*.

sī quicquam ab iīs praesidiī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffīdant;[1] sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populum- 485 que Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent 6 atque hanc inveterāscere[2] cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per[3] se[3] incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et, quās- 7 cumque in partēs velint, sine metū[4] proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: nōn esse cōnsuē- 490 tūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō 8 condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre[5] ūtantur[6] lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et 495 2 fossā pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et, quōsdam 3 dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab his docēbantur, sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum[7] cōpiā, quae essent ad hunc ūsum idō- nea, gladiīs caespitēs[8] circumcīdere,[9] manibus sagulīs- 500 4 que[10] terram exhaurīre[11] cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex 5 rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnītiō- nem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdi- nem vāllī, falcēs[12] *tēstūdinēsque,[13] quās īdem captīvī 505 docuerant, parāre āc facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō[14] ferventēs[15] fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et ferve- facta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs[16] 2 erant tēctae,[17] iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem 510

[1] *distrust; despair.* [2] *become established.* [3] *as far as they were concerned.* [4] *fear.* [5] Cf. line 440. [6] imperative in ind. dis.: *they might use.* [7] *iron tools.* [8] *sods.* [9] *cut out.* [10] *military cloak.* [11] *take up.* [12] *hooks.* [13] *movable shed.* [14] *wind.* [15] **ferventēs . . . casās**: *red-hot, fused balls of clay with slings, and hot javelins upon the huts.* [16] *straw.* [17] (covered) *thatched.*

comprehendērunt[1] et ventī[2] māgnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs māximō clā- 3 mōre, sīc utī partā[3] iam atque explōrātā[4] victōriā, turrēs tēstūdinēsque[5] agere et scālīs[6] vāllum āscendere 515 coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea[7] prae- 4 sentia[8] animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā[8] torrērentur[9] māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre[8] intellegerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet 520 nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam; āc tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hīc 5 diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō 525 cōnstīpāverant[10] recēssumque[11] prīmīs ūltimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam 6 locō turrī adāctā et contingente[12] vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recēssērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī 530 introīre[13] vellent, vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus con- 7 iectīs dēturbātī,[14] turrisque succēnsa[15] est.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent,[16] T. Pullō 535 et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās 2 habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur,[17] omnibusque annīs

[1] *catch.* [2] *wind.* [3] *gain.* [4] *secure.* [5] *shed.* [6] *ladder.* [7] *such.* [8] Cf. Eng. derivative. [9] (parch) *singe.* [10] *pack.* [11] (*an opportunity for*) *retreat.* [12] Cf. **attingō.** [13] (go inside) *enter* the Roman works. [14] Ac. **sunt,** and **hostēs** as subject, and cf. **per-turbō.** [15] Cf. **in-cendō.** [16] i.e., were approaching the point where they would soon become **centuriōnēs prīmī ōrdinis.** [17] Cf. derivation.

3 dē locō[1] summīs simultātibus[2] contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, 'Quid[3] dubitās,' inquit,[31] 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrō- 540
4 versiīs iūdicābit.' Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā[4] mūnītiōnēs quaeque[5] pars[5] hostium cōnfertissima est
5 vīsa, irrumpit.[6] Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem[7] sub-
6 sequitur. Mediocrī[8] spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in 545 hostēs *immittit[9] atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem[9] trāicit;[10] quō percussō[11] et *exanimātō[12] hunc scūtīs prōtegunt[13] hostēs, in illum ūniversī[14] tēla cōn-
7 iciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur[15] scūtum Pullōnī[16] et verūtum[17] in balteō[18] 550
8 dēfīgitur.[19] Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam[20] et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī[16] dextram morātur manum, impedī-
9 tumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit[21] inimīcus[22]
10 illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.[23] Ad hunc sē cōnfestim[24] ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit [; illum 555
11 verūtō[17] trānsfīxum[15] arbitrantur]. Gladiō comminus[25] rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs
12 paulum prōpellit;[26] dum cupidius īnstat, in[27] locum
13 dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit.[28] Huīc rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō[29] incolumēs 560 complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude[30] sēsē intrā

[1] *position; promotion.* [2] *rivalry.* [3] *why.* [4] *outside.* [5] *and that part which.* [6] (break in) *rush on.* [7] (opinion) *judgment.* [8] *moderate.* [9] Cf. derivation. [10] *pierce.* [11] *run through.* [12] *kill.* [13] *cover.* [14] *all together.* [15] *pierce.* [16] Dat. of reference; cf. line 356. [17] *dart.* [18] *belt.* [19] *fasten.* [20] *sheath.* [21] **suc-**, *up.* [22] *rival.* [23] **sub-**, cf. line 395. [24] *immediately.* [25] *hand to hand.* [26] **prō-**, *off.* [27] **in . . . īnferiōrem**: *being pushed into a hollow.* [28] Cf. **accidō, incidō.** [29] *both;* declined like **duo.** [30] *praise.* [31] *said he.*

mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et 14
*certāmine[1] utrumque versāvit[2] ut alter alterī inimīcus[3] auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī[4] posset
565 uter utrī virtūte anteferendus[4] vidērētur.

The siege is raised by Caesar's arrival, and the enemy are put to flight.

45. Quantō[5] erat in[6] diēs[6] gravior atque asperior[7] oppūgnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem[8] dēfēnsōrum[8] pervēnerat, tantō[9] crēbriōrēs lītterae nūntiīque ad
570 Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa[10] in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus[11] Nervius nōmine Verticō,[12] locō[13] 2
nātus honestō,[14] quī ā[15] prīmā *obsidiōne[16] ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat.[17] Hīc 3
575 servō spē lībertātis māgnīsque persuādet praemiīs, ut lītterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigā- 4
tās[18] effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā sūspīciōne versātus[19] ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs 5
Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

580 **46.** Caesar acceptīs lītterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā[20] diēī statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum XXV; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad 2
sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad 3
585 C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrī- 4

[1] *contest.* [2] *treat.* [3] *rival.* [4] Cf. derivation. [5] (by how much) *the.* [6] *from day to day.* [7] *fierce.* [8] Cf. formation. [9] (by so much) *the.* [10] *seize.* [11] *inside* the Roman works. [12] nom. [13] *position, rank.* [14] *honorable.* [15] *at.* [16] *siege.* [17] *show.* [18] *tie.* [19] *passing.* [20] *eleventh.*

bit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere posset,
5 cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex 590 proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus[1] dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx
2 prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit,[2] quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, 595 obsidēs cīvitātum, līterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae[3] hiemis[4] causā dēvexerat,[5]
3 relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita mul-
4 tum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū[6] Sabīnī et caede[7] cohortium cōgnitā, cum om- 600 nēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem[8] profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs
5 recentī victōriā efferrī[9] scīret, līterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus 605 esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit;[10] docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsī *opīniōne[11] trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat,[12] tamen 610 ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat.
2 Venit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur
3 quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuīdam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem 615

[1] Cf. formation. [2] *assign.* [3] *get through.* [4] *winter.* [5] *convey.* [6] *death.* [7] *massacre.* [8] (*which would seem*) *like.* [9] *elate.* [10] *write at length.* [11] *expectation.* [12] (fall back) *be reduced.*

epistulam[1] dēferat. Hanc Graecīs[2] cōnscrīptam[3] līt- 4
terīs mittit, nē interceptā[4] epistulā nostra ab hostibus
cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut 5
trāgulam[5] cum epistulā ad āmentum[6] dēligātā[7] intrā
620 mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In lītterīs scrībit[3] sē 6
cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore[8]; hortātur
ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum 7
veritus, ut erat praeceptum,[21] trāgulam[5] mittit. Haec 8
cāsū ad turrim adhaesit[9] neque ā nostrīs bīduō ani-
625 madversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur;
dēmpta[10] ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam[11] in 9
conventū mīlitum recitat[12] māximāque omnēs laetitiā[13]
afficit. Tum fūmī[14] incendiōrum[15] procul[16] vidēbantur, 10
quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem[17] adventūs legiōnum
630 expulit.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem
relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt.
Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā 2
facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā
635 dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit,[17] quī lītterās ad Caesarem
dēferat; hunc admonet[17] iter *cautē[18] dīligenterque
faciat; perscrībit in lītterīs hostēs ab sē discēssisse 3
omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus 4
lītterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs[19] suōs facit
640 certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat.
Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra et circiter mīlia 5
passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns *vallem[19] et rīvum[20]

[1] *letter.* [2] *Greek.* [3] Cf. line 606. [4] Cf. Eng. derivative. [5] *javelin.* [6] *thong, strap.* [7] *tie.* [8] from **adsum.** [9] (cling to) *stick in.* [10] **dēmō,** for **de-imō,** *take down.* [11] *read through;* sc. **epistulam.** [12] *quote.* [13] *joy.* [14] *smoke.* [15] *fire.* [16] *at a distance.* [17] Cf. formation. [18] adverb from participle of **caveō;** *cautiously.* [19] **vallis** (or **vallēs**), **is, f.,** *valley.* [20] *brook.* [21] *command.*

6 multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat māgnī perīculī rēs tantulīs[1] cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum[2] Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō 645 animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat: cōnsīdit 7 et, quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit atque haec, etsī erant exigua[3] per sē, vix hominum mīlium *septem,[4] praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs[5] viārum,[5] quam māximē potest 650 contrahit[6] eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem[7] 8 hostibus[8] veniat. Interim speculātōribus[9] in omnēs partēs dīmissīs explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallem[10] trānsīre possit.

50. Eō diē parvulīs[11] equestribus proeliīs[11] ad aquam 655 2 factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant; 3 Caesar, sī[12] forte[13] timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere[14] posset, ut citrā[15] vallem[10] prō castrīs proe-4 liō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrā- 660 tīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque[16] trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. 5 Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere[17] sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra al- 665 tiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī[18] atque in hīs admīnistrandīs rēbus quam māximē concursārī[19] et cum simulātiōne agī[19] timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitātī cōpiās

[1] diminutive of **tantus**; *such small.* [2] verb from **līber**. [3] *small.* [4] *seven.* [5] *by narrowing the streets (of the camp).* [6] *contract.* [7] Cf. Eng. derivative. [8] dat. of reference. [9] *spy.* [10] **vallis** (or **vallēs**), **is**, f., *valley.* [11] (very little battles) *skirmishes.* [12] *to see if.* [13] *by chance.* [14] *entice.* [15] *on this side,* i.e., on his side. [16] *brook.* [17] *yield.* [18] *block up.* [19] (impers., it to be run about) *that they should run around and act.*

670 trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla 2 intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt praecōnibusque[1] circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu[2] quis 3 Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē 675 trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Āc sīc nostrōs contempsērunt,[3] ut ob- 4 strūctīs[4] in speciem[5] portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum,[6] quod eā[7] nōn posse intrōrumpere[8] vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere,[9] aliī fossās complēre inciperent. 680 Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitā- 5 tūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnumque ex iīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.[10]

52. Longius persequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēs- 685 que intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, tēstū- 2 dinēs[11] mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus 3 690 quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae; Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque col- 4 laudat;[12] centuriōnēs singillātim[13] tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem tēstimōniō[14] Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae 695 certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne[15] 5 habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur[16] et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā[17] et temeritāte[18] lē- 6

[1] *herald.* [2] **seu**, etc., (*that*) *if any one, whether Gaul or*, etc. [3] *despise.* [4] *block.* [5] *appearance.* [6] *sod.* [7] sc. **viā**. [8] *break inside.* [9] *tear down.* [10] *strip.* [11] *shed.* [12] *praise highly.* [13] *individually.* [14] Cf. Eng. derivative. [15] *assembly;* contracted from **conventiō**. [16] Cf. Eng. derivative. [17] *fault.* [18] *rashness.*

gātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō[1] incommodō,[2] neque hostibus diūtina[3] laetitia[4] 700 neque ipsīs longior dolor[5] relinquātur.

[1] *atone for; wipe out.* [2] *defeat.* [3] *long; lasting.* [4] *joy.* [5] *grief.*

The season of 53 B.C., which is the subject of Book VI, saw no great enterprise carried out by Caesar. The Gauls were restless, and Caesar contented himself with keeping them in order and taking vengeance upon certain sections for their temerity in attacking his troops. He also crossed the Rhine for the second time, but accomplished little on the German side of the river. On the whole, this was a season of comparative quiet in Gaul, though there were signs of the great storm which was to break in the following year.

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

The Gauls form new plans for war, which is begun by the Carnutes and the Arverni at the instigation of Vercingetorix.

1. Quiētā[1] Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P. Clodiī caede,[2] dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs[3] Ītaliae coniūrārent,[4] dīlēctum[5] tōtā 5 prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trāns- 2 alpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt[1] ipsī et affingunt[6] rumōribus Gallī, quod[7] rēs pōscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō[8] mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus[1] ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī 3 10 occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs[9] inter sē prīncipēs 4 Galliae conciliīs silvestribus[10] āc remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis[11] morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs 15 recidere[12] dēmōnstrant; miserantur[13] commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus[14] āc praemiīs 5 dēpōscunt[15] quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis

[1] Cf. Eng. derivative. [2] *murder.* [3] (younger) *of military age.* [4] *take the military oath.* [5] *levy.* [6] *invent in addition to.* [7] Sc. **id** as antecedent, and object of **affingunt**, explained by **Caesarem retinērī neque posse.** [8] adj. from **urbs** (Rome). [9] *call.* [10] *wooded.* [11] *Acco,* a Gallic chief who had been put to death by Caesar for "conspiracy" the year before. [12] Cf. **accidō.** [13] *lament.* [14] *promises.* [15] **de-**, intensive.

6 perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent.[1] In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, prius quam eōrum clandestīna[2] cōnsilia efferantur,[3] ut Caesar ab exercitū 20
7 interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit;
8 *postrēmō[4] in aciē praestāre[5] interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam[6] lībertātemque, quam ā māiōribus 25 accēperint, recuperāre.[7]

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs[8] profitentur[9] Carnutēs sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre prīncipēsque[10] ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et,
2 quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn 30 possint, nē rēs efferātur, at iūre iūrandō āc fidē sanciātur[11] petunt, collātīs mīlitāribus sīgnīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia[12] continētur,[13] nē factō
3 initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum collaudātīs[14] Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, 35 tempore ēius reī cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs[12] hominibus, Cēnabum[15] sīgnō datō concurrunt cīvēsque[16] Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī[17] causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, 40 honestum[18] equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iūssū[19] Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt *bonaque[20] eōrum
2 dīripiunt.[21] Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma[22] perfertur. Nam ubi quae[23] māior atque illūstrior[24]

[1] *restore.* [2] *secret.* [3] *spread abroad.* [4] *finally.* [5] impersonal. [6] *reputation (for).* [7] *recover.* [8] *earnestly discuss.* [9] *declare.* [10] adj. use. [11] *ordain.* [12] Cf. Eng. derivative. [13] *perform.* [14] *praise highly.* [15] *Cenabum,* their chief town. [16] *citizen.* [17] *do business.* [18] *honorable.* [19] Cf. formation. [20] (goods) *property.* [21] *plunder.* [22] *story.* [23] indefinite. [24] *remarkable.*

45 incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque sīgnificant;[1] hunc aliī deinceps[2] excipiunt[3] et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta 3 essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium 50 passuum circiter centum et sexāgintā.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae[4] adulēscēns, cūius pater prīncipātum[5] tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam quod rēgnum appetēbat ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, con- 55 vocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit.[6] Cōgnitō ēius 2 cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō[7] suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēsistit tamen atque in 3 60 agrīs habet dīlēctum[8] egentium[9] āc perditōrum.[10] Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis 4 causā arma capiant, māgnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs[11] suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit 65 ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quoque[12] 5 versus[12] lēgātiōnēs; obtēstātur[13] ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, 6 Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū[4] 7 70 ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā[14] potestāte omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum

[1] Cf. Eng. derivative. [2] *in succession.* [3] ex-, *up.* [4] Cf. formation. [5] *leadership.* [6] used figuratively. [7] *uncle.* [8] *levy.* [9] *destitute.* [10] *outcast.* [11] Cf. Eng. derivative. [12] (turned each way) *in every direction.* [13] *adjure.* [14] Cf. Eng. derivative from present stem.

numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet; armōrum[1] quantum[1] quaeque cīvitās domī, quodque[2] ante[2]
8 tempus[2] efficiat, cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet.
9 Summae dīligentiae[3] summam imperiī sevēritātem[4] 75
10 addit;[4] māgnitūdine suppliciī[5] dubitantēs cōgit. Nam māiōre commissō[6] dēlictō[7] īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs[8] necat; leviōre dē causā auribus[9] dēsectīs[10] aut singulīs[11] effossīs[12] oculīs[11] domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō[13] et māgnitūdine poenae[14] perterreant 80 aliōs.

5. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae,[3] cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur.
2 Ēius adventū Biturīgēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in 85 fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius
3 hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī dē[15] cōnsiliō[15] lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt.
4 Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim[16] vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs 90 ab Aeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī domum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam[17] veritōs
5 revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliī fuisse cōgnōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arver- 95
6 nī sē circumsisterent. Id eā-*ne[18] dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārint, an perfidiā[17] adductī fēcerint, quod[19] nihil[19] nōbīs cōnstat,[19] nōn vidētur prō certō esse

[1] (how much of arms) *how many armed men.* [2] i.e., **et ante quod tempus.** [3] Cf. formation. [4] Cf. Eng. derivative. [5] *punishment.* [6] Cf. Eng. derivative from present stem. [7] *crime.* [8] *torture.* [9] *ear.* [10] *cut off.* [11] *one eye* (of each person: hence the distributive). [12] *put out.* [13] *example.* [14] *penalty.* [15] *by the advice.* [16] *Loire.* [17] *treachery.* [18] **-ne**: *whether.* [19] *because it is not at all clear.*

pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discēssū statim sē cum
100 Arvernīs coniungunt. 7

Caesar, returning from Italy, surprises the Arverni and hastens to the relief of Gergobina, a city of the Boii attacked by Vercingetorix.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās[1] rēs *virtūte[2] Cn.[3] Pompēī commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā diffi- 2
105 cultāte afficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē 3 absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī 4 ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē iīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem *rēctē[4]
110 committī vidēbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitio- 2 brogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit et māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versu[5] irrup-
115 tiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar 3 omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum[6] exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs 4 cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus,[7] Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae
120 loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit; partem cōpi- 5 ārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque[8] quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

[1] Cf. line 8. [2] *ability*. [3] *Gnaeus*. [4] (rightly) *safely*. [5] prep., *toward;* obj. is **Narbōnem**, *Narbonne*. [6] *take precedence over;* subj. is **ut . . . proficīscerētur**. [7] adj., *of the province*. [8] *reënforcement*.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō[1] iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre[2] intrā praesidia perīculōsum[3] pu- 125
2 tābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna,[4] quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit,[5] dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive[6] iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā[7] nive[6] in altitūdinem pedum sex atque ita viīs patefactīs,[8] summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnēs Arvernōrum 130
3 pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus,[9] quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, āc nē singulārī[10] quidem umquam[11] hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae[12] patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus terrōrem īnfe- 135
4 rant. Celeriter haec fāma[13] āc nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant[14] ut suīs fortūnīs *cōnsulat,[15] *neu[16] sē ab hostibus dīripī[17] patiātur; praesertim
5 cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum.[18] Quōrum 140 ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in[19] Arvernōs versus.[19]

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod[20] haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab 145 exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs prae-
2 ficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; *datūrum[21] sē *operam[21] nē longius

[1] Cf. simple verb. [2] *enter.* [3] *dangerous.* [4] *Cévennes.* [5] Cf. **inter-clūdō.** [6] *snow.* [7] *remove.* [8] *open.* [9] (unexpecting) *unexpectedly.* [10] *single.* [11] *ever.* [12] *path.* [13] *report.* [14] *entreat.* [15] *look out;* with dative. [16] i.e., **ne-ve,** *and not.* [17] *plunder.* [18] Cf. formation. [19] like Eng. *to-ward,* i.e. *toward;* cf. line 114. [20] **quod . . . supplēmentī**: *because he had conjectured that these movements would be made by Vercingetorix, on the pretext of reënforcements . . .* [21] *take pains.*

trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs[1] 3
150 inopīnantibus,[1] quam māximīs potest itineribus Viennam[2] pervenit. Ibi nactus *recentem[3] equitātum, quem 4
multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō[4] neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant ut,
155 sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduīs inīrētur cōnsiliī, celeritāte praecurreret.[5] Eō cum pervēnisset, ad 5
reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in unum locum cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. 6
Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs
160 exercitum redūcit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Aeduīsque attribuerat,[6] oppūgnāre īnstituit.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōn-
165 silium capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs[7] Aeduōrum expūgnātīs cūncta[8] Gallia dēficeret, quod[9] nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab[10] rē frūmentāriā dūrīs[11] subvec-
170 tiōnibus[11] labōrāret.[12] Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs 2
difficultātēs perpetī,[13] quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre.[14] Itaque cohor- 3
tātus Aeduōs dē supportandō[15] commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut

[1] *to the surprise of his own men;* cf. line 131. [2] the principal city of the Allobroges. [3] *rested.* [4] *during the day; day* (adj.). [5] *get ahead of; outwit.* [6] *assign.* [7] *dependent* (*states*). [8] *all.* [9] *because it* (Gaul) *would see that Caesar's friends had found no help in him.* [10] *in the matter of.* [11] (hard transportation) *difficulties in transportation;* abl. of cause. [12] *have trouble.* [13] simple verb **patior.** [14] *alienate; estrange.* [15] Cf. **sub-mittō,** V. 171, **sub-veniō,** V. 391.

in[1] fidē[1] maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō
4 sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī[2] legiōnibus atque impedī- 175
mentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs proficīscitur.

Caesar takes three towns on his march.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expedītiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre
2 īnstituit eōque bīduō circumvāllāvit;[3] tertiō diē missīs 180
ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne arma cōnferrī, iūmenta[4]
3 prōdūcī, sexcentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit, ipse ut quam prīmum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum profici-
4 scitur; quī tum prīmum allātō nūntiō dē oppūgnā- 185
tiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum[5] īrī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī[6] causā, quod
5 eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēī tempore exclūsus[7] in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt[8] quaeque ad eam 190
6 rem ūsuī sint mīlitibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in[9] armīs[9]
7 excubāre[9] iubet. Cēnabēnsēs[10] paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō[11] ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepē- 195
8 runt. Quā rē per explōrātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expedītās esse iūsserat, portīs incēnsīs, intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur, perpaucīs ex hostium numerō

[1] *loyal.* [2] loc. of **Agēdincum.** [3] *invest.* [4] *beasts of burden.* [5] *put off.* [6] *protect.* [7] Cf. Eng. derivative and **interclūdō.** [8] *defer.* [9] *lie under arms.* [10] *the inhabitants of Cenabum.* [11] (in silence) *silently.* One of the ablatives of manner used without adj. or prep. Cf. **iniūriā, commodō.**

dēsīderātīs[1] quīn cūnctī[2] caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit[3] atque incendit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat,[4] exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum fīnēs pervenit.

12. Vercingetorīx, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam[5] Caesarī proficīscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre īnstituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent ōrātum ut sibi īgnōsceret suaeque[6] vītae[6] cōnsuleret,[6] ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus, arma cōnferrī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs darī iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs mīlitibus intrōmissīs[7] quī arma iūmentaque[8] conquīrerent,[9] equitātus hostium procul[10] vīsus est, quī āgmen Vercingetorīgis antecēsserat.[11] Quem simul atque oppidānī[12] cōnspexērunt atque in spem auxiliī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere,[13] mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex sīgnificātiōne[14] Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iīs inīrī cōnsiliī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs[15] portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter quadringentōs submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre īnstituerat. Eōrum impe-

[1] *miss.* [2] *all.* [3] *plunder.* [4] *present.* [5] sc. **viam**, cognate acc., (an opposite way) *to meet.* [6] *and save their lives.* [7] *send inside; introduce.* [8] *beast of burden.* [9] simple verb, **quaerō.** [10] *in the distance.* [11] Cf. formation. [12] *townspeople.* [13] *close.* [14] *behavior.* [15] *draw.*

tum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam
3 coniectī multīs āmissīs sē ad āgmen recēpērunt. Quibus
prōflīgātīs[1] rūrsus oppidānī[2] perterritī comprehēnsōs[3]
eōs quōrum operā plēbem[4] concitātam[5] exīstimābant 230
ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt.
Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum,
quod erat māximum mūnītissimumque in fīnibus Bi-
turīgum atque agrī[6] fertilissimā regiōne,[7] profectus est,
quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in 235
potestātem redāctūrum cōnfīdēbat.

All the towns of the Bituriges except Avaricum are burned by the Gauls.

14. Vercingetorīx tot[8] continuīs incommodīs[9] Vel-
launodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad con-
2 cilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum
gerendum atque anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs 240
huīc[10] reī[10] studendum[10] ut pābulātiōne[11] et commeātū Rō-
3 mānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī
abundent[12] et quod annī tempore subleventur.[13] Pābu-
lum[14] secārī[15] nōn posse; necessāriō dīspersōs hostēs ex
4 aedificiīs petere; hōs omnēs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī[16] 245
5 posse. Praetereā salūtis causā reī[17] familiāris[17] com-
moda[17] neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendī opor-
tēre hōc spatiō quōque[18] versus,[18] quō pābulandī[19] causā
6 adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam
suppetere,[20] quod quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerātur 250

[1] *rout.* [2] *townspeople.* [3] *seize.* [4] *common people.* [5] *stir up.* [6] *country.* [7] *tract.* [8] *so many.* [9] *defeat.* [10] *it was desirable.* [11] *foraging.* [12] *be strong; be well supplied.* [13] *help.* [14] *fodder.* [15] *cut.* [16] *destroy.* [17] *personal interests.* [18] *in every direction.* [19] Cf. **pābulum,** 243, and **pābulātiō,** 241. [20] *be available.*

eōrum opibus[1] subleventur:[2] Rōmānōs aut inopiam 7
nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum perīculō longius ab castrīs
prōcēssūrōs; neque[3] interesse[3] ipsōsne[4] interficiant an 8
impedīmentīs exuant,[5] quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn
255 possit. Praetereā, oppida incendī oportēre quae nōn 9
mūnītiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint perīculō tūta,
nē suīs sint ad dētrēctandam[6] mīlitiam[7] receptācula[8]
neu Rōmānīs prōposita[9] ad cōpiam commeātūs prae-
damque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba[10] vide- 10
260 antur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, līberōs,
cōniugēs[11] in servitūtem abstrahī,[12] ipsōs interficī; quae
sit necesse accidere victīs.

15. Omnium cōnsēnsū[12] hāc sententiā probātā ūnō
diē amplius vīgintī urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc 2
265 idem fit in reliquīs cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus
incendia[13] cōnspiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolōre[14]
omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlācii[15] prōpōnēbant,
quod sē prope explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa re-
cuperātūrōs[16] cōnfīdēbant. Dēlīberātur[17] dē Avaricō in 3
270 commūnī conciliō, incendī placeat[18] an dēfendī. Prōcum- 4
bunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherri-
mam[19] prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et
ōrnāmentō[17] sit cīvitātī, suīs manibus succendere[20] cō-
gantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod, 5
275 prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circum-
datā, ūnum habeat et perangustum[21] aditum. Datur 6
petentibus venia,[22] dissuādente[17] prīmō Vercingetorīge,

[1] *resources.* [2] *help.* [3] *and it made no difference.* [4] -ne, *whether.* [5] *strip.* [6] *escape.* [7] *military service.* [8] *refuge.* [9] *present.* [10] *bitter.* [11] *wife.* [12] Cf. formation. [13] *fire.* [14] *grief.* [15] *comfort.* [16] *recover.* [17] Cf. Eng. derivative. [18] *whether it would best.* [19] *beautiful.* [20] Cf. **incendō.** [21] **per-**, intensive. [22] *permission.*

post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs[1] oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

[Caesar immediately lays siege to Avaricum and, in spite of great difficulty in provisioning his army and an ingenious and vigorous defence by the garrison, finally takes it; his soldiers kill all but eight hundred of its forty thousand inhabitants, "sparing neither men, women, nor children of any age." Vercingetorix is charged with treason in connection with the loss of Avaricum, but defends himself so successfully that his hold upon the Gauls becomes even stronger.

Dissensions arise among the Aedui, two men claiming the office of "vergobret." In settling the case Caesar necessarily offends one party. He lays siege to Gergovia, but further trouble among the Aedui compels him to march toward the Aedui with part of his forces, and the rest narrowly escape disaster in his absence. In trying to seize an outlying ridge his soldiers become over-eager to do more, and seven hundred men, including nearly seventy centurions, are lost. The siege has to be abandoned owing to still greater evidences of disloyalty among the Aedui, for nothing seems able to stop the spirit of revolt which is spreading through Gaul.

Labienus conducts a successful campaign in the vicinity of Paris, but he and Caesar are relieved of anxiety for each other only when they have united their forces in the territory of the Senones.]

Almost all the Gauls revolt; they make Vercingetorix commander-in-chief. Caesar defeats them in a cavalry battle.

63. Dēfectiōne[1] Aeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. 280
2 Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum[2] grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā[3] valent,[2] ad sollicitandās[4]
3 cīvitātēs ūtuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō[5] dubitantēs territant.[6]

[1] Cf. formation. [2] *as far as they can.* [3] *money.* [4] *stir up.* [5] *punishment.* [6] *terrify.*

285 Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Aeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet.[1] Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperiī trādātur; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur.[2] Conveniunt undique frequentēs.[3] 290 Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs[4] rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit 295 causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū;[5] queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam[1] requīrunt;[6] neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre[1 and 7] audent. 300 Invītī summae speī[8] adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercingetorīgī parent.[9]

64. Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs; dēnique eī reī cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, quīndecim mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet: peditātū, quem 305 ante habuerit sē fore contentum[1] dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed quoniam abundet[10] equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus[11] pābulātiōnibusque[12] Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant[13] aedificiaque in- 310 cendant; quā reī familiāris iactūrā[14] perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Aeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae,

[1] Cf. Eng. derivative. [2] *call.* [3] *in great numbers.* [4] *vote.* [5] *leadership.* [6] *recall.* [7] Cf. formation. [8] *ambition.* [9] *obey.* [10] *be strong;* first conjugation. [11] *getting grain.* [12] *foraging.* [13] *destroy;* imperative in ind. dis. [14] *loss.*

decem mīlia peditum imperat; hūc[1] addit equitēs
5 octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis[2] bel-
6 lumque īnferre Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte 315
Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs,
item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum Areco-
7 micōrum dēpopulandōs[3] mittit. Nihilō minus clan-
destīnīs[4] nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat,[5]
quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse[6] 320
8 spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās,[7] cīvitātī autem
imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia
cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prō-
vinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēban- 325
2 tur.[8] Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī
pelluntur et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī fīliō, prīn-
cipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā
3 oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad
Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs māgnā cum cūrā et 330
4 dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur.[9] Caesar, quod hostēs
equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs om-
nibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sub-
levārī[10] poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad
eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equi- 335
tēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae[11] peditēs, quī
5 inter eōs proeliārī[12] cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod
minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur,[13] ā tribūnīs mīlitum
reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque *ēvocātīs[14] equōs
sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.[15] 340

[1] (hither) *to these.* [2] one of the Aedui who had led the revolt. [3] *lay waste.* [4] *secret.* [5] *stir up.* [6] (settle down) *become quiet.* [7] *money.* [8] op-, *in opposition.* [9] *protect.* [10] *help.* [11] *armor.* [12] *fight in battle.* [13] (were using) *had.* [14] (those called out) *veterans.* [15] Cf. Eng. derivative.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar 2 in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret,
345 quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs[1] castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit, convocātīsque ad cōnsilium prae- 3 fectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id 4
350 sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium[2] parum prōficī;[3] māiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs; proinde in āgmine impedītōs adoriantur; sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō
355 morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis 5 futūrum cōnfīdat, relictīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant,[4] et ūsū rērum[5] necessāriārum[5] et dīgnitāte spoliātum īrī.[6] Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō 6 eōrum prōgredī modo extrā āgmen audeat, nē ipsōs
360 quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō[7] māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī[8] hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant equitēs, sānctis- 7 simō[9] iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre, nē tēctō[10] recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs,[8] nē ad
365 uxōrem[11] aditum habeat, quī nōn *bis[12] per āgmen hostium perequitārit.[13]

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū

[1] Distributive adj. regularly used to indicate a plural sense with **castra**; *three*. [2] *quiet*. [3] *accomplish*. [4] *look out* (*for*). [5] *necessities*. [6] *deprive*. [7] like **quō** in line 345. [8] Cf. English derivative. [9] *sacred*. [10] (a thing covered, cover) *roof*. [11] *wife*. [12] *twice*. [13] *ride* (*through*).

duae sē aciēs ab[1] duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā[1]
2 prīmō āgmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā 370
Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertītō[2] dīvīsum
contrā hostem īre iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in
3 partibus. Cōnsistit āgmen; impedīmenta inter legi-
4 ōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut
gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna īnferrī Caesar aci- 375
emque convertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnse-
quendum tardābat[3] et nostrōs spē auxiliī cōnfīrmābat.
5 Tandem Germānī ab[1] dextrō latere summum iugum
nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt: fugientēs ūsque[4] ad flū-
men, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōn- 380
6 sēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā
rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē
7 fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs.[5] Trēs nō-
bilissimī Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus,
praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam[6] cum Convic- 385
tolitave proximīs[7] comitiīs[8] habuerat, et Cavarillus,
quī post dēfectiōnem[9] Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs
praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum
Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix retires to Alesia, which Caesar proceeds to invest.

68. Fugātō[10] omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās 390
suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque[11]
Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere
coepit celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē
2 subsequī iūssit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum col-

[1] Abl. of the point of view; *on* or *at*. [2] from **trēs** and **pars**. [3] *check*. [4] *even; clear*. [5] *slaughter*. [6] Cf. English derivative. [7] *last*. [8] *election;* no singular. [9] Cf. formation. [10] *put to flight*. [11] (forthwith) *immediately*.

395 lem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō āgmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū[1] perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā māximē parte exer- 3
400 citūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre[2] īnstituit.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum[3] ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus 2
405 flūmina subluēbant.[4] Ante oppidum plānitiēs[5] circiter 3 mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem[6] patēbat; reliquīs ex 4 omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī[7] interiectō[7] spatiō,[7] parī[8] altitūdinis[8] fāstīgiō[8] oppidum cingēbant. Sub 5 mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat,
410 hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam[9] in altitūdinem sex pedum praedūxerant.[10] Ēius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs 6 īnstituēbātur circuitus ūndecim mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita octōna[11] castella- 7
415 que tria et vīgintī facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū[12] statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō[13] fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus[14] āc fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plā-
420 nitiē quam intermissam[15] collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs 2

[1] *site; situation.* [2] *invest.* [3] *very.* [4] *wash.* [5] *plain.* [6] Cf. formation. [7] *with a moderate space between them.* [8] (characterized by a summit equal in height) *equally high.* [9] *wall.* [10] *construct.* [11] *eight;* see line 346. [12] *during the day.* [13] *sortie.* [14] *sentinel.* [15] *unbroken.*

Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat.
3 Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs[1] animus augētur; ho- 425
stēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt at-
4 que angustiōribus portīs relictīs[2] coartantur.[3] Germānī
5 ācrius ūsque[4] ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs;[5] nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam[6] trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Cae- 430
6 sar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant;
7 nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt.[7] Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī,[8] nē castra nūdentur. Mul- 435
tīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends out his cavalry to summon all Gaul to his relief.

71. Vercingetorīx, prius quam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equi-
2 tātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam 440
quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetā-
3 tem[9] arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs *merita[10] prōpōnit obtēstāturque ut suae[11] salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē[11] optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīli- 445
gentiōrēs[12] fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta octōgintā ūnā
4 sēcum interitūra[13] dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē[14] diērum trīgintā habēre, sed paulō etiam

[1] Dat. of reference. [2] i.e., when the walls were built. [3] *crowd together.* [4] *even; clear.* [5] *slaughter.* [6] *wall.* [7] *burst (into).* [8] *close.* [9] *age.* [10] *services.* [11] referring to Vercingetorix. [12] *too negligent.* [13] *perish.* [14] *barely.*

longius tolerārī[1] posse[1] parcendō.[2] Hīs datīs mandātīs, 5
450 quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō[3] equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē 6 referrī iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn paruerint[4] cōnstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs 7 compulsa, virītim[5] distribuit; frūmentum parcē[6] et
455 paulātim mētīrī[7] īnstituit. Cōpiās omnēs quās prō 8 oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

[Caesar constructs fortifications as follows: First, nearest the town, a ditch twenty feet deep, with perpendicular sides. Four hundred feet back of these, two ditches fifteen feet wide and deep, one of them filled wherever possible with water turned from one of the rivers. Then the usual wall of earth surmounted by a rampart twelve feet high, with breastworks and parapets, and chevaux-de-frise at the base. The space between the first ditch and the others was dotted with holes, some containing tree trunks and strong branches sharpened to a point ("wolf pits"), others with small round sharpened stakes projecting about four inches from the bottom ("lilies"). Also iron bars with hooks on the end ("spurs") were driven down promiscuously between these holes.

Similar fortifications were made outside the Roman lines also, against the relieving army. And with thirty days' provisions on hand, having practically walled in himself as well as the garrison of Alesia, Caesar awaited the course of events.]

The relief army is raised and marches toward Alesia.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut
460 cēnsuit[8] Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt,[9] sed cer-

[1] *they could hold out.* [2] *spare.* [3] Cf. line 195. [4] *obey.* [5] (man by man) *individually.* [6] *sparingly.* [7] *measure out.* [8] *direct.* [9] *decide.*

tum numerum cuīque cīvitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā[1] nec moderārī[2] nec discernere[3] suōs
2 nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, mīlia trīgintā quīnque; 465
parem numerum Arvernīs adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse
3 cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna[4] mīlia; Bellovacīs decem; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna[5] Pictonibus et Turonīs et 470
Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna[6] Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; quattuor Veliocassīs; [Lexoviīs et] Aulercīs Eburovīci-
4 bus tria; Rauracīs et Bōiīs *bīna[7]; decem ūniversīs[8] 475
cīvitātibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs,
5 Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nō- 480
mine atque arbitriō[9] cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs[10]; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō ēius hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

76. Hūius operā[11] Commiī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, 485
fidēlī[12] atque *ūtilī[13] superiōribus annīs erat ūsus[14] in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem ēius immūnem[15] esse iūsserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī
2 Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae[16] Galliae

[1] *assemble.* [2] *control.* [3] *distinguish.* [4] *twelve each.* [5] *eight each.* [6] *six each.* [7] *two each.* [8] *all together.* [9] *discretion.* [10] *obey.* [11] *help.* [12] *faithful.* [13] *useful.* [14] *find.* [15] *exempt* (from tribute). [16] *all.*

490 cōnsēnsiō[1] fuit lībertātis vindicandae[1] et prīstinae bellī laudis[2] recuperandae[3] ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus[4] in id bellum incumberent.[5] Coāctīs equitum mīlibus 3 octō et peditum circiter ducentīs et quīnquāgintā, haec 495 in Aeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur,[6] numerusque inībātur,[7] praefectī cōnstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsōbrīnō[8] Vercingetorīgis, summa imperiī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur[9] quō- 4 500 rum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et 5 fīdūciae[10] plēnī[11] ad Alesiam proficīscuntur; neque erat 6 omnium quisquam quī āspectum[12] modo[12] tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne[13] pūgnārētur, forīs[14] 505 tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.[15]

The speech of Critognatus in Alesia.

77. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur,[16] praeteritā[17] diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī[18] quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū[19] suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant.[20] Āc 2 510 variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent,[21] ēruptiōnem[13] cēnsēbat,[22] nōn praetereunda[17] ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem[23] et nefāriam[24] crūdēlitātem.[25] Hīc summō 3

[1] *unanimity for winning back.* [2] *glory.* [3] *recover.* [4] *resources.* [5] *bend one's energies.* [6] *muster.* [7] *record.* [8] *cousin.* [9] *assign.* [10] *confidence.* [11] *full.* [12] *the mere sight.* [13] *sortie.* [14] *outside* (of the Roman works). [15] *see.* [16] *besiege.* [17] *pass.* [18] *not knowing.* [19] *outcome.* [20] *confer.* [21] *remain.* [22] *vote for.* [23] *unique.* [24] *abominable.* [25] *cruelty.*

in Arvernīs ortus[1] locō et māgnae habitus auctōri-
tātis: 'Nihil,' inquit,[2] 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus 515
sum quī turpissimam[3] servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine
appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad
4 concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi[4] rēs[4] est[4]
quī ēruptiōnem[5] probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium
vestrum cōnsēnsū[6] prīstinae residēre[7] virtūtis memoria 520
5 vidētur. Animī est[8] ista[8] mollitia,[8] nōn virtūs, paulisper
inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī offerant[9]
facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem[10] *patienter[9] fe-
6 rant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem[11] (tantum[12]
apud mē dīgnitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam[13] vītae 525
7 nostrae iactūram[14] fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capi-
endō omnem Galliam respiciāmus,[15] quam ad nostrum
8 auxilium concitāvimus.[16] Quid,[17] hominum mīlibus octō-
gintā ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque
nostrīs animī[17] fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadā- 530
9 veribus[18] proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte[19] hōs vestrō
auxiliō exspoliāre[19] quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perī-
culum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā[20] āc temeritāte[21] vestrā
aut animī imbecillitāte[22] omnem Galliam prōsternere[23] et
10 perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn 535
vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid
ergō?[24] Rōmānōs in illīs ūlteriōribus mūnītiōnibus ani-
11 mīne[25] causā[25] cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum[26] nūn-
tiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō,[27] hīs

[1] *born.* [2] *say.* [3] *disgraceful.* [4] *I am concerned.* [5] *sortie.* [6] *agreement.* [7] *remain.* [8] *it* (that) *is weakness.* [9] Cf. Eng. derivative. [10] *suffering.* [11] *would approve.* [12] *so much weight does their standing have with me.* [13] *except.* [14] *loss.* [15] *let us consider.* [16] *arouse.* [17] *what feelings.* [18] *dead body.* [19] (be unwilling to deprive) *do not deprive.* [20] *foolishness.* [21] *rashness.* [22] *feebleness.* [23] *overthrow.* [24] (therefore) *then.* [25] *for their health.* [26] i.e., the other Gauls. [27] *cut off.*

540 ūtiminī tēstibus[1] appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō[2] meī cōnsiliī est? Facere quod nostrī 12 māiōrēs nequāquam[3] parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī āc similī inopiā 545 subāctī,[4] eōrum corporibus quī aetāte[5] ad bellum inūtilēs[6] vidēbantur vītamt olerāvērunt[7] neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius reī sī[8] exemplum nōn habērēmus,[8] 13 tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī[9] et posterīs prōdī[9] pulcherrimum[9] iūdicārem.[9] Nam quid[10] illī simile bellō fuit? 550 Dēpopulātā[11] Galliā Cimbrī māgnāque illātā calamitāte 14 fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō[12] excēssērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut 15 quid volunt, nisi invidiā[13] adductī, quōs fāmā[14] nōbilēs 555 potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam[15] iniungere[16] servitūtem? Neque enim umquam[17] aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nāti- 16 ōnibus geruntur īgnōrātis,[18] respicite fīnitimam Galliam, 560 quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs,[19] secūribus[20] subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.'

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine[21] aut aetāte[5] inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam

[1] *witness.* [2] (therefore) *then.* [3] *by no means;* with **parī**. [4] *constrain.* [5] *age.* [6] *useless.* [7] *sustain.* [8] *if we did not have an example.* [9] *I should judge (that) one was being set and handed down as a glorious act.* [10] *What similarity had that war (to this)?* [11] *ravage.* [12] *after a while.* [13] *envy.* [14] *reputation.* [15] Cf. Eng. derivative. [16] *impose.* [17] *ever.* [18] *do not know.* [19] *change.* [20] *the axes (of the lictors)*, symbols of Roman power. [21] *illness.*

2 dēscendant:[1] illō tamen potius[2] ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs 565
cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut
3 pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs
oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus[3] exīre
4 cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accēs-
sissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in ser- 570
5 vitūtem receptōs *cibō[4] iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs
in vāllō cūstōdiīs[5] recipī prohibēbat.

Caesar repulses attacks from both sides.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus sum-
ma imperiī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad
Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn 575
longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt.
2 Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plā-
nitiem, quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum tria patēre
dēmōnstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum
ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. 580
3 Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus[6] in campum.[7] Con-
currunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit[8] grātulātiō inter eōs[8] atque
4 omnium animī ad laetitiam[9] excitantur.[10] Itaque prō-
ductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsistunt et proximam fos-
sam crātibus[11] integunt[12] atque *aggere[13] explent[14] sēque 585
ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnī-
tiōnum dispositō, ut, sī *ūsus[15] veniat, suum quisque
locum teneat et *nōverit,[16] equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et
2 proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae 590

[1] *resort.* [2] *rather.* [3] *wife.* [4] *food.* [5] *guard.* [6] *view.* [7] *plain.* [8] *they congratulate each other.* [9] *joy.* [10] Cf. Eng. derivative. [11] *brush.* [12] *cover.* [13] *bridge.* [14] Cf. **compleō.** [15] *need.* [16] perf. tense of **(g)nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum,** (become acquainted with) *know.*

summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus,[1] atque
omnēs mīlitēs intentī[2] pūgnae prōventum[3] exspectābant.
Gallī inter equitēs rārōs[4] sagittāriōs[5] expedītōsque levis 3
armātūrae[6] interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō
595 succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinē-
rent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proeliō
excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī 4
cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex
omnibus partibus et iī quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur
600 et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū[7]
suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū 5
omnium rēs gerēbātur neque[8] rēctē aut turpiter factum
cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis[9] cupiditās[10] et timor
īgnōminiae[11] ad virtūtem excitābat.[2] Cum ā merīdiē[12] 6
605 prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā[13] victōriā pūgnārētur,
Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs[14] in hostēs
impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam 7
coniectīs sagittāriī[5] circumventī interfectīque sunt.
Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs ūsque[15] ad ca- 8
610 stra īnsecūtī suī colligendī[16] facultātem nōn dedērunt. 9
At iī quī Alesiā prōcēsserant, maestī[17] prope victōriā
dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī, atque hōc spatiō māgnō
crātium,[18] scālārum,[19] harpagōnum[20] numerō effectō,
615 mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs[21]
mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā 2
sīgnificātiōne[22] quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō ad-

[1] *view.* [2] Cf. Eng. derivative. [3] *outcome.* [4] *scattered.* [5] *archer.* [6] *armor.* [7] *yell.* [8] (and nothing done rightly or disgracefully) *and no brave or cowardly act.* [9] *praise.* [10] Cf. formation. [11] *disgrace.* [12] *noon.* [13] *doubtful.* [14] *squadron; troop.* [15] *even; clear.* [16] *collect.* [17] *sad.* [18] *fascine.* [19] *ladder.* [20] *hooks for tearing down walls.* [21] *in the plain.* [22] *signal.*

ventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs[1] prōicere, fundīs,[2] *sagittīs,[3] lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre[4] reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. 620
3 Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum
4 suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuīque erat locus attribūtus,[5] ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs[6] lībrīlibus[6] sudibusque[7] quās in opere disposuerant āc glandibus[8] Gallōs prō- 625
5 terrent.[9] Prōspectū[10] tenebrīs[11] adēmptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs[12] tēla
6 cōniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant,[13] quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex 630 ūlteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine telōrum prōficiēbant;[14] posteā quam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs[15] inopīnantēs[16] induēbant[17] aut in scrobēs[18] dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur[19] aut ex vāllō āc 635
2 turribus trāiectī[20] pīlīs mūrālibus[21] interībant.[22] Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret,[23] veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad
3 suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Ver- 640 cingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt,
4 priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs discēssisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā[24] in oppidum revertērunt. 645

[1] *fascine.* [2] *sling.* [3] **sagitta, ae,** *arrow.* [4] *drive off.* [5] *assign.* [6] *stones weighing a pound each* (thrown from slings). [7] *stake.* [8] *leaden slug.* [9] *scare off.* [10] *sight.* [11] *darkness.* [12] *engines.* [13] *be assigned.* [14] *be successful.* [15] "*spur.*" [16] *unexpectedly.* [17] *impale.* [18] "*wolf-pit.*" [19] *pierce.* [20] *transfix.* [21] *thrown from the walls.* [22] *perish.* [23] *approach.* [24] *unaccomplished.*

The final effort of the Gauls.

83. Bis[1] māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs[2] mūnītiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitū- 2
650 dinem circuitūs opere circumplectī[3] nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter[4] dēclīvī[5] castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Ca- 3 nīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium 4
655 sexāgintā mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pāctō[6] agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt[2] cum merīdiēs[7] esse 5 videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, 6
660 ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, 7 prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit[8] mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere[9] iūssit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, 8
665 ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs[10] mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce[11] Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus
670 ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs,[12] longuriōs,[13] mūsculōs,[14] falcēs[15] reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia 2

[1] *twice.* [2] Cf. Eng. derivative. [3] *include; surround.* [4] *gently.* [5] *sloping downward.* [6] *manner.* [7] Cf. line 604. [8] *hide.* [9] *refresh.* [10] *in the plain.* [11] *citadel.* [12] *fascine.* [13] *long pole.* [14] *movable shed.* [15] *hook.*

temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc con-
3 curritur. Rōmānōrum *manus[1] tantīs mūnītiōnibus dis-
4 tinētur[2] nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad 675
terrendōs[3] nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pū-
gnantibus[4] exsistit,[5] quod suum perīculum[6] in aliēnā[7]
5 vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae
absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in 680
parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium sub-
2 mittit. Utrīsque[4] ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud
3 tempus, quō māximē contendī conveniat:[8] Gallī, nisi
perfrēgerint[9] mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant;
Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium ex- 685
4 spectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur,
quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inī-
quum[10] locī ad dēclīvitātem fāstīgium māgnum habet
5 mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōiciunt, aliī tēstūdine factā sub-
6 eunt; dēfatīgātīs[11] in vicem integrī succēdunt.[11] Agger[12] 690
ab ūniversīs[13] in mūnītiōnem cōniectus et āscēnsum dat
Gallīs et ea quae in terrā occultāverant[14] Rōmānī con-
tegit;[15] nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.[16]

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum
2 cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, 695
sī sustinēre nōn possit dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne
3 pūgnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs,
cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant;[17] omnium superiōrum
dīmicātiōnum[18] frūctum[19] in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōn-

[1] *force.* [2] Cf. composition. [3] Cf. perterreō. [4] dative of reference. [5] (exist) *be heard.* [6] Eng. idiom, *safety.* [7] *another's.* [8] impers.; *it is fitting.* [9] *break through.* [10] *The unfavorable downward slope gives great advantage* (*to the enemy*). [11] *fresh* (*forces*) *in turn succeed the weary.* [12] *earth.* [13] *all* (*the Gauls*). [14] *hide.* [15] *cover.* [16] *remain.* [17] *give way under.* [18] Cf. formation. [19] (fruit) *reward.*

700 sistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnītiōnum loca praerupta[1] āscēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs[2] dēturbant,[3] aggere[4] et crātibus[5] fossās explent, falcibus[6] vāllum āc 705 lōrīcam[7] rescindunt.[8]

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs[9] subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hosti- 710 bus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs[10] neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, 715 coāctīs ūndecim cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fōrs[11] obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat[12] Caesar ut proeliō intersit.[13]

88. Ēius adventū ex colōre vestītūs[14] cōgnitō, [quō 720 īnsīgnī[15] in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat,] turmīsque[16] equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iūsserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia[17] et dēvexa[18] cernēbantur,[19] hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit[20] rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus 725 clāmor. Nostrī ēmissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repentē post tergum equitātus cernitur;[19] cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus

[1] *steep.* [2] *defender.* [3] *drive off.* [4] *earth.* [5] *fascine.* [6] *hook.* [7] *parapet.* [8] *tear down.* [9] *fresh.* [10] *rampart.* [11] *chance.* [12] *hasten.* [13] *take part in.* [14] *dress,* i.e., his purple or scarlet military cloak. [15] *decoration.* [16] *squadron.* [17] *slope.* [18] *hillside.* [19] *see;* pass. *be in sight.* [20] *reëcho.*

4 equitēs occurrunt. Fit māgna caedēs.[1] Sedulius, dūx et prīnceps Lemovīcum occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus[2] in fugā comprehenditur;[3] sīgna mīli- 730 tāria *septuāgintā[4] quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt.
5 Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prō-
6 tinus[5] hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod[6] 735 nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs āc tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent
7 dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī[7] potuissent.[7] Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum āgmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt. 740

The surrender of Vercingetorix.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum[8] sed com-
2 mūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae *cēdendum,[9] ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satis facere seu vīvum trādere velint. 745
3 Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma
4 trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit;[10] eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorīx dēditur;
5 arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī[11] per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre[12] posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs 750 tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Aeduōs proficīscitur;
2 cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum

[1] *slaughter.* [2] *alive.* [3] *take.* [4] *seventy.* [5] (forthwith) *immediately.* [6] *so that.* [7] *could have been destroyed.* [8] *interests.* [9] *yield.* [10] *take position.* [11] *to see if.* [12] *recover.*

755 numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captī- 3
vōrum circiter vīgintī mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.
T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sē- 4
quanōs proficīscī iubet; huīc M. Sempronium Rutilum
attribuit.[1] C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basi- 5
760 lum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam
ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antis- 6
tium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturī-
gēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs
legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sul- 7
765 picium Cavillōnī[2] et Matiscōne[2] in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī
frūmentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte[2] hiemāre
cōnstituit. Hīs [rēbus ex Caesaris lītterīs] cōgnitīs 8
Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō[3] redditur.

[The surrender of Vercingetorix was the climax of the war. No subsequent revolt of the Gauls equalled in importance any of the events of the fifth or seventh years. The history of the two years following are related by Hirtius, an officer in Caesar's army. The Bellovaci made good their declaration (VII, 75, 5) and took the field, but were conquered without the use of Caesar's entire force. Most of the operations were intrusted to the *legati*, with two or three legions each. The last stand was made in Aquitania, where a large force of Gauls was shut up in Uxellodunum. Realizing that his work of subjugation and pacification must be completed immediately and permanently, Caesar went to take personal charge of the siege.]

[1] *assign.* [2] locative. [3] *thanksgiving* (to the gods).

A. HIRTII

COMMENTARIUS OCTAVUS

40. (Caesar) cum contrā exspectātiōnem omnium Uxellodūnum vēnisset oppidumque operibus clausum[1] animadverteret neque ab oppūgnātiōne recēdī vidēret ūllā condīciōne posse, māgnā autem cōpiā frūmentī abundāre[2] oppidānōs[3] ex perfugīs[4] cōgnōsset, aquā pro- 5
2 hibēre hostem temptāre coepit. Flūmen īnfimam vallem dīvidēbat, quae tōtum paene montem cingēbat, in quō positum erat praeruptum[5] undique oppidum
3 Uxellodūnum. Flūmen āvertere locī nātūra prohibēbat; in īnfimīs enim sīc rādīcibus montis ferēbātur, ut 10
4 nūllam in partem dēpressīs fossīs dērīvārī[6] posset. Erat autem oppidānīs difficilis et praeruptus[7] eō dēscēnsus, ut prohibentibus nostrīs sine vulneribus āc perīculō vītae[8] neque adīre flūmen neque arduō[9] sē recipere pos-
5 sent āscēnsū. Quā difficultāte eōrum cōgnitā Caesar 15 sagittāriīs[10] funditōribusque[11] dispositīs, tormentīs[12] etiam quibusdam locīs contrā facillimōs dēscēnsūs collocātīs aquā flūminis prohibēbat oppidānōs.

41. Quōrum omnis posteā multitūdō aquātum[13] in ūnum locum conveniēbat sub ipsīus oppidī mūrum, 20 ubi māgnus fōns[14] aquae prōrumpēbat[15] ab eā parte, quae

[1] *enclosed.* [2] *be well supplied.* [3] *townspeople.* [4] *deserter.* [5] (broken off) *inaccessible.* [6] *draw off.* [7] *abrupt.* [8] *life.* [9] *steep.* [10] *archer.* [11] *slinger.* [12] *engine.* [13] from **aquor, ārī**, *get water.* [14] *spring.* [15] *break forth.*

ferē pedum CCC intervāllō flūminis circuitū vacābat. Hōc fonte prohibērī posse oppidānōs cum optārent[1] reliquī, Caesar ūnus vidēret, ē[2] regiōne[2] ēius[2] vīneās agere adversus[3] montem et aggerem exstruere[4] coepit māgnō cum labōre et continuā dīmicātiōne. Oppidānī enim locō superiōre dēcurrunt et ēminus[5] sine perīculō proeliantur[6] multōsque pertināciter[7] succēdentēs vulnerant; nōn dēterrentur tamen mīlitēs nostrī vīneās prōferre et labōre atque operibus locōrum vincere difficultātēs. Eōdem tempore cunīculōs[8] tēctōs[8] ad vēnās[9] agunt et caput fontis, quod genus operis sine ūllō perīculō, sine sūspīciōne hostium facere licēbat. Exstruitur agger in altitūdinem pedum LX, collocātur in eō turris X tabulātōrum,[10] nōn quidem quae moenibus[11] adaequāret, — id enim nūllīs operibus efficī poterat, — sed quae superāret fontis fāstīgium.[12] Ex eā cum tēla tormentīs iacerentur ad fontis aditum nec sine perīculō possent aquārī oppidānī, nōn tantum pecora atque iūmenta,[13] sed etiam māgna hominum multitūdō sitī[14] cōnsūmēbātur.

42. Quō malō perterritī oppidānī cūpās[15] sēbō,[16] pice,[17] scandulīs[18] complent; eās ārdentēs[19] in opera prōvolvunt[20] eōdemque tempore acerrimē proeliantur, ut ab incendiō restinguendō[21] dīmicātiōnis perīculō dēterreant Rōmānōs. Māgna repente in ipsīs operibus flamma exsistit. Quaecumque enim per locum praecipitem missa erant, ea vīneīs et aggere suppressa[22] comprehendēbant[23] id ipsum, quod morābātur. Mīlitēs contrā

[1] *wish.* [2] *opposite it.* [3] prep., *toward.* [4] *build.* [5] *from a distance.* [6] *fight.* [7] *boldly.* [8] *tunnel, underground passage.* [9] *vein.* [10] *platform, story.* [11] *walls.* [12] *elevation.* [13] *beast of burden.* [14] *thirst;* abl. [15] *cask, tub.* [16] *suet.* [17] *pitch.* [18] *shingle.* [19] *blaze.* [20] *roll down.* [21] *put out.* [22] *stop.* [23] *seize,* i.e., *set on fire.*

nostrī, quamquam[1] perīculōsō[2] genere proeliī locōque 50
inīquō premēbantur, tamen omnia fortissimō sustinē-
4 bant animō. Rēs enim gerēbātur excelsō[3] locō et in
cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, māgnusque utrimque clā-
mor oriēbātur. Itaque quisque, prout[4] erat māximē
īnsīgnis, quō nōtior tēstātiorque[5] virtūs esset ēius, 55
tēlis hostium flammaeque sē offerēbat.

43. Caesar cum complūrēs suōs vulnerārī vidēret,
ex omnibus oppidī partibus cohortēs montem āscen-
dere et simulātiōne moenium occupandōrum clāmōrem
2 undique iubet tollere. Quō factō perterritī oppidānī, 60
cum quid agerētur in locīs reliquīs essent suspēnsī,[6]
revocant ab impūgnandīs operibus armātōs in mūrīs-
3 que dispōnunt. Ita nostrī fīne proeliī factō celeriter
opera flammā comprehēnsa partim restinguunt, partim
4 interscindunt.[7] Cum pertināciter resisterent oppidānī, 65
māgnā etiam parte āmissā sitī suōrum in sententiā per-
manērent, ad postrēmum cunīculīs vēnae fontis inter-
5 cīsae sunt atque āversae. Quō factō repente perennis[8]
exāruit[9] fōns tantamque attulit oppidānīs salūtis dē-
spērātiōnem, ut id nōn hominum cōnsiliō, sed deōrum[10] 70
voluntāte factum putārent. Itaque sē necessitāte
coāctī trādidērunt.

44. Caesar, cum suam lēnitātem cōgnitam omnibus
scīret neque verērētur nē quid crūdēlitāte nātūrae
vidērētur asperius fēcisse, neque exitum cōnsiliōrum 75
suōrum animadverteret, sī tālī[11] ratiōne dīversīs[12] in
locīs plūrēs cōnsilia inīssent, exemplō[13] suppliciī dēter-
rendōs reliquōs exīstimāvit. Itaque omnibus,[14] quī arma

[1] *although.* [2] *dangerous.* [3] *high.* [4] *in proportion as.* [5] *witnessed.* [6] *doubtful.* [7] *tear down.* [8] *never failing.* [9] *dry up.* [10] *god.* [11] *such.* [12] *different.* [13] *example.* [14] dat. of reference.

tulerant, manūs praecīdit[1] vītamque concēssit, quō
80 tēstātior[2] esset poena imprŏbōrum.[3]

. . . .

49. Caesar in Belgio cum hiemāret, ūnum illud prōpositum habēbat, continēre in amīcitiā cīvitātēs, nūllī spem aut causam dare armōrum. Nihil enim 2 minus volēbat quam sub[4] dēcēssum suum necessitātem
85 sibi aliquam impōnī bellī gerendī, nē, cum exercitum dēductūrus esset, bellum aliquod relinquerētur, quod omnis Gallia libenter sine praesentī perīculō susciperet. Itaque honōrificē[5] cīvitātēs appellandō, principēs māxi- 3 mīs praemiīs afficiendō, nūlla onera nova iniungendō[6]
90 dēfessam tot[7] adversīs proeliīs Galliam condīciōne pārendī[8] meliōre facile in pāce continuit.

[1] *cut off.* [2] *more evident.* [3] *wicked.* [4] *just before.* [5] *with respect.* [6] *impose.* [7] *as many.* [8] (obeying) *obedience.*

GALLORUM, GERMANORUM, BRITANNORUM DESCRIPTIO

The Suebi.

B. G. IV. 1. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima[1] Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs[2] singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt;[3] hī rūrsus in[4] vicem[4] annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra[5] nec ratiō[6] atque ūsus[7] bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī[8] agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī[9] causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem[10] *lacte[11] atque pecore[12] vīvunt[13] multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus;[14] quae rēs et cibī[15] genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut dīsciplīnā[16] assuēfactī[17] nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit[18] et immānī[19] corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt,[20] ut locīs frīgidissimīs[21] neque vestītūs[22] praeter pellēs habērent

[1] *warlike.* [2] *yearly; every year.* [3] (nourish) *support.* [4] *in turn.* [5] *cultivation.* [6] *theory.* [7] *practise.* [8] Cf. derivation or Eng. derivative. [9] *live.* [10] adv. acc. [11] **lāc, lactis**, n., *milk.* [12] *meat.* [13] *live.* [14] *hunting.* [15] *food.* [16] *training.* [17] *accustom.* [18] (nourish); *increase.* [19] *immense.* [20] i.e., *they have accustomed themselves.* [21] *cold.* [22] *clothing;* gen. with **quicquam**, page 66.

quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem[1] māgna est
20 corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur[2] in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae[3] bellō cēperint, quibus[4] vēndant, habeant, quam quō[5] ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent.[6] Quīn[7] etiam[7] iūmen- 2 tīs,[8] quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur,[9] quaeque
25 impēnsō[10] parant[11] pretiō, [Germānī] importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia,[12] haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut[13] sint[13] labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex 3 equīs dēsiliunt[14] āc pedibus[15] proeliantur,[16] equōsque
30 eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō[17] assuēfēcērunt,[18] ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus[19] est, recipiunt; neque eōrum 4 mōribus turpius[20] quicquam aut inertius[21] habētur quam ephippiīs[22] ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum 5 ephippiātōrum[23] equitum quamvīs[24] paucī adīre[25] au-
35 dent. Vīnum[26] omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn sinunt,[27] 6 quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere[28] hominēs atque effēminārī[29] arbitrantur.[30]

3. Pūblicē[31] māximam putant esse laudem,[32] quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī[33]
40 māgnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia pas- 2 suum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem 3 succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque

[1] *shortness.* [2] *bathe* (themselves). [3] supply **ea** as antecedent, obj. of **vēndant**. [4] supply **eōs** as antecedent, obj. of **habeant**. [5] *that.* [6] *desire.* [7] *in fact.* [8] *beast of burden.* [9] *delight.* [10] *high.* [11] *purchase.* [12] *scrawny.* [13] (that they may be); *capable.* [14] *jump down.* [15] *on foot.* [16] *fight.* [17] (footprint) *spot.* [18] *accustom; train.* [19] *need.* [20] *disgraceful.* [21] *shiftless; unmanly.* [22] *saddle-blankets.* [23] *who use saddle-blankets.* [24] *however.* [25] *attack.* [26] *wine.* [27] *permit.* [28] (become soft again) *lose strength.* [29] *weaken.* [30] *think.* [31] *as a state.* [32] *praise.* [33] *it is shown.*

flōrēns, ut est captus[1] Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam[2] sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs,[3] prop- 45 tereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant,[4] et ipsī propter propinquitātem[5] 4 Gallicīs sunt mōribus assuēfactī.[6] Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem[5] gravitātemque[5] cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, 50 tamen vectīgālēs[7] sibi fēcērunt āc multō humiliōrēs[8] īnfīrmiōrēsque[9] redēgērunt.

The Gauls' love of news.

2 5. Est . . . hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis,[10] utī et viātōrēs[11] etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerant 55 et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, 3 prōnūntiāre[12] cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus[5] permōtī, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs[13] in[14] vēstīgiō[14] paenitēre[13] necesse[13] est,[13] cum incer- 60 tīs[15] rūmōribus serviant[16] et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta[17] respondeant.[17]

Description of Britain and its inhabitants.

V. 12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā[18] ipsā memoriā[19] prōditum[19] dīcunt, mari- 2 tima pars ab iīs, quī praedae āc belli īnferendī causā ex 65 Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē īsdem nōminibus

[1] *standard.* [2] *although.* [3] *civilized.* [4] *keep coming.* [5] Cf. formation. [6] *accustom.* [7] *tributary.* [8] *humble.* [9] *weak.* [10] predicate gen.; *a point of*, etc. [11] *traveler.* [12] *tell.* [13] (it is necessary that it repents them) *they necessarily repent.* [14] *on the spot.* [15] *untrustworthy.* [16] (serve) *are slaves to.* [17] (answer made up things) *make up answers.* [18] *island.* [19] *it has been handed down by tradition.*

cīvitātum appellantur, quibus[1] ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere[2] coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta[3] multitūdō 3
70 crēberrimaque aedificia ferē[4] Gallicīs cōnsimilia,[4] pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur [aut aere[5]] aut nummō[6] 4 aureō[7] aut tāleīs[8] ferreīs[9] ad certum pondus exāminātīs[10] prō nummō.[6] Nāscitur[11] ibi plumbum[12] album[12] 5 in mediterrāneīs[13] regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum,[14] sed
75 ēius exigua[15] est cōpia; aere[5] ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum[16] atque abietem.[17] Leporem[18] et gallīnam[19] et ānserem[20] gustāre[21] fās[22] nōn putant; haec tamen alunt[23] animī[24] 6 voluptātisque[24] causā.[24] Loca sunt temperātiōra[25] quam
80 in Galliā remissiōribus[26] frīgoribus.[26]

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra,[27] cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus,[28] quī est ad Cantium,[29] quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs *appelluntur,[30] ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem[31] spec-
85 tat. Hōc latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. 2 Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem[32] sōlem: quā ex[33] parte est Hibernia[34] īnsula dīmidiō[35] minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed[36] parī spatiō trānsmissus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō 3
90 cursū[37] est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona;[38] complūrēs

[1] (having sprung) *from which* (states). [2] *cultivate.* [3] (unbounded) *very large.* [4] *pretty much like.* [5] *copper.* [6] *coin.* [7] *gold* (adj.). [8] *bar.* [9] *iron* (adj.). [10] (weighed) *calculated.* [11] *is found.* [12] (white lead) *tin.* [13] *inland.* [14] *iron.* [15] *small.* [16] *beech.* [17] *fir.* [18] *hare.* [19] *hen.* [20] *goose.* [21] *taste.* [22] *right* (religiously). [23] (nourish) *keep.* [24] *for pleasure.* [25] *mild.* [26] (the cold spells being more relaxed) *the cold not being so continuous.* [27] *triangular.* [28] *corner.* [29] *Kent.* [30] (are driven) *land.* [31] *south.* [32] Cf. **occāsus.** [33] abl. of point of view; *on.* [34] *Ireland.* [35] *half;* abl. of degree of difference. [36] *but the passage is of the same distance as.* [37] *channel.* [38] *Anglesey.*

praetereā minōrēs obiectae[1] īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt[2] diēs continuōs xxx
4 sub brūmam[3] esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus[4] reperiēbāmus nisi[5] certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. 95
5 Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert[6] illōrum opīniō, *sep-
6 tingentum[7] mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cuī partī nūlla est obiecta[1] terra, sed ēius angulus[8] alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum
7 octingentum in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita 100 omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs[9] centum mīlium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī,[10] quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque
2 multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs 105 plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt,[11] sed lacte[12] et *carne[13] vīvunt[14] pellibusque sunt vestītī.[15] Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō[16] īnficiunt[17] quod caeruleum[18] efficit colōrem,[19]
3 atque hōc horribiliōrēs[19] sunt in pūgnā āspectū;[19] capillōque[20] sunt prōmissō[21] atque omnī parte corporis rāsā[22] 110
4 praeter caput et labrum[23] superius. Uxōrēs[24] habent dēnī[25] duodēnīque[25] inter sē commūnēs et māximē frā-
5 trēs cum frātribus parentēsque[26] cum līberīs; sed quī sunt ex iīs nātī, eōrum habentur līberī, quō[27] prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est. 115

[1] *opposite.* [2] *write.* [3] *winter solstice.* [4] *inquiry.* [5] *except that from accurate measurements with water clocks.* [6] *runs.* [7] *seven hundred.* [8] *corner.* [9] *twenty times.* [10] *civilized.* [11] *plant.* [12] *milk.* [13] **carō, carnis**, f., (flesh) *meat.* [14] *live.* [15] *clothe.* [16] *wood.* [17] *tattoo.* [18] *dark blue.* [19] Cf. Eng. derivative. [20] *hair.* [21] (allowed to come forth) *long.* [22] (scraped) *shaven.* [23] *lip.* [24] *wife.* [25] *ten or twelve together.* [26] *father.* [27] (whither each maiden was first led away) i.e., *to whose house each maiden was first taken.*

[Caesar had crossed the Rhine again, but the Suebi had retreated before him and no engagement took place. He therefore takes the opportunity to describe the Gauls and Germans at some length.]

VI. **11.** Quoniam ad hunc locum[1] perventum est,[2] nōn aliēnum[3] esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō[4] differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus 2
120 atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs[5] sunt; eārumque fac- 3 tiōnum prīncipēs sunt (quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur) quōrum[6] ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliō-
125 rumque redeat. Idque ēius reī causā antīquitus[7] 4 īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe[8] contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret;[9] suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est 5
130 in[10] summā tōtīus Galliae;[10] namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī[11] cum per 2 sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus
135 erat in Aeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae,[12] Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūrīs[13] pollicitātiōnibusque[14] perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī 3

[1] *point (in our narrative).* [2] *we have come.* [3] *out of place.* [4] *how.* [5] *party; faction.* [6] *(men of such a character that) to their discretion and judgment the control of all acts and plans is submitted.* [7] *in ancient times.* [8] *the common people.* [9] *lack;* with gen. [10] *in general (characteristic) of Gaul as a whole.* [11] *the latter.* [12] *dependency.* [13] *concession.* [14] *promise.*

nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā[1] antecēsserant[1] ut māgnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent[2] Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte[1] adductus Dīviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā[3] rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs[4] restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod iī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant[5] meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī[6] vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dīgnitāteque[7] amplificātā,[8] Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī succēsserant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās[9] nūllō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant.[10] Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur;[11] ita et novam et repentē collēctam[12] auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō [tamen] statū[1] rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis[13] Rēmī obtinērent.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō[14] atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs[15] paene servōrum[16] habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere[17] aliēnō[17] aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum[18] aut iniūriā potentiōrum

[1] Cf. formation. [2] *hold possession of.* [3] *unaccomplished.* [4] *dependency.* [5] *attach.* [6] *enjoy.* [7] *standing.* [8] *increase.* [9] *jealousy.* [10] *devote.* [11] *protect.* [12] *acquire.* [13] *standing.* [14] *account.* [15] *the common people.* [16] *slave.* [17] (another's money) *debt.* [18] Cf. Eng. derivative.

premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant[1] nōbilibus, quibus 3
in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs[2] in servōs.
Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum,[3]
170 alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs[4] intersunt, sacri- 4
ficia[3] pūblica āc prīvāta prōcūrant,[5] religiōnēs[6] inter-
pretantur;[3] ad eōs māgnus adulēscentium numerus
dīsciplīnae causā concurrit, māgnōque hī[7] sunt apud
eōs[8] honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs[3] pū- 5
175 blicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum[9]
facinus,[10] sī caedēs[11] facta, sī dē hērēditāte,[12] dē fīnibus
contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt;[13] praemia poenāsque[14]
cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dē- 6
crētō nōn[15] stetit,[15] sacrificiīs interdīcunt.[16] Haec poena
180 apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī 7
numerō impiōrum[3] āc scelerātōrum[17] habentur, hīs[18] om-
nēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque[19] dēfugiunt,
nē quid ex contāgiōne[20] incommodī[21] accipiant, neque
iīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs[22] ūllus commū-
185 nicātur.[23] Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, 8
quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mor- 9
tuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit[3] dīgnitāte,[24] succēdit,[3]
aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō[25] druidum, nōn[26]
numquam[26] etiam armīs dē prīncipātū[27] contendunt.
190 Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō 10
tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōn-
secrātō.[3] Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent

[1] *devote.* [2] *master.* [3] Cf. Eng. derivative. [4] *religious.* [5] *attend to.* [6] *omen.* [7] i.e., Druides. [8] i.e., Gallōs. [9] *commit.* [10] *crime.* [11] *murder.* [12] *inheritance.* [13] *decide.* [14] *punishment.* [15] (stō, *stand*) *does not abide* (*by*). [16] *exclude;* i.e., *excommunicate.* [17] *criminal.* [18] dat. of separation. [19] *conversation.* [20] *association.* [21] *disadvantage; harm.* [22] *office.* [23] *be open.* [24] *standing; reputation.* [25] *vote.* [26] (not never) *sometimes.* [27] *leadership.*

conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque[1] parent.[2]
11 Dīsciplīna[3] in Britanniā reperta[4] atque inde in Galliam
12 trānslāta exīstimātur, et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem 195
cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō[5] dīscendī[6] causā proficīscuntur.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt[7] [, mīlitiae[8] vacātiōnem[9] om-
2 niumque rērum habent immūnitātem[10]]. Tantīs exci- 200
tātī[11] praemiīs et suā sponte multī in[12] dīsciplīnam[12] conveniunt et ā parentibus[11] propinquīsque mittuntur.
3 Māgnum ibi numerum versuum[11] ēdīscere[13] dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs[14] in dīsciplīnā permanent. Neque fās[15] esse exīstimant ea lītterīs mandāre, cum in 205
reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus,
4 Graecīs lītterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgus dīsciplīnam[16] efferrī velint neque eōs quī dīscunt[17] lītterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre, quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut 210
praesidiō[18] lītterārum dīligentiam[11] in perdīscendō[19] āc
5 memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre[20] animās,[21] sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem exci-
6 tārī putant metū[22] mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā 215
dē sīderibus[23] atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī[24] āc terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī āc potestāte disputant[25] et iuventūtī[26] trādunt.

[1] *judgment.* [2] *obey.* [3] *system.* [4] as pass., *originate.* [5] *there.* [6] *learn.* [7] *pay.* [8] *military service;* obj. gen. [9] *freedom.* [10] *exemption.* [11] Cf. Eng. derivative. [12] *for study.* [13] *learn by heart.* [14] *twenty* (each); distributive. [15] *right.* [16] *doctrine.* [17] *learn.* [18] *assistance.* [19] *learn by heart.* [20] *perish.* [21] *soul.* [22] *fear.* [23] *star.* [24] *universe.* [25] *discuss.* [26] (youth) *young men.*

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus[1]
220 atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē, ante Caesaris adventum, quotannīs[2] accidere sōlēbat,[3] utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent[4]), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere[5] 2 cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs[6]
225 clientēsque[7] habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.[8]

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum[9] dēdita religiōnibus,[10] atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī 2 graviōribus morbīs,[11] quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque
230 versantur, aut prō victimīs[12] hominēs immolant[13] aut sē immolātūrōs[13] vovent[14] administrīsque[15] ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā[16] hominis nisi hominis 3 vīta[16] reddātur, nōn posse deōrum[17] immortālium nūmen[18] plācārī[19] arbitrantur, pūblicēque ēiusdem generis
235 habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī[20] māgnitūdine 4 simulācra[21] habent, quōrum contexta[22] vīminibus[23] membra[24] vīvīs[25] hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs[26] circumventī flammā exanimantur[27] hominēs. Supplicia[28] 5 eōrum quī in fūrtō[29] aut latrōciniō[30] aut aliquā noxiā[31]
240 sint comprehēnsī[32] grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad 6 innocentium[12] supplicia[28] dēscendunt.[33]

17. Deōrum[34] māximē Mercurium colunt:[35] hūius sunt plūrima simulācra;[36] hunc omnium inventōrem[37] artium

[1] *need.* [2] *annually.* [3] *be accustomed.* [4] *ward off.* [5] *family;* specification. [6] *retainer.* [7] *dependent.* [8] *know.* [9] *exceedingly.* [10] *superstition.* [11] *disease.* [12] Cf. Eng. derivative. [13] *sacrifice.* [14] *vow.* [15] *agent.* [16] *life.* [17] *god.* [18] (divine) *power.* [19] *appease.* [20] *immense.* [21] *image.* [22] *weave.* [23] *twig.* [24] *limb.* [25] *living.* [26] *set on fire.* [27] *kill.* [28] *punishment.* [29] *theft.* [30] *robbery.* [31] *crime.* [32] *catch.* [33] *resort.* [34] *god.* [35] *worship.* [36] *image.* [37] Cf. Eng. derivative.

ferunt,[1] hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem,[2] hunc ad 245 quaestūs[3] pecūniae[4] mercātūrāsque[5] habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et
2 Iovem[6] et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs[7] dēpellere, Minervam operum[8] atque artificiōrum[9] 250 initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium[10] tenēre,
3 Mārtem bella regere.[11] Huīc, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent;[12] cum superāvērunt, animālia[13] capta immolant,[14] reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs 255 in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs[15] lo-
4 cīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam[16] religiōne[17] aut capta[18] apud[19]
5 sē[19] occultāre[20] aut posita[18] tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum 260 est.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte[21] patre prōgnātōs[22] praedicant[23] idque ab druidibus prōditum[24] dīcunt.
2 Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium fīniunt;[25] diēs[26] nātālēs[26] et mēn- 265 sium et annōrum initia sīc observant[27] ut noctem diēs
3 subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt[28] ut mūnus[29] mīlitiae[30] sustinēre possint, palam[31] ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur fīliumque puerīlī[32] aetāte[32] 270

[1] *call.* [2] *guide.* [3] *acquisition.* [4] *money.* [5] *trade.* [6] *Jupiter.* [7] *disease.* [8] *trade.* [9] *art.* [10] (of the celestials) *of the gods.* [11] **regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum,** *rule.* [12] *vow.* [13] Cf. Eng. derivative. [14] *sacrifice.* [15] *pile.* [16] *anyone.* [17] *vow.* [18] i.e., **ea quae bellō cēperint.** [19] *in his house.* [20] *hide.* [21] *Dis* or *Pluto,* god of the lower world. [22] **prō + (g)nāscor.** [23] *declare.* [24] *hand down.* [25] *limit.* [26] *birthdays.* [27] *keep.* [28] *grow up.* [29] *service.* [30] *war.* [31] *openly.* [32] (of youthful age) *in boyhood.*

in pūblicō[1] in cōnspectū patris assistere[2] turpe[3] dūcunt.

19. Virī,[4] quantās pecūniās[4] ab uxōribus[5] dōtis[6] nōmine accēpērunt, tantās[4] ex suīs bonīs[4] aestimātiōne[7]
275 factā cum[4] dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim[8] ratiō[9] habētur frūctūsque[10] servantur;[11] uter eōrum vītā[12] superāvit,[12] ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus[10] superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sīc utī in līberōs vītae[13] necisque[14] habent po-
280 testātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre[15] locō nātus dēcēssit,[16] ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in sūspiciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servīlem[17] modum quaestiōnem[18] habent et, sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs[19] excruciātās[20] interficiunt.
285 Fūnera[21] sunt prō cultū[22] Gallōrum māgnifica[21] et sūmptuōsa;[21] omniaque quae vīvīs[23] cordī[24] fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia, āc paulō suprā[25] hanc memoriam[25] servī[26] et clientēs,[27] quōs ab iīs dīlēctōs[28] esse cōnstābat, iūstīs[29] fūnebribus[30] cōnfectīs ūnā cre-
290 mābantur.[21]

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,[31] sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rumōre āc fāmā[32] accēperit,[33] utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō[34] aliō
295 commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs[35] atque

[1] supply locō. [2] (stand) *appear.* [3] *disgraceful.* [4] *Husbands add to the dowry as much money from their own property as.* [5] *wife.* [6] *dowry.* [7] *appraisal.* [8] *jointly.* [9] *account.* [10] *income.* [11] *save.* [12] i.e., *survives.* [13] *life.* [14] *death.* [15] *distinguished.* [16] supply **vītā**; and cf. Eng. derivative. [17] (*the same as*) *of slaves.* [18] *investigation.* [19] *torture.* [20] *torment.* [21] Cf. Eng. derivative. [22] *civilization.* [23] *living.* [24] (to the heart) *dear.* [25] *before the present generation.* [26] *slave.* [27] *dependent.* [28] *love.* [29] *regular.* [30] *funeral rites.* [31] *ordain.* [32] *report.* [33] *hear of.* [34] indefinite. [35] *rash.*

imperītōs[1] falsīs rumōribus terrērī et ad facinus[2] impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. 3 Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant,[3] quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur. 300

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint 2 neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus[4] iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam;[5] reliquōs nē fāmā[6] qui- 305 3 dem accēpērunt.[7] Vīta[8] omnis in vēnātiōnibus[9] atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī āc dūri- 4 tiae[10] student. Quī diūtissimē impuberēs[11] permānsē- runt māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī[12] 5 statūram, alī vīrēs nervōsque[13] confīrmārī putant. Intrā 310 annum vērō vīcēsimum[14] fēminae[15] nōtitiam[16] habuisse in turpissimīs[17] habent rēbus; cūius reī nūlla est occul- tātiō,[18] quod et prōmiscuē[19] in flūminibus perluuntur[20] et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum[21] tegimentīs[22] ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā. 315

22. Agrī[23] cultūrae[23] nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum 2 vīctūs in lacte,[24] cāseō,[25] carne[26] cōnsistit. Neque quis- quam agrī modum[27] certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs;[28] sed magistrātūs āc prīncipēs in annōs singulōs genti- bus[29] cōgnātiōnibusque[30] hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, 320 quantum[31] et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt,[32] atque 3 annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Ēius reī multās afferunt

[1] *ignorant.* [2] *crime.* [3] *hide.* [4] *power.* [5] *Moon.* [6] *report.* [7] *hear of.* [8] *life.* [9] *hunting.* [10] *hardship.* [11] *chaste.* [12] (nourish) *increase.* [13] *muscle.* [14] *twentieth.* [15] Cf. Eng. derivative. [16] *knowledge.* [17] *disgraceful.* [18] *concealment.* [19] *all together.* [20] *bathe.* [21] *reindeer skins.* [22] *covering.* [23] *farming.* [24] *milk.* [25] *cheese.* [26] *meat.* [27] *measure.* [28] *private.* [29] *tribe.* [30] *clan.* [31] *as much.* [32] *assign.*

causās: nē assiduā[1] cōnsuētūdine captī[2] studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent;[3] nē lātōs fīnēs parāre[4]
325 studeant potentiōrēs, atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius[5] ad frīgora[6] atque aestūs[7] vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae[8] cupiditās,[9] quā ex rē factiōnēs[10] dissēnsiōnēsque[10] nāscuntur; ut 4 animī aequitāte[9, 10] plēbem[11] contineant, cum suās quis-
330 que opēs[12] cum potentissimīs aequārī[13] videat.

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus[14] est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs[10] habēre. Hōc pro- 2 prium[15] virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere;
335 simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs[16] arbitrantur, repentīnae in- 3 cursiōnis[17] timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut 4 illātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed 5
340 prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt[18] contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia[19] nūllam habent 6 īnfāmiam[20] quae extrā fīnēs cūiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis[21] exercendae[22] āc dēsidiae[23] minuendae causā fierī praedicant.[24] Atque ubi quis[25] ex prīn- 7
345 cipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,[26] cōnsurgunt[27] iī quī et causam et hominem probant[10] suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitūdine collaudantur;[28] quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in 8

[1] *continued.* [2] *taken,* in the sense of *charmed.* [3] *exchange (for).* [4] *acquire.* [5] *too carefully.* [6] *cold* (spells). [7] *heat.* [8] *money.* [9] Cf. formation. [10] Cf. Eng. derivative. [11] *common people.* [12] *wealth.* [13] *make equal.* [14] *praise.* [15] *evidence* (pred.). [16] *safe.* [17] *raid.* [18] *administer.* [19] *highway robbery.* [20] *disgrace.* [21] *youth; young men.* [22] *exercise.* [23] *idleness.* [24] *declare.* [25] indefinite. [26] imperative. in ind. dis.; translate, *for those . . . to signify it.* [27] *rise.* [28] *praise.*

dēsertōrum[1] āc prōditōrum[2] numerō dūcuntur omnium-
9 que hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur.[3] Hospitem[4] vio- 350
lāre[5] fās[6] nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs
vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent, sānctōsque[7] habent, hīs-
que omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.[8]

24. Āc fuit anteā[9] tempus cum Germānōs Gallī vir-
tūte superārent, ūltrō bella īnferrent, propter homi- 355
num multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum
2 colōniās[1] mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima[1] Ger-
māniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam
Eratosthenī[10] et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā[11] nōtam[12] esse
videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosa- 360
3 gēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns[13]
ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus[14] sēsē continet summamque
4 habet iūstitiae et bellicae[15] laudis[15] opīniōnem. Nunc
quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte,[16] patientiā,[17] quā ante,
Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū[18] corporis 365
5 ūtuntur; Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās[19] et
trānsmarīnārum,[1,19] rērum nōtitia[20] multa[21] ad cōpiam
6 atque ūsūs largītur;[22] paulātim assuēfactī[23] superārī
multīsque victī proeliīs nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs
virtūte comparant. 370

Description of the Hercynian forest and of some of the wild animals found there.

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta
est, lātitūdō novem diērum iter expedītō[24] patet; nōn

[1] Cf. Eng. derivative. [2] *traitor.* [3] *withdraw.* [4] *guest.* [5] *harm.* [6] *right.* [7] *sacred.* [8] *share.* [9] adv.; *before.* [10] nom. **Eratosthenēs.** [11] *report.* [12] *known.* [13] *tribe.* [14] *settlements.* [15] *renown in war.* [16] *need.* [17] *suffering.* [18] *care.* [19] Cf. formation. [20] *knowledge.* [21] acc. [22] *afford.* [23] *become accustomed.* [24] (to one unencumbered) i.e., *to a man going light.*

enim aliter fīnīrī[1] potest, neque mēnsūrās[2] itinerum[2] nōvērunt.[3] Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et 2
375 Rauracōrum fīnibus rēctāque[4] flūminis Dānuviī[5] regiōne[4] pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē[6] 3 flectit[6] sinistrōrsus[7] dīversīs[8] ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnēs propter māgnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est hūius[9] Germāniae quī sē [aut au- 6
380 dīsse] aut adīsse ad initium ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter sexāgintā prōcēsserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit;[10] multaque in eā genera ferārum[11] nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus 5 quae māximē differant ā cēterīs[12] et memoriae prō-
385 denda[13] videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs[14] cervī[15] figūrā[16] cūius ā mediā fronte[17] inter aurēs[18] ūnum cornū exsistit[19] excelsius[20] magisque dērēctum[21] hīs quae nōbīs nōta[22] sunt cornibus; ab 2 ēius summō sīc ut palmae[23] rāmīque[23] lātē diffundun-
390 tur.[24] Eadem est fēminae[25] marisque[26] nātūra, eadem fōrma[27] māgnitūdōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs.[28] Hārum est cōnsimilis[29] caprīs[30] figūra et varietās[31] pellium; sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt[32] mutilaeque[33] sunt[33] corni-
395 bus[33] et crūra[34] sine nōdīs[35] articulīsque[36] habent; neque quiētis[37] causā[37] prōcumbunt[38] neque, sī quō afflīctae[39] 2

[1] *measure.* [2] *the measurements of distances,* i.e., they reckon distances by time, not space. [3] *know.* [4] *parallel.* [5] *Danube.* [6] *turn* (itself). [7] *to the left.* [8] *remote.* [9] *this part of.* [10] *hear.* [11] *wild beast.* [12] *the others.* [13] *hand down.* [14] *ox.* [15] *stag.* [16] *appearance.* [17] *forehead.* [18] *ear.* [19] *project.* [20] *elevated.* [21] *straight.* [22] *known.* [23] hendiadys; *palm branches.* [24] *spread out.* [25] *female.* [26] *male.* [27] *shape.* [28] *elk* [29] *very similar.* [30] *(that of) goats.* [31] *varied color.* [32] Cf. composition. [33] *have apparently broken horns.* [34] *leg.* [35] *enlargements.* [36] *joints.* [37] *to rest.* [38] *lie down.* [39] *thrown down.*

3 cāsū concidērunt,[1] ērigere[2] sēsē[3] āc sublevāre[3] possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus;[4] ad eās sē[5] applicant[5] atque 4 ita paulum modo reclīnātae[6] quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex *vēstīgiīs[7] cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus[8] quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs[9] eō locō aut ab[10] rādīcibus subruunt[11] aut accīdunt[12] arborēs, tantum[13] 5 ut summa[14] speciēs eārum stantium[15] relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt,[6] īnfīrmās[16] arborēs pondere afflīgunt[17] atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.[1] 400 405

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī[18] appellantur. Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō īnfrā[19] elephantōs,[6] speciē 2 et colōre[6] et figūrā taurī.[20] Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna velōcitās,[6] neque hominī neque ferae[21] quam cōn- 3 spexērunt parcunt.[22] Hōs studiōsē[23] foveīs[24] captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant[25] adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis[26] exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint 4 tēstimōniō,[27] māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere[28] ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri[29] nē parvulī[30] quidem exceptī 5 possunt. Amplitūdō[31] cornuum et figūra et speciēs 6 multum ā nostrōrum boum[32] cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē[23] conquīsīta[1] ab labrīs[33] argentō[34] circumclūdunt[35] atque in amplissimīs epulīs[36] prō pōculīs[37] ūtuntur. 410 415

[1] Cf. composition. [2] *rise.* [3] *help themselves up.* [4] *resting places.* [5] *lean.* [6] Cf. Eng. derivative. [7] **vēstīgium,** *track.* [8] *hunter.* [9] with **arborēs.** [10] *at.* [11] *dig under.* [12] *cut into.* [13] *but not so much but that.* [14] *exact.* [15] *stand.* [16] *weakened.* [17] *push over.* [18] *urochs.* [19] (below) *smaller than.* [20] *bull.* [21] *beast.* [22] *spare.* [23] *cautiously.* [24] *pit.* [25] *harden.* [26] *hunting.* [27] *proof.* [28] Cf. **cōnsuēscō.** [29] *tame.* [30] *very young.* [31] *spread.* [32] *oxen.* [33] *edge.* [34] *silver.* [35] *line.* [36] *banquet.* [37] *drinking-cup.*

THE CIVIL WAR

We have been reading of Caesar's military exploits of 58–50 B.C. From them the author strictly excluded all reference to the politics of the time except two references to the tumultuous conditions at Rome. To understand the beginning of Caesar's Commentaries on the Civil War we must turn to the political struggle in which he was at the same time engaged.

The first triumvirate, Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus, had been ended by the death of the last in 53 B.C. Julia, the daughter of Caesar, whom Pompey had married, had died the year before, and the two men had now no bond of sympathy, but had drifted rapidly apart. Caesar was regarded as democratic in his politics, while Pompey, who alone had been able to suppress the political riots at Rome, became more definitely the leader of the senatorial power. The dictatorial power was conferred upon him, and in 52 he was elected sole consul.

"Two obsolete decrees, which would tell especially against Caesar, he caused to be renewed, viz., that no one should be a candidate for public office while absent from the city, and that no one should receive a province for five years after holding a public office. Pompey had, however, first secured his province of Spain for five years more. Caesar, who designed to stand for consul again at the expiration of the legal interval, ten years, complained of the provision that no one could stand for office without being in the city, especially as this had been allowed Pompey. Thereupon it was publicly voted that this law should not apply to Caesar. Pompey was obliged to accede to this, but began to take measures to separate Caesar from his now formidable army. Gaius Marcellus, consul in 50, a bitter enemy of Caesar, moved that on November 13 Caesar be recalled from his province and army. In the

debate on this motion, Curio, the brilliant tribune of the people whom Caesar had bribed over to himself, favored the thing, but proposed that a like measure be passed concerning Pompey. Between these two propositions no vote was reached. Pompey, it is true, expressed to the Senate his willingness to give up his province and dismiss his army, but took no steps in the matter, and even secured a vote in the Senate, by which, under pretext of the Parthian war, two legions were taken from Caesar." One was nominally taken from each commander, but Pompey had loaned Caesar one at the beginning of the sixth year of the war in Gaul, and this he now contributed as his legion, so that both actually came from Caesar's forces. These Pompey retained near Rome.

"Shortly after this a rumor spread that Caesar had crossed the Alps and was advancing on Rome. Upon this, Marcellus, with the consuls who had been elected for the following year, Lentulus and Gaius Marcellus the younger, went to Pompey and authorized him in their names to defend the republic, and to raise troops in Italy at his pleasure. Curio now hurried to Caesar, who was at Ravenna, and urged him to march at once on Rome. Caesar, however, wrote a letter to the Senate and the new consuls, in which he set forth his services to the state, defended himself from the charges made against him by his enemies, and begged that he be not deprived of the privilege already granted him by the people, of standing for the consular election while absent. At the same time he promised to dismiss his army whenever Pompey did so. If, however, Pompey refused, then he too must keep his army and defend himself. This letter Curio gave to the consuls, in the Senate, and in the presence of the tribunes of the people, January 1, 49. What followed is told by Caesar." — *Caesar's Civil War*. PERRIN.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO CIVILI

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

THE BEGINNING OF THE WAR

Caesar's letter and its reception.

1. Lītterīs[1] ā Fabiō C. Caesaris cōnsulibus redditīs aegrē ab hīs impetrātum est summā tribūnōrum †plēbis[2] †contentiōne[3] ut in senātū recitārentur;[4] ut vērō ex[5] lītterīs ad senātum †referrētur,[6] impetrārī nōn potuit. 2 Referunt cōnsulēs dē rē pūblicā īnfīnītē.[7] L. Lentulus 5 cōnsul senātuī reī pūblicae sē nōn dēfutūrum pollicētur, 3 sī audācter āc fortiter sententiās dīcere velint; sīn Caesarem respiciant atque ēius grātiam sequantur, ut superiōribus fēcerint temporibus, sē sibi cōnsilium captūrum neque senātūs auctōritātī obtemperātūrum;[8] 10 habēre sē quoque ad Caesaris grātiam atque amīcitiam 4 receptum. In eandem sententiam loquitur Scīpiō[9]: Pompēiō esse in animō reī pūblicae nōn deesse, sī senā-

[1] See page 84. [2] the "plebs," the people. [3] *effort.* [4] *read.* [5] *according to, in accordance with.* [6] *the matter be referred.* [7] *indefinitely.* [8] *obey.* [9] Pompey's father-in-law.

The words marked with an asterisk (*) are generally assigned to the second year's work; those marked with a dagger (†) are generally assigned to the third year or have a meaning which has not occurred before. The meanings of such words will not be repeated in the selections from B.C., I.

tus sequātur; sī *cunctētur[1] atque agat †lēnius,[2] nēquīquam[3] ēius auxilium, sī posteā velit, senātum implōrātūrum.

2. Haec Scīpiōnis ōrātiō, quod senātus in urbe habēbātur Pompēiusque aderat, ex ipsīus †ōre[4] Pompēiī mittī vidēbātur. Dīxerat aliquis[5] lēniōrem sententiam, ut[6] prīmō M. Marcellus, ingressus in eam ōrātiōnem, nōn oportēre ante[7] dē eā rē ad senātum referrī quam †dīlēctūs[8] tōtā Ītaliā habitī et exercitūs †cōnscrīptī[9] essent, quō praesidiō †tūtō[10] et līberē senātus quae vellet dēcernere audēret; ut M. Calidius, quī †cēnsēbat[11] ut Pompēius in suās prōvinciās proficīscerētur, nē qua esset armōrum causa: timēre Caesarem †ēreptīs[12] ab eō duābus legiōnibus, nē ad ēius perīculum reservāre et retinēre eās ad urbem Pompēius vidērētur; ut M. Rūfus, quī sententiam Calidiī paucīs ferē †mūtātīs[13] rēbus sequēbātur. Hī omnēs convīciō[14] L. Lentulī cōnsulis correptī[15] exagitābantur.[16] Lentulus sententiam Calidiī †prōnūntiātūrum[17] sē omnīnō †negāvit,[18] Marcellus perterritus convīciīs[14] ā suā sententiā discēssit. Sīc vocibus cōnsulis, terrōre praesentis exercitūs, minīs[19] amīcōrum Pompēiī plērīque compulsī invītī et coāctī Scīpiōnis sententiam †sequuntur:[20] utī ante certam diem Caesar exercitum dīmittat; sī nōn faciat, eum adversus[21] rem pūblicam factūrum vidērī. †Intercēdit[22] M. Antōnius, Q. Cassius, tribūnī plēbis. Refertur cōnfēstim dē intercēssiōne[23] tribūnōrum. Dīcuntur senten-

[1] *delay.* [2] *lenient(ly).* [3] *in vain.* [4] **ōs, ōris,** n., *mouth.* [5] *here and there a senator.* [6] *as, for example.* [7] like **prius.** [8] *levy.* [9] *enroll, enlist.* [10] *safely.* [11] **cēnseō, ēre, uī, cēnsum,** *propose.* [12] **ē-ripiō, ere, ripuī, reptum,** (*snatch*); *take away;* see page 84. [13] *change.* [14] *taunts.* [15] *assailed.* [16] *overwhelm.* [17] *put to vote.* [18] *deny, refuse.* [19] *threat.* [20] *adopt.* [21] *against.* [22] *interpose a veto.* [23] *the veto.*

tiae gravēs; ut quisque †acerbissimē[1] †crūdēlissimēque[2] dīxit, ita quam māximē ab inimīcīs Caesaris collaudātur.[3]

Caesar's enemies coerce the senate.

3. Missō ad vesperum senātū omnēs quī sunt ēius ōrdinis ā Pompēiō ēvocantur. †Laudat[3] prōmptōs 45 atque in posterum cōnfīrmat, sēgniōrēs[4] castīgat[5] atque 2 incitat. Multī undique ex veteribus Pompēiī exercitibus spē praemiōrum atque ōrdinum ēvocantur, multī ex duābus legiōnibus quae sunt trāditae ā Caesare arces- 3 suntur. Complētur urbs, clīvus,[6] comitium[7] tribūnīs, 50 4 centuriōnibus, *ēvocātīs.[8] Omnēs amīcī cōnsulum, necessāriī Pompēiī atque eōrum quī veterēs inimīcitiās cum 5 Caesare gerēbant in senātum cōguntur; quōrum vocibus et concursū terrentur īnfīrmiōrēs,[9] †dubiī[10] cōnfīrmantur, plērīsque vērō līberē †dēcernendī[11] potestās 55 6 ēripitur. Pollicētur L. Pīsō cēnsor sēsē itūrum ad Caesarem, item L. Rōscius praetor, quī dē hīs rēbus eum doceant; sex diēs ad eam rem cōnficiendam spatiī 7 pōstulant. Dīcuntur etiam ab nōn nūllīs sententiae, ut lēgātī ad Caesarem mittantur quī voluntātem senā- 60 tūs eī prōpōnant.

4. Omnibus hīs resistitur omnibusque ōrātiō cōnsulis, Scīpiōnis, Catōnis oppōnitur. Catōnem veterēs inimī- 2 citiae Caesaris incitant et †dolor[12] repulsae.[13] Lentulus †aeris[14] †aliēnī[14] māgnitūdine et spē exercitūs āc prōvin- 65

[1] *bitter(ly).* [2] *cruel(ly).* [3] *praise.* [4] *slow.* [5] *reprove.* [6] (slope) *the road to the Capitol.* [7] *the comitium,* a place of assembly adjoining the forum. [8] *veterans;* B. G., VII. line 339. [9] *weak.* [10] *doubtful.* [11] **dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum,** (*separate*) *decide.* [12] (*grief, distress*) *anger.* [13] *arising from his defeat* (for the consulship); subjective gen. [14] (money belonging to another) *debt;* **aes, aeris,** n.; literally, *copper, bronze.*

ciārum et rēgum[1] appellandōrum[1] largītiōnibus[1] movē-
tur sēque alterum fore Sullam inter suōs glōriātur,[2] ad
quem summa imperiī redeat. Scīpiōnem eadem spēs 3
prōvinciae atque exercituum impellit, quōs sē prō
70 necessitūdine[3] †partītūrum[4] cum Pompēiō arbitrātur,
simul †iūdiciōruum[5] †metus,[6] adulātiō[7] atque osten-
tātiō[8] suī et potentium, quī in rē pūblicā iūdiciīsque
tum plūrimum pollēbant.[9] Ipse Pompēius, ab inimīcīs 4
Caesaris incitātus et quod nēminem †dīgnitāte[10] sēcum
75 exaequārī volēbat, tōtum sē ab ēius amīcitiā āverterat
et cum commūnibus inimīcīs in grātiam redierat, quō-
rum ipse māximam partem illō adfīnitātis[11] tempore
iniūnxerat[12] Caesarī; simul īnfāmiā[13] duārum legiōnum[14] 5
permōtus, quās ab itinere Asiae Syriaeque[15] ad suam
80 potentiam dominātumque[16] converterat, rem ad arma
dēdūcī studēbat.

The tribunes flee to Caesar. Preparations for war.

5. Hīs dē causīs aguntur omnia raptim[17] atque tur-
bātē. Nec docendī Caesaris propinquīs ēius spatium
datur nec tribūnīs plēbis suī perīculī dēprecandī[18] neque
85 etiam extrēmī iūris intercēssiōne retinendī, quod L. Sul-
la relīquerat, facultās †tribuitur,[19] sed dē suā salūte 2
septimō diē[20] †cōgitāre[21] cōguntur, quod[22] illī turbulentis-

[1] (*prospective*) *bribes for getting men called kings.* Recall how it was said of Ariovistus, B. G., I. 43, "**quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus,**" etc. [2] *boast.* [3] *relationship.* [4] **partiō, īre, īvī, ītum,** (*part*) *divide, share.* [5] *trial.* [6] **metus, ūs,** *fear.* [7] *flattery.* [8] *display.* [9] from **potis** and **valeō**; hence equivalent to **poterant** or **valēbant.** [10] (worthiness, worth) *standing.* [11] *relationship;* see page 83. [12] *load upon.* [13] *disgrace.* [14] See page 84. [15] explanatory genitives; translate, *to*, etc. [16] *control.* [17] *hastily.* [18] *avert.* [19] *grant.* [20] i.e., of this debate. [21] *think.* [22] (*a thing*) *which.*

simī superiōribus temporibus tribūnī[1] plēbis post octō dēnique mēnsēs variārum āctiōnum respicere āc timēre 3 cōnsuērant. Dēcurritur[2] ad illud extrēmum atque ūltimum senātūs cōnsultum, quō[3] nisi paene in ipsō[4] urbis †incendiō[4] atque in dēspērātiōne omnium salūtis lātōrum[5] audāciā †numquam[3] ante discēssum[3] est: dent[6] operam[6] cōnsulēs, †praetōrēs,[7] tribūnī plēbis, quīque[8] prō[8] cōnsulibus[8] sunt ad urbem, nē quid rēs pūblica 95 4 dētrīmentī capiat. Haec[9] senātūs cōnsultō perscrībuntur a. d. VII. Īd. Iān. Itaque v prīmīs diēbus quibus habērī senātus potuit, quā ex diē cōnsulātum iniit Lentūlus, biduō[10] exceptō[10] comitiālī,[10] et dē imperiō Caesaris et dē amplissimīs virīs, tribūnīs plēbis, gravissimē acer- 100 5 bissimēque dēcernitur. Profugiunt statim ex urbe tribūnī plēbis sēsēque ad Caesarem cōnferunt. Is eō tempore erat Ravennae exspectābatque suīs lēnissimīs pōstulātīs respōnsa, sī quā hominum aequitāte rēs ad †ōtium[11] dēdūcī posset. 105

6. Proximīs diēbus habētur †extrā[12] urbem senātus. Pompēius eadem illa quae per Scīpiōnem ostenderat agit; senātūs virtūtem cōnstantiamque[13] collaudat;

[1] i.e., the Gracchi and others who resorted to unconstitutional acts in support of their policies, but who were not seriously threatened for eight months; in contrast to these tribunes whose demands were moderate and legal, but whose lives were placed in jeopardy so soon. [2] *resort is had, they resort.* [3] *in which refuge has never been taken.* [4] *the actual conflagration.* [5] **lātor,** *proposer* (of a law). [6] Cf. B. G., VII. 9, 2. [7] *praetor,* a judge. [8] *and whatever proconsuls;* consuls who acted as governors of provinces. **Prō cōnsulibus** is used as an indeclinable noun. [9] *these things are written out by decree of the senate on the seventh day before the Ides of January,* i.e., *these decrees of the senate become laws on the seventh of January.* [10] *two election days being omitted* (from the seven days of January, the consuls taking office on January 1). [11] **ōtium,** *peace.* [12] *outside.* [13] *firmness.*

cōpiās suās expōnit: legiōnēs habēre sēsē parātās x; 2
110 praetereā cōgnitum compertumque sibi aliēnō esse animō in Caesarem mīlitēs neque eīs posse persuādērī utī eum dēfendant aut sequantur. Statim dē reliquīs rēbus 3 ad senātum refertur; tōtā Ītaliā dīlēctus habeātur; Faustus Sulla properē[1] in Maurētāniam[2] mittātur;
115 †pecūnia[3] utī ex †aerāriō[4] Pompēiō dētur; refertur etiam dē rēge Iubā, ut socius sit atque amīcus. Marcellus cōnsul passūrum in praesentia negat; dē Faustō 4 impedit Philippus, tribūnus plēbis. Dē reliquīs rēbus 5 senātūs cōnsulta perscrībuntur.[5] Prōvinciae prīvātīs
120 dēcernuntur, duae †cōnsulārēs,[6] reliquae praetōriae.[6] Scīpiōnī obvenit Syria, L. Domitiō Gallia. Philippus et Cotta prīvātō cōnsiliō praetereuntur,[7] neque eōrum sortēs dēiciuntur.[8] In reliquās prōvinciās praetōrēs mittuntur. Neque exspectant, quod superiōribus annīs 6
125 acciderat, ut dē eōrum imperiō ad populum ferātur,[9] palūdātīque[10] vōtīs[11] nūncupātīs[12] exeunt. Cōnsulēs, 7 quod ante id tempus accidit numquam, ex urbe proficīscuntur, līctōrēsque[13] habent in urbe et Capitōliō prīvātī contrā omnia vetustātis †exempla.[14] Tōtā Ītaliā dīlēc- 8
130 tūs habentur, arma imperantur, pecūniae ā †mūnicipiīs[15] exiguntur,[16] ē fānīs[17] tolluntur, omnia †dīvīna[18] †hūmānaque[19] iūra permīscentur.[20]

[1] *hastily.* [2] the northwestern coast of Africa. [3] *money.* [4] *treasury.* [5] Cf. line 96. [6] (consular, praetorian) i.e., *for the ex-consuls, for the praetors.* [7] *pass over;* being friends of Caesar. [8] *draw;* their names were not put into the urn at all. [9] *it be referred for ratification.* [10] *in their generals' cloaks.* [11] *vow.* [12] *perform.* [13] *lictor;* an official attendant. [14] *example; precedent.* [15] **mūnicipium,** *free town.* [16] *collect; exact.* [17] *temple.* [18] *of gods; divine.* [19] *of men; human.* [20] *confuse.*

THE CAMPAIGN IN ITALY

Caesar's speech to the thirteenth legion.

7. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar apud mīlitēs cōntiōnātur.[1] Omnium temporum in iūriāsinimīcōrum in sē †commemorat;[2] ā quibus dēductum āc dēprāvātum[3] 135 Pompēium queritur †invidiā[4] atque obtrēctātiōne[5] †laudis[6] suae, cūius[7] ipse honōrī et dīgnitātī semper fāverit 2 adiūtorque fuerit. Novum in rem pūblicam intrōductum exemplum queritur, ut tribūnicia[8] intercēssiō[9] armīs notārētur[10] atque opprimerētur, quae superiōribus 140 3 annīs armīs esset restitūta. Sullam nūdātā omnibus rēbus tribūniciā[8] potestāte tamen intercēssiōnem[9] līberam 4 relīquisse; Pompēium, quī āmissa restituisse videātur 5 bona, etiam quae ante habuerint adēmisse. Quotiēnscumque[11] sit dēcrētum, darent operam magistrātūs nē 145 quid rēs pūblica dētrīmentī caperet, quā voce et quō senātūs cōnsultō populus Rōmānus ad arma sit vocātus, factum in[12] perniciōsīs lēgibus, in[13] vī tribūniciā, in sēcēssiōne[14] populī, templīs locīsque ēditiōribus occupātīs; 6 atque haec superiōris †aetātis[15] exempla expiāta[16] Sāturnīnī atque Gracchōrum cāsibus docet; quārum rērum 150 illō tempore nihil factum, nē cōgitātum quidem [nūlla lēx prōmulgāta,[17] nōn cum populō agī coeptum, nūlla 7 sēcēssiō facta]. Hortātur, cūius imperātōris ductū VIIII annīs rem pūblicam fēlīcissimē gesserint plūrimaque 155 proelia secunda fēcerint, omnem Galliam Germāniam-

[1] *make a speech.* [2] (call to mind) *relate.* [3] *prejudiced.* [4] *envy.* [5] *disparagement.* [6] (praise) *glory.* [7] **cūius = cum ēius,** concessive. [8] *belonging to the tribune; of the tribunes.* [9] *veto power.* [10] (brand) *disgrace.* [11] *as often as; whenever.* [12] *in the case of.* [13] *in the abuse of.* [14] *withdrawal.* [15] *age.* [16] *atone for.* [17] *propose.*

que pācāverint, ut ēius exīstimātiōnem[1] dīgnitātemque ab inimīcīs dēfendant. Conclāmant legiōnis XIII., quae 8 aderat, mīlitēs — hanc enim initiō †tumultūs[2] ēvocā-
160 verat, reliquae nōndum convēnerant — sēsē parātōs esse imperātōris suī tribūnōrumque plēbis iniūriās dēfendere.

Caesar's advance. Negotiations with Pompey.

8. Cōgnitā mīlitum voluntāte Arīminum cum eā legiōne proficīscitur ibique tribūnōs plēbis quī ad eum cōn-
165 fūgerant †convenit;[3] reliquās[4] legiōnēs ex hībernīs ēvocat et subsequī iubet. Eō L. Caesar adulēscens venit, cūius 2 pater Caesaris erat lēgātus. Is reliquō †sermōne[5] cōnfectō cūius reī causā vēnerat, habēre sē ā Pompēiō ad eum prīvātī officiī[6] mandāta dēmōnstrat: velle Pom- 3
170 pēium sē Caesarī[7] pūrgātum,[7] nē ea quae reī pūblicae causā ēgerit in[8] suam contumēliam vertat.[8] Semper sē reī pūblicae commoda prīvātīs necessitūdinibus[9] habuisse †potiōra.[10] Caesarem quoque prō suā dīgnitāte dēbēre et studium et īrācundiam[11] suam reī[12] pūblicae[12]
175 dīmittere neque †adeō[13] graviter †īrāscī[14] inimīcīs, ut, cum illīs nocēre sē spēret, reī pūblicae noceat. Pauca 4 ēiusdem generis addit cum excūsātiōne[15] Pompēiī coniūncta. Eadem ferē atque eīsdem verbīs praetor Rōscius agit cum Caesare sibique Pompēium commemorāsse
180 dēmōnstrat.

9. Quae rēs etsī nihil ad †levandās[16] iniūriās pertinēre

[1] *reputation; honor.* [2] *disturbance.* [3] *meet,* B. G., I. 27, 2. [4] eight in number. [5] **sermō, ōnis,** m., *conversation.* [6] *nature.* [7] *clear, justified in Caesar's sight.* B. G., I. 28, 1. [8] *take as a personal insult.* [9] *relationship.* [10] comparative of **potis** (indeclinable), *strong.* [11] *anger.* [12] *in the interest of,* etc. [13] *to such a degree; so.* [14] **īrāscor, ārī, īrātus sum,** *grow angry.* [15] *justification.* [16] *lighten.*

vidēbantur, tamen idōneōs nactus hominēs per quōs ea quae vellet ad eum perferrentur, petit ab utrōque, quoniam Pompēiī mandāta ad sē dētulerint, nē graventur sua quoque ad eum pōstulāta dēferre, sī parvō labōre 185 māgnās contrōversiās tollere atque omnem Ītaliam 2 metū līberāre possint. Sibi semper prīmam fuisse dīgnitātem[1] vītāque potiōrem. Doluisse sē quod populī Rōmānī beneficium sibi per[2] contumēliam[2] ab inimīcīs extorquerētur[3] ēreptōque sēmēstrī[4] imperiō in urbem 190 retraherētur, cūius absentis ratiōnem habērī proximīs 3 comitiīs[5] populus iūssisset. Tamen hanc iactūram[6] honōris suī reī pūblicae causā aequō animō tulisse; cum lītterās ad senātum mīserit, ut omnēs ab exercitibus dis- 4 cēderent, nē id quidem impetrāvisse. Tōtā Ītaliā dīlēc- 195 tūs habērī, retinērī legiōnēs II, quae ab sē simulātiōne Parthicī bellī sint abductae, cīvitātem esse in armīs. Quōnam haec omnia nisi ad suam †perniciem[7] pertinēre? 5 Sed tamen ad omnia sē dēscendere[8] parātum atque omnia patī reī pūblicae causā. Proficīscātur[9] Pompēius 200 in suās prōvinciās, ipsī exercitūs dīmittant, discēdant in Ītaliā omnēs ab armīs, metus ē cīvitāte tollātur, lībera comitia atque omnis rēs pūblica senātuī populōque Rō- 6 mānō permittātur. Haec quō facilius certīsque condiciōnibus fīant et iūre iūrandō †sanciantur,[10] aut ipse 205 propius accēdat aut sē patiātur accēdere; fore utī per colloquia omnēs contrōversiae compōnantur.[11]

10. Acceptīs mandātīs Rōscius cum Caesare Capuam

[1] supply **reī pūblicae**. [2] *insultingly*. [3] *wrest*. [4] *six months'*. [5] plu., *election*. [6] *loss*. [7] **perniciēs, ēī**, *destruction*. [8] (descend) *resort*. [9] *That Pompey should*, etc. Dir. dis. **proficīscere . . . nōs dīmittāmus . . . discēdant omnēs**, etc. [10] **sanciō, īre, sanxī, sanctum**, (ordain) *ratify*. [11] *settle*.

pervenit ibique cōnsulēs Pompēiumque †invenit;[1] pō-
210 stulāta Caesaris renūntiat. Illī dēlīberātā rē respondent 2
†scrīptaque[2] ad eum mandāta per eōsdem remittunt,
quōrum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam rever- 3
terētur, Arīminō excēderet, exercitūs dīmitteret; quae
sī fēcisset, Pompēium in Hispāniās itūrum. Intereā, 4
215 quoad fidēs esset data Caesarem factūrum quae pollicerē-
tur, nōn intermissūrōs cōnsulēs Pompēiumque dīlēctūs.

The unfairness of Pompey's terms leads Caesar to advance further.

11. Erat inīqua condiciō pōstulāre, ut Caesar Arī-
minō excēderet atque in prōvinciam reverterētur, ipsum
et prōvinciās et legiōnēs aliēnās tenēre; exercitum
220 Caesaris velle dīmittī, dīlēctūs habēre; pollicērī sē in 2
prōvinciam itūrum neque ante quem diem itūrus sit
dēfīnīre, ut, sī perāctō cōnsulātū Caesaris nōn profec-
tus esset, nūllā tamen mendāciī[3] †religiōne[4] obstrictus[5]
viderētur; tempus vērō colloquiō nōn dare neque accēs- 3
225 sūrum pollicērī māgnam pācis dēspērātiōnem[6] adferē-
bat. Itaque ab Arīminō M. Antōnium cum cohortibus 4
v Arrētium mittit; ipse Arīminī cum duābus subsistit
ibique dīlēctum habēre īnstituit; Pisaurum, Fanum,
Ancōnam singulīs cohortibus occupat.

230 **12.** Intereā certior factus Īguvium Thermum prae-
tōrem cohortibus v tenēre, oppidum mūnīre, omnium-
que esse Īguvīnōrum optimam ergā sē voluntātem,
Cūriōnem cum tribus cohortibus quās Pisaurī et Arī-
minī habēbat mittit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō diffīsus[7] 2
235 mūnicipiī voluntātī Thermēs cohortēs ex urbe redūcit

[1] *find.* [2] scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write.* [3] *about lying;* gen.
[4] *scruple.* [5] *bound.* [6] *despair.* [7] *distrust.*

et profugit. Mīlitēs in itinere ab eō discēdunt āc
3 domum revertuntur. Cūriō summā omnium voluntāte Īguvium recipit. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs cōnfīsus mūnicipiōrum voluntātibus Caesar cohortēs legiōnis XIII. ex praesidiīs dēdūcit Auximumque proficīscitur; 240
quod oppidum Attius cohortibus intrōductīs tenēbat dīlēctumque tōtō Pīcēnō circummissīs senātōribus habēbat.

13. Adventū Caesaris cōgnitō decuriōnēs[1] Auximī ad Attium Vārum †frequentēs[2] conveniunt; docent suī 245
iūdiciī rem nōn esse; neque sē neque reliquōs mūnicipēs[3] patī posse C. Caesarem imperātōrem, bene dē rē pūblicā meritum, tantīs rēbus gestīs oppidō moenibusque prohibērī: proinde habeat ratiōnem posteritātis et perī-
2 culī suī. Quōrum ōrātiōne permōtus Vārus praesidium 250
3 quod intrōdūxerat ex oppidō ēdūcit āc profugit. Hunc ex prīmō ōrdine paucī Caesaris cōnsecūtī mīlitēs cōn-
4 sistere coēgērunt. Commissō proeliō dēseritur ā suīs Vārus, nōn nūlla pars mīlitum domum discēdit; reliquī ad Caesarem perveniunt, atque ūnā cum eīs dēprēnsus 255
L. Pūpius, prīmī pīlī centuriō, addūcitur, quī hunc eundem ōrdinem in exercitū Cn. Pompēiī anteā dūxerat.
5 Caesar mīlitēs Attiānōs collaudat, Pūpium dīmittit, Auximātibus agit grātiās sēque eōrum factī memorem[4] fore pollicētur. 260

Panic at Rome.

14. Quibus rēbus Rōmam nūntiātīs tantus repente terror invāsit[5] ut, cum Lentulus cōnsul ad aperiendum

[1] The name applied to members of the senate in the free towns (**mūnicipia**) and colonies. [2] adjective, translated *in great numbers.* [3] *inhabitants* (of a **mūnicipium**). [4] *mindful;* with gen. [5] *invade, seize.*

aerārium[1] vēnisset ad pecūniamque Pompēiō †ex[2] senātūs cōnsultō †prōferendam,[3] prōtinus apertō sanctiōre[4]
265 aerāriō ex urbe profugeret. Caesar enim adventāre[5] iam iamque et adesse ēius equitēs falsō nūntiābantur.
Hunc Marcellus collēga[6] et plērīque magistrātūs cōn- 2 secūtī sunt. Cn. Pompēius prīdiē ēius diēī ex urbe 3 profectus iter ad legiōnēs habēbat, quās ā Caesare
270 acceptās in Āpūliā hībernōrum causā disposuerat. Dīlēc- 4 tūs circā urbem intermittuntur; nihil citrā Capuam tūtum esse omnibus vidētur. Capuae prīmum sēsē cōnfīrmant et †colligunt[7] dīlēctumque colōnōrum quī lēge Iuliā Capuam dēductī erant habēre īnstituunt;
275 gladiātōrēsque, quōs ibi Caesar in †lūdō[8] habēbat, ad forum prōductōs Lentulus lībertātis spē cōnfīrmat atque hīs equōs attribuit et sē sequī iūssit; quōs posteā, mo- 5 nitus ab suīs, quod ea rēs omnium iūdiciō reprehendēbātur, circum familiārēs[9] conventūs[10] Campāniae
280 cūstōdiae[11] causā distribuit.

Caesar's progress southward.

15. Auximō Caesar prōgressus omnem agrum Pīcēnum percurrit. †Cūnctae[12] eārum regiōnum praefectūrae[13] †libentissimīs[14] animīs eum recipiunt exercitumque ēius omnibus rēbus iuvant. Etiam Cingulō, quod 2
285 oppidum Labiēnus cōnstituerat suāque pecūniā exaedificāverat, ad eum lēgātī veniunt quaeque imperāverit

[1] *treasury.* [2] see note on **ex,** line 3. [3] *bring out.* [4] participle of **sanciō** (see 9, 6); *sacred.* [5] strong form of **adveniō.** [6] *colleague.* [7] **colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum,** *collect.* [8] **lūdus,** *school,* i.e., *training.* [9] (*his*) *friends.* [10] *association;* a name applied to the societies somewhat like corporations, formed to encourage trade and commerce. [11] *confinement.* [12] *all.* [13] *prefectures;* towns governed by a prefect. [14] from pres. part. of **libet,** *it pleases;* participle, *willing.*

sē cupidissimē factūrōs pollicentur. Mīlitēs imperat:
3 mittunt. Intereā legiō XII. Caesarem cōnsequitur.
Cum hīs duābus Asculum Pīcēnum proficīscitur. Id
oppidum Lentulus Spinther x cohortibus tenēbat; quī 290
Caesaris adventū cōgnitō profugit ex oppidō cohortēs-
que sēcum abdūcere cōnātus māgnā parte mīlitum dē-
4 seritur. Relictus in itinere cum paucīs incidit in
Vībullium Rūfum missum ā Pompēiō in agrum Pīcēnum
cōnfīrmandōrum hominum causā. Ā quō factus Vī- 295
bullius certior quae rēs in Pīcēnō gererentur, mīlitēs ab
5 eō accipit, ipsum dīmittit. Item ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus
quās potest contrāhit cohortēs ex dīlēctibus Pompēiānīs;
in hīs Camerīnō fugientem Lūcīlium Hirrum cum sex
cohortibus, quās ibi in praesidiō habuerat, excipit; quibus 300
6 coāctīs XIII efficit. Cum hīs ad Domitium Ahēno-
barbum Corfīnium māgnīs itineribus pervenit Caesarem-
7 que adesse cum legiōnibus duābus nūntiat. Domitius
per sē circiter xx cohortēs Albā ex Marsīs et Paelīgnīs
fīnitimīs ab regiōnibus coēgerat. 305

16. Receptō Fīrmō expulsōque Lentulō Caesar con-
quīrī mīlitēs quī ab eō discēsserant, dīlēctumque īn-
stituī iubet; ipse ūnum diem ibi reī frūmentāriae causā
2 morātus Corfīnium contendit. Eō cum vēnisset, co-
hortēs v praemissae ā Domitiō ex oppidō pontem flūmi- 310
nis interrumpēbant, quī erat ab oppidō mīlia passuum
3 circiter III. Ibi cum antecursōribus Caesaris proeliō
commissō celeriter Domitiānī ā ponte repulsī sē in oppi-
4 dum recēpērunt. Caesar legiōnibus trāductīs ad oppi-
dum cōnstitit iūxtāque[1] mūrum castra posuit. 315

[1] *close to, near.*

The siege of Corfinium.

17. Rē cōgnitā Domitius ad Pompēium in Āpūliam perītōs regiōnum māgnō prōpositō praemiō cum lītterīs mittit quī petant atque ōrent ut sibi subveniat:[1] Caesarem duōbus exercitibus et locōrum angustiīs facile interclūdī posse frūmentōque prohibērī. (2) Quod nisi fēcerit, sē cohortēsque amplius XXX māgnumque numerum senātōrum atque equitum Rōmānōrum in perīculum esse ventūrum. (3) Interim suōs cohortātus tormenta[2] in mūrīs dispōnit certāsque cuīque partēs ad cūstōdiam urbis attribuit; (4) mīlitibus in cōntiōne agrōs ex suīs possessiōnibus pollicētur, XL in singulōs iugera[3] et prō[4] ratā[4] parte[4] centuriōnibus ēvocātīsque.

18. Interim Caesarī nūntiātur Sulmōnēsēs, quod oppidum ā Corfīniō VII mīlium intervāllō abest, cupere ea facere quae vellet, sed ā Q. Lūcrētiō senātōre et Attiō Paelīgnō prohibērī, quī id oppidum VII cohortium praesidiō tenēbant. Mittit eō M. Antōnium cum legiōnis XIII. cohortibus V. (2) Sulmōnēnsēs simul atque sīgna nostra vīdērunt, portās aperuērunt ūniversīque, et oppidānī et mīlitēs, obviam[5] gratulantēs[6] Antōniō exiērunt. (3) Lūcrētius et Attius dē mūrō sē dēiēcērunt. Attius ad Antōnium dēductus petit ut ad Caesarem mitterētur. Antōnius cum cohortibus et Attiō eōdem diē quō profectus erat revertitur. (4) Caesar eās cohortēs cum exercitū suō coniūnxit Attiumque incolumem dīmīsit.

[1] *come to aid.* [2] *engine* of war, corresponding roughly to modern artillery. [3] A measure of land about two-thirds of an acre. [4] (in accordance with a determined part) *proportionally.* We use the phrase "*pro rata*" in English in this sense. [5] *opposite;* an adverb, with dative. **Antōniō**; translate, *to meet.* [6] *congratulate.*

Caesar prīmīs diēbus castra māgnīs operibus mūnīre et ex fīnitimīs mūnicipiīs frūmentum comportāre reli-
5 quāsque cōpiās exspectāre īnstituit. Eō triduō legiō VIII. ad eum venit cohortēsque ex novīs Galliae dīlēcti- 345 bus XXII equitēsque ab rēge Nōricō circiter CCC. Quōrum adventū altera castra ad alteram oppidī partem
6 pōnit; hīs castrīs Cūriōnem praefēcit. Reliquīs diēbus oppidum vāllō castellīsque circumvenīre īnstituit. Cūius operis māximā parte effectā eōdem ferē tempore 350 missī ad Pompēium revertuntur.

Pompey refuses to send relief. The soldiers of Domitius mutiny.

19. Lītterīs perlēctīs[1] Domitius †dissimulāns[2] in cōnsiliō prōnūntiat Pompēium celeriter subsidiō ventūrum hortāturque eōs nē animō dēficiant quaeque ūsuī ad
2 dēfendendum oppidum sint parent. Ipse arcānō[3] cum 355 paucīs familiāribus suīs colloquitur cōnsiliumque fugae
3 capere cōnstituit. Cum †vultus[4] Domitiī cum ōrātiōne nōn cōnsentīret atque omnia trepidantius[5] timidiusque ageret quam superiōribus diēbus cōnsuēsset, multumque cum suīs cōnsiliandī[6] causā †sēcrētō[7] praeter cōnsuētū- 360 dinem colloquerētur, concilia conventūsque hominum fugeret, rēs diūtius †tegī[8] dissimulārīque nōn potuit.
4 Pompēius enim rescrīpserat sēsē rem in summum perīculum dēductūrum nōn esse, neque suō cōnsiliō aut voluntāte Domitium sē in oppidum Corfīnium con- 365 tulisse: proinde, sī qua fuisset facultās, ad sē cum
5 omnibus cōpiīs venīret. Id nē[9] fierī posset, obsidiōne atque oppidī circummūnītiōne fīēbat.

[1] *read through; examine* with care. [2] *disguising the truth.* [3] *in secret.* [4] **vultus, ūs,** *expression* (*on the face*). [5] *hurriedly.* [6] from **cōnsilium.** [7] *in secret, secretly.* [8] **tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum,** *cover.* [9] The main clause expresses the idea of *preventing,* so that **nē** is used as the introductory word.

20. Dīvulgātō[1] Domitiī cōnsiliō mīlitēs quī erant
370 Corfīniī prīmō vesperī sēcēssiōnem[2] faciunt[2] atque ita
inter sē per tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque atque
†honestissimōs[3] suī generis colloquuntur: †obsidērī[4] sē 2
ā Caesare; opera mūnītiōnēsque prope esse perfectās;
ducem suum Domitium, cūius spē atque fīdūciā per-
375 mānserint, prōiectīs omnibus fugae cōnsilium capere;
dēbēre sē suae salūtis ratiōnem habēre. Ab hīs prīmō 3
Marsī dissentīre incipiunt eamque oppidī partem quae
mūnītissima vidērētur occupant, tantaque inter eōs dis-
sēnsiō exsistit ut manum[5] cōnserere[5] atque armīs dīmi-
380 cāre cōnentur; post paulō tamen internūntiīs ūltrō[6] 4
citrōque[7] missīs, quae īgnōrābant dē L. Domitiī fugā
cōgnōscunt. Itaque omnēs ūnō cōnsiliō Domitium prō- 5
ductum in pūblicum circumsistunt et cūstōdiunt[8] lēgā-
tōsque ex suō numerō ad Caesarem mittunt: sēsē
385 parātōs esse portās aperīre quaeque imperāverit facere
et L. Domitium vīvum in ēius potestātem trādere.

21. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar, etsī māgnī[9] †in-
teresse[9] arbitrābātur quam prīmum oppidō potīrī
cohortēsque ad sē in castra trādūcere, nē qua aut lar-
390 gītiōnibus[10] aut animī cōnfīrmātiōne[11] aut falsīs nūntiīs
commūtātiō fieret voluntātis, quod saepe in bellō par- 2
vīs mōmentīs[12] māgnī cāsūs intercēderent, tamen veritus
nē mīlitum introitū[13] et nocturnī temporis licentiā oppi-
dum †dīriperētur,[14] eōs quī vēnerant collaudat atque in
395 oppidum dīmittit, portās, mūrōsque asservārī iubet.

[1] *divulge, spread abroad.* [2] (make a going apart) *hold a conference by themselves.* [3] *honorable.* [4] **ob-sideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum,** *besiege.* [5] *engage in battle.* [6] *back.* [7] *forth.* [8] *guard.* [9] *to be of great importance;* pred. gen. of price. [10] *acts of bribery.* [11] Cf. formation. [12] (for **movimentīs**, movements) *impulses.* [13] *entrance.* [14] **dī-ripiō, ere, ripuī, reptum,** *plunder.*

3 Ipse in eīs operibus quae facere īnstituerat mīlitēs dispōnit, nōn certīs spatiīs intermissīs, ut erat superiōrum diērum cōnsuētūdō, sed perpetuīs vigiliīs statiōnibusque, ut †contingant[1] inter sē atque omnem mūnītiōnem
4 expleant; tribūnōs mīlitum et praefectōs circummittit 400 atque hortātur nōn sōlum ab ēruptiōnibus caveant sed etiam singulōrum hominum occultōs exitūs asservent.[2]
5 Neque vērō tam remissō āc languidō animō quisquam
6 omnium fuit quī eā nocte †conquiēverit.[3] Tanta erat summae rērum exspectātiō ut alius[4] in aliam partem[4] 405 mente atque animō traherētur, quid ipsīs Corfīniēnsibus, quid Domitiō, quid Lentulō, quid reliquīs accideret, quī quōsque ēventūs exciperent.

Caesar's treatment of the prisoners.

22. Quārtā vigiliā circiter Lentulus Spinther dē mūrō cum vigiliīs cūstōdibusque nostrīs colloquitur: velle, sī 410
2 sibi fīat potestās, Caesarem convenīre. Factā potestāte ex oppidō mittitur, neque ab eō prius Domitiānī mīlitēs discēdunt quam in cōnspectum Caesaris dēdūcātur.
3 Cum eō dē salūte suā ōrat atque obsecrat[5] ut sibi parcat[6] veteremque amīcitiam commemorat Caesarisque in sē 415
4 beneficia expōnit, quae erant māxima: quod per eum in collēgium[7] pontificum[8] vēnerat, quod prōvinciam Hispāniam ex[9] praetūrā[10] habuerat, quod in petītiōne[11] cōn-
5 sulātūs erat sublevātus.[12] Cūius ōrātiōnem Caesar interpellat:[13] sē nōn maleficiī causā ex prōvinciā ēgressum 420 sed utī sē ā contumēliīs inimīcōrum dēfenderet, ut tri-

[1] *touch.* [2] *watch.* [3] **con-quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētum,** *rest, sleep.* [4] *one in one direction, another in another;* cf. B. G., II. 24, 3, where **aliī** was used instead of **alius.** [5] *beseech.* [6] *spare.* [7] *board.* [8] *of pontifices,* the priests of the Roman religion. [9] *after.* [10] *praetorship.* [11] *canvass.* [12] *help.* [13] *interrupt.*

būnōs plēbis in eā rē ex cīvitāte expulsōs in suam dīgnitātem restitueret, ut sē et populum Rōmānum factiōne[1] paucōrum oppressum in lībertātem vindicāret.[2] 6 Cūius
425 ōrātiōne cōnfīrmātus Lentulus ut in oppidum revertī liceat petit: quod dē suā salūte impetrāverit fore etiam reliquīs ad suam spem sōlāciō;[3] adeō esse perterritōs nōn nūllōs ut suae vītae dūrius cōnsulere cōgantur. Factā potestāte discēdit.

430 **23.** Caesar, ubi lūxit,[4] omnēs senātōrēs senātōrumque līberōs, tribūnōs mīlitum equitēsque Rōmānōs ad sē prōdūcī iubet. 2 Erant quīnque senātōriī ōrdinis, L. Domitius, P. Lentulus Spinther, L. Caecilius Rūfus, Sex. Quīntilius Vārus quaestor, L. Rubrius; praetereā
435 fīlius Domitiī aliīque complūrēs adulēscentēs et māgnus numerus equitum Rōmānōrum et decuriōnum,[5] quōs ex mūnicipiīs Domitius ēvocāverat. 3 Hōs omnēs prōductōs ā contumēliīs mīlitum convīciīsque[6] prohibet; pauca apud eōs loquitur, quod sibi ā[7] parte eōrum[7] grātia relā-
440 ta nōn sit prō suīs in eōs māximīs beneficiīs; dīmittit omnēs incolumēs. 4 HS[8] LX,[8] quod advexerat Domitius atque in pūblicō[9] dēposuerat, allātum ad sē ab IIII virīs[10] Corfīniēnsibus,[10] Domitiō reddit, nē continentior[11] in vītā hominum quam in pecūniā fuisse videātur, etsī eam
445 pecūniam pūblicam esse cōnstābat datamque ā Pompēiō in stīpendium.[12] 5 Mīlitēs Domitiānōs sacrāmentum[13] apud sē dīcere[13] iubet atque eō diē castra movet †iūstumque[14] iter cōnficit, VII omnīnō diēs ad Corfīnium

[1] Cf. formation. [2] (claim) *restore.* [3] *comfort;* dative. [4] *be light.* [5] See line 244. [6] *taunt.* [7] *on their part.* [8] abbreviation for **sestertium sexāgiēs centēna mīlia**, *sixty times a hundred thousand sestertii*, about $300,000. [9] supply **aerāriō**, *treasury.* [10] *the four representative men of Corfinium.* [11] *self-restrained.* [12] *the soldiers' pay.* [13] *take the military oath* (of enlistment). [14] (just) *regular.*

commorātus, et per fīnēs Marrūcīnōrum, Frentānōrum, Lārīnātium in Āpūliam pervenit. 450

Pompey hastens to Brundisium.

24. Pompēius hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, quae erant ad Corfīnium gestae, Lūceriā proficīscitur Canusium atque inde 2 Brundisium. Cōpiās undique omnēs ex novīs dīlēctibus ad sē cōgī iubet; †servōs,[1] pāstōrēs[2] armat atque eīs equōs attribuit; ex hīs circiter CCC equitēs cōnficit. 455 3 L. Manlius praetor Albā cum cohortibus sex profugit, Rutilius Lupus praetor Tarracīnā cum tribus; quae procul equitātum Caesaris cōnspicātae, cuī praeerat Vibius Curius, relictō praetōre sīgna ad Curium trāns- 4 ferunt atque ad eum trānseunt. Item reliquīs itineri- 460 bus nōn nūllae cohortēs in āgmen Caesaris, aliae in equitēs incidunt. Redūcitur ad eum dēprēnsus ex itinere N. Magius Cremōna, praefectus fabrum[3] Cn. 5 Pompēiī. Quem Caesar ad eum remittit cum mandātīs: quoniam ad id tempus facultās colloquendī nōn fuerit 465 atque ipse Brundisium sit ventūrus, interesse reī pūblicae et commūnis salūtis sē cum Pompēiō colloquī; neque vērō idem prōficī longō itineris spatiō, cum per aliōs condiciōnēs ferantur, āc[4] sī cōram dē omnibus condiciōnibus disceptētur.[5] 470

Efforts of Caesar to blockade Pompey.

25. Hīs datīs mandātīs Brundisium cum legiōnibus VI pervenit, veterānīs III et reliquīs, quās ex novō dīlēctū cōnfēcerat atque in itinere complēverat; Domitiānās enim cohortēs prōtinus ā Corfīniō in Siciliam 2 mīserat. Repperit cōnsulēs Dyrrachium profectōs cum 475

[1] *slave.* [2] *shepherd.* [3] *workman, mechanic;* gen. [4] *as.* [5] *settle.*

māgnā parte exercitūs, Pompēium remanēre Brundisiī cum cohortibus xx; neque certum invenīrī poterat, 3 obtinendīne Brundisiī causā ibi remānsisset, quō facilius omne Hadriāticum mare ex[1] ūltimīs Ītaliae parti-
480 bus regiōnibusque Graeciae in potestāte habēret atque ex utrāque parte bellum administrāre posset, an inopiā nāvium ibi restitisset; veritusque nē ille Ītaliam dīmit- 4 tendam nōn exīstimāret exitūs administrātiōnēsque[2] Brundisīnī portūs impedīre īnstituit. Quōrum operum 5
485 haec erat ratiō: quā †faucēs[3] erant angustissimae portūs, *mōlēs[4] atque aggerem[5] ab utrāque parte lītoris iaciēbat, quod hīs locīs erat vadōsum[6] mare. Longius 6 prōgressus, cum agger altiōre aquā continērī nōn posset, ratēs duplicēs quōquō[7] versus[7] pedum xxx ē[8] regiōne[8]
490 mōlis collocābat. Hās quaternīs[9] ancorīs ex IIII angu- 7 līs[10] dēstinābat,[11] nē flūctibus movērentur. Hīs perfec- 8 tīs collocātīsque aliās deinceps[12] parī māgnitūdine ratēs iungēbat. Hās terrā atque aggere integēbat, nē aditus 9 atque incursus ad dēfendendum impedīrētur; ā fronte
495 atque ab utrōque latere crātibus[13] āc pluteīs[14] prōtegēbat; in quārtā quāque eārum turrēs bīnōrum tabulā- 10 tōrum[15] excitābat, quō commodius ab impetū nāvium incendiīsque dēfenderet.

26. Contrā haec Pompēius nāvēs[16] māgnās *onerā-
500 riās,[16] quās in portū Brundisīnō dēprēnderat, adornābat.[17] Ibi turrēs cum ternēs tabulātīs ērigēbat[18] eāsque multīs tormentīs[19] et omnī genere tēlōrum complētās ad

[1] *(by conducting operations) from.* [2] *free use.* [3] **faucēs, ium,** f., (throat, jaws) *entrance.* [4] **mōlēs,** is, f., *dyke,* of stone. [5] *earth, small stones,* etc. [6] *shallow.* [7] (turned any way, i.e., in each dimension) *square.* [8] *in a line with.* [9] *four each;* distributive adj. [10] *corner.* [11] *hold in place.* [12] *in succession.* [13] *wickerwork.* [14] *breastworks.* [15] *story.* [16] (ships of burden, **onus**) *transports.* [17] *equip.* [18] *erect.* [19] *engine.*

opera Caesaris appellēbat, ut ratēs perrumperet atque opera disturbāret. Sīc cotīdiē utrimque ēminus[1] fundīs, 2 sagittīs reliquīsque tēlīs pūgnābātur. Atque haec Caesar ita administrābat, ut condiciōnēs pācis dīmittendās nōn exīstimāret; āc †tametsī[2] māgnopere admīrābātur Magium, quem ad Pompēium cum mandātīs mīserat, ad sē nōn remittī, atque ea rēs saepe temptāta etsī impetūs ēius cōnsiliaque tardābat, tamen omnibus rē- 3 bus in eō persevērandum putābat. Itaque Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum, familiārem necessāriumque Scrībōniī Libōnis, mittit ad eum colloquiī causā; mandat ut Libōnem dē conciliandā pāce hortētur; in prīmīs ut ipse 4 cum Pompēiō colloquerētur pōstulat; māgnopere sēsē cōnfīdere dēmōnstrat, sī ēius reī sit potestās facta, fore ut aequīs condiciōnibus ab armīs discēdātur; cūius reī māgnam partem laudis atque exīstimātiōnis[3] ad Libōnem perventūram, sī illō †auctōre[4] atque agente ab 5 armīs sit discēssum. Libō ā colloquiō Canīniī dīgressus ad Pompēium proficīscitur. Paulō post renūntiat, quod cōnsulēs absint, sine illīs nōn posse agī dē compositiōne.[5] Ita saepius rem frūstrā temptātam Caesar aliquandō dīmittendam sibi iūdicat et dē bellō agendum.

505 510 515 520

Pompey's counter efforts. Caesar still strives for peace.

27. Prope dīmidiā[6] parte operis ā Caesare effectā diēbusque in eā rē cōnsūmptīs VIIII, nāvēs ā cōnsulibus Dyrrachiō remissae, quae priōrem partem exercitūs eō 2 dēportāverant, Brundisium revertuntur. Pompēius, sīve operibus Caesaris permōtus sīve etiam quod ab initiō Ītaliā excēdere cōnstituerat, adventū nāvium

525 530

[1] *at a distance.* [2] *although.* [3] *esteem.* [4] *promoter.* [5] *settlement.* [6] *half;* adj.

profectiōnem parāre incipit et, quō facilius impetum Caesaris tardāret, nē sub[1] ipsā[1] profectiōne mīlitēs oppidum irrumperent, portās obstruit,[2] vīcōs[3] plateāsque[3] inaedificat,[3] fossās transversās[4] viīs praedūcit[5] atque ibi sudēs[6] stīpitēsque praeacūtōs dēfīgit. Haec levibus crātibus[7] terrāque inaequat;[8] aditūs autem atque itinera duo, quae extrā mūrum ad portum ferēbant, māximīs dēfīxīs trabibus atque eīs praeacūtīs praesaepit.[9] Hīs parātīs rēbus mīlitēs silentiō nāvēs cōnscendere iubet, expedītōs autem ex ēvocātīs, sagittāriīs[10] funditōribusque[11] rārōs in mūrō turribusque dispōnit. Hōs certō sīgnō revocāre cōnstituit, cum omnēs mīlitēs nāvēs cōnscendissent, atque eīs expedītō locō āctuāria[12] nāvigia relinquit.

28. Brundisīnī Pompēiānōrum mīlitum iniūriīs atque ipsīus Pompēiī contumēliīs permōtī Caesaris rēbus favēbant. Itaque cōgnitā Pompēiī profectiōne concursantibus illīs atque in eā rē occupātīs vulgō ex †tēctīs[13] sīgnificābant. Per quōs rē cōgnitā Caesar scālās[14] parārī mīlitēsque armārī iubet, nē quam reī gerendae facultātem dīmittat. Pompēius sub noctem nāvēs[15] solvit.[15] Quī erant in mūrō †cūstōdiae[16] causā collocātī eō sīgnō quod convēnerat revocantur nōtīsque itineribus ad nāvēs dēcurrunt. Mīlitēs positīs scālīs mūrōs āscendunt, sed monitī ā Brundisīnīs ut vāllum[17] caecum[18] fossāsque caveant subsistunt[19] et longō itinere ab hīs circumductī ad portum perveniunt duāsque nāvēs cum

[1] *right at the time of.* [2] *blockade.* [3] *barricades sections of the city and streets.* [4] *across, at right angles to.* [5] *construct.* [6] *stakes and sharpen tree trunks.* [7] *wickerwork.* [8] *level.* [9] *blockade.* [10] *archer.* [11] *slinger.* [12] *swift.* [13] (part. of **tegō**); *house.* [14] *ladder.* [15] (*loose the ships*) *set sail.* [16] *watching.* [17] *palisade.* [18] (blind) *hidden.* [19] *halt.*

mīlitibus, quae ad mōlēs Caesaris adhaeserant,[1] scaphīs lintribusque reprehendunt,[2] reprehēnsās excipiunt.[3]

Caesar's reasons for not pursuing Pompey.

29. Caesar etsī ad[4] spem[4] cōnficiendī negōtiī māximē 560 probābat coāctīs nāvibus mare trānsīre et Pompēium sequī prius quam ille sēsē trānsmarīnīs auxiliīs cōnfīrmāret, tamen ēius reī moram temporisque longinquitātem timēbat, quod omnibus coāctīs nāvibus Pompēius prae- 2 sentem facultātem īnsequendī suī adēmerat. Relin- 565 quēbātur ut ex longinquiōribus regiōnibus Galliae Pīcēnīque et ā fretō[5] nāvēs essent exspectandae. Id propter annī tempus longum atque impedītum vidē- 3 bātur. Intereā veterem exercitum,[6] duās Hispāniās cōnfīrmārī,[7] quārum erat altera māximīs beneficiīs 570 Pompēiī dēvincta, auxilia, equitātum parārī,[7] Galliam Ītaliamque temptārī sē absente nōlēbat.

[Caesar sends troops to Sicily and Sardinia and secures them.]

Caesar presents his case to the senate at Rome.

32. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar, ut reliquum tempus ā labōre intermitterētur, mīlitēs in proxima mūnicipia 2 dēdūcit; ipse ad urbem proficīscitur. Coāctō senātū 575 iniūriās inimīcōrum commemorat. Docet sē nūllum extraōrdinārium honōrem appetīsse, sed exspectātō lēgitimō tempore consulātūs eō fuisse contentum quod 3 omnibus †cīvibus[8] patēret. Lātum[9] ab x tribūnīs plēbis contrādīcentibus inimīcīs, Catōne vērō ācerrimē 580

[1] *stick against.* [2] *overtake.* [3] *capture.* [4] *with a view.* [5] *strait;* here *Sicily* and the adjacent part of Italy. [6] The seven veteran legions of Pompey left in Spain. [7] i.e., by Pompey's adherents. [8] cīvis, is, *citizen.* [9] sc. esse; *that a motion had been made.*

repugnante et prīstinā cōnsuētūdine dīcendī morā diēs extrahente, ut suī ratiō absentis habērētur, ipsō cōnsule Pompēiō; quī sī improbāsset,[1] cūr ferrī passus esset, sī probāsset, cūr sē ūtī populī beneficiō prohibuisset?
585 Patientiam prōpōnit suam, cum dē exercitibus dīmittendīs ūltrō pōstulāvisset, in quō iactūram[2] dīgnitātis atque honōris ipse factūrus esset. Acerbitātem inimīcōrum docet, quī quod ab alterō pōstulārent in sē recūsārent atque omnia permīscērī[3] †māllent[4] quam
590 imperium exercitūsque dīmittere. Iniūriam in ēripiendīs legiōnibus †praedicat,[5] crūdēlitātem et īnsolentiam in circumscrībendīs[6] tribūnīs plēbis; condiciōnēs ā sē lātās, expetīta colloquia et dēnegāta[7] commemorat. Prō quibus rēbus hortātur āc pōstulat ut rem pūblicam
595 suscipiant atque ūnā sēcum administrent. Sīn timōre dēfugiant, illīs sē onerī nōn futūrum et per sē rem pūblicam administrātūrum. Lēgātōs ad Pompēium dē compositiōne[8] mittī oportēre, neque sē reformīdāre[9] quod in senātū Pompēius paulō ante dīxisset, ad quōs
600 lēgātī mitterentur, hīs auctōritātem[10] attribuī[10] timōremque eōrum quī mitterent sīgnificārī. †Tenuis[11] atque īnfīrmī haec animī vidērī. Sē vērō, ut operibus anteīre studuerit, sīc iūstitiā et aequitāte velle superāre.

33. Probat rem senātus dē mittendīs lēgātīs; sed quī
605 mitterentur nōn reperiēbantur, māximēque timōris causā prō sē quisque id †mūnus[12] lēgātiōnis recūsābat. Pompēius enim discēdēns ab urbe in senātū dīxerat eōdem sē habitūrum locō quī Rōmae remānsissent et quī in castrīs Caesaris fuissent. Sīc trīduum disputā-

[1] *disapprove.* [2] *loss.* [3] *mix.* [4] *prefer.* [5] *declare, emphasize.* [6] *restrict.* [7] *refuse.* [8] *settlement.* [9] *fear* (re-, *on his part*). [10] *their authority was recognized as legal.* [11] (thin); *narrow.* [12] *office, service.*

tiōnibus excūsātiōnibusque extrahitur. Subicitur[1] etiam L. Metellus tribūnus plēbis ab inimīcīs Caesaris, quī hanc rem distrahat reliquāsque rēs quāscumque agere īnstituerit impediat. Cūius cōgnitō cōnsiliō Caesar frūstrā diēbus *aliquot[2] cōnsūmptīs, nē reliquum tempus dīmittat, īnfectīs[3] eīs quae agere dēstināverat[4] ab urbe proficīscitur atque in ūlteriōrem Galliam pervenit.

[Then follows an account of the campaign in Spain, in which Caesar is successful. His lieutenant Curio, however, wages a disastrous campaign in Africa, being killed with all his troops. Towards the close of the year Caesar returns to Brundisium to renew his war with Pompey.]

[1] *put forward.* [2] *several;* indeclinable. [3] *unfinished.* [4] *intend.*

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative	infin.	infinitive
abs.	absolute	insep.	inseparable
acc.	accusative	interrog.	interrogative
adj.	adjective	intrans.	intransitive
adv.	adverb	lit.	literally
Bel. Gal.	Bellum Gallicum	loc.	locative
card.	cardinal	m., masc.	masculine
cf.	compare	n., neut.	neuter
comp.	composition	nom.	nominative
compar.	comparative	num.	numeral
conj.	conjunction	obj.	object, objective
coörd.	coördinate	opp.	opposite
dat.	dative	ord.	ordinal
decl.	declension	orig.	originally
dem.	demonstrative	p.	page
dep.	deponent	partic.	participle
dim.	diminutive	pass.	passive
dir.	direct	perf.	perfect
dis.	discourse	pl.	plural
e.g.	for example	plup.	pluperfect
Eng.	English	prep.	preposition
espec.	especially	pres.	present
etc.	and so forth	pron.	pronoun
f., fem.	feminine	reflex.	reflexive
ff.	and following	rel.	relative
fig.	figurative	sc.	supply
1st conj.	first conjugation	sing.	singular
fut.	future	spec.	specification
gen.	genitive	subord.	subordinate
i.e.	that is	subj.	subject, subjective
imperf.	imperfect	subjunct.	subjunctive
imper.	imperative	subst.	substantive
impers.	impersonal	super.	superlative
indic.	indicative	trans.	transitive
indecl.	indeclinable	voc.	vocative
indef.	indefinite	w.	with

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

NOTE. — The literal meaning of each word is given first, but if not used in Books I and II of Cæsar's Gallic War, it is placed in Roman type in parentheses; other meanings are given approximately in the order of their development. The references are to chapter and sentence, and cover all instances where a special meaning is used. The numerals indicate the meanings which the pupil should know in order to read well at sight after the completion of Books I and II.

A

A., abbreviation for **Aulus**, a Roman *praenomen*.

a.d., abbreviation for **ante diem**.

ā, ab, abs, prep. with abl., (1) *away from, from;* in expressions of distance, e.g. **ā mīlibus passuum, ab spatiō**, *away, off, distant;* with verbs of seeking and requesting, *of;* (2) expressing agency with passives, *by;* with verbs of happening and suffering, *at the hands of;* (3) giving the point of view (§ 98), with **cornū, latere, āgmine, parte**, etc., *at, on, in;* with names of tribes, *on the side occupied by*, I. **1**, 5.

ab-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (put away); *conceal;* with reflexive pronoun or in passive, *hide.* [in, with acc., *in, among.*]

ab-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead away, carry off.*

absēns, absentis, partic. of **ab-sum**.

abs-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (hold away from); *refrain.*

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, ā-futūrus, *be away (from); be lacking*, I. **4**, 4; with **longē**, *be far from helping, be of no use*, I. **36**, 5. Pres. partic., **absēns, absentis**, *absent;* **sē** (**eō**) **absente**, (he being absent), *in his absence.*

āc, form of **atque** before some consonants.

ac-, form of **ad-** before **c**.

ac-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *go to* or *toward, approach; be added*, I. **19**, 1.

acceptus, a, um [perf. partic. of **accipiō**], (accepted), *acceptable, popular (with).*

ac-cidō, cidere, cidī, — [**cadō**], (1) (fall to); (2) (befall), *happen.*

ac-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take to one's self); *accept, receive;* of anything unpleasant, *suffer.*

ac-clīvis, e [**clīvus**, *slope*], *sloping upward, rising.*

acclīvitās, tātis, f. [**acclīvis**], *upward slope, ascent, rise.*

ac-commodō, 1st conj. [**commodus**, *convenient*], (fit, adapt), *put on.*

ac-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** (run to); *ride up*, I. **22**, 1.

ac-cūsō, 1st conj. [**causa**], (call to account); *blame, reproach, accuse.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp;* compar. **ācrior,** super. **ācerrimus.** Adverb, **ācriter,** *sharply, fiercely, vigorously;* compar. **ācrius,** super. **ācerrimē.**

acervus, ī, m. [**ācer**], *pile, heap.*

aciēs, aciēī, f. [**ācer**], plural limited to nom. and acc., (point, edge); *keenness, piercing glance*, I. **39**, 1; elsewhere, *line of battle, battle line.*

ācriter: see **ācer.**

ad, prep. with acc., (1) *to, toward, against;* of situation, *in the vicinity of, near, at;* with numerals, *to the number of, nearly, about;* of time, *up to, until, till;* (2) *for, for the purpose of.*

ad-aequō, 1st conj., *equal;* i.e. *keep up with*, I. **48**, 7.

ad-amō, 1st conj. [**amō,** *love*], (fall in love with), *become attached to.*

ad-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead* or *bring* (*to, on, up, along*); figuratively, *induce*, e.g. I. **2**, 1, **9**, 3, etc.

ad-eō, īre, (**īvī**) **iī, itum,** (go to); *get at.*

ad-equitō, 1st conj. [**equus,** *horse*], *ride up to.*

ad-hibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum [**habeō**], (have near), *have present; admit*, I. **40**, 1.

ad-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum [**agō**], (drive at), *throw.*

aditus, ūs, m. [**adeō**], (a going to); *approach, access; the right of approaching the Roman senate*, I. **43**, 5.

ad-iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help, aid.*

ad-ministrō, 1st conj. [**minister,** *servant*], *execute, carry out.*

ad-mīror, 1st conj., *wonder, be surprised.*

ad-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go toward); **equō admissō,** (his horse having been allowed to go), *at full speed.*

ad-olēscō, olēscere, olēvī, ultum, *grow up, attain manhood.* Pres. partic. as noun, written **adulēscēns, adulēscentis,** c., (one growing up), *young man* (or *woman*); with **Crassus,** *the younger, junior.*

ad-orior, orīrī, ortus sum, (rise against), *attack.*

ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī, ad-futūrus, *be near*, I. **16**, 4; *be present.*

Aduatucī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe south of the Eburones, about the upper part of the Meuse.

adulēscēns: see **adolēscō.**

adulēscentia, ae, f. [**adulēscēns**], *youth.*

adventus, ūs, m. [**adveniō,** *come to*], *coming, arrival.*

adversus, a, um, partic. of **advertō.**

ad-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn to;* **animum advertere,** (turn the attention to), *notice.* **adversus, a, um,** (turned to); *opposite, facing*, II. **8**, 2, **18**, 2; *adverse, unfavorable*, I. **18**, 10, **40**, 8; *face to face*, II. **24**, 1; **adversō colle,** *up the hill.*

aedificium, ī, n., *building, house.*

Aeduus, a, um, *Aeduan.* Masc. as subst., *an Aeduan, the Aeduan,* pl. *the Aeduans,* one

of the most powerful Gallic tribes, friendly to Caesar until the seventh year of the war.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *ill, sick;* compar. **aegrior,** super. **aegerrimus.** Adverb: **aegrē,** (illy); *hardly, barely;* compar. **aegrius,** super. **aegerrimē,** *with the greatest difficulty.*

Aemilius, ī, m., a decurion of the Gallic cavalry.

aequāliter, adv. [**aequālis,** *equal*], (equally), *evenly.*

aequitās, tātis, f. [**aequus**], (evenness); *equity, fairness.*

aequō, 1st conj. [**aequus**], *make equal, equalize.*

aequus, a, um, (even); *equal.*

aestās, aestātis, f., *summer.*

aestuārium, ī, n., (*salt*) *marsh.*

aetās, aetātis, f., *age.*

af-, form of **ad-,** before **f.**

af-ferō, af-ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum, *bring* (to); *contribute, cause.*

af-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (do to, affect); *fill,* I. **2,** 4; *treat,* I. **35,** 2; **suppliciō afficī,** (be affected with punishment), *be punished,* I. **27,** 4.

affīnitās, tātis, f., *relationship by marriage; intermarriage,* II. **4,** 4.

ag-, form of **ad-** before **g.**

ager, agrī, m., (cultivated land); *field, soil* (opposed to woods); *country* (opposed to city); *territory.*

ag-ger, aggeris, m. [**gerō,** *bring*], (what is brought to a place, material for earthworks); *embankment, mound, causeway,* or any structure of earth used in the operations of a Roman army; see pages xxxix, xl.

ag-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior,** *step*], (go toward, "go for"); *attack.*

āgmen, āgminis, n. [**agō**], *army on the march, marching column, line of march;* **novissimum** or **extrēmum āgmen,** *rear, rear-guard;* **prīmum āgmen,** *front, van, van-guard;* **cōnfertō āgmine,** *in close order.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, (1) (put in motion, drive); with **vineās,** *bring up;* with **impedīmenta,** *take along;* (2) *treat, discuss, confer;* (3) *carry on, do;* with **grātiās,** (give thanks), *thank;* with **conventūs,** *hold; arrange,* I. **41,** 3.

alacritās, tātis, f. [**alacer, alacris, alacre,** *lively*], (liveliness), *eagerness.*

ālārii, ōrum, m. [**āla,** *wing*], originally troops stationed on the wings of Roman armies; *allies.*

aliās: see **alius.**

aliēnus, a, um [**alius**], (belonging to another, another's); (1) *foreign;* (2) *unfavorable,* I. **15,** 2.

aliquam-diū, adv., (somewhat long), *for some time, some time.*

aliquī, qua, quod, indef. adj., (1) *some;* (2) *any.*

aliquis, aliquid, indef. pro., (1) *some one, something;* (2) *anyone, anything;* **aliquid** (§ 13), *somewhat,* I. **40,** 5.

aliter: see **alius.**

alius, a, ud, gen. **alīus,** dat. **aliī,** (1) *other, another;* (2) **alius . . . alius,** one . . . *another,* pl. *some . . . others;* (3) **alius āc** (**atque**), *other than.* **alia rēs,** *anything else,* I. **26,** 6; **alia ratiō,** *any other*

terms, I. **42**, 4. In condensed expressions, **alius aliā causā illātā**, *one assigning one reason and another another*, I. **39**, 3, and similarly II. **22**, 1, **24**, 3; *each other, one another*, II. **26**, 2. Adverbs: **aliter**, *otherwise;* **aliter sē habēbat āc**, II. **19**, 1, (had itself otherwise than), *was different from what;* **aliās**, (1) *at another time*, (2) **aliās . . . aliās**, II. **29**, 5, *at one time . . . at another* (*time*).

Allobrogēs, um, m., Greek acc. **as**, I. **14**, 3, a Gallic tribe in the northeastern part of the Province between the Rhone and the Alps.

alō, alere, aluī, (alitum) altum, (nourish); *support.*

Alpēs, Alpium, f., *the Alps*, applied to all the mountains between Italy, Gaul and Germany.

alter, altera, alterum, gen. **alterius** or **alterīus**, dat. **alterī**, (1) *the other* (of two); (2) *the second; a second person, another*, I. **36**, 1; (3) **alter . . . alter**, (*the*) *one . . . the other*, pl., (*the*) *one force . . . the other*, I. **26**, 1.

altitūdō, tūdinis, f. [**altus**], (1) *height;* (2) *depth.*

altus, a, um, (1) *high;* (2) *deep.*

Ambarrī, ōrum, m. [**ambi**, *around*, **Arar**, *the Saône*], a tribe connected with the Aeduans, living southeast of them, on both sides of the Saône.

Ambiānī, ōrum, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, south of the Morini, on the coast.

āmentia, ae, f. [adj. **ā-mēns**, *out of one's mind*], *foolishness, folly.*

amīcitia, ae, f. [**amīcus**], *friendship*, personal or political; *alliance.*

amīcus, a, um [**amō**, *love*], (1) *friendly;* (2) masculine as subst., *friend.*

ā-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go away), *lose.*

amor, amōris, m. [**amō**, *love*], *love.*

amplē: see **amplus**.

amplificō, 1st conj. [**amplus, faciō**], (make large), *increase, extend.*

amplus, a, um, *large, great;* **amplius**, neut. of compar. used as a subst., *more.* Adverb: **amplē**, *largely, generously;* compar. **amplius**, *more; any more*, I. **35**, 3, **43**, 9; super. **amplissimē**, *most generously.* Note that **amplius** is not always followed by the abl. when **quam** is omitted.

an, conj. introducing an alternative question, *or;* with first question omitted, I. **47**, 6, (*for some other purpose*), *or;* i.e. *probably.*

anceps, ancipitis, adj. [**ambi**, *around, on both sides*, **caput**, *head*], (two-headed), *double.*

Andebrogius, ī, m., a man of high rank among the Remi.

Andēs, Andium, m., a tribe in western Gaul on the north bank of the Loire.

angustiae, ārum, f. [**angustus**], (1) *narrowness;* (2) *narrow pass*, I. **11**, 1.

angustus, a, um, *narrow; limited*, I. **2**, 5; **in angustō**, *in a tight place, in a critical condition*,

anim-ad-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum [animus], (turn the mind to); (1) *notice;* (2) **in eum animadvertere,** *attend to him, punish him.*

animus, ī, m., (1) *mind, energy; soul, spirit;* (2) *courage;* (3) *character; sympathy,* I. **20**, 4.

annus, ī, m., *year.*

annuus, a, um [annus], (yearly); translated by adverb, *annually, yearly, every year.*

ante, adv. and prep. with acc., *before;* **ante diem, a.d.,** in dates, *on* such **a** *day before.*

anteā, adv. **[ante],** *before.*

antīquitus, adv. **[antīquus],** *in former times, long ago.*

antīquus, a, um [ante], *old, former.*

ap-, form of **ad-** before **p.**

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, *open.* Perf. partic. as adj., (opened), *open, exposed, unprotected.*

ap-pellō, 1st conj., *call.*

ap-petō, petere, petīvī, or **petiī, petītum,** *seek* (for).

ap-propinquō, 1st. conj., (draw near to), *approach.*

Apr., abbreviation for **Aprīlis.**

Aprīlis, e [aperiō], *of April.*

apud, prep. with acc., (1) *among;* (2) *in the presence of, with;* **apud sē,** *in his own presence.*

Aquilēia, ae, f., a Roman city at the head of the Adriatic sea.

Aquītānia, ae, f. **[Aquītānus],** one of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul; see I. **1**, 7.

Aquītānus, a, um, *Aquitanian.* Masc. as subst., *an Aquitanian, the Aquitanian;* plural *the Aquitanians,* the inhabitants of southwestern Gaul.

ar-, form of **ad-** before **r.**

Arar, Araris, m., acc. **Ararim,** the river *Arar,* now the *Saône,* tributary of the Rhone.

arbitrium, ī, n. **[arbiter,** *judge*], *discretion, judgment.*

arbitror, 1st conj. **[arbiter,** *judge*], *think, consider.*

arbor, arboris, f., *tree.*

arcem: see **arx.**

arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītum, *summon;* **mercēde arcessere,** (summon by pay), *hire.*

arduus, a, um, *steep.*

ariēs, arietis, m., (ram); figuratively, *battering ram.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., a German king, a Suebian, who had subjected a great part of Gaul when Caesar began his operations there; I. **31**, 10, etc.

arma, armōrum, n., *arms;* **in armīs,** often *under arms.*

armātūra, ae, f. **[armō],** *armor;* **levis armātūrae,** (of light armor), *light-armed.*

armō, 1st conj. **[arma],** *arm.* Masc. pl. of perf. partic., *armed;* as a substantive, *armed men,* II. **27**, 1.

arroganter, adv. **[arrogāns,** partic. of **ar-rogō,** *assume*], *haughtily, presumptuously, arrogantly.*

arrogantia, ae, f. **[arrogāns,** partic. of **ar-rogō,** *assume*], *haughtiness, presumption, arrogance.*

Arvernī, ōrum, m., a tribe of south-central Gaul about the head waters of the Allier (**Elaver**) river.

arx, arcis, f., *stronghold, fortress, citadel.*

ā-scendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsum [ad; scandō, *climb*], *climb* (to), *ascend, go up.*

āscēnsus, ūs, m. [**āscendō**], *ascent.*
ā-scīscō, scīscere, scīvī, scītum [**ad**; **sciō**, *know*], (ordain to); *accept, admit.*
at, adversative conjunction, (1) *but;* (2) after a conditional clause, *at least.*
at-, form of **ad-** before **t.**
atque, āc, conjunction, usually emphasizing what follows, (1) *and, and even, and especially;* (2) after words implying comparison, *than, as;* e.g. **par atque,** *the same as,* **aliter āc,** *otherwise than.*
Atrebātēs, um, m., a tribe toward the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul.
at-tingō, tingere, tigī, tactum [**tangō**, *touch*], *touch* (upon), *border on; reach, strike,* II. **32,** 1.
at-tulī, perf. of **af-ferō.**
auctōritās, tātis, f. [**auctor,** *promoter*], *influence, standing, prestige.*
auctus, a, um, partic. of **augeō.**
audācia, ae, f. [**audāx**], *daring, boldness, effrontery.*
audācter: see **audāx.**
audāx, audācis, adj. [**audeō**], *daring, bold;* compar. **audācior,** super. **audācissimus.** Adverb: **audācter,** *boldly, daringly;* compar. **audācius,** super. **audācissimē.**
audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.*
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, *hear, hear of;* **dictō audiēns,** (hearing to the word), *obedient.*
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase;* **auctiōrēs,** I. **43,** 8, compar. of perf. partic., *more and more increased.*
Aulercī, ōrum, m., a people of central Gaul, divided into four tribes.
Aulus, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*
Aurunculēius, ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* one of Caesar's *legati.*
ausus, a, um, partic. of **audeō.**
aut, conj., (1) *or;* (2) **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.* See **vel.**
autem, conj., *moreover;* postpositive.
auxilium, ī, n. [**augeō**], *aid, help;* as military term, *reinforcement, reserve, support;* plural, *auxiliary forces, auxiliaries,* as opposed to the regular legionary forces.
avāritia, ae, f., *greed, avarice, grafting.*
ā-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn away, turn aside; alienate,* I. **20,** 4, (**animī,** *sympathies*); **āversum hostem,** (an enemy turned away), *one of the enemy in retreat,* I. **26,** 2; **āversī,** *being turned away* (from some of the enemy), i.e. since there were some of the enemy whom they were not facing, II. **26,** 2.
avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*
Axona, ae, m., a river in the country of the Belgians, now the *Aisne.*

B

Baculus, ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus,* an especially brave centurion.
Baleāris, e, *Balearic,* pertaining to the Balearic islands, off the eastern coast of Spain, now *Majorca* and *Minorca.*

barbarus, a, um, *uncivilized, rude, uncultured:* as a substantive, *natives*, II. **35**, 1.

Belgae, ārum, m., *the Belgians*, the collective name for the inhabitants of the northern of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul.

bellicōsus, a, um [bellicus, *pertaining to war*], *warlike.*

bellō, 1st conj. **[bellum],** *make war, fight.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, m., a powerful tribe in the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul.

bellum, ī, n., loc. **bellī,** *war.*

bene: see **bonus.**

beneficium, ī, n. **[bene, faciō],** *kindness, service;* **tantō beneficiō afficere,** (affect with such great kindness), *treat so kindly*, I. **35**, 2; **beneficiō sortium,** (by the kindness of the lots), *thanks to fortune*, I. **53**, 7.

Bibracte, Bibractis, n., loc. **Bibracte** or **Bibractī,** the capital of the Aeduans, situated upon Mont Beuvray, in the central part of their territory, I. **23**, 1.

Bibrax, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi, II. **6**, 1.

bīduum, ī, n. **[bis,** *twice*, **diēs],** (the space of two days), *two days.*

biennium, ī, n. **[bis,** *twice*, **annus],** (the space of two years), *two years.*

bīpertītō, adv. **[bis,** *twice*, **partior,** *divide*, from **pars],** *in two divisions.*

Biturīgēs, um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

Boduognātus, ī, m., the leader of the Nervii.

Bōiī, ōrum, m., a tribe associated in the migration of the Helvetians, afterwards received by the Aeduans and located in their territory.

bonitās, tātis, f. **[bonus],** (goodness), *fertility.*

bonus, a, um, *good;* compar. **melior,** *better;* super. **optimus,** *best;* neut. as a subst., *good, advantage*, I. **40**, 6. Adverb: **bene,** *well;* compar. **melius,** *better;* super. **optimē,** *best.*

bracchium, ī, n., *forearm, arm.*

Brātuspantium, ī, n., a stronghold of the Bellovaci.

brevis, e, *short*, of space or time.

brevitās, tātis, f. **[brevis],** *shortness, brevity; small stature*, II. **30**, 4.

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

C

C, numeral, 100; but not originally because it was the first letter of **centum.**

C., abbreviation for **Gāius,** a Roman *praenomen.*

Cabūrus, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a distinguished Gaul, a friend of the Romans.

cadāver, cadāveris, n. **[cadō],** *corpse*, (dead) *body.*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall.*

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum [cadō], *cause to fall, fell, cut down, kill.*

Caemanī, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.

Caerōsī, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Gaius Julius Caesar*, the great statesman and general, author of the Commentaries.

calamitās, tātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*

Caletī, ōrum, m., one of the Armorican tribes, on the northwest coast, north of the Seine.

cālō, cālōnis, m., *camp follower;* any non-combatant moving with an army, including personal servants, drivers, sutlers, etc.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take;* occupy, seize; with **nōmen**, *derive;* ("take in"), *deceive*, I. **40**, 9; **initium capere ab**, (take a beginning from), *begin at.*

captīvus, a, um [capiō], *captive;* as subst., *prisoner.*

caput, capitis, n., *head; person, individual* (like "head" of cattle), I. **29**, 2, II. **33**, 7.

Carnutēs, um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

carrus, ī, m., *cart;* mentioned only as used by the Gauls.

Cassiānus, a, um [Cassius], (relating to Cassius); **bellum Cassiānum**, *the war with Cassius.*

Cassius, ī, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul 107 B.C., defeated and killed by the Tigurini near Lake Geneva; I. **7**, 4, **12**, 5, 7.

castellum, ī, n. [dim. of **castrum**], *fort, redoubt.*

Casticus, ī, m., a powerful chief of the Sequanians.

castra, castrōrum, n. [pl. of **castrum, ī**, n., *fortress*], a *camp*, always fortified; **in castrīs**, *in camp life, in war*, I. **39**, 5. [**pōnō**, *pitch;* **moveō**, *break.*]

cāsus, ūs, m. [**cadō**], (a falling, happening); (1) *chance, fortune*, good or bad; (2) *accident, disaster; situation, emergency;* **cāsū dēvenīre**, (come by chance), *happen to come.*

Catamantāloedis, is, m., the most powerful Sequanian of the generation before Caesar's arrival.

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*

Caturīgēs, um, m., a tribe in the Graian Alps in the valley of the upper Durance.

causa, ae, f., (1) *reason, cause; case* at law, I. **4**, 1, 2; (2) abl. after a gen., *for the sake, for the purpose.*

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard.*

cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go, go from); *give way, retreat.*

celer, celeris, celere, *swift, quick;* compar. **celerior**; super. **celerrimus**. Adverb: **celeriter**, *swiftly, quickly, speedily;* compar. **celerius**; super. **celerrimē**.

celeritās, tātis, f. [**celer**], *swiftness, speed.* [**ad**, *in the matter of*, II. **26**, 5.]

celeriter: see **celer**.

cēlō, 1st conj., *hide, conceal.*

Celtae, ārum, m., *the Celts;* in Caesar, the native name for the people living in central Gaul, as distinguished from the Belgians and the Aquitanians; I. **1**, 1.

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, (estimate), *decree.*

cēnsus, ūs, m. [**cēnseō**], (estimate), *census, enumeration.*

centum, indecl. card. adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, ōnis, m. [**centum**], *centurion*, originally the commander of a hundred men; a subordinate officer in the Roman legion. See page xxv.

certus, a, um [partic. of **cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum,** *separate, distinguish*], *certain, sure, definite;* **certiōrem facere,** (make more certain), *inform;* **certior fierī,** *be informed.*

cēterus, a, um (sing. rare), *the other;* **cēterae rēs,** *the other things* (*which he might need*), II. **3**, 3; as subst., *the others, the rest*, I. **32**, 2.

Ceutronēs, um, m., a tribe in the Graian Alps, about the headwaters of the Isère.

cibārius, a, um [**cibus,** food], (relating to food); neut. plu., *provisions;* **molita cibāria,** (ground foodstuffs), *meal, flour.*

Cimberius, ī, m., a leader of the Suebi.

Cimbrī, ōrum, m., a Germanic people who overran Gaul in the second century B.C., and gave Rome great uneasiness until defeated by Marius in the north of Italy, 103 B.C.; I. **33**, 4, **40**, 5.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, *surround.*

circinus, ī, m. [**circus,** *circle*], *a pair of compasses; gigantic compasses*, I. **38**, 4.

circiter, adv. and prep. with acc. [**circus,** *circle*], *about.*

circuitus, ūs, m. [**circum-eō,** *go around*], (a going around); *circuitous route, detour*, I. **41**, 4; *succession*, II. **29**, 3; *circumference*, II. **30**, 2; **in circuitū,** *by a roundabout way*, I. **21**, 1.

circum, prep. with acc., *around; about, near.*

circum-dō, dare, dedī, datum, (put around); *surround;* perf. partic., *surrounding*, I. **38**, 6.

circum-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead around); *draw* (*around*).

circum-icio (pronounced as if spelled **circum-jiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], *throw around*, as military term; *station around.*

circum-mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, (fortify around), *surround, invest.*

circum-sistō, sistere, stetī, —, (take a stand around), *rally around, surround.*

circum-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come around), (1) *surround, outflank;* (2) like English "get around," *out-wit*, I. **46**, 3.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

citerior, ius, compar. adj. [**cis, citrā**], (more on this side), *nearer* (to Rome); super. **citimus.**

citrā, prep. with acc. [**cis**], *on this side of.*

citrō, adv. [**citrā**], (to this side); **ūltrō citrōque,** *back and forth.*

cīvitās, tātis, f. [**cīvis,** *citizen*], (1) *citizenship*, I. **47**, 4; (2) collective, *state.*

clāmor, ōris, m., *shouting, shout.*

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *close, shut;* **āgmen claudere,** (close the line of march), *bring up the rear.*

clēmentia, ae, f., *mildness, mercy, clemency.*

cliēns, entis, c., *dependent, retainer; vassals.*

co-, form of **cum-** (**com-**) before vowels and **h.**

cō-, form of **cum-** (**com-**) before **gn.**

co-acervō, 1st conj. [**acervus**], *pile up*, *pile together*.

coāctus, a, um, partic. of **cōgō**.

co-emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy* (*up*), *purchase*.

coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus, *began*. See pages 214, 215. The present system is supplied by **incipiō**. With a complementary infin. in the passive voice, **coeptus sum**, etc., is used as a deponent verb; I. **47**, 1, II. **6**, 2.

co-erceō, ercēre, ercuī, ercitum [**arceō**, *inclose*], (confine), *restrain*.

cōgitō, 1st conj. [for **co-agitō**], (revolve, discuss), *consider*.

cō-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnitum, (become acquainted with), *ascertain*, *learn*, *find out;* **cōgnōvī**, as pres. perf., *I have become acquainted with*, therefore *I know;* pluperf., *I knew*, etc. Perf. partic. **cōgnitus, a, um**, as adj., *noted*, I. **28**, 5.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum [for **co-agō**]; (1) with **co-** meaning *together*, (drive together), *collect;* (2) with **co-** intensive, (drive), *compel*. Perf. partic., **coāctus, a, um**, (having been compelled), *under compulsion*, I. **17**, 6.

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort*, a tenth of a legion.

cohortātiō, ōnis, f. [**cohortor**], *address*, *appeal*.

co-hortor, 1st conj., (urge on), *address; encourage*.

col-, form of **cum-** (**com-**) before l.

collātus, a, um, partic. of **cōnferō**.

col-ligō, 1st conj., *fasten together*.

collis, is, m., *hill*.

col-locō, 1st conj. [**locus**], *place*, *station; marry off*, *give in marriage*, I. **18**, 6, 7.

colloquium, ī, n. [**colloquor**], (a talking together), *conference*.

col-loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *talk with*.

com-, regular form of **cum-** as a prefix.

com-būrō, būrere, būssī, būstum [related to **ūrō**, *burn*], *burn up*.

commeātus, ūs, m. [**commeō**], (a going back and forth); *provisions*, *supplies*.

com-memorō, 1st conj., *mention*, *relate*.

(**commentārius, ī**, m. originally, *notebook*, *memorandum*, *sketch*. Not in text of Caesar, but applied to the single books by the grammarians.)

com-meō, 1st conj., *go back and forth*, *resort;* **commeāre ad**, *visit*.

com-minus, adv. [**manus**], *hand to hand*, *at close quarters*.

com-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (send together); (1) with **proelium**, *begin*, *engage in*, *join;* (2) *intrust;* (3) *do*, I. **14**, 2; (4) *permit*, I. **13**, 7, **46**, 3.

commodē: see **commodus**.

com-modus, a, um [**modus**], (having measure with what is desired); *advantageous*, *convenient;* neut. used as a noun, *advantage*, I. **35**, 4. Adverb: **commodē**, *advantageously*, *conveniently;* **satis commodē**, *very well*.

com-mone-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum [**moneō**], (give a good warning about), *impress upon*.

com-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move strongly), *influence*, I. **20**, 3; *alarm*.
com-mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, (fortify strongly); **castella commūnīre,** (fortify forts strongly), *construct strong forts*.
com-mūnis, e [mūnus, *task*], (having tasks together); *common, general*.
commūtātiō, ōnis, f. [commūtō], (*complete*) *change*.
com-mūtō, 1st conj., *change* (completely).
comparō, 1st conj. **[com-pār,** *equal with*], (liken), *compare;* I. **31**, 11. For all other passages see **comparō** below.
com-parō, 1st conj. [intensive of **parō**], *prepare, provide*.
com-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, *drive* (all together).
com-perio, perīre, perī, pertum [cf. **experior**], *find out, learn*.
com-plector, plectī, plexus sum, *embrace*.
com-pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum, (fill completely), *cover*.
com-plūrēs, plūra or **plūria,** gen. **plūrium [plūs],** *several, a considerable number of*.
com-portō, 1st conj., *carry together, gather*.
con-, form of **cum- (com-)** before most of the consonants.
cōnātum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. partic. of **cōnor** in passive sense], (a thing attempted), *attempt*.
cōnātus, ūs, m. [cōnor], *attempt*.
con-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (yield), *grant, permit*.
con-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [caedō], (cut down), *kill*.
conciliō, 1st conj. **[concilium],** (win over); *win, gain*.
concilium, ī, n., *assembly, council*.
con-clāmō, 1st conj., *cry out*.
con-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** *run together, hurry; gather at one point*, I. **48**, 6.
concursus, ūs, m. [concurrō], (a running together), *charges*.
condiciō, ōnis, f. [con-dīcō], (a saying together), *condition, terms*.
con-dōnō, 1st conj. **[dōnum,** *gift*], *forgive, pardon*.
Condrūsī, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians upon the east bank of the Meuse.
con-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead together, bring together; hire*, II. **1**, 4.
cōn-ferō, cōn-ferre, con-tulī, collātum, *bring together, collect;* of things, *convey; compare*, I. **31**, 11; *attribute*, I. **40**, 10; *postpone*, I. **40**, 13; **sē cōnferre,** (betake themselves), *retire*, I. **26**, 1.
cōnfertus, a, um [perf. partic. of **cōn-ferciō,** *crowd together*], *crowded, compact;* **cōnfertō āgmine,** *in close order*.
cōn-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, [faciō], (do up); (1) *complete, accomplish, finish;* (2) *exhaust, wear out, overcome;* (complete the number of), *furnish*, II. **4**, 5; *make out, execute*, I. **29**, 1.
cōn-fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, (trust firmly); (1) with dat. or indirect dis., *trust;* (2) with abl., *rely* (on).
cōn-fīrmō, 1st conj. **[fīrmus],** (1) (confirm), *strengthen, estab-*

lish; (2) (affirm), *assure, declare.*

cōnfīsus, a, um, partic. of **cōn-fīdō.**

cōn-flīgō, flīgere, flīxī, flīctum, (strike together), *contend, fight.*

con-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior,** *step*], (meet); *meet in battle, fight.*

cōn-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **conjiciō**), **icere, coniēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw together), *throw, hurl; place* (hurriedly), II. **16,** 4, **28,** 1; **in fugam cōnicere,** *put to flight.*

con-iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join* (together), *unite,* trans.; with reflexive, *join, unite,* intrans.

coniūrātiō, ōnis, f. [**coniūrō**], (a swearing together), *conspiracy.*

con-iūrō, 1st conj., (swear together), *band together, unite.*

cōnor, 1st conj., *try, attempt;* **idem cōnārī,** (attempt the same thing), *make the same attempt;* **quicquam cōnārī,** *attempt* [*to do*] *anything.*

con-quīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī, quīsītum [**quaerō**], *seek for, search out.*

cōn-sanguineus, a, um [**sanguis,** *blood*], (of common blood), *related.* Masc. as subst., *relative, kinsman.*

cōn-scīscō, scīscere, scīvī, scītum [**sciō,** *know*], *adjudge;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** *commit suicide.*

cōn-scius, a, um [**sciō,** *know*], *conscious, aware.*

cōn-scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, (write down together), *enlist, enroll.*

cōnsecūtus, a, um, partic. of **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēnsus, ūs, m. [**cōnsentiō**], *agreement, consent.*

cōn-sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, (feel with), *agree,* II. **3,** 2; *unite,* II. **3,** 5.

cōn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, (1) *follow up;* (2) *overtake;* (3) *gain,* I. **43,** 5, II. **1,** 4.

cōn-servō, 1st conj., *save, preserve.*

Cōnsidius, ī, m., *Publius Considius;* an officer in Caesar's army.

cōn-sīdō, sīdere, sēdī (sīdī), sessum [**sedeō,** *sit*], (sit down); (1) *settle;* (2) of an army, *encamp.*

cōnsilium, ī, n. [**cōnsulō**], (deliberation); *council,* I. **40,** 1; regularly, *plan; prudence,* I. **40,** 8.

cōn-similis, e, *quite like, very similar.*

cōn-sistō, sistere, stitī, —, *take one's stand, make a stand; stop, halt,* I. **13,** 7, II. **11,** 4; *depend,* **in,** *upon,* II. **33,** 4.

cōn-sōlor, 1st conj., *comfort.*

cōnspectus, ūs, m. [**cōnspiciō**], *sight.*

cōn-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *see.*

cōn-spicor, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], *see.*

cōnstanter: see **cōnstō.**

cōnstantia, ae, f. [**cōnstāns,** pres. partic. of **cōnstō,** *stand firm*], *firmness.*

cōn-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum [**statuō**], (1) with infin. or **ut,** *decide;* (2) with dir. obj. or in passive, *place, station;* with **diem,** *appoint.*

cōn-stō, stāre, stitī, stātum,

(stand together, stand firm). Adverb of pres. partic.: **cōnstanter**, *consistently*.

cōn-suēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētum, *become accustomed;* hence, perf., *have become accustomed = be accustomed;* pluperf., *was accustomed*, etc.

cōnsuētūdō, tūdinis, f. [**cōnsuēscō**], *custom*.

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul*, one of the two chief executive officers at Rome, elected yearly.

cōnsulātus, ūs, m. [**cōnsul**], *consulship*.

cōn-sulō, sulere, suluī, sultum, *consult, deliberate*.

cōnsultum, ī, n. [perf. partic. of **cōnsulō**, used as a subst.], (a thing deliberated upon), *decree*.

cōn-sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, (take away altogether), *destroy, use up*.

contemptus, ūs, m. [**contemnō**, *despise*], *contempt;* **contemptuī esse**, *be an object of contempt, be a joke*.

con-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, (strain hard, struggle); (1) *fight;* (2) *hasten, hurry; strive, work*, I. **31**, 2.

contentiō, ōnis, f. [**contendō**] *struggle*.

continenter: see **contineō**.

con-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (1) *hold* (together), *keep; occupy*, I. **38**, 5; (2) *surround, bound, hem in*. Adverb of pres. partic.: **continenter**, *continually*.

con-tingō, tingere, tigī, tactum [**tangō**], *touch; happen*, I. **43**, 4.

continuus, a, um [**contineō**], *successive, in succession*.

contrā, adv., *against* (*him*), I. **18**, 3, *against* (*them*), II. **17**, 3; prep. with acc., *against*.

con-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, (draw together), *concentrate, collect*.

contrārius, a, um [**contrā**], *opposite, facing*.

contumēlia, ae, f., *insult*.

con-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (1) *come together, assemble; meet*, I. **27**, 2; (2) be agreed upon, I. **36**, 5, II. **19**, 6.

conventus, ūs, m. [**conveniō**], (1) *meeting, assembly*, I. **18**, 2; (2) *court*.

conversus, a, um, partic. of **convertō**.

con-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn* (around); *change*, I. **41**, 1; **conversa sīgna īnferre**, (bear on turned standards), a technical military term, an order for the third line to face about and advance, I. **25**, 7, II. **26**, 1; translate, *form a second front and advance*.

con-vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, (conquer completely), *prove clearly;* **avāritiam convictam**, *be convicted of grafting*, I. **40**, 12.

con-vocō, 1st. conj., *call together, summon*.

cōpia, ae, f., (1) *plenty, supply;* (2) plural, *forces, troops; wealth*, I. **31**, 5; *supplies*, II. **10**, 4.

cōpiōsus, a, um [**cōpia**], (plentiful, full of supplies), *wealthy*.

cōram, adv., (face to face), *in person*.

Coriosolitēs, um, m., acc. **as**, a tribe on the northwest coast of Gaul.

cornū, ūs, n., (1) *horn;* (2) *wing* of an army.

corpus, corporis, n., *body; dead body, corpse.*

cortex, corticis, m. and f., *bark* of trees.

cotīdiānus, a, um [cotīdiē], *daily; regular, usual,* I. **19,** 3.

cotīdiē, adv. [**quot,** *each,* **diēs,** *day*], *daily.*

Cotta, ae, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* one of Caesar's *legati.*

Crassus, ī, m., (1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* who with Caesar and Pompey formed the first triumvirate; I. **21,** 4. (2) *Publius Licinius Crassus,* (called **adulēscēns,** *junior*), younger son of the above, one of Caesar's *legati,* I. **52,** 7, II. **34.**

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *frequent, numerous;* compar. **crēbrior;** super. **crēberrimus.**

cre-dō, dere, didī, ditum [old stem meaning *faith,* and **dō, dare**], (give credit), *believe.*

cremō, 1st conj., *burn* (of persons); **ignī cremāre,** (burn with fire), *burn to death, burn at the stake.*

creō, 1st conj., (produce), *elect, choose.*

Crēs, Crētis, m., acc. plu., **Crētas,** a *Cretan.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, (*grow, increase*); *become powerful,* I. **20,** 2.

cruciātus, ūs, m. [**cruciō,** *torture,* from **crux,** *cross*], *torture, cruelty.*

crūdēlis, e, *cruel.* Adverb: **crūdēliter,** *cruelly.*

crūdēlitās, tātis, f. [**crūdēlis**], *cruelty.*

crūdēliter: see **crūdēlis.**

cultus, ūs, m. [**colō,** *cultivate*], *civilization, comfort.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with,* in the sense of *in company with,* or *in association with.* Enclitic with the personal pronouns, and often with **quis** and **quī.** As a prefix, *with, together,* or intensive.

cum, subord. conj.; (1) *when, while,* §§ 182, 183; (2) *since,* § 172; (3) *although,* § 199. **cum . . . tum,** (while . . . especially), *not only . . . but also,* II. **4,** 7.

cūnctus, a, um [for **coniūnctus,** from **coniungō**], (joined, taken as a whole), *all.*

cupidē: see **cupidus.**

cupiditās, tātis, f. [**cupidus**], *desire, eagerness.*

cupidus, a, um [**cupiō**], *desirous* (of), *eager* (for). Adverb: **cupidē,** *eagerly.*

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, *desire, be eager; wish well,* I. **18,** 8; with dat.

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūra, ae, f., *care, concern;* **sibi hanc rem cūrae futūram** (esse), (that this matter would be a care to him, § 32), *that he would attend to this matter;* similarly, I. **40,** 11.

cūrō, 1st conj. [**cūra**], (1) (care for, provide for); (2) *cause.*

cursus, ūs, m. [**currō,** *run*], (1) *running;* (2) *speed.*

cūstōdia, ae, f. [**cūstōs**], (a guarding), *guard, watch, sentinel.*

cūstōs, cūstōdis, m., *guard, observer;* much like *detective,* I. **20,** 6.

D

D, numeral, 500.
d., abbreviation for **diem**, in **ante diem.**
damnō, 1st conj. [**damnum**, *harm*], *find guilty*, *condemn.*
dē, prep. with abl., (1) *down from*, *from;* (2) *concerning;* also occasionally *of*, *during*, *for.* As a prefix, *down*, also intensive or negative.
dēbēo, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum [for **de-hibeō**, from **habeō**], (not have, owe); *ought;* **sūspicārī dēbēre**, *cannot help suspecting*, *have good reason to suspect*, I. **44**, 10.
dē-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go from), *go away*, *withdraw.*
decem, indecl. card. adj., *ten.*
dēceptus, a, um, partic. of **dēcipiō.**
dē-cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, (separate, distinguish from), *decree.*
dē-certō, 1st conj., *fight a decisive battle*, "*fight it out.*"
dē-cidō, cidere, cidī, — [**cadō**], *fall off.*
decimus, a, um [**decem**], ord. adj., *tenth.*
dē-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], *deceive*, "*take in.*"
dē-clārō, 1st conj. [**clārus**, *clear*], *declare.*
dē-clīvis, e [**clīvus**, *slope*], *sloping* downward.
decumānus, a, um [**decimus**], *of a tenth;* **decumāna porta**, *the rear gate* of a camp, near which the tenth cohort of a single legion would be placed.
decuriō, ōnis, m. [**decem**], *decurion*, a cavalry officer in charge of a small squad, originally ten men.
dē-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum**, *run down*, *hurry down.*
dēditicius, a, um [**dēditus**], *having surrendered;* masc. as a subst., (one who has surrendered), *prisoner*, *subject.*
dēditiō, ōnis, f. [**dēdō**], *surrender;* in **dēditiōne accipere**, *accept the surrender* of any one.
dē-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], *give up*, *surrender*, trans. with reflex., *give up*, *surrender*, intrans.
dē-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead off), *withdraw;* when used figuratively, *bring*, II. **10**, 5, **31**, 5.
dē-fatīgō, 1st conj., *tire out*, *exhaust.*
dē-fendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsum, (strike down); (1) *ward off*, *keep off*, I. **44**, 6, II. **29**, 5; elsewhere, *defend*, *protect.*
dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f. [**dēfendō**], *defense*, *protection.*
dēfēnsor, ōris, m. [**dēfendō**], *defender.*
dē-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, (bring down to a destination), *report*, *carry; bestow*, *confer*, **ad**, *upon*, II. **4**, 7.
dē-fessus, a, um [partic. of **dē-fetīscor**, *become exhausted*], *exhausted*, *worn out.*
dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (un-make, un-do), (1) *fail*, II. **10**, 4; (2) *revolt*, II. **14**, 2.
dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **dējiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (1) *throw down*, *dislodge*, *kill;* (2) figuratively, *cast down*, *disappoint*, I. **8, 4.**

dēiectus, a, um, partic. of **dēiciō.**

dēiectus, ūs, m. [**dēiciō**], (a throwing down), *slope.*

de-inde, adv., *then; secondly.*

dēlēctus, a, um, partic. of **dēligō, dēligere.**

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *wipe out,* II, **27**, 2; regularly, *destroy.*

dē-līberō, 1st conj., *deliberate, consider.*

dē-ligō, 1st conj., (bind down), *tie,* I. **53**, 3.

dē-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum [**legō**, *pick*], *choose, select.*

dē-minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum [**minus**], *lessen, diminish;* **quicquam dē voluptāte dēminuere,** *lessen his delight at all.*

dē-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let down); **capite dēmissō,** *with bowed head*(*s*).

dē-mōnstrō, 1st conj., (point out), *show, mention.*

dēmum, adv., *at length.*

dē-negō, 1st conj., (utterly deny), *absolutely refuse.*

dēnī, ae, a [**decem**], (ten by ten), *ten each.*

dēnique, adv., *finally; at least,* II. **33**, 2.

dēnsus, a, um, *thick, dense.*

dē-nūntiō, 1st conj., (announce openly), *threaten.*

dē-perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum, *lose* (entirely).

dē-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (put down), *lay aside; leave,* II. **29**, 4; **memoriam dēpōnere,** (lay aside the memory), *forget.*

dē-populor, 1st conj. [not connected with **populus**], *ravage* (completely).

dēprecātor, tōris [**dēprecor**], *intercessor, advocate, mediator;* **eō dēprecātōre,** (he being intercessor), *by his intercession, with him as mediator.*

dē-precor, 1st conj. [**prex**], *pray to be delivered from.*

dē-serō, serere, seruī, sertum, (disjoin), *abandon, desert.*

dēsertus, a, um, partic. of **dēserō.**

dē-sīgnō, 1st conj. [**sīgnum**], (mark down); *designate, mean.*

dē-sistō, sistere, stitī, —, (stand down); *cease, desist.*

dē-spērō, 1st conj. [**spēs**], *give up hope, despair* (**dē,** *of*). **dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus,** (our affairs having been despaired of), *despairing of our success.*

dē-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look down upon, despise.*

dē-spoliō, 1st conj. [**spolia,** *spoils*], *despoil, deprive.*

dē-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum [**statuō**], (set aside), *abandon, desert.*

dēstrictus, a, um, partic. of **dēstringō.**

dē-stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictum, *draw* (from).

dē-sum, de-esse, dē-fuī, (**dē-futūrus**), *be wanting, be lacking,* I. **48**, 3; *fail,* I. **40**, 12.

dē-super, adv., *from above.*

dēterior, ius, compar. adj. [**dē**], *lower, poorer;* super. **dēterrimus; vectīgālia dēteriōra facere,** (make his revenues lower), *lessen his revenues, make his revenues worth-less.*

dē-terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, (frighten off), *deter, prevent.*

dētrāctus, a, um, partic. of **dētrahō.**

dē-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, *draw off, remove,* II. **21,** 5; *take,* II. **25,** 2. (**dē,** or dat. of separation, *from.*)

dētrīmentum, ī, n., *disadvantage, loss, source of injury.*

dētulī, perfect of **dēferō.**

deus, ī, m., vocative **deus;** pl., and nom. voc., **deī, diī, dī;** gen. **deōrum, deum;** dat. and abl. **deīs, diīs, dīs;** acc. **deōs;** *god.*

dē-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, (convey to a destination), *bring.*

dē-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come* (down).

dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right,* opposed to left; compar. **dexterior;** super. **dexterrimus;** feminine as subst. with **manus** understood, *right hand,* I. **20,** 5.

dī-, form of **dis-** before some consonants.

diciō, ōnis, f. [**dīcō**], *sway, control;* like the English "say."

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, (1) *say, speak, tell;* (2) with **diem,** *appoint;* **causam dīcere,** *plead the case.*

dictiō, ōnis, f. [**dīcō**], *speaking;* **causae dictiō,** *pleading* (of) *the case.*

dictum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. partic. of **dīcō**], (a thing said), *word of command, order.*

didicī, perfect of **discō.**

diēs, diēī, m., but sometimes fem. in the sing. when referring to a definite date, *day; time,* I. **7,** 5; **in diēs,** *day by day, daily;* **ad diem,** (at the day), *promptly, punctually;* **multō diē,** *late in the day;* **diem ex diē,** *from day to day.*

dif-, form of **dis-** before **f.**

dif-ferō, ferre, dis-tulī, dī-lātum, (bear apart), *differ, be different.*

dif-ficilis, e [**facilis,** *easy*], *difficult, hard;* compar. **difficilior;** *super.* **difficillimus;** with **iter,** *hard* to pass over.

difficultās, tātis, f. [**difficilis**], *difficulty, trouble.*

dīgnitās, tātis, f. [**dīgnus,** *worthy*], (worthiness, worth); *rank, position.*

dīligenter: see **dīligō.**

dīligentia, ae, f. [**dīligēns,** pres. partic. of **dīligō**], *carefulness, watchfulness.*

dī-ligō, ligere, lēxī, lēctum [**legō,** *pick, choose*], *select, care for.* Pres. partic.: **dīligēns,** *caring for, careful.* Adverb: **dīligenter,** *carefully.*

dī-mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *measure off;* **opere dīmēnsō** (passive), *the work having been measured off* or *staked out.*

dī-micō, 1st conj. (flash apart: of swords), *fight, contend.*

dī-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (send in all directions), (1) *send away, dismiss,* II. **14,** 1; with **concilium,** *dismiss, adjourn;* (2) (let go away), *lose,* II. **21,** 6.

dir-, form of **dis-,** before **r.**

dīreptus, a, um, partic. of **dīripiō.**

dir-imō, imere, ēmī, ēmptum [**emō**], (take apart), *break off.*

dī-ripio, ripere, ripuī, reptum, (seize and tear apart), *plunder.*

dis-, insep. prefix, *apart, asunder;* hence sometimes having a negative or intensive force, according to the meaning of the word with which it is joined.

dis-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go apart), *go away, depart;* **discēdere ab,** *leave.*

discēssus, ūs, m. [**discēdō**], *departure.*

dīsciplīna, ae, f. [**dīscō**], *training.*

dīscō, dīscere, didicī, —, *learn, be taught.*

dis-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **disjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw in all directions, scatter); *break, rout.*

dī-spergō, spergere, spersī, spersum [**spargō**], *scatter* in all directions, *disperse.*

dīspersus, a, um, partic. of **dīspergō.**

dis-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (place apart), *place at intervals, distribute.*

dis-sipō, 1st conj., (throw in all directions), *scatter, disperse.*

dis-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (hold apart), *keep apart, separate.*

dītissimus, a, um: see **dīves.**

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., *long, for a time;* **quam diū,** *as long as,* I. **17,** 6.

diurnus, a, um [**diēs**], *during the day, by day.*

diūturnitās, tātis, f. [**diūturnus**], *length, long duration.*

diūturnus, a, um [**diū**], *long, long-continued.*

dīversus, a, um, partic. of **dīvertō.**

dī-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn aside* or *apart.* Perf. partic. used as an adj., *different.*

dīves, gen. **dīvitis,** or **dīs,** gen. **dītis,** *rich;* compar. **dīvitior** or **dītior**; super. **dīvitissimus** or **dītissimus.**

Diviciācus, ī, m., (1) the most influential of the Aeduans during Caesar's campaign in Gaul, I. **3,** 5, etc. (2) A chief of the Suessiones, II. **4,** 7.

Dīvicō, ōnis, m., leader of the Helvetians in their campaign against Cassius, B.C. 107, and chief of their embassy to Caesar after the destruction of the Tigurini.

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum [**dis-, videō**], *divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine, of the gods.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give; afford, allow,* I. **14,** 1; **inter sē dare,** *exchange*; **in fugam dare,** *put to flight.* In composition **dō** often means *put.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, (teach), *show, explain* (*to*).

doleō, dolēre, doluī, —, *suffer.*

dolor, dolōris, m. [**doleō**], (suffering); *distress, grief;* **māgnō dolōre afficī,** (be affected with great distress), *be greatly distressed.* [**capiō,** *feel,* I. **20,** 2.]

dolus, ī, m., (device); *deceit, cunning.*

domesticus, a, um [**domus**], (of the house); *local, domestic.*

domicilium, ī, n. [**domus**], *dwelling-place, dwelling, residence.*

dominor, 1st conj. [**dominus,** *master*], *rule, be master, lord it.*

domus, domūs, domuī, domum, domō, loc. **domī**; pl. **domūs, domōrum, domibus, domōs, domibus,** f., *home;* **domō exīre,** (go out from home), *emigrate.* See §§ 91, 93, 95, 97.

dōnō, 1st conj. [**dōnum,** *gift, present*], *present.*

Dubis, is, m., a river of Gaul, tributary to the Arar (Saône), now the Doubs.

dubitātiō, ōnis, f. [**dubitō**], *doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, 1st conj. [**dubius**], (1) *hesitate;* (2) when followed by **quīn,** *doubt,* except II. **2,** 4; when followed by **dē,** *doubt, entertain doubts,* and so I. **41,** 3.

dubius, a, um [**duo**], *doubtful;* **nōn est dubium quīn,** (it is not doubtful but that), *there is no doubt that.*

ducentī, ae, a [**duō, centum**], card. adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (1) *lead;* of carts, *draw; put off, delay,* I. **16,** 4, 5; *prolong,* I. **38,** 4; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** (lead into marriage), *marry;* (2) *consider,* I. **3,** 2.

dum, subord. conj., *while; until.* See §§ 177–180. **nōn-dum,** *not yet.*

Dumnorīx, rīgis, m., a turbulent Aeduan.

duo, duae, duo, gen. **duōrum, duārum, duōrum,** dat. abl. **duōbus, duābus, duōbus,** acc. **duōs** or **duo, duās, duo,** card. adj., *two.*

duo-decim, indecl. card. adj. [**decem**], *twelve.*

duo-decimus, a, um, ord. adj. [**decem, decimus**], *twelfth.*

duo-dē-vīgintī, indecl. card. adj., (two from twenty), *eighteen.*

duplex, gen. **duplicis,** adj. [**duo,** *two,* **plicō,** *fold*], (twofold), *double.*

dūrus, a, um, *hard, difficult.*

dux, ducis, m. or f. [**dūcō**], *leader; guide,* I. **21,** 2, II. **7,** 1.

E

ē, form of **ex** before some of the consonants.

Eburōnēs, um, m., a tribe of Belgians, dwelling chiefly between the Rhine and the Meuse.

ēditus, a, um, partic. of **ēdō.**

ē-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (put forth), *inflict. Perf. partic.* **ēditus,** *elevated, rising.*

ē-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead out.*

ef, form of **ex-** before **f.**

ef-fēminō, 1st conj. [**fēmina,** *woman*], (make womanish), *weaken, enfeeble, enervate.*

ef-ferō, ferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātum (bear out), *take,* I. **5,** 3; *relate, tell,* I. **46,** 4.

ef-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (make out, complete); (1) *effect;* (2) *render, make,* I. **38,** 6.

ēgī, perf. of **agō.**

ego, first pers. pron., *I.* See page 207, and § 121.

ē-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior,** *step*], *go out.*

ēgregiē: see **ēgregius.**

ē-gregius, a, um [**grex,** *flock*], (out of the common), *extraordinary.* Adverb; **ēgregiē,** *extraordinarily, remarkably, excellently.*

ēgressus, a, um, partic. of **ēgredior.**

ēlātus, a, um, partic. of **efferō.**

ēlēctus, a, um, partic. of **ēligō.**

ē-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum [**legō,** *choose*], *pick* (out).

ē-migrō, 1st conj., *move out, emigrate.*

ē-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (send out); *drop,* I. **25,** 4; *throw,* II. **23,** 1.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy.*

ē-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, (be born from), *grow out.*

enim, coörd. conj., *for;* **neque enim**, implying an ellipsis, *and* (this is true) *for . . . not*, in which the *and* is best omitted in translation.

ē-nūntiō, 1st conj., (tell out), *disclose, reveal, make known.*

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum**, *go; march.* For conjugation, see pages 212, 213.

eō, adv.: see **is.**

eōdem, adv.: see **īdem.**

eques, equitis, m. [**equus**], *horseman, cavalryman*, pl. *horsemen, cavalry.*

equester, tris, tre [**eques**], (pertaining to a horseman); **proelium equestre**, *cavalry battle.* For decl., see page 205.

equitātus, ūs, m. [**equitō**, *ride*], *cavalry.*

equus, ī, m., *horse.*

ē-ripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptum, *snatch* (out), *save; take away*, I. **17**, 4, **43**, 8; *free*, I. **4**, 2.

ēruptiō, ōnis, f. [**ē-rumpō**, *break out*], (outbreak), *sortie, sally.*

Esuvii, ōrum, m., a tribe in western Gaul, probably divided into cantons, two of which were on the coast.

et, coörd. conj., (1) *and;* (2) **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

etiam, adv. [**et, iam**], (1) *also;* (2) *even;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also;* **quīn etiam**, *further also, in fact.*

etsī, subord. conj., (even if), *although.*

ē-vellō, vellere, vellī, vulsum, *pull out.*

ēventus, ūs, m. [**ē-veniō**, *come out*], (outcome), *result.*

ex, ē, prep. with abl., *out from, out of, from;* in partitive expressions, *of; in accordance with, as a result of.* As a prefix, *out, from*, sometimes intensive (like English "out and out"), or negative.

ex-agitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **agō**], (keep driving out of one place after another), *harass.*

ex-animō, 1st conj. [**anima**, *breath*], (deprive of breath, render breathless); perf. partic., *breathless, out of breath.*

ex-audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, *hear* (from a distance).

ex-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *go out, withdraw.*

ex-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take up), *meet.*

excursiō, ōnis, f. [**ex-currō**, *run out*], (a running out), *sortie, sally.*

exemplum, ī, n., *example, precedent; sort, kind*, I. **31**, 12.

ex-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum**, *go out;* **exīre dē** or **ex**, *leave.*

ex-erceō, ercēre, ercuī, ercitum, *exercise, train.*

exercitātiō, ōnis, f. [**exercitō**]; *training, practice, exercise.*

exercitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **exerceō**], *train thoroughly.*

exercitus, ūs, m. [**exerceō**], (training), trained, disciplined or regular *army.*

exiguitās, tātis, f. [**exiguus**, *small*], (smallness); *shortness, lack.* [**tanta**, *such.*]

eximius, a, um, *exceptional, excellent, high.*

exīstimātiō, ōnis, f. [**exīstimō**], (thought), *opinion.*

ex-īstimō, 1st conj. [**aestimō**, *estimate*], *think, consider.*

ex-pediō, pedīre, pedīvī, pedītum [**pēs, pedis**, *foot*], (get one's foot out, set free). Perf.

partic. **expedītus, a, um** (1) *free, easy;* compar. *less occupied*, I. **52**, 7; (2) *light-armed, without baggage.*

ex-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, *drive out, expel.*

ex-perior, perīrī, pertus sum, *try;* with **fortūnam**, *experience.*

explōrātor, tōris, m. [**explōrō**], *scout.*

ex-plōrō, 1st conj., *find out.*

ex-primō, primere, pressī, pressum [**premō**], (press out), *force out, secure.*

ex-pūgnō, 1st conj., (fight out), *take by storm, capture by assault.*

ex-quīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī, quīsītum [**quaerō**], *search out, find out.*

ex-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, (follow up), *enforce, assert.*

ex-spectō, 1st conj., (look out for); (1) *wait, wait to see;* (2) *wait for, await.*

ex-struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum, (pile up), *build, construct.*

exter or **exterus, a, um,** *outside;* compar. **exterior,** *outer, exterior;* super. **extrēmus** or **extimus,** (1) *farthest, most distant, last;* (2) *the last part of, the end of*, II. **11**, 4.

extrā, prep. with acc., *outside, outside of, beyond.*

extrēmus, a, um, *super. of* **exter.**

ex-ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstum, (burn out), *burn up, burn to the ground.*

F

Fabius, ī, m., *Quintus Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus*, who defeated the Allobroges, Arverni, and Ruteni in B.C. 121.

facile, adv.: see **facilis.**

facilis, e [**faciō**], *easy;* compar. **facilior,** super. **facillimus.** Adverb: **facile,** *easily;* compar. **facilius,** super. **facillimē.**

facinus, facinoris, n. [**faciō**], (deed); *crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, passive **fīō, fierī, factus sum** (see **fīō**), (1) *do;* (2) *make; build, construct, furnish, cause, form*, etc.; with **vīs**, *use;* with **proelium**, *fight;* with **pōns**, *build;* with **cōpia**, *give;* with **imperāta**, *obey;* see also **certus, iter, satis, verbum. factum,** neut. of perf. partic., (a thing done), *action*, I. **42**, 5.

factiō, ōnis, f. [**faciō**], (a taking sides), *party, faction.*

facultās, tātis, f. [**facilis**; coördinate form **facilitās**], (ease, facility); (1) *opportunity, chance, power;* (2) *supply*, I. **38**, 3; pl., *resources.*

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive, disappoint.*

famēs, is, f., abl. **famē,** *hunger, famine;* **famem tolerāre,** (satisfy hunger), *live.*

familia, ae, f., (body of servants; household); *retinue*, I. **4**, 2; **māter familiae,** *matron.*

familiāris, e [**familia**], (1) *belonging to the household;* **rēs familiāris,** *private property.* (2) Masc. used as a subst., *personal friend.*

fās, n., indecl. noun, used only in nom. and acc., "*the will of heaven*"; what is *right* in the sight of the gods, as opposed to **iūs**, what is *right* in the sight of men.

fāstīgō, 1st conj., *bring to a point.* Perf. partic. as adj., *sloping.*
fātum, ī., n., *fate.*
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *be favorable, favor;* with dative.
fefellī, perf. of **fallō.**
fēlīcitās, tātis, f. [**fēlīx, fēlīcis**, *lucky*], *good fortune, success.*
ferāx, ferācis, adj. [**ferō**], *fertile.*
ferē, adv., *almost, about.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear*, in the sense of (1) *bring, carry;* or (2) *endure, take*, as with **graviter** or **dolōre**, *be annoyed, be grieved;* passive as middle voice, *rush*, II. **24**, 3; **signa ferre**, *march, move, advance.* For conjugation, see pages 212, 213.
ferrum, ī, n., *iron.*
fertilitās, tātis, f. [**fertilis**, *fertile*], *fertility.*
ferus, a, um, *fierce.*
fidēs, fideī, f. [**fīdō**, *trust*], (1) *confidence, trust*, I. **19**, 3, **41**, 4; (2) *loyalty, faithfulness;* (3) *pledge;* (4) with **permittō, veniō, sum**, *protection;* **per fidem**, *through breach of faith, treacherously*, I. **46**, 3.
fīlia, ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **fīliābus**, *daughter.*
fīlius, ī, m., *son.*
fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, (form, shape); *control.*
fīnis, is, m., (1) *end; limit*, II. **19**, 5; (2) pl. *territory, boundaries.*
fīnitimus, a, um [**fīnis**], (1) *neighboring;* often, *adjoining;* (2) masc. pl. as subst., *neighbors.*
fīo, fierī, factus sum [passive of **faciō**], (1) *be made;* (2) *be done;* (3) *happen;* (4) *become.*
fīrmus, a, um, *strong, firm.*
Flaccus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus*, propraetor of the province of Gaul, 83 B.C.
flāgitō, 1st conj., *demand urgently.*
flēns, partic. of **fleō.**
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep;* pres. partic., (weeping), *with tears.*
flētus, ūs, m. [**fleō**], *weeping;* **māgnō flētū**, *with many tears.*
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —, [**flōs, flōris**, *flower*], (bloom); pres. partic. as adj., *flourishing.*
flūmen, minis, n. [**fluō**], (that which flows), *river.*
fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow.*
fore, occasional form for **futūrus esse**, fut. infin. of **sum.**
fors, abl. **forte**, no pl., *chance;* **forte statuere**, (decide by chance), *chance to decide*, II. **31**, 3.
forte, II. **31**, 3, see **fors.**
fortis, e, *brave.* Adverb: **fortiter**, *bravely.*
fōrtiter: see **fortis.**
fortitūdō, dinis, f. [**fortis**], *bravery.*
fortūna, ae, f. [**fors**], (1) *fortune, chance* in general; *good fortune*, I. **40**, 12; (2) *property, possessions*, I. **11**, 6.
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
frāctus, a, um, partic. of **frangō.**
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, (break), *crush.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother;* used figuratively in the plural as term of honor, I. **33**, 2, **44**, 9, II. **3**, 5.
frāternus, a, um [**frāter**], *brotherly, of a brother;* **nōmen frāternum**, *the name "brothers,"* I. **36**, 5.

fremitus, ūs, m. [**fremō,** roar], *noise.*

frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold;* pl., *cold spells.*

frōns, frontis, f., (forehead), *front.* [**ā,** *in,* II. **23,** 4, **25,** 1.]

frūctuōsus, a, um [**frūctus,** *fruit*], (fruitful), *fertile, productive.*

frūmentārius, a, um [**frūmentum**], (relating to grain), *productive* of grain, I. **10,** 2; **rēs frūmentāria,** *grain supply, supply of grain.*

frūmentum, ī, n., (1) *grain;* (2) pl. usually *standing grain.*

frūx, frūgis, f., *produce;* usually pl., *crops.*

fuga, ae, f., *flight.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum [**fuga**], *flee.*

fugitīvus, a, um [**fugiō**], *fleeing, fugitive.* Masc. as subst., *deserter.*

fūmus, ī, m., *smoke.*

funditor, tōris, m. [**funda,** *sling*], *slinger.*

furor, ōris, m. [**furō,** *rage*], *rage; excitement,* II. **3,** 5.

futūrus, a, um, fut. partic. of **sum.**

G

Gabīnius, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius,* consul 58 B.C.

Gāius, ī, m., abbreviation C., a Roman *praenomen.*

Galba, ae, m., "king" of the Suessiones.

galea, ae, f., *helmet,* usually of leather.

Gallia, ae, f. [**Gallus**], *Gaul;* the name applied to (1) an indefinite region embracing modern France, part of Switzerland, and all the territory north of this to the Rhine, e.g. I. **1,** 1; (2) the central division of the latter, described in I. **1,** 5.

Gallicus, a, um [**Gallus**], *Gallic.*

Gallus, a, um, *relating to Gaul, of Gaul, Gallic.* Masc. used as a subst., a *Gaul,* pl. *the Gauls,* inhabitants of Gaul in either sense.

Garumna, ae, m. or f., *the Garonne* river, in southwestern Gaul.

Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now *Geneva;* on Lake Geneva at its outlet into the Rhone.

generātim, adv. [**genus**], *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe.*

genus, generis, n., *kind.*

Germānus, a, um, *German.* Masc. pl. as subst., *the Germans.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, (*bear, carry*); (1) with **bellum,** *carry on, wage;* (2) in passive, *be done, be going on;* with **rem,** *conduct, manage,* I. **40,** 12.

gladius, ī, m., *sword.*

glōria, ae, f., *reputation* (for), with gen.

glōrior, 1st conj. [**glōria**], *boast* (of); with abl. of cause.

Graecus, a, um, *Greek.*

Graiocelī, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe inhabiting the Graian Alps.

grandis, e, *large.*

grātia, ae, *f.* [**grātus**], *favor, popularity;* **hanc grātiam referre,** *show such gratitude, make such return;* **grātiās agere,** (return thanks), *thank.*

grātulātiō, onis, f. [**grātulor**], (congratulation), *joy, satisfaction.*

grātulor, 1st conj. [**grātus**], (show joy), *congratulate, offer congratulations.*

grātus, a, um, *pleasing, pleasant;* neut. as subst., *favor*, I. **44**, 12.

gravis, e, (heavy); *serious, severe.* Adverb: **graviter**, (heavily), *bitterly;* **graviter ferre**, *be displeased.*

graviter: see **gravis**.

gravō, 1st conj. [**gravis**], (load); pass., (be burdened), *object.*

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, (1) *have;* (2) *hold, consider, regard; keep*, I. **44**, 10; with **cēnsum**, *take;* **ōrātiōnem habēre**, *make a speech;* **sē habēre**, (have itself), *be*, II. **19**, 1.

Harūdēs, um, m., a German tribe allied to those under Ariovistus.

Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian.* Masc. as subst., *Helvetian*, pl. *the Helvetians*, the inhabitants of part of modern Switzerland.

hībernus, a, um [**hiems**. *winter*], *of winter*, winter. Neut. pl. as subst., with **castra** understood, (winter camp), *winter quarters.*

hīc, haec, hōc, dem. adj. and pro., *this*, pl. *these;* often best translated by personal pron., *he, she, it*, etc. Adverb: **hūc**, (hither), *to this place.*

hiemō, 1st conj. [**hiems**, *winter*], *pass the winter, winter.*

Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*

homo, hominis, m. or f., (human being), *man*, in the generic sense; **multitūdō hominum**, *population*, I. **2**, 5.

honestus, a, um [**honōs**], (regarded with honor), *respected, honored, distinguished.*

honōrificus, a, um [**honōs, faciō**], *honorable;* compar. **honorificentior**, super. **honōrificentissimus.**

honōs or **honor, honōris**, m., *honor, distinction;* **honōris causā**, *as a mark of honor* (to), II. **15**, 1.

hōra, ae, f., *hour*, one of the twelve equal divisions of the day, opposed to the watches (**vigiliae**) of the night; the Roman hour thus varied in length with the season of the year, but the seventh hour always began at noon.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, —, (bristle), *shudder at, tremble at.*

hortor, 1st conj., *urge, encourage.*

hospes, hospitis, m. or f., (host, *guest*); *friend*, through ties of hospitality.

hospitium, ī, n. [**hospes**], *friendship*, through ties of hospitality; *interest, alliance* (with), I. **31**, 7.

hostis, is, m. or f., *enemy* of the state, public *enemy;* sing., of an individual, *an enemy, one of the enemy*, I. **26**, 2, **44**, 11; elsewhere, sing. generically, pl. collectively, *the enemy.*

hūc: see **hīc**.

hūmānitās, tātis, f. [**hūmānus**, *human, civilized*], (humanity), *refinement.*

I

I, numeral, 1.

ī-, form of **in** or **in-**, before **g**.

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — [intrans. of **iaciō**], (be thrown, lie prostrate); pres. partic. pl., (those lying prostrate), *the fallen*, II. **27**, 3.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw; throw up, construct*, II. **12**, 5.

iactō, 1st conj. [intensive of **iaciō**], *throw; discuss*, I. **18**, 1; *wrench about, jerk back and forth*, I. **25**, **4**.

iam, adv., (1) of present time, *now;* (2) of past time, *already;* (3) of future time, *presently;* (4) with negatives, *longer, any longer*.

ibi or **ibī,** adv., *there, in that place*.

Iccius, ī, m., a leader of the Remi.

ictus, ūs, m., *blow*.

Īd., abbreviation for **Īdūs.**

īdem, eadem, idem, gen. **ēiusdem,** etc., dem. pron., *the same;* freely, *again*, I. **32**, 3. [**atque,** following **īdem,** *as*, II. **6**, 2.] Adverb: **eōdem,** *to the same place, to the same point;* **eōdem pertinēre,** (hold through to the same point), *be along the same line, be of the same nature*.

identidem, adv. [**idem et idem**], *again and again, repeatedly*.

idōneus, a, um, *suitable;* compar. **magis idōneus,** super. **māximē idōneus.**

Īdūs, Īduum, f. plu., *the Ides*, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of other months.

īgnis, is, m., abl. **īgnī,** *fire;* in the sense of *camp-fire*, II. **7**, **4**, *signal fire*, II. **33**, 3.

ī-gnōrō, 1st conj. [related to **ī-gnārus,** *unacquainted*, **ī-gnōscō, ī-gnōtus**], *overlook*.

ī-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnōtum, *pardon;* with dative.

il-, form of **in** or **in-** before **l.**

illātus, a, um, partic. of **īnferō.**

ille, illa, illud, gen. **illīus,** etc., dem. pron., *that*, pl. *those;* often best translated by an emphatic *he, she, it*, etc. Adverbs: **illīc,** *there, in that place;* **illō,** *thither, to that place*.

illīc: see **ille.**

Īllyricum, ī, n., the country along the eastern coast of the Adriatic, a part of Caesar's province, now Istria and Dalmatia.

im-, form of **in** or **in-** before **b, m,** and **p.**

im-mortālis, e [**in-**; **mors**], (not liable to death), *immortal*.

impedīmentum, ī, n. [**impediō**], *hindrance;* pl., (the things that hinder an army), *baggage, baggage-train*.

im-pediō, pedīre, pedīvī, pedītum [**pēs**], (entangle the feet), (1) *hinder, interfere with;* (2) perf. partic., translated freely, *at a disadvantage;* **nihil impedītum,** *no obstacle*, II. **28**, 1.

impedītus, a, um, partic. of **impediō.**

im-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, (drove on), *incite, influence, urge*.

im-pendeō, pendēre, —, —, (overhang), *tower above*.

imperātor, tōris, m. [**imperō**], *commander, commander-in-chief*.

im-perītus, a, um [**in-**], (unskilled), *inexperienced* (in), *unacquainted* (with), with gen.; **imperītus rērum,** *ignorant of events*.

imperātum: see **imperō**.

imperium, ī, n. [**imperō**], (1) *command, order, control;* (2) **nova imperia**, (new forms of government), *revolution*, II. **1**, 3.

im-perō, 1st conj. [**parō**], (prepare upon); (1) *command*, with dat. translated as obj.; (2) *demand*, with dat. translated *from; rule, exercise authority*, I. **31**, 12, **36**, 1. Neut. of perf. partic. used as a subst., (a thing commanded), *command.* [**faciō**, *execute, obey.*]

im-petrō, 1st conj., (1) *obtain one's request;* (2) *obtain* (by request).

impetus, ūs, m. [**petō**, *seek:* like English "go for"], *attack, charge; force, violence*, II. **6**, 1.

im-plōrō, 1st conj., (cry out for), *beseech, implore; beg, seek.*

im-pōno, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place upon*, I. **42**, 5, **51**, 3 [**eō**, adv., *upon these*]; with **stipendium**, *levy, impose.*

im-portō, 1st conj., *bring in, import.*

im-probus, a, um [**in-**], (not good), *reckless, wicked.*

im-prōvīsus, a, um [**in-**; **prōvideō**], *unforeseen;* abl. **imprōvīsō**, or **dē imprōvīsō**, as adverb, *unexpectedly.*

impulsus, a, um, partic. of **impellō**.

impūne, adv. [**im-pūnis**, *unpunished*, from **in-**, **poena**], *without punishment, with impunity.*

impūnitās, tātis, f. [**im-pūnis**, *unpunished*, from **in-**, **poena**], (exemption from punishment), *impunity.*

īmus, a, um, super. of **īnferus**.

in, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) With acc., *into;* less exactly, *to, toward, against;* with terms of extent, **lātitūdinem, longitūdinem, altitūdinem**, *in;* of purpose or design, *for*, e.g. I, **3**, 2, **30**, 4, etc. with **iūs, potestātem**, *over.* (2) With abl., *in;* less exactly, *at, on, upon, over, among, within;* sometimes with names of persons, *in the case of.*

in-, insep. prefix, giving negative force to adjectives and adverbs, and to equivalent expressions.

in-cendō, cendere, cendī, cēnsum, *set fire to.*

in-cidō, cidere, cidī, cāsum [**cadō**], (fall to); *happen, occur*, II. **14**, 5; with *in, fall into the hands of*, I. **53**, 5.

in-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], *cut into, cut partly through.*

in-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take into), *begin.*

incīsus, a, um, partic. of **incīdō**.

in-citō, 1st conj., *urge on; excite, arouse*, I. **4**, 3; *quicken*, II. **26**, 3.

in-colō, colere, coluī, —, *live* (*in*), *inhabit.*

in-columis, e, *unharmed, safe.*

in-commodus, a, um, *inconvenient.* Neut. as subst., (inconvenience), *defeat, reverse.*

in-crēdibilis, e [**in-**; **crēdō**], (unbelievable), *incredible.*

in-crepitō, 1st conj., *blame, reproach; taunt*, II. **30**, 3.

incursus, ūs, m. [**in-currō**, *run upon*], (on-rush), *onset, charge, attack.*

in-cūsō, 1st conj. [**causa**, *case*,

charge], (make charge against), *blame, reproach.*

inde, adv. (1) *thence, from that place;* (2) *then.*

indicium, ī, n. [**in-dicō**, *point out*], *information, evidence;* freely, *informers*, I. **4**, 1.

in-dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, (proclaim); *call, summon.*

indīgnitās, tātis, f. [**in-dīgnus**, *unworthy*], (unworthiness), *outrage, indignity.*

in-dīligēns, entis, *careless.* Adverb: **indīligenter**, *carelessly.*

in-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead on); *influence, induce; cover*, II. **33**, 2.

in-dulgeō, dulgēre, dulsī, dultum, (be kind to); *favor, indulge*, with dat.

in-duō, duere, duī, dūtum, *put on.*

in-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum**, (go into); with **cōnsilium**, *form;* **initā aestāte**, (the summer having been gone into), *at the beginning of summer.*

in-ermis, e, or **in-ermus, a, um** [**in-**; **arma**], *unarmed.*

īn-, form of **in** or **in-** before **f** and **s**.

īn-ferō, ferre, in-tulī, il-lātum, (1) *bring in, import*, II. **15**, **4**; (2) (bring to, bring upon), with **bellum**, *make* (offensive) *war;* with **alacritātem, spem**, *inspire;* with **iniūriam, calamitātem, vulnera**, *inflict;* with **sīgna**, *advance;* with **conversa sīgna**, (advance the standards turned), *form a second front and advance*, I. **25**, 7, II. **26**, 1.

īnferus, a, um, *low;* compar. **īnferior**, *lower; inferior*, II. **8**, 2; super. **īnfimus** or **īmus**, (the lowest part), *the base, the bottom*, II. **18**, 2.

īnfimus, a, um, super. of **īnferus**.

īn-flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *bend (over).*

īn-fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow into, empty into.*

in-gēns, gentis, **adj.**, (unnatural), *huge, enormous.*

in-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior**, *step*], (go into), *enter.*

in-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **injiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum**, (throw into), *inspire (in).*

iniectus, a, um, partic. of **iniciō**.

in-imīcus, a, um [**in-**; **amīcus**], (1) *unfriendly*, personally *hostile.* (2) Masc. as subst., personal *enemy*, I. **10**, 2.

inīquitās, tātis, f. [**inīquus**], (unevenness), *inequality;* **rērum**, *of circumstances.*

in-īquus, a, um [**in-**; **aequus**], (uneven), *unfavorable; unfair, unjust*, I. **44**, 4, 8.

initium, ī, n. [**ineō**, *begin*], *beginning;* with **silvārum**, *edge.*

initus, a, um, partic. of **ineō**.

iniūria, ae, f. [**in-iūrus, a, um**, *wrong*, from **in-** and **iūs**], (1) *wrong, injustice*, I. **12**, 7, **14**, 2, **20**, 5, **36**, 4; (2) *damage, injury;* (3) abl. of manner, *unjustly*, I. **35**, 3, **36**, 5.

in-iūssū, adv. [**in-**, *not;* **iūssū**, *by order*], *without an order;* modified by posses. adj. and gen., as though still a noun, **iniūssu suō et cīvitātis**, *without his order and (that) of the state.*

in-nītor, nītī, nīxus or **nīsus sum**, *rest upon, lean on*, with abl. of means.

innīxus, a, um, partic. of **innītor**.

innocentia, ae, f., *integrity, uprightness.*
inopia, ae, f., *lack, want, need.*
in-opīnāns, antis, adj., (not expecting); freely, *unexpectedly, off their guard.*
īn-sciēns, entis, adj. [in-; **sciō**], *not knowing;* with **ipsīs**, abl. abs., (themselves not knowing), *without their knowledge.*
īn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*
īnsidiae, ārum, f. [**īn-sideō**, *sit in wait for*], (ambuscade); *stratagem.*
īn-sīgnis, e [**sīgnum**], (having a sign or mark), *marked, remarkable, signal*, I. **12**, 6. Neut. as subst., *sign, signal*, II. **20**, 1; pl. *ornaments, decorations, insignia.*
īn-siliō, silīre, siluī, — [**saliō**], *leap upon.*
īn-sistō, sistere, stitī, —, *stand upon, take a stand upon.*
īnsolenter, adv., *haughtily.*
īnstar, indecl. noun, *image, likeness;* **īnstar mūrī**, (the likeness of a wall), *like a wall.*
īn-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum [**statuō**], (put in place), *begin; train, teach*, I. **14**, 7. Neut. of perf. partic. as a subst., *custom, habit.*
īnstitūtum: see **īnstituō**.
īn-stō, stāre, stiti, stātum, (stand on); *press forward; approach, be close at hand*, I. **16**, 5.
īn-struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum, *build* (up), *erect, construct*, II. **30**, 3; *draw up, arrange.*
intel-legō, legere, lēxī, lēctum [**inter**, *among*, **legō**, *pick*], *understand.*
inter, prep. with acc., (1) of two, *between;* (2) of more than two, *among; within, for*, I. **36**, 7; less exactly, *in the midst of, in;* **inter sē dare**, *exchange;* **inter sē contendere**, *fight with each other;* **inter sē differre**, *differ from each other.*
inter-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go between), *intervene*, I. **7**, 5; *be between; exist between*, I. **43**, 6. [**cum**, *and.*]
inter-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take between), *intercept, catch in the air.*
inter-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum [**claudō**], (close in between), *cut off.*
inter-dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, (put a command between a person and his desire), *exclude.*
inter-diū, adv. [**diēs**], *during the day, by day, in the daytime.*
inter-dum, adv., ("between whiles"), *for a while*, I. **14**, 5; *sometimes.*
inter-eā, adv. [old case form of **is**], (in the midst of this), *meanwhile.*
inter-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (put down), *kill.*
inter-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **interjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw between), *put in between, plant between*, II. **17**, 4; pass., *intervene, lie between*, II. **22**, 1.
interim, adv. [**inter**], *meanwhile.*
inter-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go between); (1) *interrupt, discontinue; leave a gap; stop, cease*, II. **25**, 1; (2) perf. pass., *intervene.*
interneciō, ōnis, f. [**nex, necō**], *extermination, annihilation, destruction.*

inter-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, (drive into the midst), *disturb, interfere with.*

inter-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (place between); **interpositā causā,** *for the reason alleged,* or *by a mere pretext.*

interpres, pretis, m., *interpreter.*

inter-scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, (cut in two), *break down.*

inter-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be between;* impers., *it concerns,* II. **5**, 2, see § 63.

inter-vāllum, ī, n., (space between two walls), *distance, interval.*

in-texō, texere, texuī, textum, *weave* (in), *plait.*

intrā, prep. with acc., *inside, within.*

intrō, prefix, *inside, within.*

intrō, 1st conj. [**inter, intrā**], *enter.*

intrō-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead into, introduce.*

intrō-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send in* or *let in.*

intrōrsus, adv. [contracted from **intrōversus,** *turned toward the inside*], *inside, within.*

in-tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum, *look at, gaze upon.*

intulī, perf. of **īnferō.**

in-ūsitātus, a, um [**in-; ūtor**], *unusual.*

in-ūtilis, e [**in-; ūtor**], (not usable), *useless.*

in-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come upon), *find.*

in-veterāscō, veterāscere, veterāvī, — [**vetus**], (grow old in), *become established, gain a permanent foothold.*

in-victus, a, um [**in-; victus,** *conquered*], *unconquered,* hence, less exactly, *unconquerable, invincible.*

in-videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum (look askance at), *envy,* with dat.

in-vītō, 1st conj., (call into), *invite.*

in-vītus, a, um, *unwilling;* **sē (eō) invītō,** abl. abs., (he being unwilling), *without his consent,* and similarly, I. **9**, 1.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. **ipsīus,** dat. **ipsī,** intensive pron., *self; himself, herself, itself, themselves;* gen. often *his own, their own,* more emphatic than **suus.**

ir-, form of **in** or **in-** before **r.**

īrācundus, a, um [**īra,** *wrath*], (liable to wrath), *passionate, irritable.*

ir-rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum, *laugh.*

ir-rīdiculē, adv., *unwittily;* **nōn irrīdiculē,** *not without wit, quite wittily.*

is, ea, id, page 207, dem. and pers. pron. (1) *this, that,* pl., *these, those;* (2) *he, she, it, they,* etc. Adverb: **eō,** *thither,* or, in the inexact English use, *there, to that place.*

ita, adv., *so, in such a way; thus, as follows; so well,* I. **11**, 3; **ita utī,** *as,* II. **1**, 1; **ita . . . ut,** *as . . . as,* II. **33**, 4.

Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy.*

ita-que, conj., *and so, therefore.*

item, adv., *likewise, in the same way.*

iter, itineris, n. [**eō,** *go*], (1) *march; journey,* I. **3**, 4; (2) *road, route;* **iter facere,** *march;* with **dare,** *passage, permission to pass;* with **prohibēre,** *passing;* **ex itinere,** *while on the*

march; **māgnum iter,** *long march, forced march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

iuba, ae, f., *mane.*

iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum, *order.*

iūdicium, ī, n. [**iūdex, iūdicis,** *judge*], *judgment,* I. **41,** 3; *trial,* I. **4,** 2; **optimum iūdicium facere,** *express such an excellent opinion,* I. **41,** 2.

iūdicō, 1st conj. [**iūdex, iūdicis,** *judge*], *judge.*

iugum, ī, n. [same stem as **iungō**], (that which joins); (1) *yoke,* formed of three spears, two planted in the ground, the third across the top of these; to pass under this was a symbol of surrender and slavery, I. **7, 4, 12,** 5; (2) *ridge,* connecting two or more summits, or forming a summit.

Iūlius, ī, m., *Julius,* a Roman family name.

iūmentum, ī, n. [for **iugmentum,** from stem of **iungō**], (yoke-animal); *draught animal, pack animal, beast of burden,* applied to oxen, horses, and mules.

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join, unite.*

Iūra, ae, f., *the Jura mountain range, the Jura mountains,* extending northeast from the Rhone west of Lake Geneva to the Rhine.

iūrandum, neut. of gerundive of **iūrō,** used only with **iūs,** which see.

iūrō, 1st conj. [**iūs**], *take* (the) *oath.*

iūs, iūris, n., *right, rights; law;* **iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** n., (sworn duty), *oath.*

iūstitia, ae, f. [**iūstus**], *justice, fairness.*

iūstus, a, um [**iūs**], *just, rightful.*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help, assist.*

iūxtā, adv., *near by, next* (to them).

K

Kal., abbrev. for **Kalendae, ārum,** f., *the Kalends or Calends,* the first day of each Roman month.

L

L, numeral, 50.

L., abbreviation for **Lucius.**

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus,* the foremost of Caesar's *legati,* his chief lieutenant throughout the Gallic war, where he "never made a mistake." In the civil war, thinking his services indispensable, he deserted Caesar, who ironically sent his baggage after him; his painstaking care was no match for Caesar's genius, and he fell at the battle of Munda.

labor, ōris, m., *toil, exertion, labor.*

labōrō, 1st conj. [**labor**], (labor); *strive for,* I. **31,** 2; pres. partic., (being hard pressed), *who were hard pressed,* I. **52,** 7.

lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum, *provoke, harass.*

lacrima, ae, f., *tear.*

lacus, ūs, m., dat. and abl. pl. **lacubus** or **lacibus,** *lake.*

lapis, lapidis, m., *stone.*

largior, largīrī, largītus sum

[**largus,** *abundant*], (give abundantly); gerund, *bribing, bribery,* I. **18,** 4.

largiter: see **largus.**

largītiō, ōnis, f. [**largior**], (abundant giving), *generosity, bribery.*

largus, a, um, *abundant.* Adverb: **largiter,** *abundantly;* **largiter posse,** *be very powerful, have great influence.*

lassitūdō, tūdinis, f. [**lassus,** *weary*], *weariness, exhaustion.*

lātē: see **lātus.**

lateō, latēre, latuī, —, *lie hidden, be concealed.*

lātitūdō, tūdinis, f. [**lātus**], *width, breadth;* **in lātitūdinem,** in *width; laterally, horizontally,* II. **17,** 4.

Latobrīgī, ōrum, m., a tribe of Gauls located probably upon the farther bank of the Rhine, north of the Helvetians, near the sources of the Danube.

lātus, a, um, *wide, broad; extensive,* II, **4,** 6. Adverb: **lātē,** *widely.*

latus, lateris, n., *side;* of an army, *flank;* **ab apertō latere,** *on the exposed* (i.e. *right*) *flank.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory.*

laxō, 1st conj. [**laxus,** *loose*], (loosen); **manipulōs laxāre,** *open* or *extend ranks.*

lēgātiō, ōnis, f. [**lēgō,** *delegate*], (delegation), *embassy; mission,* I. **3,** 3.

lēgātus, ī, m. [masc. of perf. partic. of **lēgō,** *delegate*], (a man delegated with power; hence), (1) in military language, *lieutenant* of any rank, especially a *lieutenant-general* or *staff-officer;* (2) in diplomatic relations, *ambassador, envoy, commissioner.*

legiō, ōnis, f. [**legō,** *collect*], (collection); *legion,* the unit of the Roman army; see Introduction, page xxxi.

legiōnārius, a, um [**legiō**], (belonging to a legion), *legionary, of the legions;* like our "regular" troops, I. **42,** 5.

Lemannus, ī, m., with **lacus,** *Lake Geneva.*

lēnis, e, *smooth.* Adverb: **lēniter,** *gently, gradually.*

lēnitās, tātis, f. [**lēnis**], *smoothness.*

lēniter: see **lēnis.**

Leucī, ōrum, m., a tribe between the Marne river and the Vosges mountains, about the source of the Moselle.

levis, e, *light* (in weight).

levitās, tātis, f. [**levis**], (lightness), *fickleness, restlessness.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law; decree.*

(**lib.,** abbreviation for **liber.**)

libēns, entis, adj. [**libet,** *it pleases*], *willing.* Adverb: **libenter,** *willingly, gladly.*

libenter: see **libēns.**

(**liber, librī,** m., *book.* Not in text of *Bellum Gallicum.*)

līber, lībera, līberum, *free; undisputed,* I. **44,** 13; masc. pl. used as a subst., (those born free, or perhaps those free from care), *children.* Compar. **līberior,** super. **līberrimus.** Adverb: **līberē,** *freely.*

līberālis, e [**līber**], *befitting a free man, generous, gracious.* Adverb: **līberāliter,** *graciously, courteously.*

līberālitās, tātis, f. [**līberālis**], *generosity, liberality, kindness.*

līberāliter: see **līberālis.**
līberē: see **līber.**
līberī: see **līber.**
lībertās, tātis, f. [**līber**], *freedom.*
liceor, licērī, licitus sum, *bid* (at auction).
licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), (it is lawful), *it is permitted, it is allowed,* often best translated by *may* or *might;* e.g. **ut id sibi facere licēret,** (that it might be permitted to them to do it), *that they might do it.*
Lingonēs, um, m., acc. pl. sometimes **-as** (Greek), a tribe in central Gaul, north of the Aeduans.
lingua, ae, f., (tongue), *language.*
linter, lintris, f., gen. pl. **lintrium,** *canoe, small boat,* probably a "dug-out."
Liscus, ī, m., chief magistrate of the Aeduans.
līttera, ae, f., (1) *letter* of the alphabet, I. **29**, 1; (2) pl., (letters of the alphabet), a *letter* (epistle), *dispatch.*
locus, ī, m., plu. **loca, ōrum,** n., *place, locality; situation; opportunity,* I. **40**, 9; *space,* II. **8**, 2; abl. sing. with gen., (in the place of), *as,* I. **42**, 6, etc.; *light,* I. **26**, 6; *condition,* II. **26**, 5; pl., *space,* II. **19**, 5; **in hīs locīs,** *in this region.* [The regular masc. pl. is used (not in Caesar) in the sense of *places in a book, passages, topics.*]
locūtus, a, um, partic. of **loquor.**
longē: see **longus.**
longinquus, a, um [**longus**], (distant); *long, long-continued.*
longitūdō, tūdinis, f. [**longus**], *length.*
longus, a, um, *long; distant,* I. **40**, 13. Adverb: **longē,** *far; by far.*
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak, talk.*
Lucius, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight;* **prīma lūx,** *daybreak.*
lūxūria, ae, f., [**lūxus,** *excess*], *extravagance, excesses, luxury.*

M

M, numeral, 1000; but not originally because it was the first letter of **mīlle.**
M., abbreviation for **Marcus,** a Roman *praenomen.*
māchinātiō, ōnis, f. [**māchinor,** *contrive*], *contrivance, machine.*
Magetobriga, ae, f., the place where Ariovistus defeated the Aeduans and their allies, possibly near the confluence of the Saône and the Oignon.
magis: see **māgnus.**
magistrātus, ūs, m. [**magister,** *master*], (position of a master); (1) *magistracy, office;* (2) *magistrate, officer, official.*
māgnitūdō, tūdinis, f. [**māgnus**], (greatness), *extent, size; great size, great extent,* I. **39**, 6, II. **30**, 4; **māgnitūdō animī,** *great courage.*
māgnopere: see **māgnus.**
māgnus, a, um, *great;* compar. **māior,** *greater;* **māior nātū,** (greater with respect to birth), (1) *older;* (2) masc. pl. as subst., *older men, elders,* II. **13**, 2, **28**, 1; **māiōrēs** (with **nātū** understood), *ancestors,* I. **13**, 6, **14**, 7; super. **māxi-**

mus, *greatest, very great.* Adverb: **māgnō opere** or **māgnopere**, (with great effort, greatly), *earnestly; especially*, I. **13**, 5; compar. **magis**, *more; rather*, I. **13**, 6; super. **māximē**, *most, very;* with verbs, *especially;* **quam māximē**, (as greatly as possible), *implicitly*, I. **42**, 5.

māior: see **māgnus**.

male: see **malus**.

maleficium, i, n. [**male**, **faciō**], (wrong-doing); *harm, outrage.*

malus, **a**, **um**, *bad;* compar. **pēior**, *worse;* neut., *a worse fate*, I. **31**, 10; super. **pessimus**, *worst.* Adverb: **male**, *badly;* **male rē gestā**, (a thing having been badly done), *on account of ill success.*

mandātum: see **mandō**.

mandō, 1st conj. [**manus**, **dō**], (put into the hands of); (1) *intrust;* **fugae sē mandāre**, (intrust one's self to flight), *take to flight, take flight;* (2) *command, direct*, I. **30**, 5, **47**, 5; **mandātum**, ī, neut. of perf. partic., (a thing commanded); pl., *instructions; messages*, I. **37**, 1.

maneō, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsum**, *remain, stay;* **in eō manēre**, *abide by that*, I. **36**, 5.

manipulus, ī, m. [**manus**, *hand*, **pleō**, *fill*], (a handful, *i.e.* of hay, because the standard of the maniple originally bore a handful of hay tied to a pole); *maniple;* see Introduction, pages xxiii, xxxi.

mānsuētūdō, **tūdinis**, f. [**mānsuētus**, *accustomed to the hand, tame*], (tameness, gentleness), *kindness.*

manus, **ūs**, f., (1) *hand;* **nātūrā et manū**, *naturally and artificially;* (2) *band* of men, *force*, I. **37**, 4. II. **2**, 4, **5**, 2.

Marcomanī, **ōrum**, m., a German people, of whose location nothing is certainly known.

Mārcus, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*

maritimus, **a**, **um** [**mare**, *sea*], (pertaining to the sea), *seacoast, maritime.*

Marius, ī, m., *Gaius Marius*, consul seven times, conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutones 106 B.C., I. **40**, 5.

matara, **ae**, f., Celtic *javelin, pike.*

māter, **mātris**, f., *mother;* **māter familiae** (old gen. in this expression **familiās**), *matron;* **soror ex mātre**, *half-sister*, having the same mother.

mātrimōnium, ī, n. [**māter**], (motherhood), *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium**, *in marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, (lead for marriage), *marry*, used always of the husband.

Matrona, **ae**, f., the *Marne*, tributary of the Seine on the left bank, dividing Belgic from Celtic Gaul.

mātūrē: see **mātūrus**.

mātūrō, 1st conj. [**mātūrus**], (make ripe), *hasten.*

mātūrus, **a**, **um**, *ripe;* compar. **mātūrior**; super. **mātūrissimus** or **mātūrrimus**. Adverb: **mātūrē**, *early;* compar. **mātūrius**; super. **mātūrissimē** or **mātūrrimē**.

māxime, **māximus**: see **māgnus**.

Māximus, ī, n., a Roman *cognomen.*

mediocris, **e** [**medius**], (me-

dium), *moderate.* Adverb: **mediocriter,** *moderately;* **nōn mediocriter,** *in no ordinary degree.*

mediocriter: see **mediocris.**

medius, a, um, (middle); usually having partitive force (§ 113), *the middle of, the midst of;* **in colle mediō,** *halfway up the hill;* **medius utrīusque,** *midway between the two.*

memoria, ae, f. [**memor,** *mindful*], *memory, recollection;* **memoriam dēpōnere,** with gen., (lay aside the memory), *forget;* **memoriam retinēre** with gen. (retain the memory of), *remember;* **memoriā tenēre,** (hold in memory), *remember;* **nostrā memoriā,** (within our memory), *in our day;* **memoriā patrum nostrōrum,** (within the memory of our fathers), *during the last generation, a generation ago.* [**prōdō,** *hand down.*]

Menapiī, ōrum, m., the most northern tribe of Belgians, mostly south of the Rhine at its mouth, and extending to the Scheldt.

mēns, mentis, f., *mind;* often in the sense of a *state of mind,* as in the English phrase, "change one's mind," *e.g.* I. **41,** 1.

mēnsis, is, m., *month.*

mercātor, tōris, m. [**mercor,** *trade*], *trader.*

mercēs, ēdis, f., *pay, wages;* **mercēde arcessere,** (summon by pay), *hire.*

mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum, also deponent, *deserve;* **meritum, ī,** neut. of perf. pass. partic., (a thing deserved), *merit* if good, *fault* if bad; pl., *services.*

merīdiēs, diēī, m. [for **medidiēs,** from **medius diēs**], *midday, noon.*

meritus, a, um, partic. of **mereō.**

Messāla, ae, m., *Marcus Valerius Messala,* consul 61 B.C., I. **2,** 1, **35,** 4.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *measure, measure out.*

Metius, ī, m., *Marcus Metius,* sent to Ariovistus by Caesar as an envoy, I. **47,** 4, **53,** 8.

mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*

mīlia, ium: see **mīlle.**

mīlitāris, e [**mīles**], (relating to a soldier), *military;* **rēs mīlitāris,** *military affairs, military operations, the art of war.*

mīlle, indecl. card. adj., *a thousand;* pl., **mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus,** n., *thousands,* freely, *thousand,* e.g. **duo mīlia passuum,** (two thousands of paces), *two thousand paces, two miles.*

minimē, minimus: see **parvus.**

minor: see **parvus.**

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum [**minus**], *lessen.*

minus: see **parvus.**

mīror, 1st conj. [**mīrus**], *wonder (at).*

mīrus, a, um, *wonderful; strange,* I. **34,** 4; **mīrum in modum,** (to a wonderful degree), *wonderfully.*

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, miserable;* compar. **miserior;** super. **miserrimus.**

misericordia, ae, f., *pity.* [**ūtor,** *take.*]

miseror, 1st conj. [**miser**], *bewail, lament.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send; throw,* I. **25,** 2. In comp., **mittō** often means *let go, allow to go.*

mōbilitās, tātis, f. [**mōbilis,** *movable,* from **moveō**], *changeability, fickleness.*

modo: see **modus.**

modus, ī, m., (measure); *manner, way;* **ēius modī, hūius modī,** (of this sort), *of such kind, such;* **ad hunc modum,** *in this way;* **quem ad modum,** (in what way), *as,* I. **36,** 1, *how,* I. **36,** 2. Adverb: **modo,** *only.*

moenia, moenium, n., *walls* (for defense).

molestē: see **molestus.**

molestus, a, um, *troublesome.* Adverb: **molestē,** *with vexation;* **molestē ferre,** (bear with vexation), *be annoyed, be vexed.*

molīmentum, ī, n. [**molior,** *exert one's self*], *exertion, trouble.*

molitus, a, um, partic. of **molō.**

molō, molere, moluī, molitum, *grind;* **molita cibāria,** (ground foodstuff), *meal, flour.*

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *warn, advise.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, mountain range.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

morātus, a, um, partic. of **moror.**

Morinī, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians, between the Scheldt and the ocean, opposite Britain.

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum, fut. partic. **moritūrus,** [**mors**], *die.*

moror, 1st conj. [**mora**], *delay, wait.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mortuus, a, um, partic. of **morior.**

mōs, mōris, m., *custom.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move.*

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, tūdinis, f. [**multus**], *number; large number; the common people; general body of soldiers.*

multus, a, um, (1) *much;* (2) pl., *many;* **multō diē,** *in broad day,* or *late in the day;* compar. **plūs, plūris,** n., no dat. or abl., *more* (in amount); pl. **plūrēs, plūra, gen. plūrium,** dat. **plūribus,** *more* (in number), (more than one), *several; many* (comparatively); *quite a number;* super. **plūrimus,** *most, very much;* usually pl., *very many;* **quam plūrimī,** *the most possible, as many as possible.* As adverbs, the neut. **multum,** adv. acc., and **multō,** abl. of degree of difference, *much;* compar. **plūs,** *more;* **plūs posse,** *be more powerful;* super. **plūrimum,** *most, very, very much;* **plūrimum posse, plūrimum valēre,** *be very powerful, be very influential.*

mūnīmentum, ī, n. [**mūniō**], *fortification.*

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum [**moenia**], (build walls for defense), *fortify; protect,* I. **44,** 6, II. **5,** 5.

mūnītiō, ōnis, f. [**mūniō**], *fortifying,* I. **49,** 3; *fortification; strength,* I. **8,** 4.

mūnus, mūneris, n., (task, service); *gift,* I. **43,** 4; **mūnera amplissimē mittere,** (send gifts most generously), *send most generous gifts.*

mūrus, ī, m., *wall,* a general term.

N

nactus, a, um, partic. of **nancīscor.**

nam, coörd. conj., *for.*

Namm ēius, ī, m., an envoy sent by the Helvetians to Caesar.

nam-que, coörd. conj., (and . . . for), *for;* an omission is always implied, as "and (this is so), for."

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus (nanctus) sum, (get), *find, come upon.*

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born; rise*, II. **18**, 2.

Nasua, ae, m., one of two brothers, leaders of the Suebi.

nātiō, ōnis, f. [**nāscor**], (birth); *race, nation;* of divisions of Gaul, *tribe, state.*

nātūra, ae, f. [**nāscor**], (birth; natural constitution, nature); *character;* abl., (by nature), *naturally.*

nātus, ūs, m. [**nāscor**], *birth;* for **māior nātū**, see **māgnus.**

nāvicula, ae, f. [dimin. of **nāvis**], *small boat, boat.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship.*

nāvō, 1st conj., (work busily, accomplish); **operam nāvāre**, (succeed in one's efforts), *do one's best.*

-ne, interrog. enclitic particle, used when there is no other interrogative word in the sentence, and implying nothing as to the answer expected; appended to the word about which the question centers; not translated separately into English.

nē, adv., *not*, only in phrase **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even*, emphasizing the word between.

nē, negative subord. conj., (1) *in order that . . . not, that . . . not;* (2) *lest, for fear that;* (3) after verb of fearing, *that.*

nec, form of **neque.**

necessārius, a, um [**necesse**, indecl., *necessary*], (1) *necessary; critical*, I. **16**, 6; *sufficient*, I. **39**, 3; **rēs necessāria**, *urgent matter*, I. **17**, 6. (2) Masc. used as a subst., *close friend*, I. **11**, 4. Neut. sing. abl. used as an adv., *of necessity, necessarily.*

necessitās, tātis, f. [**necesse**, *necessary*], *necessity; urgency*, II. **22**, 1.

necessitūdō, tūdinis, f. [**necesse**, *necessary*], *close relationship.*

nec-ne, conj., *or not.*

necō, 1st conj. [**nex**], *put to death;* **īgnī necāre**, *burn at the stake, burn to death.*

neg-legō, legere, lēxī, lēctum [**nec, legō**], (not choose), *disregard, overlook, neglect.*

negō, 1st conj., *say . . . not;* **negat sē posse dare**, *he says that he cannot give.*

negōtium, ī, n. [**nec**; **otium**, *leisure*], (1) *business*, I. **34**, 4; (2) *trouble;* **negotiō dēsistere**, (stand down from the business), *retreat from the position he had taken;* **negotium dare**, (give a task), *employ, charge, direct.*

Nemetēs, um, m., a German tribe with Ariovistus.

nēmō, gen. supplied by **nūllīus**, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem**, abl. supplied by **nūllō**, m. or f. [**nē, homō**], *no one, nobody.*

ne-que or **nec**, conj., (1) *and . . . not;* (2) *nor;* (3) **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*

nē-quīquam, adv. [**nē**; **quīquam**, old abl. of **quisquam**], (not to any purpose), *in vain*, *without good hope of success*.

Nerviī, ōrum, m., a particularly warlike tribe of Belgians, west of the Scheldt.

nervus, ī, m., (any cord of the body); *sinew;* pl., *strength*.

neu, a form of **nēve**.

neuter, tra, trum, gen. **neutrīus**, dat. **neutrī** [**nē**; **uter**, indefinite, *either*], *neither;* pl. used of two parties.

nē-ve, neu, conj., (or that not), *and* (*that*) *not;* *or*, I. **26**, 6.

nex, necis, f., (violent) *death*.

nihil, indecl. noun, *nothing;* with gen., see § 49, 2; adv. accus., § 13, *not at all*, *not . . . at all;* *not*, emphatic.

(**nihilum**), **nihilī**, abl. **nihilō** [**nihil**], *nothing;* abl. of degree, (by nothing), *none;* **nihilō minus**, **nihilō sētius**, (none the less), *nevertheless*.

nisi, subord. conj. [**nē**, **sī**], *if . . . not*, I. **44**, 11; *unless; except*.

nītor, nītī, nīxus sum (usually in literal sense) or **nīsus sum** (usually in fig. sense), (rest upon), *rely* (on); with abl. of means.

nōbilis, e [**nōscō**, *know*], (1) (*well*) *known; noble;* (2) pl. as a subst., *nobles*.

nōbilitās, tātis, f. [**nōbilis**], (nobility); as an abstract noun, **summa nōbilitās**, *the highest rank*, II. **6**, 4; elsewhere as a collective noun, (the nobility as a class), *the nobles*.

noctū, adv. [old abl. of fourth declension noun, from **nox**], *at night*, *by night*, *in the night*.

nocturnus, a, um [**nox**], (of the night), *night*, *at night*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [**nē** (**nōn** in compound forms), **volō**], *be unwilling*, *not wish*. See pages 214, 215.

nōmen, minis, n. [**nōscō**, *know*], (a means of knowing), *name;* **suō nōmine**, *on his own account*.

nōminātim, adv. [**nōminō**], *name by name*, *individually*, I. **29**, 1; *by name*, II. **25**, 2.

nōminō, 1st conj. [**nōmen**], (name), *mention*.

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōnāgintā, indecl. card. adj., *ninety*.

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet*.

nōnus, a, um, ord. adj. [for **novēnus, from novem**], *ninth*.

Nōrēia, ae, f., the chief town of the Norici.

Nōricus, a, um, *of the Norici*, a tribe between the Danube and the summits of the Alps, I. **5**, 4; fem. as subst., *one of the Norici*, I. **53**, 4.

nōs, pl. of **ego**; see page 207.

noster, tra, trum, possess. adj. [**nōs**], *our*, *ours;* masc. pl. as a subst., *our men*, *our soldiers*.

novem, indecl. card. adj., *nine*.

Noviodūnum, ī, n., the chief town of the Suessiones, now probably *Soissons*.

novus, a, um, *new;* with **cōpiae**, *fresh;* no comparative; super. **novissimus**, (newest), *last;* **novissimum āgmen**, (the last part of a marching column), *the rear*, *rear-guard;* and so the masc. pl. used as a subst., *those in the rear*, *the rear-guard;* **novae rēs**, *change of*

government, *revolution;* **nova imperia**, (new forms of government), *revolution.*

nox, noctis, f., gen. pl. **noctium**, *night;* **prīmā nocte**, (in the first part of the night), *as soon as it was dark;* **multā nocte**, *late at night.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, (veil one's self), *marry;* said of the woman.

nūdō, 1st conj. [**nūdus**], (make bare), *expose;* with abl. of separation, *strip* (of).

nūdus, a, um, (naked, bare), *unprotected.*

nūllus, a, um, gen. **nūllīus**, dat. **nūllī** [**nē, ūllus**], (not any), *no*, adj.; as a subst., *no one;* **nōn nūllus**, often written as one word, *some.*

num, interrog. particle, placed at the beginning of a question to hint that the answer "No" is expected. In I. **14**, 3, it is untranslatable by any separate word, but contributes indignant emphasis to **posse**, "COULD *he?*"

numerus, ī, m., *number; amount;* abl. **numerō**, or **in numerō**, with gen., (in the number of), *as*, *among.*

Numidae, ārum, m., *Numidians*, inhabitants of northern Africa, used as light-armed auxiliaries by the Romans, since they were skillful archers.

numquam, adv. [**nē; umquam**, *ever*], *never;* **nōn numquam**, *sometimes.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, 1st conj. [**nūntius**], *announce*, *report.*

nūntius, a, um [for **noventius**, from **novus**, which accounts for the **ū** before **nt**], (bringing news); masc. as a subst., (1) *messenger;* (2) *message*, *news.*

nūper, adv. [for **novi-per**], (newly), *recently;* no comparative; super. **nūperrimē.**

nūtus, ūs, m. [**nuō**, *nod*], *nod;* **ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem**, "*at his nod and beck.*"

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of*, *for;* in *Bel. Gal.* always with **rem, rēs, causam, causās**, and a relative or demonst. adjective, *on this account*, *for this reason;* **quam** (interrog.) **ob rem**, (for what reason), *why*, I. **50**, 4. As a prefix, *toward*, *against.*

ob-aerātus, a, um [**aes, aeris**, *copper money*], (having money against one), *in debt.* Masc. used as a subst., *debtor.*

ob-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead across a path), *construct at right angles.*

ob-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **objiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum**, (throw against), *throw up*, I. **26**, 3; *expose*, I. **47**, 3.

obitus, ūs, m. [**ob-eō**, *perish*], *destruction.*

ob-līvīscor, līvīscī, lītus sum, *forget;* with gen.

ob-secrō, 1st conj. [**sacer**, *sacred*], *entreat* (by what is sacred), *implore.*

ob-servō, 1st conj. (watch for), *observe*, *regard.*

obses, obsidis, m. or f. [**obsideō**, *sit over against*], (one who sits over against an agreement), *hostage.*

ob-sīgnō, 1st conj. [**sīgnum**], (put a seal upon), *seal*.

ob-stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictum, (bind to anything), *bind;* **suō beneficiō obstrictās**, (bound by his kindness), *put under obligation*.

ob-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (hold against anyone), *hold; possess*.

ob-tulī, perf. of **of-ferō**.

ob-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come against), *encounter, meet, attack*.

oc-, form of **ob-** before **c**.

occāsus, ūs, m. [**oc-cidō**, *fall*], (a falling); *setting;* **occāsus sōlis**, (setting of the sun), *sunset; west*, I. **1**, 7.

oc-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], (cut down), *kill*.

occultō, 1st conj. [**occultus**], *hide, conceal*.

occultus, a, um [perf. part. of **occulō**, *cover*], *covered, hidden;* **in occultō**, *in hiding, in concealment; in secret*, I. **32**, 4.

oc-cupō, 1st conj. [**capiō**], *seize; cover, occupy*, II. **8**, 2; perf. partic., *occupied, busy*, II. **19**, 8.

oc-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum**, (run against); *find*, II. **21**, 4; *meet*, II. **24**, 1; *engage* (*with*), II. **27**, 1; **quibus rēbus occurrere**, *face these conditions*, I. **33**, 4.

Ōceanus, ī, m., the Atlantic *Ocean*.

Ocelum, ī, n., "the most western town of the nearer province," I. **10**, 5.

octāvus, a, um, ord. adj. [**octō**], *eighth*.

octō, indecl. card. adj., *eight*.

octōgintā, indecl. card. adj. [**octō**], *eighty*.

oculus, ī, m., *eye*.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *hate*. See pages 214, 215.

of-, form of **ob-** before **f**.

of-fendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsum (strike against), *hurt, offend*. [**animum**, *feelings*.]

offēnsiō, ōnis, f. [**offendō**], *hurting*. [**ēius animī**, obj. gen., *his feelings*.]

of-ferō, ferre, ob-tulī, ob-lātum, (bear against), *take*.

officium, ī, n. [for **opi-ficium**, from **opus, faciō**], (service, duty); *allegiance*, I. **40**, 2; *doing his duty*, I. **40**, 10; *sense of duty*, I. **40**, 13; **prō māgnīs hominum beneficiīs**, *for men's great services*, I. **43**, 4.

o(ob)-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go by), *neglect*.

omnīnō, adv. [**omnis**], *in all; altogether, entirely*, I. **27**, 4; with negatives, *at all*, and so, I. **34**, 4, an implied negative.

omnis, e, *all, every;* neut. pl. often best translated *everything*.

onus, oneris, n., (load), *weight*.

op-, form of **ob-** before **p**.

opera, ae, f. [**opus**], *exertion*.

opīniō, ōnis, f. [**opīnor**, *think*], (1) *belief, idea;* (2) *reputation*, II. **8**, 1, **24**, 4; (3) *reports*, II. **35**, 1; **omnium opīniōne**, (than the belief of all), *than any one expected*.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers. verb, *it is fitting, it is proper, it is necessary;* best translated by *ought* or *must* as auxiliaries; e.g. **metīrī oportet**, *he ought to measure out*.

oppidānus, a, um [**oppidum**], *of a town;* masc. pl. as a

subst., *townspeople, inhabitants of a town.*

oppidum, ī, n., walled *town.*

opportūnus, a, um, *favorable, suitable.*

op-portūnus, a, um [**portus**], (before the port), *favorable, suitable.*

op-primō, primere, pressī, pressum [**premō**], (press against), *crush; overwhelm.*

oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f. [**oppūgnō**], *assault, attack; method of attack,* II. **6**, 2.

op-pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna**], (fight against), *attack;* of fortifications, *assault.*

(**ops**), **opis,** f., nom. and dat. not used, *help, aid;* pl. *resources, power.*

optimē, optimus: see **bonus.**

(1) **opus, operis,** n., *work, work of fortifying, fortifying, fortification;* **quantō opere,** as adv., *how much, how greatly,* II. **5**, 2; **māgnō opere,** *especially,* I. **13**, 5; *earnestly,* I. **38**, 2.

(2) **opus,** indecl., n., *need, necessity;* **opus est,** *there is need, it is needful,* I. **34**, 2, **42**, 5 (§ 74), II. **8**, 5 (§ 74), **22**, 1.

ōrātiō, ōnis, f. [**ōrō**], *speech, address.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., (row); (1) *rank;* (2) *order,* II. **11**, 1, **19**, 1, **22**, 1.

Orgetorix, rīgis, m., a powerful Helvetian chief.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, fut. partic. **oritūrus,** imperf. subjunct. sometimes **orerētur,** *rise, begin; be descended,* II. **4**, 1; **oriēns sōl,** (rising sun), *east.*

ōrnāmentum, ī, n. [**ōrnō,** *equip*], (means of equipping), *mark of honor.*

ōrō, 1st conj. [**ōs, ōris,** *mouth*], *beg, entreat.*

os-, form of **ob-** in **ostendō.**

Osismī, ōrum, m., one of the Aremorican tribes, in the extreme western part of Gaul.

os-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum (stretch toward), *show.*

P

P., abbreviation for **Publius,** a Roman *praenomen.*

pābulātiō, ōnis, f. [**pābulor,** *forage*], *foraging.*

pābulum, ī, n. [**pāscō,** *feed*], (food); *fodder,* the green or dry stalks of corn or grain, as food for animals.

pācō, 1st conj. [**pāx**], (pacify), *subdue.*

paene, adv., *almost.*

pāgus, ī, m., *district, canton,* a division of a Gallic or German tribe.

palūs, ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*

pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *spread;* **passīs manibus,** *with outstretched hands.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal; same;* **pār atque,** *the same as.*

parātus, a, um, partic. of **parō.**

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, —, *obey;* with dative.

parō, 1st conj., *prepare, get ready.* Perf. partic. usually as adj., *prepared, ready;* compar. *better prepared, more ready;* super. *perfectly ready, quite ready.*

pars, partis, f., (1) *part;* (2) often after **ad** or **in,** when not modified by a gen., *direction;* e.g. **in utram partem,** *in which*

direction; (3) often with **ab** or **ex**, *side*, e.g. **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side;* see § 98.

partim, adv. [**pars**], *partly.*

parum: see **parvus.**

parvulus, a, um [dim. of **parvus**], (very little); **parvulum proelium**, *skirmish.*

parvus, a, um, *little, small;* with **pretium**, *low;* compar. **minor, minus**, *less, smaller;* neut. used as a subst. with the partitive gen., *less;* super. **minimus**, *least;* neut. in adv. acc., **minimum posse**, *have very little power*, I. **20**, 2. Adverb: **parum**, *too little;* compar. **minus**, *less;* super. **minimē**, *least*, II. **33**, 2; **minimē saepe**, *very seldom;* **minimē fīrmus**, (least strong), *weakest.*

passus, a, um, partic. of **pandō.**

passus, ūs, m. [**pandō**], *pace*, with the Romans a double step, a little less than five English feet; **mīlle passūs**, (a thousand paces), a Roman *mile.*

pate-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, passive **pate-fīō, fierī, factus sum** [**pateō**], (make to be open), *throw open, open.*

patēns, patentis, partic. of **pateō.**

pateō, patēre, patuī, —, (1) *lie open;* (2) *extend*, I. **2**, 5, II. **7**, 4; pres. partic. used as an adj., *open*, I. **10**, 2.

pater, patris, m., *father.*

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer*, in the sense of (1) *allow;* (2) *endure*, II. **31**, 5.

patrius, a, um [**pater**], (of a father), *ancestral.*

paucus, a, um, rare in sing., *little, small;* pl., *few;* **pauca respondēre**, *answer briefly.*

paulātim, adv. [**paulus**], *little by little, gradually.*

paulis-per, adv., (*for*) *a little while.*

paululum, adv. [acc. of dim. of **paulus**], *a very little, very slightly.*

paulus, a, um, *little;* espec. **paulum**, adverbial acc., and **paulō**, abl. of degree of difference, *a little.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

peccō, 1st conj., (do wrong, sin); **peccandī causa**, *motive for injury.*

pedes, peditis, m. [**pēs**], *foot soldier;* pl., *foot soldiers, infantry.*

pedester, tris, tre [**pedes**], *pertaining to a foot soldier.* **pedestrēs cōpiae**, *infantry.*

Pedius, ī, m., *Quintus Pedius*, a *legatus* of Caesar, II. **2**, 1, **11**, 3.

pēior, pēius: see **malus.**

pellis, is, f., *skin, hide.*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, (1) *drive*, I. **31**, 11; (2) *rout, beat, defeat.*

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, (hang, weigh out), *pay.*

per, prep. with acc., *through*, in various senses, as in English; of space, *across, over, among;* of time, *during;* of agency, *by means of, by;* of cause, *because of;* **per sē**, *so far as he was concerned*, I. **42**, 1, *on their own responsibility*, II. **20**, 4. As a prefix, *through, thoroughly*, hence often intensive, especially with adjectives.

percontātiō, ōnis, f. [**per-contor**, *inquire*], *inquiry.*

per-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead through), *construct.*

per-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** (go through life), *perish.*
per-facilis, e, *very easy.*
per-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, (bear through); (1) of tidings, *bear, carry, report;* otherwise, (2) *endure, submit to.*
per-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (make or do through); *finish,* I. **47,** 1; *carry out, accomplish,* I. **3,** 6; *arrange,* I. **9,** 4.
per-fringō, fringere, frēgī, frāctum [**frangō**], *break through.*
perfuga, ae, m. [**perfugiō**], *deserter.*
per-fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, (flee through), *desert, escape.*
perīclitor, 1st conj. [**perīculum**], (make a trial), *try to find out.*
perīculōsus, a, um [**perīculum**], (full of danger), *dangerous.*
perīculum, ī, n. (1) *trial, test,* I. **40,** 5; (2) *danger.*
perītus, a, um, *skilled* (in), *experienced* (in), with gen.
perlātus, a, um, partic. of **perferō.**
per-maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain* (through).
per-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go through); (1) *yield, intrust;* (2) *permit,* I. **30,** 5; *drop a hint,* I. **35,** 3.
per-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move strongly), *arouse; alarm.*
perniciēs, ēī, f. [**nex**], *destruction, ruin.*
per-paucus, a, um, rare in sing., *very small;* pl., (*only*) *a very few.*
per-petuus, a, um [**petō**], (ever seeking), *unbroken, perpetual;* with **vīta,** *whole;* abl. sing. neut. as adv. (supply **tempore**), *forever,* I. **31,** 7.
per-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, (break through), *force a passage.*
per-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*
per-sevērō, 1st conj. [**per-sevērus,** *very strict*], (be very strict), *persist, persevere;* **bellō persequī persevērāre,** *continue to prosecute the war.*
per-solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *pay* in full. [**poenās,** *penalty.*]
per-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, (see through, see clearly), *see.*
per-suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, (advise successfully), *persuade.*
per-terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, (frighten thoroughly), *frighten, terrify, dismay;* perf. partic., with or without **timōre,** *panic-stricken.*
pertinācia, ae, f. [**pertināx,** *obstinate,* from **pertineō**], *obstinacy, stubbornness.*
per-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, — [**teneō**], (hold through); (1) of actual space, *extend;* (2) figuratively, with **ad,** *tend to, pertain to, concern;* for I. **14,** 4, see **īdem.**
per-turbō, 1st conj., *greatly disturb; throw into confusion,* II. **11,** 5.
per-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come through), *arrive;* with **ad,** *reach.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot;* as a measure of length, a very little less than the standard English foot; **pedem referre,** (bear back the foot), *retreat.*
petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** *seek, ask, request.*

phalanx, phalangis, f., sometimes with Greek accus. sing. **phalanga,** *phalanx,* used by Caesar to describe any close, compact formation of troops.

pīlum, ī, n., *spear, javelin;* especially those used by the Romans when their line of battle and the enemy's were nearing; see **page xxx.**

Pīsō, Pīsōnis, m., (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso,* consul 61 B.C., I. **2**, 1, **35**, 4. (2) *Lucius Calpernius Piso,* consul 58 B.C., father-in-law of Caesar, I. **6**, 4, **12**, 7. (3) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesonius,* consul 112 B.C., grandfather of the last named, I. **12**, 7.

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, *please,* with dative; impers., **placuit eī,** *it pleased him, he decided.*

plānitiēs, ēī, f., no pl. [**plānus,** *level*], *plain.*

plēbs, plēbis, f. (also **plēbēs, plēbei**), *the common people, populace.*

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, regularly only on pl., *most, most of;* **plērumque,** adverbial accus. (§ 13), *generally, usually.*

plūrēs, plūrimus: see **multus.**

plūs: see **multus.**

poena, ae, f., *punishment.*

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*

pondus, ponderis, n. [**pendō**], *weight.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place, put;* **castra pōnere,** *pitch camp, encamp;* perf. pass. of locations, *be situated;* **sibi praesidium pōnere,** (place a defense for one's self), *take refuge.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

popōscī. perf. of **pōscō.**

populātiō, ōnis, f. [**populor**], *ravaging, laying waste* a country.

populor, 1st conj. [NOT connected with **populus**], *ravage, lay waste.*

populus, ī, m., *people;* pl., *peoples, nations,* I. **3**, 7.

porrēctus, a, um, *stretched out.*

porta, ae, f., *gate.*

portō, 1st conj., *carry, take.*

portōrium, ī, n. [**portō**], *customs duty.*

pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, ——, *demand.*

positus, a, um, partic. of **pōnō.**

possessiō, ōnis, f. [**possideō**], *possession,* in any sense.

pos-sideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum [**prō**; **sedeō,** *sit*], (sit before), *possess.*

possum, posse, potuī, —, *be able, be powerful; can;* see also **largus, multus, parvus. potēns, potentis,** pres. partic., *powerful;* **potentiōrēs,** *the more powerful,* II. **1**, 4. For conjugation, see pages 212, 213.

post, adv., (1) *afterwards;* prep. with acc., (2) of time, *after;* (3) of place, *behind.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards;* **posteā quam,** (later than), *after,* I. **31**, 5, **46**, 4.

posterus, a, um [**post**], *next, the following;* compar. **posterior**; super. **postrēmus** or **postumus.**

post-quam, subord. conj., (later than), *after.*

postrī-diē, adv. [**posterus, diēs**], *on the following day, the next day;* with **ēius diēī** following, the meaning is the same.

pōstulō, 1st conj. [**pōscō**], *demand; request*, I. **31**, 9; **pōstulāta**, neut. pl. of perf. partic., (things demanded), *demands*.

posuī, perf. of **pōnō**.

potēns, **potentis**, partic. of **possum**.

potentātus, **ūs**, m. [**potēns**], (power), *supremacy*, *leadership*.

potentia, **ae**, **f.** [**potēns**], *power*.

potestās, **tātis**, **f.** [**potis**, *able*], (ability), *power;* **potestātem facere**, *give opportunity* or *chance*, and so I. **48**, 3, II. **6**, 3.

potior, **potīrī**, **potītus sum** [**potis**, *able*], (make one's self powerful); with abl. or gen.; **imperiō potīrī**, *gain control; obtain possession* (*of*).

potius, compar. adv. [**potis**, *able*], *rather* (which is strictly a comparative in English); super. **potissimum**.

potuī, perf. of **possum**.

prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with*. As a prefix, *before*, *in front*, also intensive.

prae-acūtus, **a**, **um** [**ācer**, *sharp*], *sharpened at the end*, *pointed*.

praebeō, **praebēre**, **praebuī**, **praebitum** [**prae**, **habeō**], (hold before, hold out), *furnish*, *afford*.

prae-caveō, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautum**, (be on one's guard against in advance), *take precautions*, *look out*.

prae-cēdō, **cēdere**, **cēssī**, **cēssum**, (go ahead of), *surpass*, *excel*.

prae-ceps, **cipitis**, adj. [**caput**], ("head first"), *headlong*.

prae-cipiō, **cipere**, **cēpī**, **ceptum**, [**capiō**], (take beforehand), *command*, *direct*.

prae-cipuus, **a**, **um** [**capiō**], (taking first place), *special*. Adverb: **praecipuē**, *especially*.

prae-dicō, 1st conj., (set forth), *declare;* **multa praedicāre**, *boast a great deal*.

praedor, 1st conj. [**praeda**, *booty*], (obtain booty), *plunder*.

praefectus, **a**, **um**, partic. of **praeficiō**.

prae-ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, (carry in front); **sē praeferre**, (carry themselves in front of), *surpass;* with dative.

prae-ficiō, **ficere**, **fēcī**, **fectum**, [**faciō**], (put in front), *put in command* (*of*), *place in charge* (*of*); with dative. Masc. of perf. partic., (one put in command), *commander*, especially a *prefect* of cavalry, I. **39**, 2.

prae-mittō, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missum**, *send ahead*, *forward*, or *in advance*.

praemium, **ī**, n., *reward*.

prae-optō, 1st conj., (wish before), *choose in preference*, *choose*.

prae-pōnō, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, (place in front), *place in command* (*of*); with dative.

prae-scrībō, **scrībere**, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptum**, (write in advance), *dictate*. Neut. of perf. partic. as a subst., (a thing dictated), *dictation*, I. **36**, 1.

praesēns, **praesentis**, **praesentia**, partic. of **praesum**.

praesertim, adv., *especially*.

praesidium, **ī**, n. [**prae-sideō**, *sit in front of*, *guard*], *garrison* for a fortification; *guard;* **praesidiō esse**, (be for a guard), *guard*, with another **dative**: see also **pōnō**.

prae-stō, stāre, stitī, stitum, (stand before); (1) *excel, surpass; show*, II. **27**, 3; (2) impers., *it is better*, I. **17**, 3, II. **31**, 5.

prae-sum, esse, fuī, —, (be in front), *be in command (of)*, with dat.; *hold*, I. **16**, 5. Pres. partic., **praesēns, praesentis,** *present, being present;* **plūribus praesentibus,** (more being present), *in the presence of others;* **sē (ipsō) praesente,** *in his presence;* **in praesentia (tempora),** *for the present* (time), I. **15**, 4.

praeter, prep. with acc., (1) *beyond, past*, I. **48**, 2; (2) *except, besides.*

praetereā, adv., *besides; else*, I. **40**, 14.

praeter-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** *go past.* Neut. pl. of perf. partic. as a subst., (things gone past), *the past*, I. **20**, 6.

praeteritus, a, um, partic. of **praetereō.**

praetor, tōris, m. [for **prae-itor,** from **prae-eō**], (one who goes ahead), *commander;* **lēgātus prō praetōre,** (lieutenant as commander), *lieutenant general.*

praetōrius, a, um [**praetor**], *belonging to a commander;* **praetōria cohors,** *bodyguard.*

precibus: see **prex.**

premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *press;* in military expressions, *press hard, push hard.*

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum [contracted from **prehendō**], *grasp, seize.*

pretium, ī, n., *price.*

prex, precis, f., (in sing. only in dat., acc., and abl.), *prayer, entreaty.*

prī-diē, adv. [**prior, diēs**], *(on) the day before;* with **ēius diēī** following, the meaning is the same.

prīmi-pīlus, ī, m. [**prīmus,** *first,* **pīlus,** *century*], *first centurion;* see pages xxiii, xxv.

prīmus, a, um: see **prior.**

prīnceps, prīncipis, adj. [**prīmus, capiō**], (taking first place), *chief*, in two senses: (1) *first*, I. **7**, 3, **12**, 6, **41**, 2; (2) masc. used as a subst., *leader, chief.*

prīncipātus, ūs, m. [**prīnceps**], *leadership.*

prior, prius, compar. adj., *former;* masc. pl. used as a subst., *those in front*, II. **11**, 5; super. **prīmus,** *first;* having partitive force with **nox, lūx, impedīmenta,** *the first part of, the first of;* masc. pl. used as a subst., *leaders, chiefs*, II. **3**, 1, **13**, 1; **in prīmīs,** (among the first), *especially*, I. **33**, 2; **prīmō,** *at first*, I. **31**, 5, II. **8**, 1, **30**, 1. Adverbs: **prius,** *earlier;* **prius quam,** (earlier than), *before;* super. **prīmum,** *first, in the first place;* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible;* **cum prīmum,** (when first), *as soon as.*

prīstinus, a, um [for **prius-tinus,** from **prior** and **teneō**], *former, previous.*

prius: see **prior.**

prīvātim, adv. [**prīvātus**], *personally, privately, as private citizens.*

prīvātus, a, um [partic. of **prīvō,** *deprive*], (apart from the state); i.e., *private*, I. **5**, 2; *personal*, I. **12**, 7.

prō, prep. with abl., (1) of place, *before*, *in front of;* (2) of defense or protection, *in behalf of*, *for;* (3) of substitution, *in place of*, *instead of*, *as*, *for;* *in return for;* (4) of relation, *in proportion to;* *in accordance with;* *in view of*. As a prefix, *forth*, *before*.

probō, 1st conj., (1) *prove*, I. **3**, 6; (2) *approve*, *approve of*.

prō-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go forward), *advance*, *proceed*.

Procillus, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, a Gaul of the Province, a personal friend of Caesar, I. **47**, 4.

procul, adv., *at a distance*, *far off*.

prō-cumbō, cumbere, cubuī, cubitum, (lean forward), *sink to the ground*.

prō-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum**, *run forward*.

prōd-, form of **prō-**, before vowels.

prōd-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum**, (go forth), *come out*, I. **50**, 2; *go forward*, *advance*, I. **48**, 7.

prō-dō, dere, didī, ditum [dō, dare], (give forth), *hand down*.

prō-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead forth*, *lead out*.

proelior, 1st conj. **[proelium]**, *fight*.

proelium, ī, n., *battle*.

profectiō, ōnis, f. **[proficīscor]**, (a starting out), *departure*.

pro-ficīscor, ficīscī, fectus sum [prō-ficiō, *make forth*], *start out*, *set out*.

prō-flīgō, 1st conj., (strike down), *rout*, *put to flight*.

pro-fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, (flee forth), *flee;* *escape*.

prō-gnātus, a, um [(g)nāscor], (born from), *descended*.

prō-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [gradior, *step*], *go forward*, *advance*.

pro-hibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum [habeō], (hold off); (1) *keep*, *keep away*, *keep off;* *check*, *stop*, I. **6**, 1, **8**, 2, **47**, 6; (3) with accus. and infin., *prevent*, e.g. **Teutonōs ingredī prohibuērunt**, *prevented the Teutons from entering*. [**itinere**, *from passing;* **mūnītiōne**, *from fortifying*.]

prō-iciō, (pronounced as if spelled **prōjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō]**, (throw forward, throw away), *throw*, *cast;* *betray*, *disgrace*, II. **15**, 5.

prō-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move forward*.

prope: see **propior**.

prō-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, *drive off*.

properō, 1st conj., *hurry*, *hasten*.

propinquitās, tātis, f. **[propinquus]**, *nearness;* *relationship*, II. **4**, 4.

propinquus, a, um [prope], (1) *near;* (2) masc. used as a subst., *relative*, *kinsman;* fem. *female relative*, I. **18**, 7.

propior, ius, compar. adj., *nearer;* super. **proximus**, *nearest*, *very near;* of time, *next*. Adverb (and preposition with acc.): **prope**, *near*, *nearly*, *almost;* compar. **propius**, *nearer;* super. **proximē**, *last*.

prō-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *set forth*, *state*, *explain;* *raise*, *display*, II. **20**, 1.

propter, prep. with acc. **[prope]**, *on account of*, *because of*.

propterea, adv. **[propter]**, (on account of this), *on this account;* **propterea quod**, (on

this account, because), *because.*

prō-pūgnō, 1st conj., *fight outside, go outside to fight; make sallies* or *sorties.*

prō-pulsō, 1st conj. [intensive of **prō-pellō**], *drive off.*

prō-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, (follow forward), *follow up, pursue;* **līberāliter ōrātiōne prōsequī**, *address graciously, dismiss with gracious words.*

prōspectus, ūs, m. [**prōspiciō**], *view, sight, outlook.*

prō-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look out, provide* (for); with dative.

prō-tinus, adv. [**tenus**, *as far as*], (so far forth), *forthwith, immediately.*

prō-turbō, 1st conj. [**turba**, *crowd*], *throw into confusion.*

prō-videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *foresee, see in advance.*

prōvincia, ae, f. [**prō, vincō**], (a conquered region beyond the borders of a country), *province;* especially *the Province,* meaning *Transalpine Gaul,* the southeastern part of modern France.

prō-volō, 1st conj., (fly forth), *rush out.*

proximus, proximē: see **propior.**

prūdentia, ae, f. [**prūdēns**, for **prōvidēns**, from **prōvideō**], *foresight, prudence.*

pūblicē: see **pūblicus.**

pūblicus, a, um [**populus**], (of the people); *public;* **rēs pūblica**, *the state,* especially Rome; *state affairs,* I. **34,** 1.

Pūblius, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*

pudor, ōris, m. [**pudet**, *it shames*], (shame), *sense of shame.*

puer, puerī, m., *boy.*

pūgna, ae, f., (hand to hand encounter), *fight, battle.*

pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna**], *fight.*

pulsus, a, um, partic. of **pellō.**

pūrgātus, a, um, *blameless, exonerated, clear.*

putō, 1st conj., (reckon), *think.*

Pȳrēnaeus, a, um, *Pyrenees.*

Q

Q., abbreviation for **Quīntus**, a Roman *praenomen.*

qua, neut. pl. of **quī** indef., II. **14,** 5.

quā, rel. adv. [abl. of **quī**, with **viā** or **parte** understood], *where,* I. **6,** 1, **8,** 4, **10,** 3, **38,** 5, II. **33,** 2.

quadrāgintā, indecl. card. adj. [**quattuor**], *forty.*

quadringentī, ae, a, gen. **um,** card. adj. [**quattuor, centum**], *four hundred.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī or **quaesiī, quaesītum,** *ask* a question, *inquire; ask for, inquire for,* II. **21,** 6.

quaestor, tōris, m. [for **quaesitor**, from **quaerō**], *quaestor,* the pay- and quarter-master of a Roman army.

quālis, e, interrog. adj., *of what sort? what?*

quam, adv. [case form of **quis, quī**], (1) after any compar., *than;* after **praestat**, which implies comparison, *than, rather than;* (2) before a super., with or without a form of **possum**, *as* (positive) *as possible,* or *the* (super.) *possible,* e.g. **quam māximus**, *as great as possible,* or *the greatest possible,* I. **3,** 1; before

positive of adj., *how*, I. **43**, 6, 7.

quantus, a, um, (1) interrog., *how great?* (2) rel., **tantus . . . quantus,** *as great . . . as;* without **tantus** expressed, *as much as, as far as;* **quantum bonī,** *how much* (of) *advantage*, I. **40**, 6; **quantō opere,** *how much, how greatly*, II. **5**, 2.

quā rē, quārē: see **rēs.**

quārtus, a, um, ord. adj. [**quattuor**], *fourth.*

quattuor, indecl. card. adj., *four.*

quattuor-decim, indecl. card. adj. [**quattuor, decem**], *fourteen.*

-que, enclitic coörd. conj., *and;* appended to the word, or to the first word (usually) of a phrase or clause, which it connects.

queror, querī, questus sum, (1) intrans., *complain;* (2) trans., *complain of; lament*, I. **39**, 4.

quī, quae, quod, gen. **cūius,** dat. **cui,** rel. pron., *who, which,* etc.; *that;* neut. without expressed antecedent, *what;* as rel. adj., *which,* (2) interrog. adj., *what?*

quī, quae or **qua, quod,** indef. pron. or adj., *any, any one;* see § 139.

quī-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever,* objective, *whomsoever.*

quid: see **quis.**

quīdam, quae-dam, quid-dam (subst.) or **quod-dam** (adj.), indef. pron.; as a subst., *a certain one, a certain thing,* pl., *certain ones, certain things;* as an adj., *a certain,* pl. *certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least,* emphasizing a preceding word; **nē . . . quidem,** *not even,* emphasizing the intervening word.

quīn, subord. conj. [**quī,** *who, how,* **nē,** negative], (*but*) *that;* **quīn exīrent,** *from passing out,* I. **33**, 4; and similarly, I. **47**, 2, II. **3**, 5; **quīn etiam,** *moreover.*

quī-nam, quae-nam, quid-nam, interrog. adj., giving sarcastic force, *what, what now.*

quīn-decim, indecl. card. adj. [**quīnque, decem**], *fifteen.*

quīn-gentī, ae, a, card. adj. [**quīnque, centum**], *five hundred.*

quīnī, ae, a, distributive adj. [**quīnque**], *five at a time; five a day,* I. **15**, 5.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. card. adj. [**quīnque**], *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. card. adj., *five.*

quīntus, a, um, ord. adj. [**quīnque**], *fifth.*

Quīntus, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*

quis, —, quid, gen. **cūius,** etc., interrog. pron., *who? what? whose? whom?* Neut. sing. accus. **quid** used adverbially, *why?* I. **40**, 4. Also indef. pron., *any one, anything;* see § 139.

quis-quam, —, quid-quam or **quic-quam,** or **quod-quam** (adj.), indef. pron., *any one, anything, any* (at all).

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que (subst.), or **quod-que** (adj.), indef. pron., *each one, each.*

quis-quis, —, quic-quid, gen. **cūius-cūius,** etc., indef. pron. *whoever, whatever.*

quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quod-vīs, gen. **cūius-vīs** [**vīs**, second person of **volō**], indefinite adj., (any you wish), *any . . . whatever.*

quō, (1) abl. of **quis** and **quī**; (2) adv. [old dat. of **quis, quī**], interrog. or rel., *whither*, less exactly in common English, *where;* indef. after **sī** (like **quis, quī**), *to any point, anywhere*, I. **48**, 7. (3) for **quō**, I. **8**, 2, II. **17**, 4, **25**, 2, see § 160, and for I. **31**, 7, see §§ 161, 210.

quod [acc. of **quī**], (in respect to which); as subord. conj., (1) *because;* (2) *the fact that, that;* (3) *in regard to the fact that;* see §§ 170, 171, 215. **quod sī**, *but if, and if.*

quoniam, subord. conj., *since.*

quoque, adv., *also, too*, following the word emphasized.

quot-annīs, adv. [**quot**, *as many as*, **annus**, *year*], *every year, yearly, annually.*

quotiēns, adv. [**quot**, *how many*], *how many times; how frequent*, I. **43**, 7.

R

rādīx, īcis, f., (root); of a mountain, *spur, ridge, foothill.*

raeda, ae, f. [Celtic], *wagon* with four wheels.

rāmus, ī, m., *branch.*

rapīna, ae, f. [**rapiō**, *snatch*], *plundering.*

ratiō, ōnis, f. [**reor**, *reckon*], (1) *reckoning*, I. **29**, 1; *calculation*, I. **40**, 8; (2) *method*, I. **40**, 9; (3) *consideration*, II. **10**, 5; (4) *reason*, I. **28**, 4; (5) *manner*, in this sense only in the abl. of manner.

ratis, is, f., *raft.*

Rauracī, ōrum, m., a tribe north of the Helvetians.

re- red-, a particle used only as a prefix, *back, again.*

recēns, entis, adj., *recent.*

re-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take back), *receive;* **sē recipere,** (1) *recover*, II. **12**, 1; (2) *retreat*, and so **recipere** alone, I. **48**, 7.

re-cūsō, 1st conj., *refuse*, see § 210; *decline, reject*, I. **44**, 5.

red-, see **re-**.

redāctus, a, um, partic. of **redigō.**

red-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (give back); (1) *return;* (2) *render*, II. **5**, 5.

redēmptus, a, um, partic. of **redimō.**

red-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** (go back), *return; slope back*, II. **8**, 3.

red-igo, igere, ēgī, āctum [**agō**], (drive back); (1) *reduce;* (2) *render*, II. **27**, 5.

red-imō, imere, ēmī, ēmptum [**emō**], (buy back), *purchase; buy up, farm*, I. **18**, 3.

red-integrō, 1st conj. [**integer**, *untouched, whole*], (render whole again), *renew.*

reditiō, ōnis, f. [**redeō**], *returning, return.*

Redonēs, um, m., a tribe in western Gaul, near or on the coast.

re-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead back; bring back.*

re-ferō, ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātum, *bring back; report; turn over*, I. **29**, 1; **pedem referre** (draw back the foot), *retire, retreat;* **hanc grātiam referre,** *show such gratitude.*

refrāctus, a, um, partic. of **refringō.**

re-fringō, fringere, frēgī, frāctum [frangō], (break back), *break open.*

regiō, ōnis, f. [**regō,** *rule*], (direction), *region, district.*

rēgnum, ī, n. [**rēx**], *royal power.*

re-iciō, (pronounced as if spelled **rejiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō],** *throw back,* I. **46,** 2; *drive back; throw away, drop,* I. **52,** 4.

re-languēscō, languēscere, languī, —, *become weakened.*

relātus, a, um, partic. of **referō.**

relictus, a, um, partic. of **relinquō.**

re-linquō, linquere, līquī, lictum (leave behind), *leave.*

reliquus, a, um [relinquō], (remaining), *the rest of, the remaining;* pl. as a subst., *the rest;* with **tempus,** *future; left,* I. **12,** 2; **nihil reliquī,** *nothing* (of) *left,* I. **11,** 5; **nihil reliquī facere,** *leave nothing undone.* [**ad,** *in the way of.*]

re-maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain behind, remain.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians north of the Marne, about the headwaters of the Axona (Aisne), who allied themselves with Caesar.

re-minīscor, minīscī, —, (call to mind), *recall, remember.*

re-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (1) *send back; throw back,* II. **27,** 4; (2) *lose, weaken,* II. **15,** 4; *diminish,* I. **44,** 5.

re-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move back), *remove; dismiss, send away,* I. **19,** 3; perf. partic. as adj., *far removed, remote,* I. **31,** 14.

re-mūneror, 1st conj. [**mūnus**], *repay, reward.*

Rēmus, ī, m., *one of the Remi.*

re-nūntiō, 1st conj., *report, bring back word.*

re-pellō, pellere, ppulī, pulsum, *drive back.*

repente, adv. [abl. of **repēns,** *sudden*], *suddenly.*

repentinus, a, um [repēns, *sudden*], *sudden, unexpected.*

re-periō, perīre, pperī, pertum, *find out, find.*

re-petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** (seek back), *demand back, try to get back,* I. **31,** 7; **poenās repetere,** *seek satisfaction.*

re-praesentō, 1st conj. [**praesēns**], (make present again), *do at once.*

re-prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsum, (hold back), *blame, criticise.*

re-pudiō, 1st conj., *reject.*

re-pūgnō, 1st conj., (fight back, oppose); *outweigh, offset;* with dative.

repulsus, a, um, partic. of **repellō.**

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, fact, circumstance,* etc.; see various words with which it is used; **quā rē** or **quārē, quam ob rem,** (on account of which thing, wherefore), *therefore; on account of which,* I. **14,** 2; introducing a question, *why;* **quā rē putāret,** (why he should think), *to think,* I. **33,** 2.

re-scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum, (cut back), *break down, destroy.*

re-scīscō, scīscere, scīvī or **sciī, scītum [sciō],** *ascertain, find out.*

re-scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, (write back), *transfer.*
re-servō, 1st conj., (keep back), *reserve.*
re-sistō, sistere, stitī, —, (stand back), *resist;* with dative.
re-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look back.*
re-spondeō, spondēre, spondī, spōnsum, (promise back), *answer, reply, respond.* Neut. of perf. partic. used as a subst., *answer, reply.*
respōnsum, ī: see **respondeō.**
re-spuō, spuere, spuī, —, (spit back), *reject, spurn.*
re-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum [statuō], (replace), *restore; rebuild;* with **proelium,** *renew.*
retentus, a, um, partic. of **retineō.**
re-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [teneō], (hold back), *detain; keep back, retain,* II. **32,** 4, **33,** 2; *restrain,* I. **47,** 2; **memoriam retinēre,** (retain the memory of), *remember.*
re-vellō, vellere, vellī, vulsum, (wrench back), *pull back, pull away.*
reversus, a, um, partic. of **revertor.**
re-vertor, vertī, vertī, versum [verto], deponent in present system and perf. partic., (turn back), *return.*
re-vocō, 1st conj., *call back, recall.*
rēx, rēgis, m. [**regō,** *rule*], *king.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*
rīpa, ae, f., *bank* of a stream.
rogō, 1st conj., *ask, ask for, request.*
Rōma, ae, f., loc. **Rōmae,** *Rome.*
Rōmānus, a, um [Rōma,] *Roman.* Masc. used as a subst., *a Roman;* pl., *the Romans.*
rota, ae, f., *wheel.*
rubus, ī, m., *bramble.*
rūmor, ōris, m., *report, rumor.*
rūpēs, is, f., *cliff, steep rock.*
rūrsus, adv. [for **re-versus**], (turned back), *again.*
Rutēnī, ōrum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul and the province, west of the Cevennes.

S

Sabīnus, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* one of Caesar's *legati.*
Sabis, is, m., the *Sambre,* a tributary of the Meuse (Mosa) in Belgic Gaul.
saepe, adv., *often;* compar. **saepius,** *oftener; repeatedly,* I. **32,** 3; super. **saepissimē; saepe numerō,** (often in number), *oftentimes, often;* **minimē saepe,** (by no means often), *very seldom.*
saepēs, is, f., *hedge.*
sagittārius, ī, m. [**sagitta,** *arrow*], *archer, bowman.*
salūs, ūtis, f., *safety; welfare.*
sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, *agree solemnly.*
sānitās, tātis, f. [**sānus,** *sound*], *soundness* of mind and body, *sanity;* **ad sānitātem revertī,** *come to his senses.*
Santonēs, um, or **Santonī, ōrum,** m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul, on the coast north of the Garonne, I. **10,** 1, **11,** 6.
sarcinae, ārum, f., *packs,* individual *baggage;* **sub sarcinīs,** *while carrying their packs.*
satis: (1) adv., *sufficiently; quite,* I. **43,** 1; **satis commodē,** *very well;* **satis māgnus,** *large*

enough; (2) indecl. adj., *enough;* (3) *sufficient;* **satis habēre,** *consider sufficient, be satisfied;* **satis causae,** *sufficient* (of) *reason, reason enough;* **satis facere,** *make restitution,* I. **14,** 6, *apologize,* I. **41,** 3.

satisfactiō, ōnis, f. [satis faciō: see **satis],** *apology, excuse.*

saxum, ī, n., *rock,* large *stone.*

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime.*

scientia, ae, f. [sciēns, present participle of **sciō],** *knowledge.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write.*

scūtum, ī, n., oblong *shield;* see page xxix.

sē, sēse, acc. of **suī.**

sēcrētō, adv. [sēcernō, *separate*], (separately), *secretly.*

sectiō, ōnis, f. [secō, *cut*], (share); *booty.*

sēcum: = cum sē.

secundum, prep. with acc. **[secundus],** (following), (1) *besides,* I. **33,** 2; (2) *beside, along,* II. **18,** 3.

secundus, a, um [sequor], (following); (1) with **aciēs, vigilia, locus,** *second;* (2) *favorable, successful;* **secundiōrēs rēs,** *greater prosperity.*

sed, coörd. conj., *but;* stronger than **at.**

sē-decim, sex-decim, indecl. card. adj. **[sex, decem],** *sixteen.*

sēdēs, is, f. [sedeō, *sit*], (seat), *settlement;* **locus āc sēdēs,** *dwelling places;* § 280.

sēditiōsus, a, um [sēditiō, *sedition*], *seditious, treasonable.*

Sedusiī, ōrum, m., a tribe of Germans, location uncertain.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe south of the Aeduans, west of the Rhone.

semel, adv., *once;* **semel atque iterum,** *time and again.*

sēmentis, is, f. [sēmen, *seed*], *sowing;* **sēmentēs quam māximās facere,** (make as great sowings as possible), *plant as much grain as possible.*

semper, adv., *always.*

senātor, ōris, m. [senex], *senator,* the name applied by Caesar to a member of the council of elders of the Nervii, corresponding to the Roman senate.

senātus, ūs, m. [senex], (council of elders), the Roman *senate;* what corresponded to it among the Gallic tribes, the *council.*

senex, senis: as **adj.,** *old;* as noun, *old man;* compar. **senior** or **māior (nātū);** super. **māximus (nātū).**

sēnī, ae, a, distributive **adj. [sex],** *six at a time; six a day,* I. **15,** 5.

Senonēs, um, m., a powerful Gallic tribe about the Yonne river.

sententia, ae, f. [sentiō], *opinion, resolution; effect,* I. **45, 1.**

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *perceive* through any of the senses; hence *see, find,* etc.

sentis, is, m., *thorn, brier.*

sēparātim, adv. [sēparātus, *separate*], *separately; individually,* I. **19, 4.**

septem, indecl. card. **adj.,** *seven.*

septen-triō, ōnis, m., generally pl., (the seven plow oxen, the stars that form the constellation of the Great Bear); hence, *the north.*

septimus, a, um, ord. **adj. [septem],** *seventh.*

sepultūra, **ae**, **f.** [**sepeliō**, *bury*], *burial.*

Sēquana, **ae**, m., *the Seine*, the most important river of northern France.

Sēquanus, **a**, **um**, *Sequanian;* masc. pl. used as a subst., *the* Sequanians, one of the most powerful tribes of Gaul before Caesar's arrival, opponents of the Aeduans.

sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, *follow; accompany, join*, II. **17**, 2.

servīlis, **e** [**servus**], *of slaves*, equivalent to **servōrum**, I. **40**, 5.

servitūs, **tūtis**, **f.** [**servus**], *slavery; subjection, bondage.*

servō, 1st conj., *keep.*

servus, **ī**, m., *slave.*

sēsē : = **sē**.

sētius, comparative adv., *less;* **nihilō sētius**, (none the less), *nevertheless.*

seu, form of **sīve**.

sex, indecl. card. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. card. adj. [**sex**], *sixty.*

sex-centī (or **sēs-centī**), **ae**, **a**, card. adj. [**sex**, **centum**], *six hundred.*

Sextius, **ī**, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a very brave centurion.

sī, subordinate conjunction, *if.*

sīc, adv., *so, in such a manner.*

sīc-ut, adv., (so as), *just as.*

sīgni-fer, **ferī**, m. [**sīgnum**, **ferō**], *standard-bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, **ōnis**, **f.** [**sīgnificō**], *indication; signal*, II. **33**, 3.

sīgnificō, 1st conj. [**sīgnum**, **faciō**], (show by signs), *indicate* by signs, *announce* by word of mouth.

sīgnum, **ī**, n., (1) *signal;* (2) military *standard.*

silva, **ae**, **f.**, *forest, woods.*

silvestris, **e** [**silva**], *wooded.*

simul, **adv.**, *at the same time.*

simulātiō, **ōnis**, **f.** [**simulō**], *pretense.*

simulō, 1st conj. [**similis**, *like*], (make like), *pretend.*

sin, subordinate conjunction [**sī**, **ne**], *but if.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singulāris, **e** [**singulī**], (single, singular); *extraordinary, unequalled.*

singulī, **ae**, **a**, distributive adj., (1) *one at a time;* (2) *separate, individual.*

sinister, tra, trum, *left;* fem. used as a subst. with **manus** understood, *left hand*, I. **25**, 3.

sī-ve, or **seu**, coördinate conjunction, (or) *if;* **sīve . . . sīve**, *either . . . or.*

socer, **socerī**, m., *father-in-law.*

socius, **ī**, m., *companion;* pl., *allies.*

sōl, **sōlis**, m., no gen. pl., *sun;* **oriēns sōl**, (the rising sun), *the east.* **occāsus sōlis**, (meaning setting of the sun), *the west.*

sollicitō, 1st conj., *stir up.*

solum, **ī**, n., (bottom); *soil*, I. **11**, 5.

sōlus, **a**, **um**, gen. **sōlīus**, dat. **sōlī**, *alone, only.* Adverb: **sōlum**, *only.*

soror, **sorōris**, f., *sister;* **soror ex mātre**, (sister from one's mother), *half-sister* by the same mother.

sors, **sortis**, f., *lot.*

spatium, **ī**, n., *space*, either properly or in time; distance; *time, interval.*

speciēs, **ēī**, **f.** [**-speciō**, *look*],

(appearance), *sight;* **ad speciem,** *for show.*

spectō, 1st conj. [intensive of **-speciō,** *look*], (look); of countries, *lie, extend, be situated;* (look at), *consider,* I. **45,** 3.

speculātor, tōris, m. [**speculor**], *spy.*

speculor, 1st conj. [**-speciō**], *spy, act as spies.*

spērō, 1st conj. [**spēs**], *hope.*

spēs, speī, f., plural limited to nom. and acc., *hope.*

spīritus, ūs, m. [**spīrō,** *breathe*], (breath); pl. *pride,* like English "airs."

spontis, gen., **sponte,** abl., f., no other forms found, *free will;* **suā sponte,** *by their own influence,* I. **9,** 2; *of his own accord,* I. **44,** 2.

statim, adv. [**stō,** *stand*], (on the spot), *immediately.*

statiō, ōnis, f. [**stō,** *stand*], (a standing), *picket.*

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum [**stō,** *stand*], (set up); *determine, decide; take measures,* I. **19,** 5; **nē quid gravius statueret,** *not to take any very severe measures.*

statūra, ae, f. [**stō,** *stand*], (standing), *stature, height, size.*

stīpendiārius, a, um [**stīpendium**], *tributary.*

stīpendium, ī, n., *tribute.*

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise.*

studeō, studēre, studuī, ——, (desire), *be eager; care, pay attention,* II. **17,** 4.

studium, ī, n. [**studeō**], *desire, eagerness; devotion,* I. **19,** 2.

sub, prep.; with acc., when implying motion, (1) *under; close up to,* I. **24,** 5; (2) in expressions of time, *towards;* with abl., when implying rest, (3) *under, at the foot of, close by.* As a prefix, *under, from under, up.*

sub-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead from below), *lead up.*

sub-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** (1) *undergo;* (2) *go under, enter,* I. **36,** 7; *come up,* II. **25.** 1; *approach,* II. **27,** 5. Perf. partic. used as an adj., **subitus, a, um,** (having come up), *sudden;* abl. **subitō** used adverbially, *suddenly.*

sub-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **subjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw under, throw from under), *thrust* from below.

subitō: see **subeō.**

sublātus, a, um, partic. of **tollō.**

sub-levō, 1st conj. [**levis**], (lighten from below, lift up), *support, help;* perfect participle, *assisted* (*by*), *holding on* (*to*), I. **48,** 7.

sub-ministrō, 1st conj. [**minister,** *servant*], *furnish, provide.*

sub-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send* as a help, *dispatch.*

sub-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move from under), *drive back.*

sub-ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum, *undermine.*

sub-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow up, follow closely.*

subsidium, ī, n., *reserve, reinforcement; aid, help.*

sub-sistō, sistere, stitī, —, (stand under), *halt, stop, make a stand.*

sub-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, (draw from beneath), *take away, set at liberty.*

sub-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *bring up.*

suc-, form of **sub-** before **c.**

suc-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *come up, approach.*

Suēba, ae, f., *a Swabian (woman).*

Suēbī, ōrum, m., *the Suebi* or *Swabians,* the most powerful German tribe of Caesar's time.

Suessiōnēs, um, m., a Belgian tribe about the Marne, around modern Soissons.

suī, gen., see page 207, reflexive pronoun, third person, *himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her,* when English usage makes the meaning clear.

Sulla, ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla,* consul B.C. 88, dictator 81–79.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be; happen.* See pages 212, 213.

summus, summa, summum: see **superus.**

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum [for **sub-imō,** from **emō**], (take from beneath), *take;* **sibi sūmere,** (take to one's self), *sasume;* **dē obsidibus supplicium sūmere,** (take punishment from the hostages; like the expression " take it out of them "), *inflict punishment on the hostages.*

sūmptus, ūs, m. [**sūmō**], *expense.*

sup-, form of **sub-** before **p.**

super-, prefix, *over.*

superbus, a, um, *proud.* Adverb: **superbē,** (proudly), *haughtily.*

superior: see **superus.**

superō, 1st conj. [**superus**], *overcome, conquer.*

super-sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum, (sit over, be above), *refrain.*

super-sum, esse, fuī, —, (be over, be left over), *be left, remain.*

superus, a, um [**super**], *high;* compar. **superior,** (1) *higher, upper;* (2) of time, *former;* (3) of general comparison, *superior, more successful;* super. **suprēmus, summus,** (1) *highest;* (2) figuratively, *greatest;* **summae rēs,** *most important matters;* (3) often with partitive force, as with **mōns, collis, iugum,** *the top of, the summit of;* **summa,** f., used as a noun, with **rēs** understood, (highest thing), *sum, total,* I. **29**, 2, 3; **summa imperiī,** *chief authority, general management;* **summam imperiī tenēre,** *be commander-in-chief;* with **bellī,** *conduct,* I. **41**, 3.

sup-petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** (seek to help, come to the aid of), *be on hand, be available.*

sup-plex, plicis, adj. [**plicō,** *fold*], (bending under, kneeling), *submissive.* Adverb: **suppliciter,** *submissively, humbly.*

supplicātiō, ōnis, f. [**sup-plicō,** *fold under,* from **supplex**], (a kneeling), *thanksgiving.*

suppliciter: see **supplex.**

supplicium, ī, n. [**supplex,** in the sense of *bending to receive lashes*], *punishment;* often in the sense of *capital punishment, execution.* See also **sūmō.**

sup-portō, 1st conj., *bring up.*

suprā, adv. and prep. with acc. [**superus**], *above.*

sus-, form of **sub-** before **c, p,** and **t.**

sus-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum

[**capiō**], (take under, take up), *undertake;* **sibi suscipere,** (take upon one's self), *assume.*

sūspīciō, ōnis, f. [**sū-spiciō,** *suspect*], *suspicion.*

sūspicor, 1st conj. [intensive of **sū-spiciō,** *suspect*], *suspect.*

sus-tentō, 1st conj. [intensive of **sus-tineō**], *sustain, endure, meet,* with **bella** understood, II. **14**, 5; impers. pass., *the attack was sustained,* II. **6**, 1.

sus-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (hold up under); (1) with **impetum,** *meet, sustain;* (2) intrans., *hold out; bear, endure,* I. **31**, 13; **sē sustinēre,** *stand upright,* II. **25**, 1.

suus, a, um, reflexive possessive adj. of the third person, *his* (*own*), *her* (*own*), *its* (*own*), *their* (*own*), according to the subject of the clause or sentence; *his usual, well known,* II. **14**, 4, **31**, 3; masc. pl. used as a subst., *his own* or *their own men, friends, countrymen:* neut. sing., *their standing,* I. **43**, 8; plu., *their property* or *possessions.*

T

T., abbreviation for **Titus,** a Roman praenomen.

tabernāculum, ī, n., *tent.*

tabula, ae, f., (board, writing tablet), *list, table.*

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum, *be silent;* trans., *be silent about, keep . . . silent.* Perf. partic. used as an adj., *silent.*

tam, adv., *so, to such a degree.*

tamen, adv., *yet, nevertheless; still; however, indeed.*

tam-etsī, subordinate conjunction, [**tamen, etsī**], *although.*

tandem, adv., *at length.*

tantopere, adv. [for **tantō opere**], *fiercely, desperately.*

tantulus, a, um [diminutive of **tantus**], *such slight, such small.*

tantus, a, um, *so great, such great, such, so much;* **for tantī,** I. **20**, 5, see § 62; neut. used as a subst., *so much;* **tantus . . . quantus,** *as great . . . as.*

tardō, 1st conj. [**tardus**], (make slow), *retard, check.*

tardus, a, um, *slow;* comparative, *rather slow.*

tēctum: see **tegō.**

tegimentum, ī, n. [**tegō**], *covering.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover;* neut. of perf. partic. used as a subst., (a thing covered), *shelter, roof.*

tēlum, ī, n., any weapon intended to be thrown, *spear, dart.*

temerārius, a, um [**temerē**], *rash, reckless, headstrong.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, recklessly.*

temperantia, ae, f. [**temperāns,** from **temperō**], *moderation.*

temperō, 1st conj. [**tempus**], (observe times, be moderate), *refrain,* I. **7**, 4; **sibi temperāre,** *restrain themselves, refrain.*

temptō, 1st conj. (also written **tentō**) [intensive of **tendō**], *try;* **iter temptāre,** *try to force a passage.*

tempus, temporis, n., *time;* **in reliquum tempus,** *for the future;* **omnī tempore,** *always.*

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum, *stretch.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, (**tentum**), *hold; have; restrain,* I. **31**, 9, **39**, 4; **sē tenēre,** (hold himself), *remain.*

tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender, young;* compar. **tenerior**; super. **tenerrimus.**
ter, num. adv. [**trēs**], *three times.*
tergum, ī, n., *back.*
ternī, ae, a, another form of **trīnī.**
terra, ae, f., (dry) *land*, I. **30**, 2; *earth, ground.*
terrēnus, a, um [**terra**], *of earth.*
terror, ōris, m. [**terreō,** *frighten, terrify*], *terror, fright.*
tertius, a, um, ordinal adj. [**ter**], *third.*
tēstāmentum, ī, n. [**tēstor,** *bear witness*, from **tēstis**], *will.*
tēstimōnium, ī, n. [**tēstor,** *bear witness*, from **tēstis**], *evidence, proof.*
tēstis, tēstis, m. or f., *witness.*
tēstūdō, dinis, f. [**tēsta,** *earthenware, shell*], *tortoise;* as military term, *testudo*, a close formation for assault, shields lapping, II. **6**, 2.
Teutonī, ōrum, or **Teutonēs, um,** m., *the Teutons*, a Germanic tribe which with the Cimbri, roamed over Gaul in the second century B.C., then turned toward Italy and was finally defeated by Marius, 102 and 101 B.C.
Tigurīnus, a, um, name of a canton of the Helvetians, I. **12**, 4; masc. plu. used as a subst., *the Tigurini*, I. **12**, 7.
timeō, timēre, timuī, —, *fear, be afraid* (*of*).
timidus, a, um [**timeō**], *timid, cowardly.*
timor, ōris, m. [**timeō**], *fear.*
Titurius, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a *legatus* of Caesar.
tolerō, 1st conj., *endure.*
tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum, (1) *raise;* (2) *take away; cancel, give up*, I. **42**, 5; perf. partic., **sublātus,** *elated*, I. **15**, 3.
Tolosātēs, ium, m., [**Tolōsa,** *Toulouse*], a tribe about Toulouse.
tormentum, ī, n. [**torqueō,** *twist*], (windlass); *tormentum*, plu. *tormenta*, military engines for throwing darts and other missiles; see page xxxviii.
totidem, indecl. num. adj. [**tot, īdem**], (just so many), *as many, the same number* (*of*).
tōtus, a, um, gen. **tōtīus,** dat. **tōtī,** *the whole* (*of*), *all, all the.*
trabs, trabis, f., *beam, timber.*
trā-, form of **trāns-.**
trā-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], *hand over; give up, surrender.*
trā-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead across, lead over.*
trāgula, ae, f., *javelin, lance*, with a thong or strap to assist in hurling.
trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, (drag, draw); *hurry along, drag along.*
trā-nō, 1st conj., *swim across.*
trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over.*
trāns-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** *go across, cross; pass through*, I. **8**, 2, **9**, 4.
trāns-fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum, (fasten across), *pierce.*
trāns-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior,** *step*], (step across), *cross.*
trāns-portō, 1st conj., *carry across, transport.*
trāns-versus, a, um [**vertō**], (turned across); **trānsversa fossa,** *cross ditch.*

tre-centī, ae, a, card. adj. [**trēs, centum**], *three hundred.*
trēs, tria, gen. **trium,** dat. abl. **tribus,** card. adj., *three.*
Treverī, ōrum, m., a strong Belgian tribe, about the Meuse (Moselle).
Tribocī, ōrum, m., a German tribe about the Rhine, east of the Vosges mountains.
tribūnus, ī, m. [**tribus,** *tribe*], (originally, head of a tribe); *tribune;* see page xxv.
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum [**tribus,** *tribe*], *assign, attribute.*
trīduum, ī, n. [**trēs, diēs**], (space of three days), *three days.*
trīgintā, indecl. card. adj. [**trēs**], *thirty.*
trīnī, ae, a, sometimes written **ternī, ae, a,** distrib. adj. [**trēs**], (three at a time); *triple.*
triplex, triplicis, adj. [**trēs; plicō,** *fold*], (threefold), *triple.*
trīstis, e, *sad;* freely, *sadly.*
trīstitia, ae, f. [**trīstis**], *sadness.*
Troucillus, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus,* a Gaul of the Province, a personal friend of Caesar.
tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*
tulī, perfect of **ferō.**
Tulingī, ōrum, m., a German tribe north of the Helvetians, allied with the latter in their migration.
tum, adv., *then;* **cum . . . tum,** *both . . . and, not only . . . but also,* II. **4,** 7.
tumultus, ūs, m. [**tumeō,** *swell*], *uproar, confusion; revolt, uprising,* I. **40,** 5.
tumulus, ī, m. [**tumeō,** *swell*], *mound.*
Turonī, ōrum, m., a tribe of west central Gaul, on both banks of the Liger (Loire), about modern Tours.
turpis, e, (ugly), *disgraceful.*
turpitūdō, tūdinis, f. [**turpis**], *disgrace.*
turris, is, f., *tower;* see page xl.
tūtus, a, um [perf. partic. of **tueor,** *defend*], (defended), *safe.*

U

ubi, ubī, rel. adv., (1) *where;* (2) *when;* **ubi prīmum,** (when first), *as soon as.*
Ubiī, ōrum, m., a German tribe, opposite the Arvennes, friendly to Caesar.
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, (1) *avenge,* I. **12,** 7; (2) *punish, take vengeance upon.*
ūllus, a, um, gen. **ūllīus,** dat. **ūllī,** *any;* as a subst., *any one, anything.*
ūlterior, ius, compar. adj., [**ūltrā**], *farther, more distant;* super. **ultimus,** *farthest, most distant.*
ūltrā, prep. with acc., *beyond.*
ūltrō, adv., (to the farther side); *voluntarily, of one's own accord;* **ūltrō citrōque,** *back and forth.*
ultus, a, um, partic. of **ulcīscor.**
umquam, adv., *ever.*
ūnā: see **ūnus.**
unde, rel. adv., *whence, from which.*
ūn-decimus, a, um, ord. adj. [**ūndecim,** *eleven*], *eleventh.*
undique, adv., (from all sides), *on all sides.*
ūni-versus, a, um [**ūnus, vertō**], (turned into one), *all, whole.*
ūnus, a, um, gen. **ūnīus,** dat. **ūnī,** card. adj., *one; alone, only, only one;* pl., *alone, only;*

ūnā, used as an adv., *together*, especially with **cum**; *the same way*, *along with him*, II. **17**, 2; *in the same place*, *together*.

urbs, urbis, f., *city;* referring to Rome, I. **7**, 1, **39**, 2.

urgeō, urgēre, urguī, —, *press;* passive, *be hard pressed*.

usque, adv., *all the way*; with **ad**, *even to*, *clear to*.

ūsus, a, um, partic. of **ūtor**.

ūsus, ūs, m. [**ūtor**], (1) *use;* (2) *experience;* **ūsuī** (§ 32) **esse**, *be of use*, *be useful;* **ex ūsū**, *to the advantage*, *advantageous*, *advantageously*, *of use*.

ut, utī, subord. conj.; (1) with subjunct. of purpose, *that*, *in order that;* (2) with subjunct. of result, *that*, *so that;* (3) with indic. (or subjunct. in indirect dis. representing an indic.), *as;* in phrases of comparison where verb is omitted, *as if*, *as;* (4) *how*, I. **43**, 7, **46**, 4.

uter, utra, utrum, gen. **utrīus**, dat. **utrī**, interrog. or rel. pron. or adj. *which* of two.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen. **utrīusque**, dat. **utrīque**, indef. pron. or adj., *each* of two; freely, *both*.

uti: see **ut**.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use*, with abl., § 73; with **cōnsiliō**, *adopt; show*, II. **14**, 4, **28**, 3; *avail themselves of*, *accept*, II. **32**, 4; *enjoy*, I. **44**, 4, **45**, 3, **47**, 4.

utrimque, adv. [**uterque**], *on each side*, *on both sides*.

utrum, conj. [neut. of **uter**], *which of the two things*, *whether;* **utrum . . . an**, *whether . . . or;* **utrum . . . necne**, *whether . . . or not*.

uxor, ōris, f., *wife*.

V

V, numeral, 5, this character being half of **X**, 10.

vacō, 1st conj., *be unoccupied*, *be vacant*.

vacuus, a, um, (empty, vacant); *stripped*. [**ab**, *of*.]

vadum, ī, n., *ford*.

vagor, 1st conj., *wander*, *roam*.

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, *be strong*, *be powerful; prevail*, I. **40**, 13; **minimum valēre**, *have very little power;* **plūrimum valēre**, *be very strong*, *be very influential*.

Valerius, ī, m., (1) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor (propraetor) of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. **47**, 4; (2) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship, I. **47**, 4; (3) *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of the above, I. **47**, 4, **53**, 5; (4) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a prominent Gaul of the Province, I. **19**, 3.

vāllum, ī, n., *wall*, *rampart*, of Roman fortifications; see page xxxv.

Vangionēs, um, m., a German tribe with Ariovistus.

varius, a, um, *various*, *different*.

vāsto, 1st conj. [**vāstus**, *empty*, *waste*], (make empty), *ravage*, *devastate*, *lay waste*.

vāticinātiō, ōnis, f., *prophecy*.

vectīgal, vectīgālis, n., *tax;* pl., *revenues*.

vehemēns, entis, adj., *eager*. Adverb: **vehementer**, *exceedingly;* with verbs of fighting, *vigorously*, *desperately;* with **incūsō**, *severely*.

vel, coörd. conj., (1) *or;* (2) **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or;* **aut**

. . . **aut** is used when the alternatives exclude each other, **vel . . . vel** when they do not.

Veliocassēs, ium, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj., *swift, quick.*

vel-ut, adv., *just as.*

vēn-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**vēnum,** *sale,* **dō, dare,** *put*], (put on sale), *sell.*

Venellī, ōrum, m., a tribe on the northern coast of Brittany.

Venetī, ōrum, m., a tribe on the southern coast of Brittany.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come;* **in spem venīre,** (come into the hope), *entertain hope, begin to hope;* **ventum est,** impersonal passive, (it was come), *they came.*

Verbigenus, ī, m., a canton of the Helvetians, east of the Tigurini.

verbum, ī, n., *word;* **facere verba,** *speak, plead.*

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear, be afraid.*

vergō, vergere, —, —, (incline), *lie, be situated, extend.*

vergobretus, ī, m., *vergobret,* title of the chief magistrate of the Aeduans.

veritus, a, um, partic. of **vereor.**

vērō: see **vērus.**

versō, 1st conj. [intensive of **vertō**], (turn); usually deponent, (1) *engage;* (2) *be,* II. **24,** 2, **26,** 5; *remain,* II. **1,** 3.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn.*

Verucloetius, ī, m., a Helvetian nobleman, I. **7,** 3.

vērus, a, um, *true;* **vērō,** abl., (in truth); *indeed, in fact; but; while; and,* emphatic.

Vesontiō, ōnis, m., the chief city of the Sequanians, now Besançon.

vesper, vesperī or **vesperis,** m., *evening.*

veterānus, a, um [**vetus**], *veteran.*

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, *forbid.*

vetus, veteris, adj., (old); *former;* of soldiers, *veteran; long-standing,* I. **43,** 6.

vēxillum, ī, n., *flag,* for any especial purpose or signal. [**prōpōnere,** *raise, display.*]

vēxō, 1st conj., *harass, assail; overrun,* II. **4,** 2.

via, ae, f., (1) *way, road, route;* (2) *journey, march.*

victor, tōris, m. [**vincō**], *conqueror, victor,* I. **44,** 2, II. **28,** 1; elsewhere, as if adjective, *victorious.*

victōria, ae, f. [**victor**], *victory.*

victus, a, um, partic. of **vincō.**

vīctus, ūs, m. [**vīvō,** *live*], *living;* **cōnsuētūdō vīctūs,** *mode of life.*

vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, (1) *see;* (2) passive usually deponent, *seem; seem best,* II. **20,** 4; passive in regular sense, *be seen,* II. **18,** 3; *appear,* I. **47,** 4, II. **33,** 2.

vigilia, ae, f., *watch,* one of the four equal divisions of the night.

vīgintī, indecl. card. adj., *twenty.*

vīmen, minis, n., *twig, osier, withe.*

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*

vinculum, ī, n. [**vinciō**], *chain;* **in vincula cōnicere,** (throw

into chains), *imprison;* **ex vinculīs**, *in chains*, I. **4**, 1.

vīnea, ae, f., movable *shed;* see pages xxxix, xl.

vīnum, ī, n., (vine), *wine.*

vir, virī, m., *man.*

vīrēs, ium, etc., plural of **vīs.**

Viromanduī, ōrum, m., a tribe in the western part of Belgic Gaul, about the headwaters of the Somme.

virtūs, tūtis, f., [**vir**], (manliness), *bravery, valor; worth, ability,* I. **47**, 4; plural, *virtues, merits.*

vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī, f., (1) *force, violence; attacks*, I. **11**, 4; (2) plural, **vīrēs, vīrium**, (physical forces), *strength.*

vīsus, a, um, partic. of **videō.**

vīta, ae, f., *life.*

vītō, 1st conj., *avoid.*

vix, adv., *hardly, barely, scarcely, with difficulty.*

Vocciō, ōnis, m., king of the Norici.

vocō, 1st conj. [**vox**], *call*, usually in the sense of *summon.*

Vocontiī, ōrum, m., a tribe of the Province, south of the Isère.

volō, velle, voluī, —, (1) *wish;* (2) *be willing;* **sī quid mē** (acc.) **vīs**, (if you want me at all), *if you want anything of me*, I. **34**, 2; **quid tibi vīs?** *what do you mean?* I. **44**, 8. For conjugation, see pages 214, 215.

voluntās, tātis, f. [**volēns**, pres. partic. of **volō**], *wish, desire, consent*, especially with **licet**; *goodwill*, I. **19**, 2.

voluptās, tātis, f. [**volō**], *pleasure.*

vōx, vōcis, f., (1) *voice*, II. **13**, 2; (2) *word*, I. **32**, 3, **39**, 5; *statement, reply*, I. **39**, 1; **vōcibus increpitāre**, *taunt*, II. **30**, 3.

vulgus, ī, n., acc. **vulgus, n.**, or **vulgum, m.**, *common people, multitude; common soldiers;* **in vulgus efferre**, *spread abroad;* abl. used as an adv., *generally*, I. **39**, 5, II. **1**, 4.

vulnerō, 1st conj. [**vulnus**], *wound.*

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound.*

vultus, ūs, m., *expression of the face;* **vultum fingere**, *control their faces.*

X

X, numeral, 10.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

[For distinctions in meaning, consult the Latin-English vocabulary.]

A

able: be able, *possum.*
about, *dē; circiter.*
above, *suprā.*
abstain, *abstineō.*
accept, *accipiō, recipiō.*
access, *aditus.*
accomplish, *cōnficiō.*
accord: of one's own accord, *ūltrō.*
accordance: in accordance with, *prō;* see **also** § 86.
account: on this account, *hōc* (§ 84), *quam ob rem, propterea;* **on account of,** *propter, ob;* see also § 84.
accustomed: become accustomed, *cōnsuēscō;* **be accustomed,** *cōnsuēvī.*
acquainted: become acquainted with, *nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum;* **be acquainted with,** *nōvī.*
across, *trāns.*
address, *cohortor.*
advance, *prōcēdō, prōgredior.*
advantage, *commodum;* **to the advantage,** *ex ūsū.*
advantageous, *commodus; ex ūsū.*
advantageously, *ex ūsū.*
advise, *moneō.*
affair, *rēs.*
affirm, *cōnfīrmō.*
afraid: be afraid, *vereor, timeō.*
after, *post, postquam.*
afterwards, *posteā.*
again, *rūrsus, iterum.*
against, *contrā; in* with acc.
aid, *auxilium; iuvō.*
alarm, *permoveō, commoveō.*
all, *omnis;* **in all,** *omnīnō;* **all that,** *tantus.*
alliance, *amīcitia, hospitium.*
allow, *patior, concēdō;* **it is allowed,** *licet.*
ally, *socius.*
almost, *ferē, paene.*
alone, *sōlus.*
along, *secundum.*
already, *iam.*
also, *etiam, quoque.*
although, *cum.*
am, *sum.*
ambassador, *lēgātus.*
ambuscade, *īnsidiae.*
among, *inter, apud.*
amount, *cōpia.*
anchor, *ancora, ae,* **f.**
and, *et, atque, -que;* **and so, itaque.**
announce, *nūntiō.*
annoyed: be annoyed, *graviter ferō.*
another, *alius.*
answer, *respondeō; respōnsum.*
any, *ūllus; aliquis.*
approach, *aditus; accēdō,* with *ad; appropinquō,* with dat. or *ad.*
approve, *probō.*
arise, *orior.*

arm, *armō;* **(fore-) arm**, *brācchium.*
arms, *arma.*
army, *exercitus.*
around, *circum.*
arouse, *commoveō.*
arrange, *cōnstituō.*
arrival, *adventus.*
arrive, *perveniō* **(at,** *ad***).**
as, *ut;* **as soon as**, *ubi.*
ascertain, *cōgnōscō.*
ask, *quaerō*, *rogō*, *petō.*
assault, *oppūgnō.*
assemble, *conveniō.*
assistance, *opera.*
at: **at least**, *at.*
attack, *impetus; oppūgnō*, *aggredior*, *impetum faciō.*
attempt, *cōnātus; cōnor*, *temptō.*
auxiliary, *auxilium.*
avenge, *ulcīscor.*
await, *exspectō.*
away: **away from**, *ab;* **be away**, *absum.*

B

back, *tergum.*
baggage, *impedīmenta.*
bank, *rīpa.*
barbarian, *barbarus.*
basis, *ratiō.*
battle, *proelium;* **battle line**, *aciēs.*
be, *sum*, *versor.*
bear, *ferō*, *perferō.*
beat, *pellō.*
because, *quod*, *propterеā quod;* **because of**, *propter*, *ob;* see also § 84.
become, *fīō.*
before, *ante; anteā.*
beg, *ōrō.*
begin, *incipiō*, *orior*, *ineō*, *initium capiō* **(at,** *ab***);** **began**, *coepī.*
beginning, *initium.*
behalf: **in behalf of**, *prō.*
belief, *opīniō.*
belong: § 46.
beseech, *ōrō.*
beside, **besides**, *secundum; praetereā.*
betray, *prōiciō.*
between, *inter.*
bitterly, *graviter.*
boat, *nāvis.*
body, *corpus.*
bold, *audāx.*
booty, *praeda*, *ae*, **f.**
border on, *attingō.*
born: **be born**, *nāscor.*
both, *uterque;* **both . . . and**, *et . . . et.*
bound, *contineō.*
boundary, *fīnis.*
brave, *fortis.*
bravery, *virtūs.*
break camp, *moveō.*
bridge, *pōns.*
brief, *brevis.*
bring, *dūcō*, *addūcō*, *ferō*, *afferō;* **bring back**, *referō*, *redūcō;* **bring on**, **bring upon**, *īnferō;* **bring together**, *cōnferō;* **bring about**, *efficiō.*
broad, *lātus.*
brother, *frāter.*
build, *faciō.*
building, *aedificium.*
business, *negotium.*
but, *sed*, *at;* doubt **but that**, *quīn.*
buy, *emō*, *coemō.*
by, *ab;* or ablative alone.

C

calculation, *ratiō.*
call, *appellō; vocō;* **call together**, *convocō;* **call out**, *ēvocō.*
camp, *castra.*

capture, *capiō; expūgnō.*
care, *cūra.*
carefully, *dīligenter.*
carry, *ferō, portō;* **carry back,** *referō;* **carry on,** *gerō;* **carry out,** *administrō.*
cast down, *dēiciō.*
cause, *causa; cūrō.*
causeway, *agger.*
cavalry, *equitātus; equitēs.*
cease, *dēsistō, intermittō.*
centurion, *centuriō.*
certain, *quīdam; certus.*
chance, *cāsus.*
character, *nātūra.*
charge, *impetus.*
check, *impediō.*
chief, chieftain, *prīnceps.*
child, *puer;* pl. *puerī, līberī.*
choose, *dēligō.*
citizens, *cīvitās.*
city, *urbs.*
cliff, *rūpēs.*
cohort, *cohors.*
collect, *cōgō; condūcō; conferō.*
come, *veniō;* **come together,** *conveniō;* **come up,** *succēdō.*
command, *imperium; imperō, mandō;* **be in command,** *praesum;* **place in command, put in command,** *praeficiō.*
commander, *imperātor.*
compel, *cōgō.*
complain, complain of, *queror.*
complete, *cōnficiō.*
concerning, *dē.*
condition, *condiciō.*
confer, *dēferō* **(upon,** *ad*).
conference, *colloquium.*
confidence, *fidēs.*
confirm, *cōnfīrmō.*
conquer, *vincō, superō.*
consent, *voluntās.*
consider, *habeō, dūcō, exīstimō.*
consideration, *ratiō.*
conspiracy, *coniūrātiō.*
construct, *faciō.*
consul, *cōnsul.*
consult, *cōnsulō.*
contest, *certāmen, minis,* **n.**
continuous, *perpetuus.*
contribute, *cōnferō, adferō.*
control, *imperium;* with *vultum, fingere;* **gain control of,** *potior.*
convenience, *commodum.*
convenient, *commodus.*
council, *concilium.*
courage, *virtūs.*
courteously, *līberāliter.*
cowardice, *timor.*
cowardly, *timidus.*
critical, *necessārius.*
cross, *trānseō.*
cruelty, *cruciātus.*
crush, *opprimō.*
custom, *mōs, cōnsuētūdō.*
cut down, *caedō.*

D

daily, *cotīdiē; cotīdiānus.*
danger, *perīculum.*
dare, *audeō.*
daring, *audāx.*
daughter, *fīlia.*
day, *diēs.*
daybreak, *prīma lūx.*
death, *mors.*
decide, *statuō, cōnstituō.*
declare, *ostendō, cōnfīrmō.*
decree, *cōnsultum.*
deep, *altus.*
defeat, *vincō, superō.*
defend, *dēfendō.*
delay, *mora; moror.*
deliver a speech, *habeō.*
demand, *postulō, pōscō; imperō.*
depart, *discēdō, excēdō.*
departure, *profectiō.*
deprive, *prīvō.*
depth, *altitūdō.*
descend: be descended, *orior.*

desert, *dēserō.*
deserve, *mereō.*
desire, *cupiō, studeō; voluntās; cupiditās.*
destroy, *cōnsūmō.*
determine, *statuō, cōnstituō.*
different, *varius.*
difficulty: **with difficulty**, *aegrē.*
direction, *pars.*
disappoint, *dēiciō.*
disaster, *calamitās.*
discuss, *agō.*
dismiss, *dīmittō.*
display, *ostendō.*
disposition, *animus.*
distance, *spatium.*
disturb, *perturbō.*
ditch, *fossa.*
divide, *dīvidō.*
do, *faciō, gerō.*
double, *anceps.*
doubt, *dubitō.*
down from, *dē.*
drag, *trahō.*
drive, *pellō;* **drive back**, *repellō;* **drive out**, *expellō.*
drop, *reiciō.*
dry, *āridus, a, um.*
during, *dē.*
duty, *officium.*
dyke, *mōlēs, is,* f.

E

each, *quisque;* **each** (of two), *uterque.*
early, *mātūrē.*
easily, *facile.*
east, *oriēns sōl.*
easy, *facilis.*
effect, *sententia; efficiō.*
eight, *octō.*
either, *aut, vel.*
elated, *sublātus.*
embankment, *agger.*
embassy, *lēgātiō.*
employ, *ūtor.*
encamp, *cōnsīdō, castra pōnō.*
encourage, *cohortor.*
end, *fīnis.*
endure, *perferō;* **endurable**: § 270, 1.
enemy, *hostis, inimīcus.*
energy, *animus.*
engage in, *committō, versor.*
enjoy, *ūtor.*
enough, *satis.*
entire, *tōtus.*
entrust, *committō.*
equal, *pār, aequus.*
escape, *profugiō; mē ēripiō.*
especially, *māximē, praesertim.*
establish, *cōnfīrmō.*
even, *etiam;* **not even**, *nē . . . quidem.*
everything, *omnia,* nom., acc., *omnēs rēs,* gen., dat., abl.
excel, *praestō.*
except, *praeter.*
excite, *incitō, impellō.*
exertion, *labor.*
exhaust, *cōnficiō.*
experience, *ūsus; experior.*
explain, *prōpōnō.*
expose, *obiciō.*
extend, *pertineō, pateō.*
extraordinary, *ēgregius, īnsīgnis.*

F

fact, *rēs.*
fail, *dēficiō.*
fall, *cadō;* **fall to the ground**, *prōcumbō.*
far, *longē.*
farther, *ūlterior.*
farthermost, *extrēmus.*
father, *pater.*
favor, *faveō; grātia.*
favorable, *secundus.*
fear, *vereor, timeō; timor;* **for fear that**, *nē.*

feel, *sentiō.*
fell, *caedō.*
fertile, *frūmentārius.*
few, *paucī.*
field, *ager.*
fierce, *ācer, ferus.*
fiercely, *ācriter.*
fifteen, *quīndecim.*
fifth, *quīntus.*
fight, *pūgna; contendō, pūgnō, dīmicō;* **fight it out, fight a decisive battle,** *dēcertō.*
fill, *compleō.*
finally, *dēnique.*
find, *occurrō, nancīscor;* **find (out),** *reperiō; cōgnōscō, explōrō.*
finish, *cōnficiō, perficiō.*
fire, *ignis.*
first, *prīmus;* **first, in the first place,** *prīmum;* **at first,** *prīmō.*
fitting: it is fitting, *oportet.*
five, *quīnque.*
flank, *latus.*
flee, *fugiō, profugiō.*
fleet, *classis, is,* **f.**
flight, *fuga;* **take to flight,** *mē fugae mandō;* **put to flight,** *in fugam cōniciō.*
flow, *fluō.*
follow, *sequor, cōnsequor;* **follow closely, follow up,** *subsequor.*
foot, *pēs;* **at the foot of,** *sub,* with abl.
footprint, *vēstīgium.*
foot-soldier, *pedes.*
for, *nam, namque, enim; ad; prō;* also ablative of cause, or dative.
force, *vīs; manus;* **forces,** *cōpiae;* **forced,** *māgnus.*
ford, *vadum.*
forearm, *brācchium.*
foresee, *prōvideō.*
forest, *silva.*
form, *faciō.*
former, *prior, superior, vetus.*
fortification, *mūnītiō.*
fortify, *mūniō.*
fortune, *fortūna.*
four, *quattuor.*
fourth, *quārtus.*
free, *līber; expedītus;* **of one's free will,** *ūltrō.*
freedom, *lībertās.*
frequent, *crēber.*
friend, *amīcus;* **close friend,** *necessārius.*
friendly, *amīcus.*
friendship, *amīcitia.*
frighten, *perterreō.*
from, *ā, ab; dē; ē, ex;* **from which,** *unde;* **from all sides,** *undique.*
front, *frōns; prīmum āgmen;* **in front of,** *prō.*
further, *amplius.*

G

gain, *cōnsequor;* **gain (possession of),** *potior.*
Gallic, *Gallicus.*
garrison, *praesidium.*
gate, *porta.*
generally, *plērumque.*
Geneva, *Genāva.*
get at, *adeō.*
gift, *mūnus.*
give, *dō;* **give back,** *reddō;* **give orders,** *mandō;* **give out,** *dēficiō;* **give up,** *trādō, dēdō.*
go, *eō;* **go across,** *trānseō;* **go ahead,** *prōcēdō;* **go away,** *discēdō;* **go back,** *redeō;* **go forward,** *prōdeō, prōcēdō, prōgredior;* **go into,** *ineō;* **go under,** *subeō.*
good, *bonus.*
gracious, *līberālis.*
graciously, *līberāliter.*
gradually, *paulātim.*

grain, *frūmentum;* **standing grain,** *frūmenta;* **grain supply,** *rēs frūmentāria.*
grant, *concēdō.*
great, *māgnus;* **so great,** *tantus;* **how great,** *quantus;* **as great as,** *tantus . . . quantus;* **greatest, when used figuratively,** *summus.*
greatly, *māgnopere.*
greatness, *māgnitūdō.*
grieve, *doleō.*
guard, *praesidium.*
guide, *dux.*

H

halt, *cōnsistō.*
hand, *manus;* **be at hand,** *īnstō.*
happen, *accidō.*
harass, *lacessō.*
harbor, *portus, ūs,* m.
hard, *dūrus.*
harm, *noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum,* with dative.
hasten, *contendō.*
haughtily, *superbē.*
haughty, *superbus.*
have, *habeō.*
he, *is;* also *hīc, ille.*
head, *caput.*
headlong, *praeceps.*
hear, hear of, *audiō.*
heavily, *graviter.*
heavy, *gravis.*
height, *altitūdō.*
help, *auxilium; iuvō.*
her, *eam;* also *hanc, illam; ēius;* **her (own),** *suus.*
here, *hīc.*
herself, *ipsa; suī.*
hesitate, *dubitō.*
hide, *abdō; mē abdō* (in, *in* with acc.); **be hidden,** *lateō.*
high, *altus;* **higher,** *altior, superior.*
hill, *collis.*
him, *eum;* also *hunc, illum.*
himself, *ipse; suī.*
hinder, *impediō.*
hindrance, *impedīmentum.*
his, *ēius;* **his (own),** *suus.*
hold, *teneō, obtineō, contineō,* **hold out,** *sustineō.*
home, *domus.*
hope, *spēs.*
horse, *equus.*
horseman, *eques.*
hostage, *obses.*
hour, *hōra.*
how, *quam; quō modō, quem ad modum;* **how great, how much,** *quantus.*
however, *autem.*
hundred, *centum.*
hurry, *contendō.*

I

I, *ego.*
if, *sī.*
immediately, *statim.*
in, *in* with abl.; **in all,** *omnīnō.*
increase, *augeō.*
incredible, *incrēdibilis.*
indeed, *vērō.*
induce, *addūcō.*
indulge, *indulgeō.*
influence, *auctōritās; addūcō.*
inform, *certiōrem* (-*ēs*) *faciō.*
inhabit, *incolō.*
injury, *iniūria.*
inside, *intrā.*
instead of, *prō.*
intervene, *intermittor.*
into, *in* with acc.
intrust, *committō.*
island, *īnsula, ae,* f.
it, *id;* also *hoc, illud.*
its, *ēius;* **its (own),** *suus.*
itself, *ipsum; suī.*

J

join, *iungō, coniungō.*
journey, *iter.*
judge, *iūdicō.*

K

keep, *teneō;* **keep away, keep out,** *prohibeō.*
kill, *occīdō, interficiō.*
kind, sort, *genus;* **kind deed, kindness,** *beneficium.*
king, *rēx.*
kinsman, *propinquus.*
know, *sciō; nōvī, cōgnōvī.*
known, *nōtus;* **well known,** *nōbilis.*

L

labor, *labor.*
lack, *inopia.*
lacking: be lacking, *dēsum.*
lake, *lacus.*
land, *terra; ager.*
language, *lingua.*
large, *māgnus, amplus;* **large number,** *multitūdō.*
last, *proximus; proximē.*
late in the day, *multō diē.*
law, *lēx.*
lay aside, *dēpōnō;* **lay waste,** *vāstō.*
lead, *dūcō;* **lead across,** *trādūcō;* **lead away,** *dēdūcō;* **lead back,** *redūcō;* **lead out,** *ēdūco;* **lead up,** *subdūcō.*
leader, *dux.*
leadership, *prīncipātus.*
learn, *cōgnōscō.*
least, *minimus;* **at least,** *at.*
leave (behind), *relinquō.*
left, *sinister; reliquus.*
legion, *legiō.*
length, *longitūdō;* **at length,** *dēmum, tandem.*
letter, *littera; litterae.*
liberty, *lībertās.*
lieutenant, *lēgātus.*
light, *lūx; levis.*
light-armed, *expedītus; levis armātūrae* (§ 44).
like, *similis,* super. *simillimus.*
likewise, *item.*
line: line of battle, *aciēs;* **line of march,** *āgmen.*
little, *parvus; paulus* in acc. and abl.; **little by little,** *paulātim.*
live (in), *incolō.*
locality, *regiō, locus.*
long, *longus.*
look back, *respiciō.*
lose, *āmittō.*
loss, *dētrīmentum; calamitās.*
lot, *sors.*
low, *īnferus.*
loyalty, *fidēs.*

M

magistrate, *magistrātus.*
make, *faciō, efficiō;* **be made,** *fīō;* **make a stand,** *cōnsistō;* **make war,** *bellum īnferō.*
man, *homō; vir.*
manliness, *virtūs.*
manner, *modus; ratiō.*
many, *multī.*
march, *iter; iter faciō;* **forced march,** *māgnum iter;* **line of march,** *āgmen.*
maritime, *maritimus.*
marked, *īnsīgnis.*
marsh, *palūs.*
matron, *māter.*
matter, *rēs.*
meanwhile, *intereā, interim.*
meet, *occurrō; sustineō; excipiō; conveniō.*
memory, *memoria.*
message, *nūntius.*
messenger, *nūntius.*

method, *ratiō.*
middle (of), *medius.*
midnight, *media nox.*
mile, *mīlle passūs;* **miles,** *mīlia passuum.*
military, *mīlitāris;* **military affairs,** *rēs mīlitāris.*
mind, *animus.*
missile, *tēlum.*
mission, *lēgātiō.*
more, *plūs; magis; amplius.*
moreover, *autem.*
most, *plūrimus;* **most, most of,** *plērīque.*
mother, *māter.*
motion, *mōtus.*
mound, *agger.*
mountain, *mōns.*
move, *moveō.*
much, *multus.*
my, *meus, a, um.*

N

name, *nōmen.*
narrow, *angustus.*
nation, *populus, nātiō.*
native, *barbarus.*
near, *prope; ad; propinquus; fīnitimus;* **very near,** *proximus;* **be near,** *adsum.*
nearest, *proximus.*
nearly, *prope.*
need, *opus.*
neglect, *neglegō.*
neighbor, *fīnitimus.*
neighboring, *fīnitimus.*
neither, *neque.*
never, *numquam.*
nevertheless, *tamen.*
new, *novus.*
news, *nūntius.*
next, *proximus;* **(on) the next day,** *postrīdiē.*
night, *nox.*
nine, *novem.*
no (adj.), *nūllus;* **no one, nobody,** *nēmō.*
nor, *neque.*
not, *nōn;* **not yet,** *nōndum.*
noted, *nōbilis, cōgnitus.*
nothing, *nihil.*
notice, *animadvertō.*
now, *nunc;* of past time, *iam.*
number, *numerus;* **great number,** *multitūdō;* **quite a number of,** *complūrēs.*

O

oak, *rōbur, roboris,* **n.**
oar, *rēmus, ī,* m.
oath, *iūs iūrandum;* **take an oath,** *iūrō.*
obey, *pāreō.*
obtain; obtain possession of, obtain control of, *potior;* **obtain (one's request),** *impetrō.*
occupy, *teneō, obtineō, occupō.*
ocean, *Ōceanus.*
often, *saepe.*
old, *vetus.*
on, *in* with abl.; **on all sides,** *undique.*
once: at once, *statim.*
one, *ūnus;* **one . . . another,** *alius . . . alius;* **one . . . the other,** *alter . . . alter;* **one by one, one at a time,** *singulī.*
only, *sōlus;* **not only,** *nōn sōlum; nōn modo.*
open, *apertus.*
opinion, *sententia.*
opportunity, *facultās.*
or, *aut; vel; an.*
order, *iubeō;* **in order that,** *ut;* **in order that . . . not,** *nē.*
other, *alius; alter; reliquus; cēterī.*
otherwise, *aliter.*
ought, *dēbeō; oportet.*
our, *noster.*

out from, out of, *ex*.
overcome, *superō*.
overlook, *neglegō*.
overpower, *opprimō*.
overrun, *vēxō*.
overtake, *cōnsequor*.
overwhelm, *opprimō*.

P

pace, *passus*.
pacify, *pācō*.
panic-stricken, (*timōre*) *perterritus; perturbātus*.
pardon, *ignōscō*.
part, *pars*.
partly, *partim*.
pass, *intermittor*.
peace, *pāx*.
people, *populus;* **common people,** *vulgus*.
perceive, *sentiō*.
peril, *perīculum*.
permit, *permittō, committō; concēdō;* **it is permitted,** *licet*.
personal, *prīvātus*.
persuade, *persuādeō*.
pertain, *pertineō*.
pitch, *pōnō*.
place, *locus; pōnō, collocō;* **in place of,** *prō;* **place around,** *circumdō;* **place upon,** *impōnō*.
plan, *cōnsilium, ratiō*.
pledge, *fidēs*.
plenty, *cōpia*.
point, *locus*.
popularity, *grātia*.
position, *locus*.
power, *potestās, facultās*.
powerful, *potēns;* **be powerful,** *multum possum, valeō*.
pray, *ōrō*.
prayer, *prex*.
prepare, *parō, comparō*.
prepared, *parātus*.
present: be present, *praesum*.
press hard, *premō*.
prevent, *dēterreō, prohibeō*.
prisoner, *captīvus*.
private, *prīvātus*.
productive, *frūmentārius*.
prominent, *nōbilis*.
promise, *polliceor*.
proper: it is proper, *oportet*.
property, *fortūna*.
protection, *praesidium*.
proud, *superbus*.
prove, *probō*.
province, *prōvincia*.
provisions, *commeātus*.
provoke, *lacessō*.
prudence, *cōnsilium*.
public, *pūblicus*.
punish, *animadvertō*, with *in* with acc.
purpose: for the purpose, *causā*, after gen.
pursue, *sequor*.
put: put in, *immittō;* **put in charge of,** *praeficiō;* **put to death,** *interficiō*.

Q

quick, *celer*.
quickly, *celeriter*.

R

raft, *ratis*.
raise, *tollō*.
rampart, *vāllum*.
rank, *ōrdō*.
rapidly, *celeriter*.
reach, *perveniō ad*.
ready, *parātus*.
realize, *intellegō, sentiō*.
rear, *novissimum āgmen*.
reason, *causa; ratiō;* **for this reason,** *hōc* (§ 84); *ob eam causam; propterea*.

receive, *accipiō; recipiō; excipiō.*
recent, *recēns.*
reckoning, *ratiō.*
recollection, *memoria.*
refuse, *recūsō.*
region, *regiō.*
regular, *legiōnārius.*
reinforcement, *subsidium.*
relative, near relative, *propinquus.*
rely, *cōnfīdō.*
remain, *maneo, remaneō; supersum.*
remaining, *reliquus.*
remove, *removeō.*
render, *reddō.*
reply, *respondeō.*
report, *nūntiō, dēferō.*
reputation, *opīniō.*
reserve, *subsidium.*
resist, *resistō.*
resource, *facultās.*
rest: the rest of, *reliquus.*
restrain, *teneō, retineō, dēterreō.*
result: the result is, *fīō.*
retain, *adhibeō, retineō.*
retire, *pedem referō.*
retreat, *mē recipiō; cēdō.*
return, *redeō, revertor; reddō.*
revolt, *dēficiō.*
revolution, *novae rēs.*
reward, *praemium.*
Rhine, *Rhēnus.*
Rhone, *Rhodanus.*
ridge, *iugum.*
right, *dexter; iūs.*
ripe, *mātūrus.*
river, *flūmen.*
road, *iter, via.*
rock, *saxum.*
Roman, *Rōmānus.*
Rome, *Rōma.*
rope, *fūnis, is,* **f.**
rout, *pellō; in fugam cōniciō.*
row, *ōrdō.*
royal: royal power, *rēgnum.*
rule, *imperium; imperō.*
rumor, *rūmor.*
run against, *occurrō.*
running, *cursus.*

S

safe, safely, *incolumis.*
safety, *salūs.*
sail, *vēlum; nāvigō,* 1st conj.
sailor, *nauta, ae,* m.
sake: for the sake, *causā,* **after** gen.
same, *īdem;* **in the same way,** *item;* **at the same time,** *simul.*
save, *cōnservō.*
say, *dīcō.*
scarcely, *aegrē, vix.*
scarcity, *inopia.*
scatter, *dispergō.*
scout, *explōrātor.*
sea, *mare, maris,* n.
seacoast, *ōra maritima.*
second, *secundus;* **the second (of two),** *alter;* **a second time,** *iterum.*
secure, *potior.*
see, *videō;* **see clearly,** *perspiciō, cōnspiciō.*
seek, *petō.*
seem, *videor.*
seize, *occupō, capiō.*
select, *dēligō.*
senate, *senātus.*
send, *mittō;* **send ahead, send forward,** *praemittō;* **send away,** *dīmittō;* **send back,** *remittō.*
separate, *dīvidō.*
service, *mūnus; beneficium;* **services,** *opera.*
set, *cōnstituō;* **set forth,** *prōpōnō;* **set on fire, set fire to,** *incendō;* **set out,** *proficīscor.*
seven, *septem.*

seventh, *septimus*.
several, *complūrēs*.
sharp, *ācer*.
she, *ea;* **also** *haec*, *illa*.
shield, *scūtum*.
ship, *nāvis*.
shoal, *vadum*.
shore, *lītus*, *lītoris*, **n.**
short, *brevis*.
shout, shouting, *clāmor*.
show, *doceō*, *ostendō*, *dēmōnstrō*.
shut in, *contineō*.
sick, *aeger*.
side, *latus*, *pars;* **on all sides, from all sides**, *undique*.
sight, *cōnspectus*.
signal, *sīgnum*.
similar, *similis*.
since, *cum;* *quoniam*.
sister, *soror*.
situated: **be situated**, *pōnor*.
six, *sex*.
sixty, *sexāgintā*.
size, great size, *māgnitūdō*.
slay, *interficiō*, *occīdō*.
slow, *tardus*.
small, *parvus*.
smooth, *mollis*.
snatch, *ēripiō*.
so, *tam;* *ita*, *sīc*.
soft, *mollis*.
soldier, *mīles*.
some, *nōn nūllī;* **some . . . others**, *aliī . . . aliī;* **some one**, *aliquis*.
son, *fīlius*.
soul, individual, *caput*.
space, *spatium*.
speak, *loquor*, *dīcō*.
spear, *pīlum*.
speech, *ōrātiō*.
speed, *celeritās;* *cursus*.
spread, *pandō*.
spring from, *orior*.
stand, make a stand, *cōnsistō;* **stand up**, *mē sustineō;* **stand up under**, *sustineō*.
standard, *sīgnum*.
start (out), *proficīscor*.
state, *cīvitās*.
stay, *remaneō;* *moror*.
stop, *prohibeō;* *cōnsistō*.
storm, *expūgnō;* *tempestās*, *tātis*, **f.**
strength, *vīrēs*.
strengthen, *cōnfīrmō*.
stripped, *vacuus*.
strive, *contendō*.
strong, *fīrmus*.
submissive, *supplex*.
succession: **in succession**, *continuus*.
successive, *continuus*.
such: **such (great)**, *tantus;* **in such a manner**, *ita*, *sīc;* **to such a degree**, *tam*.
sudden, *subitus*.
suddenly, *subitō*.
suffer, *patior*.
sufficient, sufficiently, *satis*.
suitable, *idōneus*.
summer, *aestās*.
summon, *arcessō*.
sun, *sōl*.
superior, *superior*.
supply, *cōpia;* *facultās;* **grain supply, supply of grain**, *rēs frūmentāria*.
support, *auxilium*.
sure, *certus*.
surpass, *praestō*.
surrender, *trādō*, *dēdō;* **surrender(ing)**, *dēditiō*.
surround, *contineō;* *circumveniō;* *circumdō;* *cingō*.
survive, *supersum*.
sustain, *sustineō;* *accipiō*.
swamp, *palūs*.
swear, *iūrō*.
swift, *celer*.
swiftness, *celeritās*.
sword, *gladius*.

T

take, *capiō; occupō; sūmō;* **take away**, *tollō; ēripiō;* **take to flight**, *mē fugae mandō;* **take possession of**, *potior;* **take by storm**, *expūgnō.*
talk, *loquor.*
tear, *lacrima.*
tell, *dīcō.*
ten, *decem.*
tend, *pertineō.*
tenth, *decimus.*
terms, *condiciō.*
territory, *fīnēs.*
than, *quam.*
that, *ille; is; quī; ut.*
their, *eōrum, eārum;* **their (own)** *suus.*
themselves, *ipsī; suī.*
then, *inde, deinde; tum.*
there, *ibi; eō.*
therefore, *itaque; quam ob rem.*
they, *eī;* also *hī, illī.*
thick, *dēnsus.*
thing, *rēs;* also neuter gender.
think, *arbitror, putō, exīstimō.*
third, *tertius.*
this, *hīc.*
though, *cum; etsī.*
thousand, *mīlle;* **thousands**, *mīlia.*
three, *trēs;* **three at a time, three by three**, *trīnī;* **three times**, *ter;* **three hundred**, *trecentī.*
through, throughout, *per.*
throw, *iaciō; cōniciō;* **throw back**, *reiciō;* **throw down**, *dē-iciō, prōiciō;* **throw up, throw against**, *obiciō;* **throw from under**, *subiciō.*
thus, *ita.*
tide, *aestus, ūs,* m.
timber, *trabs.*
time, *tempus.*
to, *ad,* or dative case.
together, *ūnā.*
toil, *labor.*
too, *quoque;* **too little**, *parum;* see also § 116.
top of, *summus.*
torture, *cruciātus.*
toward, *ad.*
tower, *turris.*
town, *oppidum.*
trader, *mercātor.*
training, *exercitātiō.*
treachery, *īnsidiae.*
treat, *agō.*
tree, *arbor.*
tribe, *nātiō.*
tribune, *tribūnus.*
triple, *trīnī.*
troops, *cōpiae.*
true, *vērus.*
trust, *cōnfīdō.*
try, *cōnor; temptō; experior.*
turn, *vertō, convertō;* **turn away**, *āvertō;* **turn to**, *advertō.*
twice, *bis.*
two, *duo.*

U

uncivilized, *barbarus.*
under, *sub.*
undergo, *subeō.*
understand, *intellegō.*
undertake, *suscipiō.*
unencumbered, *expedītus.*
unexpected, *repentīnus.*
unfavorable, *inīquus.*
unfriendly, *inimīcus.*
unharmed, *incolumis.*
unless, *nisi.*
unlike, *dissimilis.*
unwilling, *invītus;* **be unwilling**, *nōlō.*
unwillingly, *invītus.*
urge, *hortor; impellō.*
use (noun), *ūsus.*
use (verb), *ūtor.*
usually, *plērumque.*

V

vain: **in vain**, *frūstrā*.
valley, *vallēs*, *is*, f.
van, *prīmum āgmen*.
vanquish, *vincō*.
various, *varius*.
very, *ipse;* also superlative.
victor, *victor*.
victory, *victoria*.
village, *vīcus*.
violence, *vīs*.
voice, *vox*.
voluntarily, *ūltrō*.

W

wage, *gerō*.
wait, *moror*, *exspectō;* **wait for**, *exspectō*.
wall, *mūrus*, *vāllum*.
wander, *vagor*.
want, *volō*.
war, *bellum*.
warn, *moneō*.
waste: **lay waste**, *vāstō*.
watch, *vigilia*.
water, *aqua*, *ae*, f.
wave, *fluctus*, *ūs*, m.
way, *via*.
weak, *mollis*, *e*.
weapon, *tēlum*.
wear out, *cōnficiō*.
weep, *fleō*.
well, *bene;* **well known**, *nōbilis*.
what, *quis*, *quī*, etc.
when, *cum*, *ubi*.
where, *ubi;* *quō*.
whether, *num;* *utrum*.
which, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, *quid*, etc.; **which (of two)**, *uter*.
whither, *quō*.
who, *quis;* *quī*.
whoever, **whichever**, *quīcumque*.
whole, *tōtus*.
why, *cūr;* *quam ob rem*.
wide, *lātus*.
width, *lātitūdō*.
willing: **be willing**, *volō*.
willingness, *voluntās*.
win, *potior*.
wind, *ventus*, *ī*, m.
wing, *cornū*.
winter, *hiems*, *hiemis*, f.; **winter quarters**, *hīberna*.
wisdom, *cōnsilium*.
wish, *volō;* *voluntās;* **not wish**, *nōlō*.
with, *cum*.
withdraw, *discēdō;* *mē recipiō;* *subdūcō*, *dēdūcō;* *excēdō*.
within, *intrā*.
without, *sine*.
withstand, *sustineō*.
woman, *mulier*.
woods, *silva*.
word, *verbum;* *vox*.
work, *opus*.
wound, *vulnus;* *vulnerō*.
wrong, *iniūria*.
wrongdoing, *iniūria*.
wrongly, **wrongfully**, *iniūriā*.

Y

year, *annus*.
yield, *concēdō*.
yoke, *iugum*.
you, *tū;* *vōs*.
young man, *adulēscēns*.
your, *tuus;* *vester*.
youth, *adulēscēns;* *adulēscentia*.

ADVERTISEMENTS